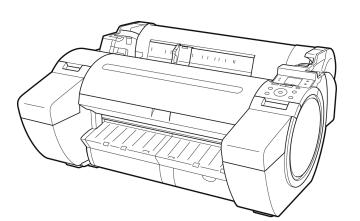




iPF685

User's Guide



Manuals for th	nis printer	
Setup Guide		
Quick Guide		
Basic Guide	Electronic manual	
User's Guide Electronic manual		
Paper Refere	nce Guide Electronic manual	

Basic Printing Workflow	15
Enhanced Printing Options	31
Printing CAD Drawings Printing enlargements or reductions Printing at full size Borderless Printing Printing banners or at other non-standard sizes Tiling and multiple pages per sheet Centering originals and so on	65 76 87 97 110
Windows Software	157
Printer Driver Preview Free Layout Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Print Plug-In for Office and so on	191 202 225
Mac OS Software	277
Printer Driver Preview Free Layout Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy and so on	296 319
Handling and Use of Paper	361
Control Panel	437
Printer Parts	477
Network Setting	491
Print Job Management	511
Adjustments for Better Print Quality	573
Maintenance and Consumables	589
Troubleshooting	627
Error Message	657
Specifications	681
Appendix	685

Contents

_

Enhanced Printing Options

Basic Printing Workflow

Printing procedure	16
Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets Turning the Printer On and Off	16
Loading and Printing on Rolls	
Loading and Printing on Sheets	21
Printing in Windows	23
Printing from Mac OS	. 23
Canceling print jobs	25
Canceling Print Jobs from the Control Panel	
Canceling Print Jobs from Windows	. 26
Canceling Print Jobs from Mac OS	26
Pausing Printing	29

15

bobood	Drinting	Ontiona
nanceu	Printing	Options

Choosing Paper for Printing	32
Choosing a Paper for Printing	32
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver	32
Printing Photos and Office Documents	33
Printing Photos and Images	33
Printing Photos and Images (Windows)	
Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS)	
Printing Office Documents	
Printing Office Documents (Windows)	
Printing Office Documents (Mac OS) Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals	
	. 41
Printing CAD Drawings	43
Printing CAD Drawings	. 43
Printing Line Drawings and Text	
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows)	
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS)	
Printing from AutoCAD Specifying Colors and Printing CAD Drawings	
Specifying Colors and Printing CAD Drawings (Windows)	
HP-GL/2 Printing	
Adjusting Images	51
Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver	
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Windows)	
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS)	
Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing	
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Windows) Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS)	
	. 02
Printing enlargements or reductions	65
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size	
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows)	
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width	67

Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows) Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS) Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Windows) Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS)	. 69 . 71 . 72
Printing at full size	76
Printing on Oversize Paper Printing at Full Size (Windows) Printing at Full Size (Mac OS) Borderless Printing at Actual Size Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows) Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS)	. 77 78 80 . 81
Borderless Printing	87
Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows) Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows) Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS)	88 . 90 91
Printing banners or at other non-standard sizes	97
 Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing) Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Windows) Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS) Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Windows) Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS) 	. 98 101 104 104
Tiling and multiple pages per sheet	110
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Windows) Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Mac OS) Printing Multiple Pages Continuously Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Windows) Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS) Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Windows) Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Windows) Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS) Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS)	111 113 114 114 116 118 118 120 123
Centering originals	126
 Printing Originals Centered on Rolls	126 128 130 130
Conserving roll paper	135
 Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees	135 136 139 139
	144
Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing	144

Other useful settings	145
Printing With Watermarks	145
Printing with Watermarks—COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Windows)	146
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation	148
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Windows)	148
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS)	149
Using Favorites	151
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing	152
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Windows)	152
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS)	153

157

Windows Software

Pr

inter Driver	158
Printer Driver Settings	158
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver	160
Confirming Print Settings	161
Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing	162
Using Favorites	163
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications	164
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu	166
Main Sheet	167
Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box	170
Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box	170
View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application	172
Color Adjustment Sheet: Color	173
Object Adjustment Dialog box: Color	174
Matching Sheet	174
Color Adjustment Sheet: Monochrome	176
Object Adjustment Dialog box: Monochrome	177
Page Setup Sheet	178
Output Method Dialog box	180
Paper Size Options Dialog Box	181
Layout Sheet	182
Page Options Dialog Box	184
Special Settings Dialog Box	185
Favorites Sheet	186
Utility Sheet	187
Support Sheet	188
Settings Summaries Dialog Box	189
Device Settings Sheet	189
eview	191

Preview

The Features of Preview	
Starting Preview	191
Preview Main Window	193
Dialog Area	195
Enlarge/Reduce the screen display	196
Moving a Page	196
Using the ruler	. 196
Priority setting for rotating 90 degrees	197
Printing with Selecting the Layout	. 198
Print on the Center	
Not Print Spaces at the Top/Bottom	201
Free Layout	202
The Features of Free Layout	202

<
<
=
_
Q
0
≲
Q
c c
õ
=
2
<
ധ
る
Ψ

C	Starting Free Layout	203
Nin	Free Layout Main Window	204
do	Detailed Settings	205
SS	Preferences Dialog Box	206
Windows Software	Page Options Dialog Box	
t a	Zoom Dialog Box	
6	Format Dialog Box	208
	Laying out a Multiple-File Document on One Page	210
	Laying out a Document Created with Multiple Application Programs on One Page	
	Selecting an Object	
	Changing the Object Size	
	Moving an Object	
	Rotating an Object	
	Laying out Objects Automatically	
	Aligning Objects	
	Changing the Object Overlapping Order	
	Pasting a Copied or Cut Object	
	Folded Duplex Window	
	Finished Size Settings Dialog Box	
	Binding Settings Dialog Box	
	Prints using Folded Duplex	
		221
	Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy	225
	The Features of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy	225
	Starting Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy	225
	Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Dialog Box	
	Hot Folder	
	Creating a New Hot Folder	228
	Specifying an Existing Shared Folder as a Hot Folder	231
	Setting the Print Parameters	234
	Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER	
	Print Plug-In for Office	236
	Print Plug-In for Officefeatures	
	Steps to install	
	•	
	Steps to uninstall	
	When Print Plug-In for Office is not displayed	
	To start from Microsoft Word Print Matching Roll Width(Word)	
	Borderless Printing(Word)	
	Multi-Page Printing(Word)	
	Register the settings (Word)	
	Print Using Registered Settings(Word)	
	Portrait Orientation/Landscape Orientation(Word)	
	To start from Microsoft PowerPoint	
	Print Matching Roll Width(PowerPoint)	
	Borderless Printing(PowerPoint) Multi-Page Printing(PowerPoint)	
	Register the settings (PowerPoint)	
	Print Using Registered Settings(PowerPoint) Portrait Orientation/Landscape Orientation(PowerPoint)	
	To start from Microsoft Excel	267
	Drint Entire Sheet/Even)	260
	Print Entire Sheet(Excel)	
	Print Selected Area(Excel)	271
		271 274

Mac OS Software

Mac OS Software 2	.77
Printer Driver	278
Printer Driver Settings	278
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver	279
Confirming Print Settings	281
Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing	281
Using Favorites	282
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications	282
Main Pane	283
Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box	286
View set. Dialog Box for the Printing Application	288
Matching pane	288
Color Settings Pane: Color	291
Object Adjustment dialog box: Color	
Color Settings Pane: Monochrome	292
Object Adjustment dialog box: Monochrome	293
Page Setup Pane	294
Additional Settings Pane	295

Preview

review	296
The Features of Preview	296
Starting Preview	296
Preview Main Window	298
Paper Settings Panel	300
Easy Settings	302
Advanced Settings	303
Output Settings Panel	304
Color Settings Panel	
Color Adjustment	
Matching	309
Driver Matching Mode	311
ICC Matching Mode	312
ColorSync	313
Preferences Dialog Box	
Zoom Dialog Box	313
Go to Page Dialog Box	
Print with No Borders	
Print on the Center	
Not Print Spaces at the Top/Bottom	
Print Page Rotated 90 Degrees	316
Display with Fitting to the Width of the Paper	
Display with All	
Display with Actual Size	
Moving a Page	
ee Layout	319

Free Layout

The Features of Free Layout	319
Starting Free Layout	319
Free Layout Main Window	321
Paper Settings Panel	323
Easy Settings	324
Advanced Settings	326
Color Settings Panel	
Color Adjustment	. 328
Matching	330
Driver Matching Mode	
ICC Matching Mode	

Mac	
SO	
Soft	
ware	

	ColorSync	334
Pre	eferences Dialog Box	334
Pa	age Setup Dialog Box	335
Zo	om Dialog Box	336
	rmat Dialog Box	
La	ying out a Multiple-File Document on One Page	337
La	ying out a Document Created with Multiple Application Programs on One Page	338
Se	electing an Object	338
Ch	nanging the Object Size	339
Mo	oving an Object	339
Ro	otating an Object	340
La	ying out Objects Automatically	340
Ali	gning Objects	340
Ch	nanging the Object Overlapping Order	342
Pa	asting a Copied or Cut Object	343
Colo	r imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy	344
	e Features of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy	
	arting Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy	
	blor imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Dialog Box	
	pt Folder	
	eating a New Hot Folder	
	liting a Hot Folder (Setting Print Conditions)	
	eleting a Hot Folder	
	etting the Print Parameters	
Pa	aper Settings Panel	
	Easy Settings	
0	Advanced Settings	
	utput Settings Panel	
Co	blor Settings Panel	
	Driver Matching Mode	
	ICC Matching Mode	
Pr	inting Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER	358

Handling and Use of Paper

Pa

Handling and Use of Paper

aper	362
Types of Paper	. 362
Paper Sizes	. 362
Using Paper Other Than Genuine Paper and feed confirmed Paper	364
Printing on Paper Other Than Genuine Paper and feed confirmed Paper Using Existing Settings	. 364
Displaying the Paper Reference Guide	365
Updating paper information	. 368
andling rolls	372

Handling rolls

Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls	372
Loading Rolls in the Printer	. 375
Changing the Type of Paper	378
Specifying the Paper Length	
Removing the Roll from the Printer	
Removing the Roll Holder from Rolls	383
Feeding Roll Paper Manually	384
Keeping Track of the Amount of Roll Paper Left	385
Specifying the Ink Drying Time for Rolls	. 385
Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls	. 388
Cutting the Leading Edge of Roll Paper Automatically	391
Reducing Dust from Cutting Rolls	. 393

Handling sheets	394
Loading Sheets in the Printer Printing From a Desired Starting Point Removing Sheets	396
Output Stacker	401
Using the Output Stacker	401
Media Configuration Tool (Windows)	406
The Features of Media Configuration Tool Installation Procedures Starting Method Media Configuration Tool Main Window Editing Media Type Information for Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper Adding Media Types Changing Media Types Deleting Media Types You Have Added Switching Media Types Display Show/Hide Changing the Display Order of Media Types Checking the update	406 408 409 409 411 413 415 416 418
Media Configuration Tool (Mac OS)	420
The Features of Media Configuration Tool Procedures for Installing Starting Method Media Configuration Tool Main Window Editing Media Type Information for Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper Adding Media Types Changing Media Names Deleting Media Types You Have Added Switching Media Types Display Show/Hide Changing the Display Order of Media Types	420 422 423 424 425 428 428 430 431 433

Control Panel

Operations and Display Screen 4	438
Control Panel	438
Control Panel Display	440
How to View Instructions with Navigate	445
Checking Instructions During Printer Operations	446
Printer Menu 4	448
Printer Menu Operations	448
Menu Operations	449
Menu Structure	452
Menu Settings	459
Status Print	470
Printing Interface Setting Reports	473

437

477

Printer Parts

Printer parts	478
FrontSide	478 480
Top Cover (Inside)	481
Roll Cover (Inside)	482

Printer Parts

Control Panel

Carriage Ink Tank Cover (Inside)	
Hard Disk	484
Printer Hard Disk Operations Checking the Free Hard Disk Space Erasing Data on the Printer's Hard Disk	. 485
Optional accessories	488
Roll Holder Set Stand	

Print Job Management

Network Setting

Network Environment	492
Network Environment	492
Using RemoteUI	494
Using RemoteUI	494
Initial Settings	496
Configuring the IP Address on the Printer Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel Configuring the IP Address Using ARP and PING Commands Configuring TCP/IPv6 Network Settings Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Windows) Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Mac OS) Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings With RemoteUI	496 497 499 499 500
Mac OS Settings	504
Configuring the Destination in TCP/IP Networks Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network	
Other Settings	505
Specifying Printer-Related Information Configuring the Communication Mode Manually Email Notification When Printing is Finished or Errors Occur Initializing the Network Settings	506 507 507
Davias Satur Htility (Mindows)	500

Device Setup Utility (Windows)	508
imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility	
Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility	508
Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility	508

Print Job Management

Status Monitor (Windows) 51	2
The Features of imagePROGRAF Status Monitor 51 Job Management Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor 51	
Printmonitor (Mac OS) 51	5
The Features of imagePROGRAF Printmonitor 51 Job Management Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor 51	
Accounting (Windows) 51	7
Accounting Manager	7
Job List Area	20

511

	Accounting Manager Basic Procedures	. 52	22
	Configuring Unit Costs in Accounting Manager	52	22
	Setting the Unit Cost for Ink		
	Setting the Unit Cost for Paper		
	Setting the Unit Cost for Items Other Than Ink and Paper		
	Configuring Units and Display Settings in Accounting Manager		
	Automatically Acquiring Print Job Logs at Regular Intervals		
	Canceling Regular Print Job Log Acquisition		
	Switching Between Displaying Jobs on Printer and Regularly Acquired Jobs		
	Exporting Print Job Data as a CSV File		
	Displaying Job Properties or Period Properties	. 52	28
	Showing, Saving and Loading Selected Unit Cost Data		
	Showing the Total Amount of Ink and Paper Consumed		
	Basic Print Job Operations	50	31
Ľ			
	Using the Printer Hard Disk		
	Saving Print Jobs on the Printer Hard Disk		
	Managing the Job Queue (Deleting or Preempting Other Jobs)		
	Managing Pending Jobs (Printing or Deleting Jobs on Hold)		
	Printing Saved Jobs		
	Deleting Saved Jobs		
	Moving Saved Jobs	. 54	48
A	Advanced Print Job Operations	55	53
	Saving Print Jobs Sent from Sources Other than the Printer Driver	. 5	53
	Printing Without Saving Jobs in the Common Box	5	54
	Setting Passwords for Personal Boxes	. 5	55
	Naming Personal Boxes	. 5.	58
	Displaying a List of Saved Jobs	. 50	61
	Printing a List of Saved Jobs	. 50	64
	Displaying Details of Saved Jobs	. 50	65
	Renaming Saved Jobs	5	68
		-	00

Adjustments for Better Print Quality

•		
Adjusting t	he Printhead	574
	the Printhead	
	natic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors	
Manua	al Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors	575
Adjusting	Line Misalignment	577
	ooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images	
Adjusting tl	he feed amount	581
Adjusting	the Feed Amount	581
Select	ing a Feed Amount Adjustment Method	581
Autom	natic Banding Adjustment	582
Manua	al Banding Adjustment	584
Fine-T	uning the Paper Feed Amount	585
Adjust	ting Line Length	586
	the Vacuum Strength	

	07
Ink Tanks	590
Ink Tanks Replacing Ink Tanks Checking Ink Tank Levels When to Replace Ink Tanks Attach the Ink Tank Cover to the printer	590 596 596
Printheads	599
Printhead Checking for Nozzle Clogging Cleaning the Printhead Replacing the Printhead	599 600
Maintenance Cartridge	608
Maintenance Cartridge Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge Checking the Remaining Maintenance Cartridge Capacity When to Replace the Maintenance Cartridge	608 612

Cleaning the Printer

Cleaning the Printer	614
Cleaning the Printer Exterior Cleaning Inside the Top Cover	
Other Maintenance	618

Preparing to Transfer the Printer	618
Reinstalling the Printer	621
Updating the Firmware	625

Troubleshooting

Fr	equently Asked Questions	628
	Frequently Asked Questions	628
Pr	oblems Regarding Paper	629
	Clearing Jammed Roll Paper Clearing a Jammed Sheet	
	Clearing Jammed Paper (Paper Feed Slot) Roll paper cannot be inserted into the Paper Feed Slot	
	Cannot load sheets Paper is not cut neatly	
	Paper is not cut Depression on the leading edge is left	638
	The size of clear film cannot be detected Roll Paper is Continuously Ejected	
Pr	inting does not start	639
	The Data lamp on the Control Panel does not light up The printer does not respond even if print jobs are sent Ink Filling is displayed The display screen indicates Agitating	639 639
Tł	e printer stops during a print job	640
	An error message is shown on the Display Screen The printer ejects blank, unprinted paper	

Maintenance and Consumables

589

Problems with the printing quality	641
Printing is faint	
Paper rubs against the Printhead	
The edges of the paper are dirty The surface of the paper is dirty	
The back side of the paper is dirty	
Printed colors are inaccurate	
Banding in different colors occurs	644
Colors in printed images are uneven	
Image edges are blurred or white banding occurs	
The contrast becomes uneven during printing The length of printed images is inaccurate in the feeding direction	
Images are printed crooked	
Documents are printed in monochrome	
Line thickness is not uniform	
Lines are misaligned	. 647
Cannot print over a network	648
Cannot connect the printer to the network	648
Cannot print over a TCP/IP network	
Cannot print over a Bonjour network	648
Installation problems	649
The computer does not recognize the printer	
Removing Installed Printer Drivers	649
HP-GL/2 problems	651
With HP-GL/2, printing is misaligned	651
Lines or images are missing in printed HP-GL/2 jobs.	
Lines are printed too thick or thin in HP-GL/2 print jobs	
HP-GL/2 jobs are printed in monochrome (or color) Printed colors of lines are inaccurate during HP-GL/2 printing	
HP-GL/2 jobs are printed 6 mm larger than specified	
HP-GL/2 jobs are printed at maximum size, even if a standard size is specified	
HP-GL/2 printing takes a long time	
The printer stops when printing a HP-GL/2 job (the carriage stops moving)	. 652
Other problems	653
The Ink Tank Cover has become detached from the printer	653
The printer does not go on	
The printer takes time to start up	
If the Printer Makes a Strange Sound Messages advising to check the maintenance cartridge are not cleared	
The printer consumes a lot of ink	
Ink Level Detection	
Error Message 6	557
Error Messages	658
	0.00

This paper cannot be used	663
Roll printing is selected.	
Roll printing is selected, but sheets are loaded.	
The roll is empty.	
Sheet printing is selected.	
Regular printing is selected, but a roll is loaded.	
Paper jam	
Paper is crooked.	
Paper not aligned with right guide.	
Cannot detect papr	
Leading edge detection error.	
Paper cutting failed.	
End of paper feed.	
Rel lever is in wrong position.	
Borderless printng not possible.	
Paper position not suitable for borderless printing.	
Roll paper is not securely in contact with roll holder.	
Messages regarding ink	669
Ink insufficient	. 669
No ink left	669
Remaining level of the ink cannot be correctly detected. Check ink tank.	
Cannot detect ink level correctly. Close tank cover	
Close Ink Tank Cover	
Ink tank is empty	. 670
Not much ink is left	. 670
Check if ink tank is set, and its color and direction	. 670
The following ink tanks cannot be recognized.	
Wrong ink tank.	670
	. 070
Do not pull out ink tank.	
Do not pull out ink tank.	. 670
Do not pull out ink tank Messages regarding printing or adjustment	. 670 671
Do not pull out ink tank. Messages regarding printing or adjustment Cannot adjust paper feed.	. 670 671 671
Do not pull out ink tank. Messages regarding printing or adjustment Cannot adjust paper feed. Check printed document.	. 670 671 671
Do not pull out ink tank. Messages regarding printing or adjustment Cannot adjust paper feed.	. 670 671 671
Do not pull out ink tank. Messages regarding printing or adjustment Cannot adjust paper feed. Check printed document.	. 670 671 671 671 672
Do not pull out ink tank. Messages regarding printing or adjustment Cannot adjust paper feed. Check printed document. Messages regarding printheads	. 670 671 671 671 672 672
Do not pull out ink tank. Messages regarding printing or adjustment Cannot adjust paper feed. Check printed document. Messages regarding printheads Cannot adjust printhead.	. 670 671 671 671 672 672 . 672
Do not pull out ink tank. Messages regarding printing or adjustment Cannot adjust paper feed. Check printed document. Messages regarding printheads Cannot adjust printhead. Wrong printhead.	. 670 671 671 671 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672
Do not pull out ink tank. Messages regarding printing or adjustment Cannot adjust paper feed. Check printed document. Messages regarding printheads Cannot adjust printhead. Wrong printhead. Printhead error	. 670 671 671 671 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672
Do not pull out ink tank. Messages regarding printing or adjustment Cannot adjust paper feed. Check printed document. Messages regarding printheads Cannot adjust printhead. Wrong printhead. Printhead error Cannot recognize print head. Execute printhead cleaning.	. 670 671 671 671 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 673
Do not pull out ink tank. Messages regarding printing or adjustment Cannot adjust paper feed. Check printed document. Messages regarding printheads Cannot adjust printhead. Wrong printhead. Printhead error Cannot recognize print head. Execute printhead cleaning. Messages regarding the maintenance cartridge	. 670 671 671 671 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 673 674
Do not pull out ink tank	. 670 671 . 671 . 671 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 673 674 . 674
Do not pull out ink tank. Messages regarding printing or adjustment Cannot adjust paper feed. Check printed document. Messages regarding printheads Cannot adjust printhead. Wrong printhead. Printhead error Cannot recognize print head. Execute printhead cleaning. Messages regarding the maintenance cartridge Insert the maintenance cartridge. Wrong maintenance cartridge.	. 670 671 . 671 . 671 . 671 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 673 674 . 674
Do not pull out ink tank. Messages regarding printing or adjustment Cannot adjust paper feed. Check printed document. Messages regarding printheads Cannot adjust printhead. Wrong printhead. Printhead error Cannot recognize print head. Execute printhead cleaning. Messages regarding the maintenance cartridge Insert the maintenance cartridge. Wrong maintenance cartridge. Maint. cart. The level is low	. 670 671 . 671 . 671 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 673 674 . 674 . 674
Do not pull out ink tank	. 670 671 . 671 . 671 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 673 674 . 674 . 674 . 674 . 674
Do not pull out ink tank. Messages regarding printing or adjustment Cannot adjust paper feed. Check printed document. Messages regarding printheads Cannot adjust printhead. Wrong printhead. Printhead error Cannot recognize print head. Execute printhead cleaning. Messages regarding the maintenance cartridge Insert the maintenance cartridge. Wrong maintenance cartridge. Maint. cart. The level is low No Maintenance Cartridge capacity. Maintenance cartridge full.	. 670 671 . 671 . 671 . 671 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 673 674 . 674 . 674 . 674 . 674 . 674
Do not pull out ink tank	. 670 671 . 671 . 671 . 671 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 673 674 . 674 . 674 . 674 . 674 . 674
Do not pull out ink tank. Messages regarding printing or adjustment Cannot adjust paper feed. Check printed document. Messages regarding printheads Cannot adjust printhead. Wrong printhead. Printhead error Cannot recognize print head. Execute printhead cleaning. Messages regarding the maintenance cartridge Insert the maintenance cartridge. Wrong maintenance cartridge. Maint. cart. The level is low No Maintenance Cartridge capacity. Maintenance cartridge full.	. 670 671 . 671 . 671 . 671 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 673 674 . 674 . 674 . 674 . 674 . 674
Do not pull out ink tank. Messages regarding printing or adjustment Cannot adjust paper feed. Check printed document. Messages regarding printheads Cannot adjust printhead. Wrong printhead. Printhead error Cannot recognize print head. Execute printhead cleaning. Messages regarding the maintenance cartridge Insert the maintenance cartridge. Wrong maintenance cartridge. Wrong maintenance cartridge. Maint. cart. The level is low No Maintenance cartridge capacity. Maintenance cartridge problem. Messages regarding the hard disk	. 670 671 . 671 . 671 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 674 . 674 . 674 . 674 . 674 . 674 . 674 . 674
Do not pull out ink tank	. 670 671 . 671 . 671 . 671 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 673 674 . 674 . 674 . 674 . 674 . 674 . 675 . 675
Do not pull out ink tank. Messages regarding printing or adjustment Cannot adjust paper feed. Check printed document. Messages regarding printheads Cannot adjust printhead. Wrong printhead. Printhead error Cannot recognize print head. Execute printhead cleaning. Messages regarding the maintenance cartridge Insert the maintenance cartridge. Wrong maintenance cartridge. Maint. cart. The level is low No Maintenance Cartridge capacity. Maintenance cartridge full. Maintenance cartridge problem. Messages regarding the hard disk Hard disk error. File read error.	. 670 671 . 671 . 671 . 671 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 673 674 . 674 . 674 . 674 . 674 . 674 . 675 . 675 . 675
Do not pull out ink tank. Messages regarding printing or adjustment Cannot adjust paper feed. Check printed document. Messages regarding printheads Cannot adjust printhead. Wrong printhead. Printhead error . Cannot recognize print head. Execute printhead cleaning. Messages regarding the maintenance cartridge Insert the maintenance cartridge. Wrong maintenance cartridge. Wrong maintenance cartridge. Maint. cart. The level is low . No Maintenance Cartridge capacity. Maintenance cartridge full. Maintenance cartridge problem. Messages regarding the hard disk Hard disk error. File read error. The mail box is full.	. 670 671 . 671 . 671 . 671 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 672 . 673 674 . 674 . 674 . 674 . 674 . 674 . 675 . 675 . 675 . 675
Do not pull out ink tank. Messages regarding printing or adjustment Cannot adjust paper feed. Check printed document. Messages regarding printheads Cannot adjust printhead. Wrong printhead. Printhead error Cannot recognize print head. Execute printhead cleaning. Messages regarding the maintenance cartridge Insert the maintenance cartridge. Wrong maintenance cartridge. Wrong maintenance cartridge. Maint. cart. The level is low No Maintenance Cartridge capacity. Maintenance cartridge full. Maintenance cartridge problem. Messages regarding the hard disk Hard disk error. File read error. The mail box is full. Mail box full. Now printing without saving data.	. 670 671 . 671 . 671 . 671 . 672 . 674 . 674 . 674 . 674 . 674 . 674 . 675 . 675 . 675 . 675
Do not pull out ink tank. Messages regarding printing or adjustment Cannot adjust paper feed. Check printed document. Messages regarding printheads Cannot adjust printhead. Wrong printhead. Printhead error . Cannot recognize print head. Execute printhead cleaning. Messages regarding the maintenance cartridge Insert the maintenance cartridge. Wrong maintenance cartridge. Wrong maintenance cartridge. Maint. cart. The level is low No Maintenance Cartridge capacity. Maintenance cartridge full. Maintenance cartridge problem. Messages regarding the hard disk Hard disk error. File read error. The mail box is full.	. 670 671 . 671 . 671 . 671 . 672 . 674 . 674 . 674 . 674 . 674 . 674 . 674 . 675 . 675 . 675 . 675 . 675 . 675 . 675

Messages regarding HP-GL/2	677
This type of paper is not compatible with HP-GL/2.	. 677
GL2: Wxxxx The memory is full. (xxxx is 0501, 0903, or 0904)	
GL2: W0502 The parameter is out of range	. 677
GL2: W0504 This command is not supported.	. 677
Other Messages	678
GARO Wxxxx (x represents a number)	. 678
ERROR Exxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number)	. 678
Hardware error. xxxxxxxxxxxx (x represents a letter or number)	. 678
Top cover is open	. 679
Prepare for parts replacement.	
Parts replacement time has passed.	. 679
Unknown file	
Multi-sensor error	
Error in cutter position.	. 679

Specifications

Error Message

Specifications

Appendix

Specifications	681
Printer Specifications	682
Specifications Print Area	(0.1

685

Appendix

Safety Precautions	686
Safety Precautions Legal Notices	
Manuals for this printer	690
Manuals for this printer About This User Manual	
Disposal of the product	692
WEEE Directive	692

iPF685

User's Guide

Basic Printing Workflow

Printing procedure	16
Canceling print jobs	25
Pausing Printing	29

Enhanced Printing Options	31
Windows Software	157
Mac OS Software	277
Handling and Use of Paper	361
Control Panel	437
Printer Parts	477
Network Setting	491
Print Job Management	511
Adjustments for Better Print Quality	573
Maintenance and Consumables	589
Troubleshooting	627
Error Message	657
Specifications	681
Appendix	685

Printing procedure

Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets	
Turning the Printer On and Off	17
Loading and Printing on Rolls	
Loading and Printing on Sheets	
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows)	
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS)	
Printing in Windows	23
Printing from Mac OS	

Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets

The printer supports both rolls and sheets.

This section introduces the main features of each, as well as the main printing methods available. Select rolls or sheets to suit your particular printing application.



- Note A variety of other ways to print are available besides those introduced here. For details, see "Enhanced Printing Options." →P31

Roll printing

Media in spooled rolls is generally called Roll Media. Rolls are loaded on the Roll Holder, which are in turn loaded in the printer.

Rolls can be used to print large photos or create posters or banners that cannot be printed on regular sheets.

- Large-format printing Easily print vertical or horizontal banners from familiar applications such as Microsoft Office applications. (See "Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing).") (>P97)
- Borderless printing

Print without a margin (border) around posters or photos. (See "Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size.") →P.87 (See "Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width.") →P.90 (See "Borderless Printing at Actual Size.") →P.80

- Banner printing You can print multiple pages as a single continuous image, without margins between pages. (See "Printing Multiple Pages Continuously.") →P.114
- 90-degree rotation before printing Originals in portrait orientation are rotated 90 degrees when possible to use paper more efficiently. (See "Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees.") →P.135
- Enlarged/reduced printing
 You can freely adjust the size of originals by enlarging or reducing originals before printing.
 (See "Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size.") → P65
 (See "Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width.") → P67
 (See "Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value.") → P71
- Free Layout (Windows) and imagePROGRAF Free Layout (Mac OS) Print multiple documents from multiple applications (such as word-processing programs, spreadsheet programs, and so on) next to each other.
 (See "Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other.") →P.110

16

Basic Printing Workflow

1

Sheet printing

Sheets refer to individual sheets of paper. Insert the sheet between the Platen and the Paper Retainer.

- Enlarged/reduced printing
 You can freely adjust the size of originals by enlarging or reducing originals before printing.
 (See "Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size.") → P.65
 (See "Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value.") → P.71
- Free Layout (Windows) and imagePROGRAF Free Layout (Mac OS) Print multiple documents from multiple applications (such as word-processing programs, spreadsheet programs, and so on) next to each other.
 (See "Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other.") →P.110

Turning the Printer On and Off

Turning the printer on

Press the **Power** button to turn on the printer.
 The printer will now start up.
 After the Display Screen shows the Canon logo, "**Starting up... Please wait.**" is displayed.



2 The **Power Lamp** is lit when the printer finishes starting up, and the printer is now in **Standby**.

The printer will not go into **Standby** in the following situations. Take the appropriate action.





- The Top Cover is open Close the Top Cover.
- The Ink Tank Cover is open Close the Ink Tank Cover.
- The Printhead is not installed see "Replacing the Printhead." →P.601

Screen

Turning the printer off

Important

No paper is loaded

Sheets.") → P.21

An Ink Tank is not installed

see "Replacing Ink Tanks." → P.590

see "Error Messages." → P.658

• If "ERROR" is shown on the Display Screen



• Never disconnect the printer's power supply or unplug it during a print job. This may damage the printer.

Load paper. (See "Loading and Printing on Rolls.") I (See "Loading and Printing on

The Power Lamp and Message Lamp are not lit (even once), and nothing appears on the Display

Make sure the printer is plugged in correctly. Check the connection at the plug and electrical outlet.

Make sure no print jobs are in progress. If the **Message Lamp** is flashing, check the message on the Display Screen and take action as necessary. (See "Error Messages.") \rightarrow P658



If the **Data Lamp** is flashing, the printer is receiving a print job. Turn off the printer only after printing is finished.





2 Hold down the **Power** button for more than a second.

After "**Shut Down.. Please Wait..**" is shown on the Display Screen, the printer shuts off.

Loading and Printing on Rolls

Holder to Rolls.") → P.372

These are the basic steps for loading and printing on rolls. Follow these steps to load and print on rolls.



2

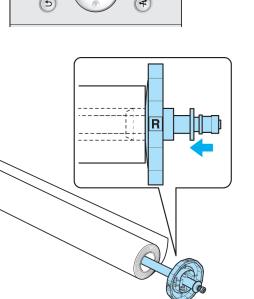
For details on supported sizes and types of rolls, see Paper Sizes or the Paper Reference Guide. (See "Paper Sizes.") →P.362 (See "Types of Paper.") →P.362

• If you prefer to wait for the ink to dry after printing and simply eject the document, you can deactivate automatic cutting and cut the paper manually. (See "Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls.") → P388

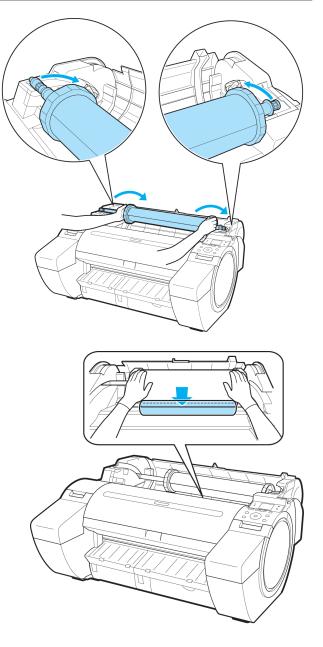
Turn the printer on. (See "Turning the Printer On and Off.") →P.17

Load the roll on the Roll Holder. (See "Attaching the Roll





Load the roll in the printer. (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P.375



4 Select the type of paper. (See "Changing the Type of Paper.") →P.378



• If no barcode has been printed on the roll and you have set ManageRemainRoll to On, specify the roll length after the type of paper. (See "Specifying the Paper Length.") →P.380

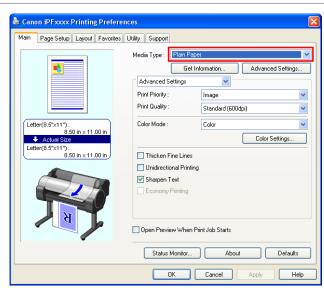
5 Complete settings in the printer driver for the type of paper and other details.

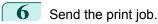
• Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) →P.160

• Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS) → P.279

20

Note





- Printing in Windows → P.23
- Printing from Mac OS → P.23

The printer now starts printing the print job.

Loading and Printing on Sheets

These are the basic steps for loading sheets and then printing. Follow the steps below to load and print on sheets.



For details on supported types and sizes of paper, see Paper Sizes or the Paper Reference Guide. (See "Paper Sizes.") → P.362 (See "Types of Paper.") → P.362

Turn the printer on. (See "Turning the Printer On and Off.") →P.17



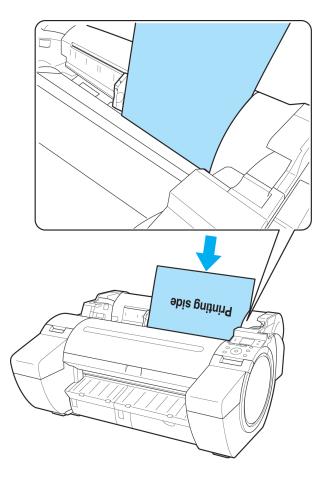
Complete settings in the printer driver for the type of paper and other details.

- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) → P.160
- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS) → P.279

Main	Page Setup	Layout Favorite	s Utility Support		
			Media Type : Plain F	^D aper	
			G	et Information	Advanced Settings
			Advanced Settings	~	
			Print Priority :	Image	~
			Print Quality :	Standard (600d	pi) 🗸 🗸
Lett	ter(8.5"×11"):		Color Mode :	Color	~
	8.s Actual Size	i0 in x 11.00 in			Color Settings
Let	ter(8.5"x11") : 8.5	i0 in x 11.00 in	Thicken Fine Line		
	S and a second		Sharpen Text		
			Open Preview Whe	en Print Job Starts	
			Status Monitor	About	Defaults

- **3** Send the print job.
 - Printing in Windows →P.23
 - Printing from Mac OS → P.23
 - Load the sheet. (See "Loading Sheets in the Printer.") →P.394

The printer now starts printing the print job.



Printing in Windows

Print from the application menu.



iPF685

 We recommend exiting unnecessary applications before printing. Running several applications while printing may interrupt the transfer of print data and affect printing quality.

In the source application, select **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.

After confirming that the printer is selected in the dialog box, click **Print** or **OK** to start printing.

- The appearance of the dialog box varies depending on
- the software application. In most cases, the dialog box Note
 - includes basic printing options and enables you to choose the printer, specify the range of pages, number of copies, and so on.
 - Example: Print dialog box displayed by the application

General Options Select Printer Add Printer Fax Salect Print office Fax Status: Ready Location: Oomment: Page Range @ Al Number of copies: 1
Add Printer Fax Canon IPExcox Status: Ready Print to the Preferences Location: Domment: Find Printer Page Range
Status: Ready Print to file Preferences Location: Comment: Find Printer Page Range
Fig Canon IPP,xxxx Status: Ready Loostion: Find Printer Oomment: Find Printer
Status: Ready Print to the Preferences Location: Comment: Find Printer Page Range
Loostion: Comment: Page Range
Loostion: Comment: Page Range
Page Range
All Number of conies: 1
C
Selection Ourrent Page
Pages: 1 Collate
Enter either a single page number or a single page range. For example, 5-12
Print Cancel Apply

 If another printer is selected, select the printer you want to use under Select Printer or in the dialog box displayed after clicking Printer.

Settings for many printing methods (including enlarged or reduced printing, borderless printing, and so on) are displayed in the printer driver dialog box. There are two ways to access the printer driver dialog box, as follows.

- From the application (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications .") →P.164
- From the operating system menu (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu .") →P166

Printing from Mac OS

Print from the application menu after registering the printer.



 We recommend exiting unnecessary applications before printing. Running several applications while printing may interrupt the transfer of print data and affect printing quality.

Registering the printer

The printer needs to be registered in Print & Scan (identified as Printers & Scanners or Print & Fax in other versions of Mac OS X) in System Preferences before printing.

For instructions on registering the printer, see "Configuring the Printer Driver Destination ." (>P.500)



During this setup process, the printer will not be listed among available printers if it is off or disconnected.

1

Printing from the application software

In the application software, select **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.



• This dialog box includes basic printing options and enables you to choose the printer, specify the range of pages, number of copies, and so on.

2 Select the printer in the **Printer** list.

Printer	iPFxxxx	\$	
Presets:	Default Settings	\$	
Copies:	1		
Pages:	All From: 1	to: 1	
Paper Size:	ISO A4	\$ 210 by 297 mm	1
Orientation:			

3 Click I

Click **Print** to start printing.

As shown in the following illustration, you can switch to other panes in this dialog box to complete settings for various methods of printing, including enlarged and reduced printing, borderless printing, and so on.

Printer: iPFxxxx \$	
Presets: Default Settings \$	
Copies: 1	
Pages: • All From: 1 to: 1	
Paper Size: ISO A4 ‡ 210 by 297 mm	
Orientation:	
 ✓ Preview Layout Color Matching Scale ⊙ Scale ⊙ Scale Main Page Setup Copies a Additional Settings 	
Cancel	

Canceling print jobs

Canceling Print Jobs from the Control Panel	25
Canceling Print Jobs from Windows	
Canceling Print Jobs from Mac OS	26

Canceling Print Jobs from the Control Panel

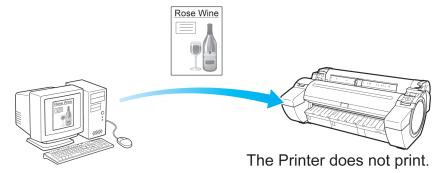
To cancel printing or reception of print jobs, press the **Stop** button on the Control Panel.



When you press the **Stop** button during printing, printer operation varies depending on the current status.

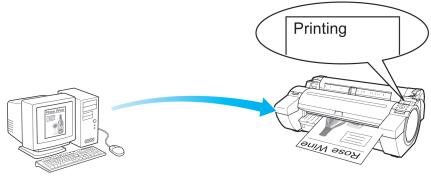
• If you press the Stop button before printing starts

Pressing the **Stop** button before printing starts will display a confirmation message. To cancel the print job, select **Yes**.



• If you press the **Stop** button during printing

Pressing the **Stop** button during printing will display a confirmation message. To cancel the print job immediately, select **Yes**.



The printer stops immediately.

Canceling Print Jobs from Windows

In the printer window, you can cancel jobs that are being sent to the printer.

Using **imagePROGRAF Status Monitor**, you can cancel print jobs that have already been received by the printer or that are currently being printed.



Click the printer icon in the taskbar to display the printer window.

- Note
- You can proceed from the folder for configuring the printer settings in the OS you are using.
 For example, in Windows 7, open the **Devices and Printers** window from the **start** menu and double-click the printer icon.
- 2 Right-click the job to cancel and select Cancel.

Printer Docu	iment View Help					
Document Na	ame	Status	Owner	Pages	Size	Sul
sample.tx	Pause Restart	Printing	XXXXXXXXX	XX	xx.x MB/xx.x MB	8:5
[Cancel					
<	Properties					3

- 3 If the job to cancel is not shown in the printer window (that is, if the print data has already been received by the printer), double-click the taskbar icon to display **imagePROGRAF Status Monitor**.
- 4 On the **Printer Status** sheet, click **Cancel Job**.

🥵 Canon iPFxxxx			
Option Accounting Hel	p		
😥 Printer Status 📄	· · · · · ·) Information 🛛 👪 Maintena	ince 🛛 🍪 Support 📔
F		hinting low printing xxxx1.txt.	
Ink Levels :	Left	F	Right
	(C) (M) (Y)		(MBK) (MBK) (BK)
Maintenance cartridge	free space :		80%
Job Information Owner: Document Name: Page 1 time remaining	xxxxxxxx xxxx1.txt 100:00:20		Cancel Job
Feed Information :			
Source	Size	Туре	Paper Remaining
Manual feed tray	Letter (8.5"x11")	Plain Paper	S Loaded
Roll Paper 1	17-in. Roll (431.8m	m) Plain Paper	🛄 100.0 m / 328 ft 1 in



The screen may differ slightly depending on the model you are using.

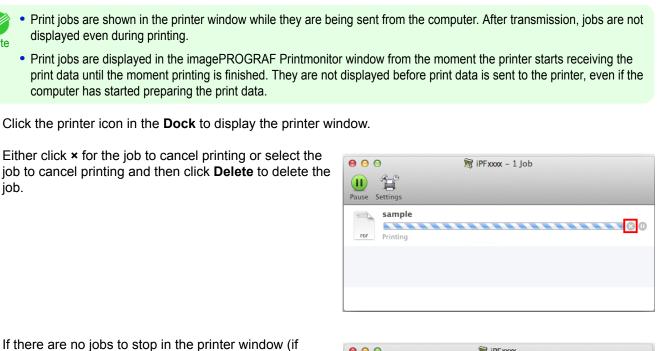
Canceling Print Jobs from Mac OS

In the printer window, you can cancel jobs that are being sent to the printer. Otherwise, you can cancel jobs from imagePROGRAF Printmonitor if they have been received by the printer or are currently being printed. 2

4

Note

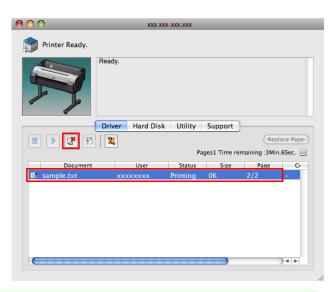
job.



3 If there are no jobs to stop in the printer window (if sending the print data to the printer has finished), either click Settings, Utility, and then Open Printer Utility, or click Utility to open the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.

● ● <u>●</u>	iPF xxxx	
Pause Settings		

Select the print job to cancel and click to delete the print job.





The screen may differ slightly depending on the model you are using.

The job sent to the printer is canceled.

Basic Printing Workflow

5 Exit imagePROGRAF Printmonitor. In the printer window, click **Resume** or **Resume Printer**.



• Always follow these steps if you cancel print jobs from imagePROGRAF Printmonitor. If you do not restart job processing, the next job cannot be printed.

Pausing Printing

Pausing Printing

During printing, if you set **Pause Print** in the Control Panel menu to **On**, printing is stopped at that point and the printer enters a state in which printing is paused. (See "Control Panel Display.") **Printing** from the job queue is not possible in this state.

To restore normal operation after this state, set Pause Print to Off.

- In the following cases, the status is cleared even if you do not set **Pause Print** to **Off**, and printing from the job queue resumes.
 - When paper is advanced
 - When you execute Chg. Paper Type in the Paper Menu
 - During printing, on the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press
 ✓ or ▶ to select the Job tab (......).



• If the Tab Selection screen is not displayed, press the Menu button.

2 Press the **OK** button. The **Job Menu** is displayed.

Note

- 3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Pause Print**, and then press the **OK** button.
- 4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On** or **Off**, and then press the **OK** button.

Memo

15

iPF685

User's Guide

Basic Printing Workflow

Enhanced Printing Options

Choosing Paper for Printing	
Printing Photos and Office Documents	
Printing CAD Drawings	43
Adjusting Images	51
Printing enlargements or reductions	65
Printing at full size	76
Borderless Printing	87
Printing banners or at other non-standard sizes	
Tiling and multiple pages per sheet	110
Centering originals	126
Conserving roll paper	135
Checking Images Before Printing	144
Other useful settings	145

Windows Software	157
Mac OS Software	277
Handling and Use of Paper	361
Control Panel	437
Printer Parts	477
Network Setting	491
Print Job Management	511
Adjustments for Better Print Quality	573
Maintenance and Consumables	589
Troubleshooting	627
Error Message	657
Specifications	681
Appendix	685

imagePROGRAF

Choosing Paper for Printing

Choosing a Paper for Printing	
 Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver	160

Choosing a Paper for Printing

Select the appropriate media type from the printer control panel or printer driver to match the paper loaded in the printer. The appropriate media type differs between the case of genuine Canon paper or Canon feed confirmed paper and the case of paper other than Canon feed confirmed paper. Select the media type by following the description below. For information on how to select the media type in the printer control panel, see Changing the Type of Paper **P378**, and for information on how to select the media type in the printer driver, see Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) **PR160** or Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS) **PR279**.



 If you use paper other than Canon feed confirmed paper, Canon provides absolutely no guarantees regarding print quality or paper feed properties.

- Genuine Canon paper and Canon feed confirmed paper are detailed in Paper Reference Guide.
- An error message is displayed on the printer Control Panel if the media type specified in the printer driver does not match the media type specified in the printer. Although you can print under these conditions, the printing results may not be suitable.

Genuine Canon paper or Canon feed confirmed paper

For genuine Canon paper or Canon feed confirmed paper, select the settings that are optimized for that type of paper. For more information on the settings for genuine Canon paper or Canon feed confirmed paper, see "Displaying the Paper Reference Guide." Playing the Paper Reference Guide." Player

Paper other than Canon feed confirmed paper

For paper other than Canon feed confirmed paper, printing can be performed easily by selecting the existing settings provided by the printer control panel or printer driver. For details, see "Using Paper Other Than Genuine Paper and feed confirmed Paper." (>P.364)

Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver

If you replace the paper, complete the printer driver settings for the paper type and size. For instructions on configuring paper settings in the printer driver, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) → P.160
- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS) → P.279

Printing Photos and Office Documents

Printing Photos and Images Printing Photos and Images (Windows) Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS)	33
Printing Office Documents Printing Office Documents (Windows) Printing Office Documents (Mac OS)	37
Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals	41

Printing Photos and Images

By selecting the following **Print Target** from **Easy Settings** of the printer driver, you can easily configure the printing of illustrations and photos.

	Print Target	Description
SRGB	Photo (Color)	Print photographic images from digital cameras with an optimal setting.
	Poster	An optimal setting for posters. Print in vivid colors with impact and high saturation.
	Faithful Color Reproduction	Print with minimum color difference. Suitable for printing scanner images and when print results are too vivid.

• Depending on the Media Type setting, some Print Target options may not be available.

Important

• You can check the settings values for each print target by clicking View Settings.

Note • You can also fine-tune these values as needed. (Advanced Settings) For details on Advanced Settings, see "Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing." → P.58

For instructions on printing photos and images, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Photos and Images (Windows) → P.33
- Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS) → P.35

Printing Photos and Images (Windows)

This topic describes how to print photos based on the following example.

- · Document: Photo image from a digital camera
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Canon Premium Glossy Paper 2 280
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

Choose **Print** in the application menu.

- 2 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications .") → P.164
- **3** Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

Canon iPFxxx Printing Preference Main Page Setup Layout Favorites	
So A4: 2100 mm x 2970 mm 4 Actual Size So A4: So A4:	Media Type : Plain Paper Get Information C Advanced Settings Easy Settings Print Target : Print Target : Poster CAD (Color Line Drawing.) CAD (Color Line Drawing.) Perspective, GIS Proto (Color)
210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	Print Quality: Standard (6000pi) Vitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of test, photographs and graphics. G View Settings
N N N	Copen Preview When Print Job Starts M S Status Monitor About Defaults
	OK Cancel Apply Help

4 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click **Canon Premium Glossy Paper 2 280**.

In the **A Media Type**, choose the type of paper used for printing, such as **Glossy Paper**, **Canon Coated Paper**, and so on. Make sure the paper you select is loaded in the printer.



5 After confirming that D Easy Settings is selected, click Photo (Color) in the E Print Target list.

• You can check the settings values selected in the **E Print Target** list by clicking **G View Settings**. Note

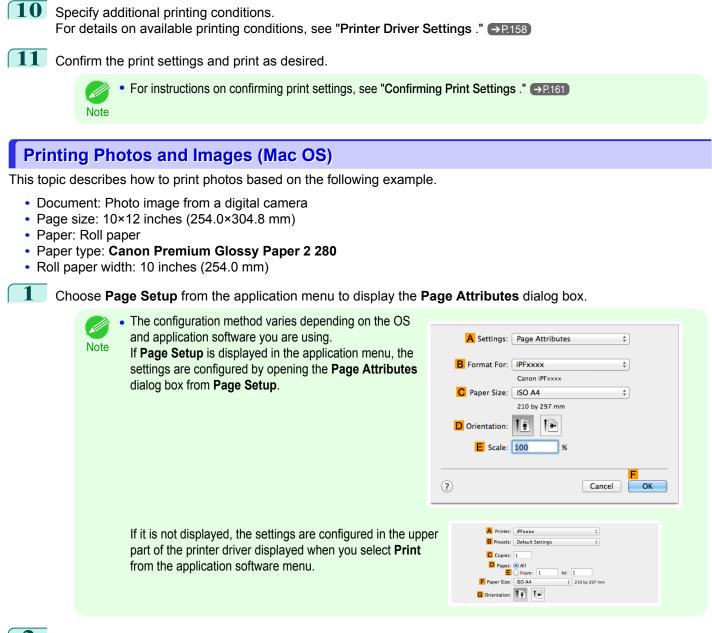
6 Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.

🖶 Canon iPFxxx Printing Prefere	nces	×
Main Page Setup Layout Favorit	es Utility Support	
	🗛 📃 Page Size :	ISO A4
	C Enlarged/Reduced Print	B Bordgriess Printing ting
	D () Fit Paper Size	
	E O Fit Roll Paper Widt	
(ISO A4 :	F 🔘 Scaling	Auto 🐳 % (5 - 600)
210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	G 🚇 Paper Size :	Match Page Size 🔹
ISO A4 :	H Orientation	
210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	📘 🗾 💿 Portr	rait <mark>J</mark> 🚺 🔿 Landscape
	K 📶 🗖 Rotate Page 90 d	legrees (Conserve Paper)
	Paper Source :	Roll Paper 💌
в	📕 Roll Paper Width :	36-in. Roll (914.4mm) 🔹
	_	Roll Paper Options
	Output Method	O Size Options Defaults
1	ОК	Cancel Apply Help

In the A Page Size list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click 10"x12".

Select and click a roll paper in the **Paper Source** list.

Select the width of the loaded roll in the MRoll Paper Width list—in this case, 10-in. Roll (254.0mm).



2 Select the printer in the **B** Format for list.

- 3 In the **C Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **10"x12"**.
- 4 Click **FOK** to close the dialog box.
- 5 Choose **Print** in the application menu.

Access the Main pane. 6

Main	▲ ▼	
A Media Type : Pl	ain Paper 🕴	
	C Set	
D Easy Settin	ngs Advanced Settings	
E Print Target :		
	Default Settings Poster CAD (Color Line Drawing) CAD (B/W Line Drawing) Perspective, GIS	
F Print Quality :	Standard(600dpi) ‡	
Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.		
	G View set.	
O Print Preview		
	Cancel Print	

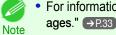
iPF685

In the A Media Type list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Canon Premium Glossy Paper 2 280.

Make sure the paper you select is loaded in the printer.

The types of paper indicated in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) are updated when you install the Media Configuration Tool from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change pa-Note per information by using the Media Configuration Tool. For details, see "Media Configuration Tool (Mac OS)." → P.420

8 After confirming that D Easy Settings is selected, click Photo (Color) in the E Print Target list.



For information on settings optimized for printing photos and images, see "Printing Photos and Images." → P.33

You can check the settings values selected in the E Print Target list by clicking G View set.

9 Make your selection in the **F** Print Quality list.

10 Access the **Page Setup** pane.

Page Setup \$					
A	Paper	Source :	Roll Paper		\$
В	Roll W	idth :	24 in. (609.6mm)	1	\$
	🔰 🗹 Er	nlarged/Reduc	ed Printing		
	F 💿	Fit Roll Paper	Width		
	GO	Scaling :	100 🗘 %	(5 - 600)	
H	l 🗌 Bo	orderless Print	ing		
J	Ľ	Print Cent	ered		
K		No Spaces	at Top or Bottom		
L	*	Rotate Page 90 degrees			
N		Free Layou	ıt		
				Cancel	M Print

Enhanced Printing Options

11 Select and click a roll paper in the **A Paper Source** list.

12 Select the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer for **B** Roll Width. In this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)** is selected.

- **13** Specify additional printing conditions. For details on available printing conditions, see "Printer Driver Settings ." → P.278
- **14** Confirm the print settings, and then click **M** Print to start printing.

• For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings ." → P.281

Printing Office Documents

Note

By selecting **Office Document** from **Easy Settings** of the printer driver, you can easily configure settings for printing office documents.

Print Target	Description
Office Document	Setting optimized for printing general office documents such as materials for distribution so that they can be viewed easily.

• You can check the settings values for each print target by clicking View Settings.

You can also fine-tune these values as needed. (Advanced Settings)
 For details on Advanced Settings, see "Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing."
 P58

Printing Office Documents (Windows)

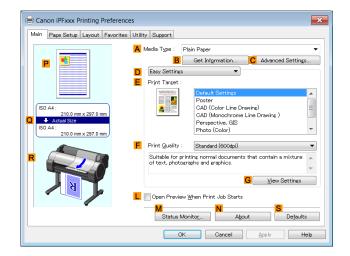
This topic describes how to print office documents based on the following example.

- Document: Office document created using word-processing or spreadsheet programs
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Sheets

Note

Paper type: Plain Paper

- Paper size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Choose **Print** in the application menu.
- 2 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications .") →P164
- **3** Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4 In the A Media Type list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

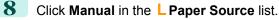
5 After confirming that D Easy Settings is selected, click Office Document in the E Print Target list.

• You can check the settings values selected in the E Print Target list by clicking G View Settings. Note

6 Click the Page Setup tab to display the Page Setup sheet.

Main	non iPFxxx F Page Setup				y Support	
				A	Page Size :	ISO A4
				С	Enlagged/Reduced Printi	
					D @ Fit Paper Size	
					E O Fit Roll Paper Width	
			_		F 🔘 Scaling	Auto 🐳 % (5 - 600)
ISC	210.0 mr	n x 297.0 n	nm	G	🗛 Paper S <u>i</u> ze :	Match Page Size 💌
150	Actual Size			н	Orientation	
C		n x 297.0 r	nm	•	I A Portra	it J 🔥 Landscape
	5	0		K		grees (Conserve Paper)
			r	LF	Paper So <u>u</u> rce :	Roll Paper 💌
	К			M	Roll Paper Width :	36-in. Roll (914.4mm) 🔹
	 		·			Roll Paper Options
		¥		-	P Output Methog	Size Options
					ОК	Dancel Apply Help

7 In the A Page Size list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click ISO A4.



9

38

Specify additional printing conditions. For details on available printing conditions, see **"Printer Driver Settings** ." (→P.158) 1

10 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings ." →P.161

Printing Office Documents (Mac OS)

This topic describes how to print office documents based on the following example.

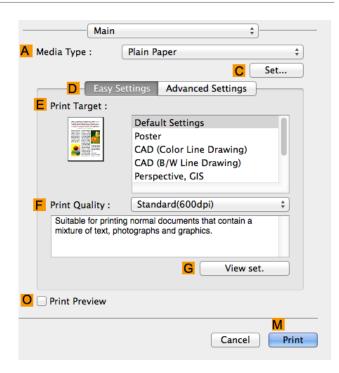
- · Document: Office document created using word-processing or spreadsheet programs
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])

Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

• The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using. If Page Setup is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the Page Attributes dialog box from Page Setup .	A Settings: Page Attributes ‡ B Format For: IPFxxxx ‡ Canon IPFxxxx ‡ Canon IPFxxxx ‡ 210 by 297 mm ‡ Orientation: Image: Image
If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upp part of the printer driver displayed when you select Print from the application software menu.	Corientation:

- 2 Select the printer in the **B** Format for list.
- 3 In the C Paper Size list, click the size of the original. In this case, click ISO A4 for Paper Tray (Large Margins).
- 4 Click **FOK** to close the dialog box.
- 5 Choose **Print** in the application menu.

6 Access the Main pane.



7 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

8 After confirming that D Easy Settings is selected, click Office Document in the E Print Target list.

• You can check the settings values selected in the E Print Target list by clicking G View set. Note

- 9 Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.
- **10** Access the **Page Setup** pane.

Page Set	tup \$		
A Paper Source :	Roll Paper 🗧		
B Roll Width :	24 in. (609.6mm) ‡		
D Senlarged/Reduce	ed Printing		
F 💽 Fit Roll Paper W	Vidth		
G OScaling :	100 🗘 % (5 - 600)		
📙 🗌 Borderless Printi	ng		
J 🛛 Print Centered			
K			
📙 🗐 🗌 Rotate Page 90 degrees			
N 🗾 🗆 Free Layour	t		
	Cancel Print		

12

40

Click Manual in the A Paper Source list.

Specify additional printing conditions. For details on available printing conditions, see "Printer Driver Settings ." →P.278 **13** Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings ." → P.281

Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals

You can print a variety of source documents from word-processing or spreadsheet programs or screen shots from web browsers after composing an original with them using PosterArtist.

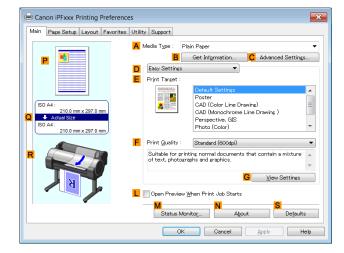
This topic describes how to use PosterArtist to compose originals from multiple applications, creating a poster layout for printing.

1 Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows).") →P.164



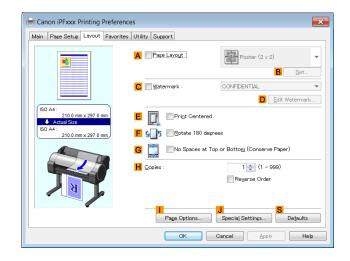
Make sure the Main sheet is displayed.



4

Click the Layout tab to display the Layout sheet.

5 Select the A Page Layout check box.

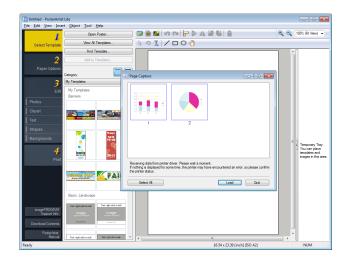


6 Click in the **Edit Using PosterArtist** in the **A Page Layout** list.



• This function cannot be used with a 64-bit version OS.

7 When you attempt to print, PosterArtist starts up and the PageCapture window is displayed. (At this point, the document will not be printed yet.)



8 Choose the page to load in PosterArtist.

Edit and rearrange the image in the PosterArtist window as desired. Without closing the PosterArtist window, repeat steps 1-8 to arrange originals from multiple applications on the same page.



• For details on how to edit and sort images, refer to the PosterArtist Manual.

10 Print from the PosterArtist menu.

9

Printing CAD Drawings

Printing CAD Drawings Printing Line Drawings and Text Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows) Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS)	
Printing from AutoCAD	47
Specifying Colors and Printing CAD Drawings Specifying Colors and Printing CAD Drawings (Windows)	
HP-GL/2 Printing	50

Printing CAD Drawings

Using this printer, you can print fine lines and text clearly and sharply. It's easy to produce highly precise drawings from CAD applications.

For instructions on CAD printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows) → P.44
- Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS) → P.45

Printing	Line	Drawings	and	Text
		Dramingo	und	IOAL

Printing is easy when you simply choose the type of original to print.

Easy Settings

Simply choose the printing application in the list for optimal printing results.

Print Target

Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed.

Print targets for line drawings and text

	Print Target	Description
	CAD (Color Line Drawing)	Settings optimized to print intricate lines in CAD drawings clearly.
	CAD (Monochrome Line Drawing)	Settings optimized to print black lines in CAD drawings clearly.
S.	Perspective, GIS	Settings optimized for printing 3D CAD drawings, perspective drawings, and maps, including GIS maps.



• You can check the settings values for each print target by clicking **View Settings**.

You can also fine-tune these values as needed. (Advanced Settings)
 For details on Advanced Settings, see "Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing."
 P.58

Print Quality

Choose the print quality.

The printing mode is determined by a combination of the print quality and resolution.

Print Quality	Description
Highest	A setting for printing at the highest resolution when quality is most important. Printing takes longer and consumes more ink than in other modes, but this mode offers superior printing quality.
High	Choose this setting to print at high resolution when quality is most important. Printing takes longer and consumes more ink than in Standard or Fast modes, but this mode offers exceptional printing quality.
Standard	Choose this setting to print at standard resolution when quality and speed are both important. Printing takes less time than in Highest or High mode.
Fast	Choose this setting to print faster. Printing in draft mode can help you work more efficiently when checking layouts.

For instructions on printing line drawings and text, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows) → P.44
- Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS) → P.45

Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows)

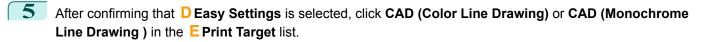
This topic describes how to print line drawings based on the following example.

- · Document: CAD drawing
- Page size: A3 (297.0 × 420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])
- 1 Choose **Print** in the application menu.
- 2 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications .") → P.164
- **3** Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

Canon iPFxxx Printing Prefere	
	A Media Type : Plain Paper B Get Information C Advanced Settings Easy Settines Print Target :
Image: Solution of the	Default Settings A Poster Poster CAD (Konockrome Line Drawing) E CAD (Monockrome Line Drawing) Perspective, GS Photo (Color) *
•	F Print Quality : Standard (600dpl) Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographe and graphics. G View Settings
	L Open Preview When Print Job Starts M Status Monitor About Defaults
	OK Cancel Apply Help

4 In the A Media Type list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

iPF685

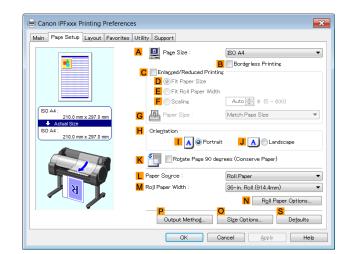




• You can check the settings values selected in the **E Print Target** list by clicking **G View Settings**.



Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7 In **A Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A3**.

8 Select and click a roll paper in the **L Paper Source** list.

9 Select the width of the loaded roll in the MRoll Paper Width list—in this case, ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm).

10 Specify additional printing conditions. For details on available printing conditions, see "Printer Driver Settings ." →P.158

Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

• For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings ." → P.161

Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS)

This topic describes how to print line drawings based on the following example.

Document: CAD drawing

Note

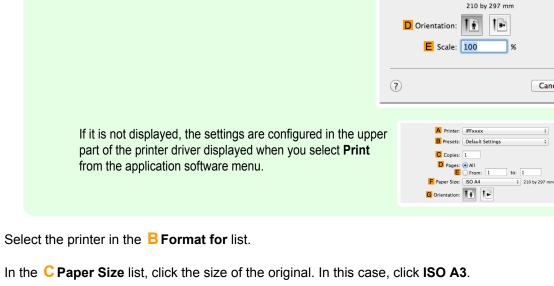
- Page size: A3 (297.0 × 420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

Note

2

3

1



Choose Page Setup from the application menu to display the Page Attributes dialog box.

The configuration method varies depending on the OS

If Page Setup is displayed in the application menu, the

settings are configured by opening the Page Attributes

and application software you are using.

dialog box from Page Setup.

- Click $\mathbf{F}\mathbf{OK}$ to close the dialog box.
- Choose **Print** in the application menu.
- 6 Access the Main pane.

India	•
A Media Type :	Plain Paper \$
	C Set
D Easy Se	ttings Advanced Settings
E Print Target :	
An and a second	Default Settings Poster CAD (Color Line Drawing) CAD (B/W Line Drawing) Perspective, GIS
F Print Quality :	Standard(600dpi) ‡
	g normal documents that contain a tographs and graphics.
	G View set.
O Print Preview	
	Cancel Print

A Settings: Page Attributes

Canon iPFxxxx

B Format For: iPFxxxx

C Paper Size: ISO A4

Main

7 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

+

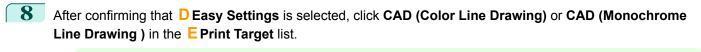
\$

÷

OK

Cancel

¢





You can check the settings values selected in the **E Print Target** list by clicking **G View set.**



Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.

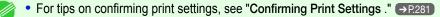
10 Access the **Page Setup** pane.

Page S	etup 🔹
A Paper Source :	Roll Paper \$
B Roll Width :	24 in. (609.6mm) \$
D 🗹 Enlarged/Redu	ced Printing
F 💿 Fit Roll Paper	Width
G Scaling :	100 (+) % (5 - 600)
📙 🗌 Borderless Prin	ting
J 👖 🛛 Print Cent	tered
K	s at Top or Bottom
📙 🛄 🗌 Rotate Pa	ge 90 degrees
N 🕎 🗆 Free Layo	ut
	Cancel Print

11 Select and click a roll paper in the A Paper Source list.

- Select the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer for **B Roll Width**. In this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)** is selected.
- 13 Specify additional printing conditions. For details on available printing conditions, see "Printer Driver Settings ." →P.278

14 Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



 Note • You can conserve roll paper by configuring settings suitable for the document. For details on how to conserve paper and print, see "Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees ." →P136

Printing from AutoCAD

Printer Driver Optimization Module for AutoCAD is software for printing optimally from AutoCAD with the printer driver. By optimally controlling the processing resolution of raster data and the memory to be used in image processing of AutoCAD, printing superior in reliability and productivity is realized.

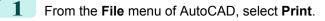
If you install Printer Driver Optimization Module for AutoCAD on a computer on which supported AutoCAD is installed, it will be installed automatically.



Printer Driver Optimization Module for AutoCAD is applied automatically when you print from AutoCAD, and optimal
printing is performed.

• Printer Driver Optimization Module for AutoCAD can be used on Windows.

You can confirm whether Printer Driver Optimization Module for AutoCAD is installed by the following method.



The **Printing** dialog box is displayed. Printer Driver Optimization Module for AutoCAD is installed if in Plotter of Printer/plotter this is displayed: iPFxxxx - Optimized driver - by Canon Inc..

🏭 Plot - Layo	ut1	? 🔀
		i Learn about Plotting
Page setup —		
N <u>a</u> me:	<none></none>	✓ Add <u>.</u>
Printer/plotter		
Na <u>m</u> e:	(PFxxxx.pc3)	P <u>r</u> operties
Plotter:	iPFxxxx - Optimized driver - by Canon Inc.	
Where:	IP_xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx	7/////////////////////////////////////
Description:		559
Plot to file		H H
Paper size —		Number of copies
ANSI C Roll F	Paper (17.00 x 22.00 in)	· 1
Plot area		Plot scale
What to plot:		Fit to paper
Layout	~	<u>S</u> cale: 1:1 ♥
Plot offset (ori	igin set to printable area)	1 mm 💙 =
<u>X</u> : 0.00000	00 inch Center the plot	1 unit
<u>ү</u> ; 0.00000	00 inch	Scale lineweights
Preview	Apply to Layou <u>t</u> OK	Cancel Help ()

Installation of Printer Driver Optimization Module for AutoCAD

If Printer Driver Optimization Module for AutoCAD is not installed, install it by the following method.

- Insert User Software CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive and start the installer.
- In the Setup Menu window, click Install Individual Software.
- Click Install of Printer Driver Optimization Module for AutoCAD.
- 4 Follow the instructions on the screen.

Specifying Colors and Printing CAD Drawings

You can complete color settings when Color (CAD) is selected in Color Mode. Colors can be adjusted before printing as follows when **Color Compatibility** is selected.



48

 Color (CAD) is displayed when you select Advanced Settings on the Main sheet and set Print Priority to Line Drawing/Text.

Color Compatibility

Color Setting Item

Color Setting	Description	
Color (CAD) 1	Print in standard colors.	
Color (CAD) 2	Print with approximate colors emulating Canon iPF750, iPF755, iPF650, iPF655, iPF760, iPF765.	

Color Setting	Description
Color (CAD) 3	Print with approximate colors emulating Canon iPF500, iPF600, iPF700, iPF510, iPF610, iPF710, iPF605, iPF720, iPF810, iPF820, iPF815, iPF825.
Color (CAD) 4	Print emulating the HP Designjet 500/800, in colors resembling colors produced by these printers.
Color (CAD) 5	Print emulating the HP Designjet T1100, in colors resembling colors produced by this printer.

Important

iPF685

If you have selected **Color (CAD) 2**, **Color (CAD) 3**, **Color (CAD) 4**, or **Color (CAD) 5**, it is not possible to match the colors and image quality produced by the specified printer exactly.

For instructions on configuring Color Compatibility, refer to the following topics.

Specifying Colors and Printing CAD Drawings (Windows) → P.49

Specifying Colors and Printing CAD Drawings (Windows)

You can complete color settings when Color (CAD) is selected in Color Mode.

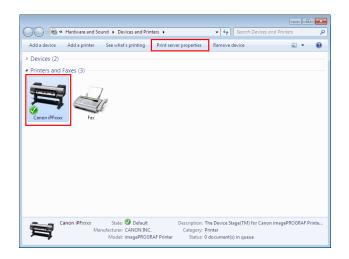


• Color (CAD) is displayed when you select Advanced Settings on the Main sheet and set Print Priority to Line Drawing/Text.



Click start > Printers and Faxes (or Printers).

Select the printer, and then display the printer properties dialog box.



3 Click the **Device Settings** tab to display the **Device Settings** sheet.

🐭 Canon iPFxxx Properties
General Sharing Ports Advanced Color Management Security Device Settings
A B
Color Compatibility About
OK Cancel Apply Help

49

4 Click A Color Compatibility to display the Color Compatibility dialog box.

Color Compatibility	
A <u>C</u> olor Compatibility :	Color (CAD) 1
OK Cancel	Defaults <u>H</u> elp

5 Select the desired color settings in the A Color Compatibility list.



For printing instructions, refer to the following topic.

Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions → P.60

HP-GL/2 Printing

This printer supports printing using the original Canon GARO printer control language and printing using HP-GL/2 and HP RTL emulation to print in colors resembling the colors produced by printers from other companies. The printer automatically switches to the corresponding processing depending on whether a GARO or HP-GL/2 and HP RTL emulation job is received.



- GARO is an abbreviation of Graphic Arts Language with Raster Operations.
- Note HP-GL/2 is an abbreviation of Hewlett-Packard Graphics Language/2, and HP RTL is an abbreviation of Hewlett-Packard Graphics Language/2, and HP RTL is an abbreviation of Hewlett-Packard Graphics Language/2, and HP RTL is an abbreviation of Hewlett-Packard Graphics Language/2, and HP RTL is an abbreviation of Hewlett-Packard Graphics Language/2, and HP RTL is an abbreviation of Hewlett-Packard Graphics Language/2, and HP RTL is an abbreviation of Hewlett-Packard Graphics Language/2, and HP RTL is an abbreviation of Hewlett-Packard Graphics Language/2, and HP RTL is an abbreviation of Hewlett-Packard Graphics Language/2, and HP RTL is an abbreviation of Hewlett-Packard Graphics Language/2, and HP RTL is an abbreviation of Hewlett-Packard Graphics Language/2, and HP RTL is an abbreviation of Hewlett-Packard Graphics Language/2, and HP RTL is an abbreviation of Hewlett-Packard Graphics Language/2, and HP RTL is an abbreviation of Hewlett-Packard Graphics Language/2, and HP RTL is an abbreviation of Hewlett-Packard Graphics Language/2, and HP RTL is an abbreviation of Hewlett-Packard Graphics Language/2, and HP RTL is an abbreviation of Hewlett-Packard Graphics Language/2, and HP RTL is an abbreviation of Hewlett-Packard Graphics Language/2, and HP RTL is an abbreviation of Hewlett-Packard Graphics Language/2, and HP RTL is an abbreviation of Hewlett-Packard Graphics Language/2, and HP RTL is an abbreviation of Hewlett-Packard Graphics Language/2, and HP RTL is an abbreviation of Hewlett-Packard Graphics Language/2, and HP RTL is an abbreviation of Hewlett-Packard Graphics Language/2, and HP RTL is an abbreviation of Hewlett-Packard Graphics Language/2, and HP RTL is an abbreviation of Hewlett-Packard Graphics Language/2, and HP RTL is an abbreviation of Hewlett-Packard Graphics Language/2, and HP RTL is an abbreviation of Hewlett-Packard Graphics Language/2, and HP RTL is an abbreviation of Hewlett-Packard Graphics Language/2, and HP RTL is an abbreviation of Hewlett-Packard Graphics Language/2,
 - Emulation is good for obtaining results similar to printing on other printers.

When printing from applications that support HP-GL/2 output, specify HP-GL/2 in the application's plotter output settings.

HP-GL/2 and HP RTL emulation related settings such as the printer to emulate are configured from the printer Control Panel. (Refer to "Menu Structure →P.452) " and "Menu Settings →P.459) ")



- For instructions on configuring these settings, refer to the software documentation.
- It may not be possible to print jobs with excessively large amounts of data correctly.
- For information on CAD colors other than HP-GL/2 and HP RTL emulation, see "Menu Settings." → P.459

Adjusting Images

Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Windows) Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS)	. 53
Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Windows) Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS)	60

Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver

Color settings specified in the application for your documents are essentially given priority over other settings for each print job, but further color adjustment is possible in the printer driver.

Color Mode

Choose how the printer driver processes color, as desired.

The available options vary depending on the color mode.

Color Mode	Description	Color Adjustment
Color	Print in color.	You can select the color balance and color matching functions.
Monochrome	Print in grayscale.	You can adjust the color balance.
Color (CAD)	A color mode optimized for line drawings (2D-CAD). Lines in red, yellow, and other colors are printed especially clearly.	You can adjust the color balance.
Monochrome (BK ink)	A color mode for printing line drawings. Only Black ink is used.	You can adjust the color balance.
Monochrome Bitmap	Print in a color mode for CAD, using Color Ink, with all non-white portions printed in black.	No color adjustment is supported.
No color correction (*1)	Prints without performing color-matching in the printer driver.	You can adjust the color balance.

*1: If No color correction is selected, the Matching sheet / Matching pane is not displayed.

Color Adjustment

You can adjust colors separately for images, graphics, and text documents.

Adjustment Item	Description
Cyan	Fine-tune color tones by adjusting the levels of Cyan, Magenta, and Yellow.
Magenta	
Yellow	
Gray Tone	Adjust the grayscale, in a range from cool, blue tones to warm, red tones.
Brightness	Adjust the brightness of printed images while keeping the darkest and lightest portions intact.
Contrast	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other. For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
Saturation	Adjust the level of color saturation, in a range from subdued to vivid.



 Click Object Adjustment to open the Object Adjustment dialog box, which allows you to select the color adjustment target from Image, Graphics, and Text.

51

You can choose the color-matching mode and method.

By adjusting the color-matching mode and method, you can make printed colors match the colors of on-screen images more closely.

• If No color correction is selected under Color Mode, the Matching cannot be changed.

Important

Matching Mode	Description	Remarks	
Driver Matching Mode	Enables printing of optimal color tones us- ing a driver specific color profile.	You should normally select this mode.	
ICC Matching Mode	Enables color matching using ICC pro- files. Select this if you want to print by specify- ing the input profile, printer profile, and matching method in detail.	This allows you to use ICC profiles for digi- tal cameras and scanners, ICC profiles cre- ated using the profile creation tool, etc.	
Host ICM Mode	Enables color matching by the host com- puter using the ICM function of Windows. Select this if you want to print from an ap- plication that supports the ICM function.	Available when using Windows.	
ColorSync	Enables color matching by using the Col- orSync function of Mac OS. Select this if you want to perform soft proofing using ColorSync before printing.	Available when using Mac OS. To select ColorSync , choose ColorSync on the Color Matching panel.	

Matching Method	Description	Remarks
Auto	Color-matching optimized for images, graphics, or text.	The available options and their display or- der vary depending on your selected color-
Perceptual	Color-matching optimized for printing typi- cal photos attractively. Smooth gradation is a feature. This is also an easy-to-use mode when performing color adjustment using application software.	matching mode, as well as the operating system.
Colorimetric	Color-matching optimized for printing im- age data with accurate colors in input col- or space. This is the easiest-to-use mode when you want to adjust the color and print. However, gradation may be lost for colors of wider range than the color repro- duction range of the printer. Generally, this is also called relative colorimetric.	
Colorimetric (No Wht-pnt Corr)	The processing method of color-matching is identical to Colorimetric. Use this when you want to further reproduce the target paper material color of the image data. Generally, this also is called absolute col- orimetric	
Saturation	Color-matching optimized for printing posters, etc., vividly.	

For instructions on color adjustment, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Windows) → P.53
- Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS) → P.55

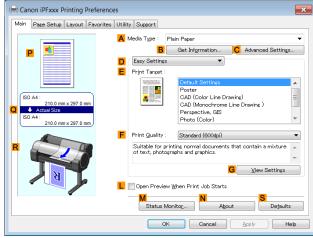
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Windows)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the Print Target presets. This topic describes how to fine-tune the color tone of photos before printing.



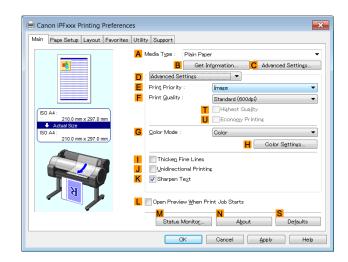
Choose Print in the application menu.

- 2 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications .") → P.164
- 3 Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

Click **D** Advanced Settings to switch the print mode.



5

6 Click Color in the G Color Mode list.

7 Click H Color Settings to display the Color Settings dialog

box.

Color Adjustment Matching					
-	D Cyan :	0		<u> </u>	
			Low		High
	E Magenta :	0 🌲	- -	<u> </u>	- -
-			Low		High
	F Yellow :	0 🌲	- E	<u> </u>	- E
		Land I	Low		High
23456	Gray Tone :	0	- -	<u> </u>	
Sample Type :			ool Black		Warm Black
Standard	•				
Wew Color Pattern	H Brightness :	0	来 -	Ó	*
Apply to Sample			Dark	•	Light
	Contrast :	0 🌲	•	<u> </u>	•
			Low		High
	J Saturation :	0	0 -	Û	- 🥑
			Low		High
				_	_
				Object Adjustment.	Defaults

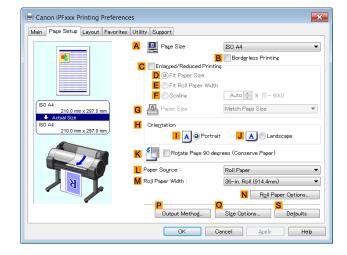
8 On the **Color Adjustment** sheet, adjust the color tones, brightness, and so on as desired.

Adjustment Item	Description
D Cyan	Fine-tune color tones by adjusting the levels of Cyan, Magenta, and Yellow.
E Magenta	
F Yellow	
G Gray Tone	Adjust the gray tone. Choose cool black (tinged with blue), pure black (neutral), warm black (tinged with red), and so on.
H Brightness	Adjust the brightness of printed images while keeping the darkest and lightest portions in- tact.
Contrast	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other. For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
J Saturation	Adjust the level of color saturation, in a range from subdued to vivid.

Click Object Adjustment to open the Object Adjustment dialog box, which allows you to select the color adjustment target from Image, Graphics, and Text. Note

Close the Color Settings dialog box.

 $\mathbf{10}$ Click the Page Setup tab to display the Page Setup sheet.



11 Confirm the settings of **A Page Size**, **L Paper Source**, and so on.

9

54



12 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings ." →P.161

Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the Print Target presets. This topic describes how to fine-tune the color tone of photos before printing.

Choose Page Setup from the application menu to display the Page Attributes dialog box.



Note

The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using. If Page Setup is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the Page Attributes dialog box from Page Setup.

and application software you are using. If Page Setup is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the Page Attributes dialog box from Page Setup .	 A Settings: Page Attributes ‡ B Format For: iPFxxxx ‡ Canon iPFxxxx C Paper Size: ISO A4 ‡ 210 by 297 mm Orientation: if if ip E Scale: 100 %
If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select Print from the application software menu.	? Cancel OK Persets: Default Settings 2 G Copies: 1 Pages: 0 All E Pages: 0 All E Pages: Context 1 Departs <

G Orientation:

- 2 Select the printer in the **B** Format for list.
- 3 Choose the original size in the **C Paper Size** list.
- 4 Click **FOK** to close the dialog box.
- Choose **Print** in the application menu.

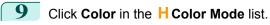
55

6 Access the Main pane.

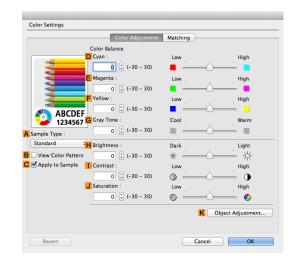
iPF685

- **7** In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
- **8** Click **D** Advanced Settings to switch the print mode.

je.	N	Main		\$	
	A Media Type :	Plain P	aper	;	•
				C Set	
		asy Settings	Advanced Setti	ngs	
	E Print Priori	ity: Ir	nage	\$	
	F Print Quali	ty: St	tandard(600dpi)	+	
			hest quality nomy Printing		
	R 🗹 Fast Gra	aphic Process			
	H Color Mod	e: C	olor	\$	
			-	Set	
	Q 🗌 Thicker P 🗹 Sharper	ctional Printir 1 Fine Lines 1 Text Print Uneven	-		
	O Print Previe	w			
			Ca	ncel Prir	nt



10 Click **Set** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.



On the **Color Adjustment** pane, adjust the color tones, brightness, and so on as desired.

Adjustment Item	Description
D Cyan	Fine-tune color tones by adjusting the levels of Cyan, Magenta, and Yellow.
E Magenta	
F Yellow	
G Gray Tone	Adjust the gray tone. Choose cool black (tinged with blue), pure black (neutral), warm black (tinged with red), and so on.
H Brightness	Adjust the brightness of printed images while keeping the darkest and lightest portions in- tact.
Contrast	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other. For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
J Saturation	Adjust the level of color saturation, in a range from subdued to vivid.



 Click Object Adjustment to open the Object Adjustment dialog box, which allows you to select the color adjustment target from Images, Graphics, and Text.

12 Click **OK** to close the **Color Settings** dialog box.

13 Access the **Page Setup** pane.

14 Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings ." → P.281

Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing

You can specify detailed print settings as desired for the quality level, colors, and other criteria.

Advanced Settings

For printing results that appear just as expected for your original, you can specify which graphic elements and colors to prioritize for printing.



· Easy Settings are also available, providing convenient presets. To use the presets, simply choose the printing application.

For details on **Easy Settings**, refer to the following topics.

- Printing Photos and Images → P.33
- Printing Line Drawings and Text → P.43
- Printing Office Documents →P.37

• Print Priority

Choose the graphic elements that you want to emphasize for printing.

Print Priority (*1)	Description
Image	A setting for posters or other documents made up mainly of photos or images, or for empha- sizing photos or images in printed documents.
Line Drawing/Text	Choose this setting for CAD drawings made up mainly of intricate lines, or wall newspapers and other notices with a large amount of text. Suitable for emphasizing detailed text in prin- ted documents. However, the quality may not be sufficient when printing photos or images that require a lot of color coverage. In this case, choose Image instead.
Office Document	Choose this setting for better legibility of documents combining text and graphics, such as documents and presentation material created with typical office applications.

*1: Options suitable for the selected type of paper are listed under Print Priority.

Print Quality

Choose the print quality.

The printing mode is determined by a combination of the print quality and resolution.

Print Quality (*1)	Description	Print Priority
Highest	A setting for printing at the highest resolution when quality is most important. Printing takes longer and consumes more ink than in other modes, but this mode offers superior printing quality.	Image
High	Choose this setting to print at high resolution when quality is most important. Printing takes longer and consumes more ink than in Standard or Fast modes, but this mode offers exceptional printing quality.	Image Line Drawing/Text
Standard	Choose this setting to print at standard resolution when quality and speed are both important. Printing takes less time than in Highest or High mode.	Image Line Drawing/Text Office Document
Fast	Choose this setting to print faster. Printing in draft mode can help you work more effi- ciently when checking layouts.	Image Line Drawing/Text

*1: Options suitable for the selected Print Priority are listed under Print Quality.

Color Settings

Setting Item	Options	Description
Color Mode (*1)	Color Monochrome Color (CAD) Monochrome (BK ink) Monochrome Bitmap No color correction	Choose whether to print in color or monochrome. (See "Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver.") →P51
Color Adjustment	Cyan Magenta Yellow Gray Tone Brightness Contrast Saturation	You can adjust the levels of cyan, magenta, and yellow as well as the brightness, contrast, satura- tion, and gray tones. If you choose Monochrome or Monochrome (BK ink) in Color Mode only Brightness and Contrast can be adjusted. Image, Graphics , and Text are available as Object Adjustment options.
Color-Matching Modes	Driver Matching Mode ICC Matching Mode Host ICM Mode (Windows) ColorSync (Mac OS)	Choose the color-matching mode.
Color-Matching Method (*2)	Auto Perceptual Colorimetric Saturation	Choose the color-matching method. The available options vary depending on your selection in Color-Matching Mode .
Gamma	2.2 1.8	You can adjust the gradation of intermediate tones in an image. You can select only after Driver Matching Mode has been selected in Matching Mode .

*1: Options suitable for the selected Print Priority are listed under Color Mode.

*2: The order of options displayed varies depending on the operating system.

Enhancing printing quality

Setting Item	Description
Highest quality	This prints at the highest resolution. Printing takes longer and consumes more ink than in other modes, but this mode offers superior printing quality.
Thicken Fine Lines	Prints making fine lines appear thicker.
Sharpen Text	Choose this option to print intricate text more distinctly.
Reduce Print Unevenness (*1)	Choose this option to counteract uneven printing.
Unidirectional Printing	Prints by suppressing color variations and misaligned ruled lines. However, this takes more time than regular printing.
Economy Printing	 When this mode is selected, less ink is consumed than in regular printing, but the quality is diminished. Select this mode if you want to conserve ink when checking drawings, for example. Depending on the Media Type and Print Quality settings, this mode may not be available.

*1:Displayed in Mac OS.



• To print at a higher level of quality, in the printer driver, choose **High** or **Highest** in **Print Quality**, and select the **Unidirectional Printing** check box.

For instructions on specifying the print quality and color settings before printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Windows) → P.60
- Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS) → P.62

Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Windows)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. As an example, this topic describes how to print CAD drawings as clearly as possible, with sharp lines and text.



Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications .") → P.164



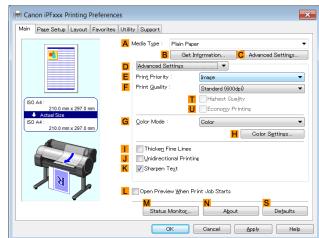
60

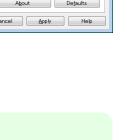
Make sure the $\ensuremath{\textbf{Main}}$ sheet is displayed.

🖶 Canon iPFxxx Printing Preference	ces 💌
Main Page Setup Layout Favorites	s Utility Support
SO A4 : 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	Media Type : Plain Paper Get Information C Advanced Settings Easy Settines Print Target : Print Target : Poster CAD (Color Line Drawing) CAD (MonoChrome Line Drawing) Perspective, GIS
R	Photo (Color) Phint Quality: Standard (600dpi) Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.
N	G View Settings
	M Status Monitor About Defaults
	OK Cancel Apply Help

4 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

5 Click **D** Advanced Settings to switch the print mode.





61

Enhanced Printing Options

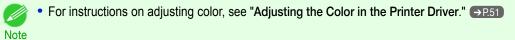
Click Color (CAD) in the G Color Mode list.

Note

9 To adjust the color, click **H** Color Settings.

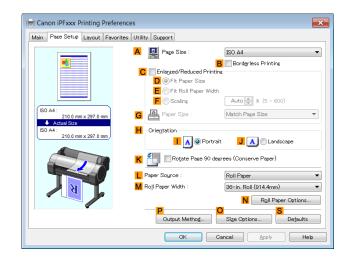
Click Line Drawing/Text in the E Print Priority list.

Click High (1200dpi) in the F Print Quality list.



Options displayed in the F Print Quality list vary depending on the paper type.

- **10** Select the KSharpen Text check box.
- Click the Page Setup tab to display the Page Setup sheet.



12 Confirm the settings of **A Page Size**, **L Paper Source**, and so on.

13 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

• For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings ." → P.161

6

7

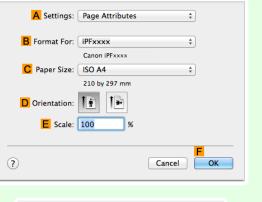
Note

Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how print photographic images in monochrome.

Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using.
 - and application software you are using. If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.

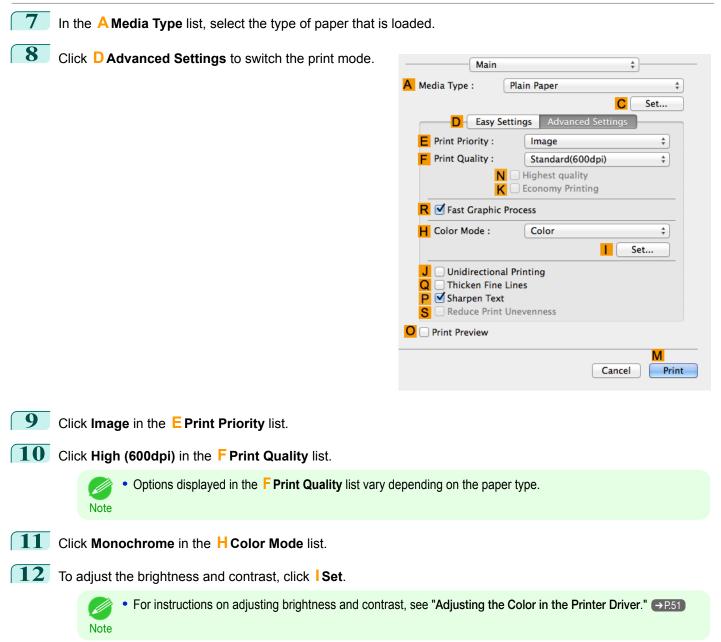


If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.

A Printer:	iPFxxxx	•
B Presets:	Default Settings	÷
C Copies:		
D Pages: E	All From: 1 to: 1	
F Paper Size:	ISO A4 \$ 210) by 297 mm
G Orientation:		

- 2 Select the printer in the **B** Format for list.
- Choose the original size in the **C** Paper Size list.
- 4 Click **FOK** to close the dialog box.
- **5** In the application menu, choose **Print**.
- 6 Access the Main pane.

Main	\$
A Media Type :	Plain Paper \$
	C Set
D Easy Se	ettings Advanced Settings
E Print Target :	
	Default Settings
	Poster
	CAD (Color Line Drawing)
	CAD (B/W Line Drawing) Perspective, GIS
	reispective, dis
F Print Quality :	Standard(600dpi) \$
	ig normal documents that contain a otographs and graphics.
	G View set.
O Print Preview	
	Cancel Print



63

Note

3 Access the Page Setup pane.	Page Setup +
	A Paper Source : Roll Paper \$
	B Roll Width : 24 in. (609.6mm) ‡
	D Senlarged/Reduced Printing
	F • Fit Roll Paper Width
	G ○ Scaling : 100 (+) % (5 - 600)
	H Derderless Printing
	J 🗾 🔤 🛛 Print Centered
	K
	L CRotate Page 90 degrees
	N 🕎 🗆 Free Layout
	Cancel Print
f 4 Confirm the print settings, and then click $f M$	Print to start printing.

• For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings ." →P.281

Printing enlargements or reductions

Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows)	
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows) Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS)	. 67
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Windows) Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS)	. 72

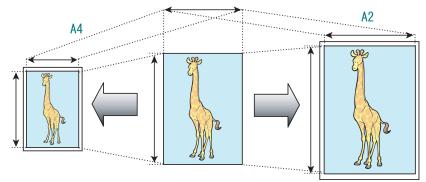
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size

You can freely adjust the size of originals by enlarging or reducing them as desired.

- Enlarged/Reduced Printing
 - Enlarge or reduce the original in the printer driver, as desired.
- Fit Paper Size

iPF685

Enlarge or reduce the original to match the size of the paper you are using.



For instructions on printing with resizing to fit the paper size, refer to the following topics.

Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows) → P.65



To print with resizing to fit the paper size on Mac OS, use Scale to fit paper size in the Paper Handling panel provided by the OS.

For more information, see the Mac OS User Manual.

Paper Handli	•
	Collate pages
Pages to Print:	All pages \$
Page Order:	Automatic \$
	Scale to fit paper size
Destination Paper Size:	Suggested Paper: ISO A4 \$
	Scale down only
	Cancel Print

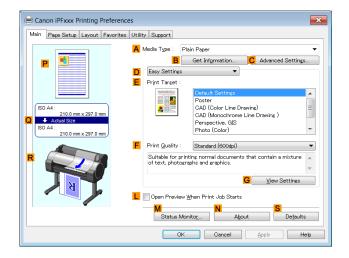
• For better printing results when enlarging photos from a digital camera in TIFF or JPEG format, use an imageediting application software such as Adobe Photoshop to specify an image resolution of 150 dpi or more at actual size.

Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows)

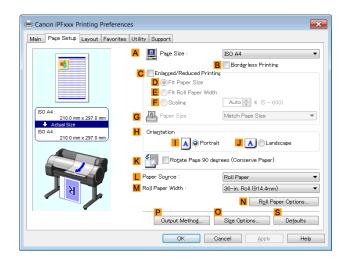
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the paper size, based on the following example.

• Document: Any Type

- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])
- **1** Choose **Print** in the application menu.
- 2 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications .") → P.164
- 3 Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



- 4 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
- 5 Select the printing application in the EPrint Target list.
- 6 Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



- **7** Select and click a roll paper in the **Paper Source** list.
- 8 Select the width of the loaded roll in the MRoll Paper Width list—in this case, ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm).
- 9 In the A Page Size list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click ISO A4.
- **10** Select the **CEnlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
- **11** Select the **D** Fit Paper Size check box.

66

Printing enlargements or reductions

12 Click ISO A3 in the G Paper Size list.

13 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



• For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings ." → P.161

Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width

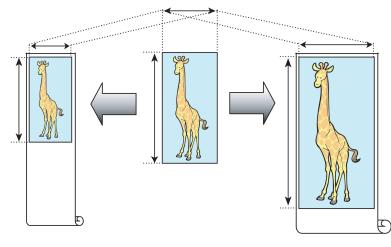
You can freely adjust the size of originals by enlarging or reducing them as desired.

• Enlarged/Reduced Printing

Enlarge or reduce the original in the printer driver, as desired.

• Fit Roll Paper Width

Enlarge or reduce the original as a whole to match the roll paper width, as desired.



Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the roll width, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 16 inches (406.4 mm)



Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications .") → P.164

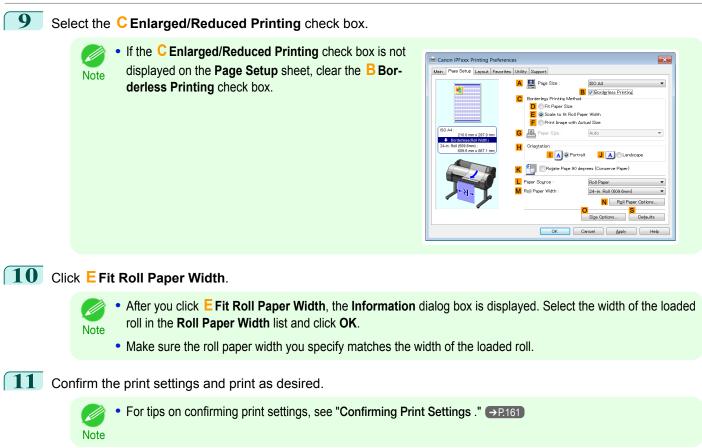
3 Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

Main Page Setup Layout Favori	tes Utility Support	
	A Media Type : Plain Paper	•
P 📩	B Get Information C Advanced Settings	
	D Easy Settings	
	E Print Target :	
	Default Settings	
	Poster	
ISO A4 : 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	CAD (Color Line Drawing)	Ξ
Actual Size	CAD (Monochrome Line Drawing)	_
ISO A4 :	Perspective, GIS Photo (Color)	÷
210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	1100 (000)	_
	F Print Quality : Standard (600dpi)	•
	Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.	* *
	G View Settings	
	L _ Open Preview When Print Job Starts	
· ·	M Status Monitor About Defaults	_

- **4** In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
- **5** Select the printing application in the **E Print Target** list.
- 6 Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.

🖶 Canon iPFxxx Printing Preferen	nces	×
Main Page Setup Layout Favorite	es Utility Support	
	A 🚇 Page Size : ISO A4	•
	B Borderless Printing	
	C Enlarged/Reduced Printing	
	D Fit Paper Size	
	E O Fit Roll Paper Width	
	F Scaling Auto 🛒 % (5 - 600)	
ISO A4 : 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm Actual Size	G Paper Size : Match Page Size	-
ISO A4 :	H Orientation	
210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	Landscape	
	K 🔄 ERotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)	
	Paper Source : Roll Paper	•
K	M Roll Paper Width : 36-in. Roll (914.4mm)	•
	N Roll Paper Options	
	P. O. S. Output Methog Size Options Defaults	
	OK Cancel Apply Het	p

- **7** Select and click a roll paper in the **L Paper Source** list.
- 8 In the A Page Size list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click ISO A4 or Letter (8.5"x11").



Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the roll width, based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 16 inches (406.4 mm)

User's Guide

*

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

O 🗌 Print Preview

G

View set.

Cancel

М

Print

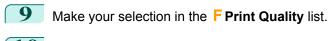
 The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using. A Settings: Page Attributes + Note If Page Setup is displayed in the application menu, the B Format For: iPFxxxx ÷ settings are configured by opening the Page Attributes Canon iPFxxxx dialog box from Page Setup. C Paper Size: ISO A4 ÷ 210 by 297 mm . D Orientation: E Scale: 100 ? Cancel OK A Printer: iPFxxxx If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper B Presets: Default Settin part of the printer driver displayed when you select Print C Copies: 1 from the application software menu. Pages: • All E From: 1 to: 1 \$ 210 by 297 mm Paper Size: ISO A4 G Orientation: 2 Select the printer in the **B** Format for list. 3 In C Paper Size, click the size of the original. In this case, click ISO A4. Click **FOK** to close the dialog box. Choose Print in the application menu. 6 Access the Main pane. Main ÷ A Media Type : Plain Paper C Set... D Easy Settings Advanced Settings E Print Target : **Default Settings** Poster 2 CAD (Color Line Drawing) CAD (B/W Line Drawing) Perspective, GIS Standard(600dpi) * F Print Quality :

Choose Page Setup from the application menu to display the Page Attributes dialog box.

70

In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

8 Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.



10 Access the **Page Setup** pane.

Page	Setup 🗘
A Paper Source :	Roll Paper 🗧
B Roll Width :	24 in. (609.6mm) \$
D 🗹 Enlarged/Redu	uced Printing
F 💿 Fit Roll Pape	r Width
G OScaling :	100 🗘 % (5 - 600)
📙 🗌 Borderless Prin	nting
J	ntered
K	es at Top or Bottom
L 🗐 🗆 Rotate P	age 90 degrees
N 🗾 🗆 Free Lay	out
	Cancel Print

	Select and click a roll paper in the APaper Source list.
12	Select the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer for B Roll Width . In this case, 16 in. (406.4mm) is selected.
13	Select the D Enlarged/Reduced Printing check box.
14	Click F Fit Roll Paper Width .
15	Confirm the print settings, and then click M Print to start printing.
	● For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings ." ●P.281 Note

Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value

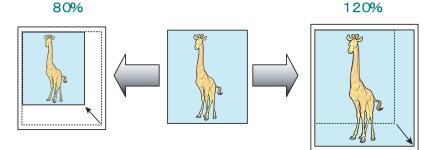
You can freely adjust the size of originals by enlarging or reducing them as desired.

• Enlarged/Reduced Printing

Enlarge or reduce the original in the printer driver, as desired.

Scaling

Enlarge or reduce originals by a particular amount, as desired.



71

User's Guide

- Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Windows) → P.72
- Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS) → P.73

• For better printing results when enlarging photos from a digital camera in TIFF or JPEG format, use an imageediting application software such as Adobe Photoshop to specify an image resolution of 150 dpi or more at actual size.

Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Windows)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing by entering a scaling value, based on the following example.

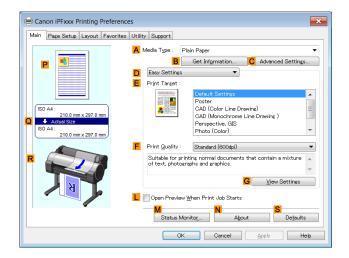
- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- · Paper: Roll paper

Important

- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

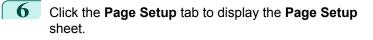
• In borderless printing, you cannot resize originals by entering a scaling value.

- Choose **Print** in the application menu.
- 2 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications .") → P.164
- 3 Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

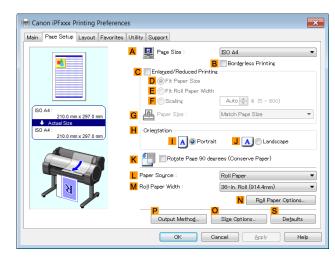


- 4 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
- 5 Select the printing application in the E Print Target list.

iPF685



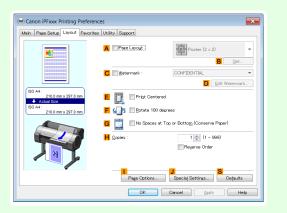
iPF685



- **7** Select and click a roll paper in the **L Paper Source** list.
- 8 Select the width of the loaded roll in the MRoll Paper Width list—in this case, ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm).
- 9 In the A Page Size list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click ISO A4.
- **10** Select the CEnlarged/Reduced Printing check box.
- 11 Click ISO A4 in the G Paper Size list.
- **12** Click **F** Scaling and enter 120.



- You can specify enlargement that exceeds the paper size, but in this case, the portions off the bottom and right edges of the paper will not be printed.
- If the original size after enlargement or reduction is smaller than the paper size, the original is printed in the upper-left corner. In this case, you can center originals by selecting E Print Centered on the Layout sheet.



13 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

• For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings ." → P.161

Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing by entering a scaling value, based on the following example.

Document: Any Type

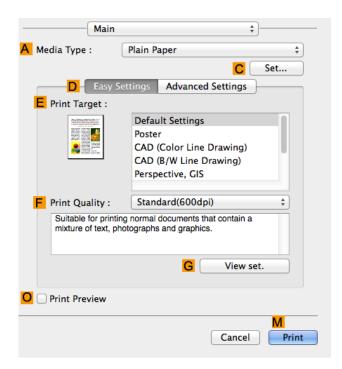
Note

- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- · Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.

 The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using. If Page Setup is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the Page Attributes dialog box from Page Setup. 	A Settings: Page Attributes Format For: IPFxxxx Canon IPFxxx Canon IPFxxx Canon IPFxxx Canon IPFxx Canon I
If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upp part of the printer driver displayed when you select Print from the application software menu.	DET A Printer: PFxxxx Presets: Default Settings C Copies: 1 Pages: • All Pages: • All Pages: • Kol Pages: • Iso A4 C Orientation: I to: 1 C Orientation: I to: 1

- 2 Select the printer in the **B** Format for list.
 - 3 In **C Paper Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
- 4 Click **FOK** to close the dialog box.
- **5** Choose **Print** in the application menu.
- 6 Access the **Main** pane.

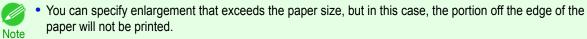


- **7** In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
- 8 Make your selection in the E Print Target list.
- 9 Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.
- **10** Access the **Page Setup** pane.

Page	Setup +
A Paper Source :	Roll Paper \$
B Roll Width :	24 in. (609.6mm) \$
D S Enlarged/Red	luced Printing
F 💿 Fit Roll Pape	er Width
G OScaling :	100 🗘 % (5 - 600)
📙 🗌 Borderless Pr	inting
J	entered
K	ces at Top or Bottom
L CROTATE R	Page 90 degrees
N 🗾 🗆 Free Lay	yout
	Cancel Print

11 Select and click a roll paper in the **A Paper Source** list.

- **12** Select the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer for **B** Roll Width. In this case, ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm) is selected.
- **13** Select the **D**Enlarged/Reduced Printing check box.
- 14 Click **G** Scaling and enter 120.



• If the original size after enlargement or reduction is smaller than the paper size, the original is printed in the upper-left corner. In this case, you can center originals by selecting the **J Print Centered** check box.

15 Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings ." →P.281

Printing at full size

Printing on Oversize Paper Printing at Full Size (Windows)	
Printing at Full Size (Mac OS)	
Borderless Printing at Actual Size	
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows)	81
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS)	83

Printing on Oversize Paper

You can print all areas of the original at full scale by selecting the paper size from **Oversize** (sizes where the margins needed for printer operation have been added to the page size).

We recommend when printing with a focus on image.



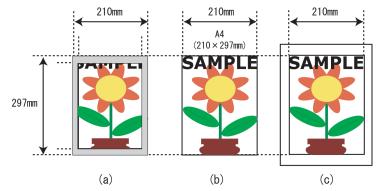
• If you prepare an original for printing without a margin and print it on paper of regular size, the image near the edge will not be printed.

Oversize

When printing on standard paper sizes, printing is performed by taking the margins necessary for printer operations inside the region of the original. (See "Print Area.") **PR684** For example, printing the A4 size (210 x 297 mm) original shown in Figure (b) gives the result as shown in Figure (a).

However, if **Oversize** paper is selected, printing is performed by taking the margins necessary for printer operations outside of the region of the original to give the result as shown in Figure (c).

The A4 size print as shown in Figure (b) can then be obtained by trimming the margins from the periphery after printing.



• When printing on **Oversize** paper, load paper larger than the page size—a size that includes the margin required by the printer.

- Sheets: Load paper that is at least 10 mm (0.39 in) wider and 28 mm (1.10 in) higher than the page size
- Rolls:Load paper that is at least 10 mm (0.39 in) wider and 10 mm (0.39 in) higher than the page size
- Paper larger than the maximum size supported by the printer cannot be used as paper for oversized printing. (See "Paper Sizes.") - P.362
 - Oversized printing (selecting Oversize in Page Size) is only available in Windows.
 - If you are performing oversized printing in Mac OS, you need to configure printing on non-standard paper sizes.
 - To specify a non-standard paper size in oversized printing, register the paper size as a Custom Paper Size. Oversized printing is not available with Custom Size. (See "Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes.") → P:104

Printing at full size

For instructions on oversized printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing at Full Size (Windows) →P.77
- Printing at Full Size (Mac OS) → P.78

Printing at Full Size (Windows)

This topic describes how to print at full size based on the following example. (Oversized Printing)

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])
- **1** Choose **Print** in the application menu.
- 2 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications .") → P.164

3

Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

🖶 Canon iPFxxx Printing Pref	erences 💌
Main Page Setup Layout Fav	orites Utility Support
■ SO A4: 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm → Actual Size So A4:	A Media Type : Plain Paper B Get Information Advanced Settings E Says Settings Print Tareet : Poster CAD (Color Line Drawing) Perspective, GIS Protot (Color) V
210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	Print Quality : Standard (600dp) Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics. G View Settings
	Copen Preview When Print Job Starts
	OK Cancel Apply Help

- 4 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
- **5** Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.

🖶 Canon iPFxxx Printing Prefe	erences	×		
Main Page Setup Layout Favorites Utility Support				
	A Page Size : ISO A4	-		
	C Enlarged/Reduced Printing			
	Fit Roll Paper Width			
ISO A4 : 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	G Paper Size : Match Page Size	•		
ISO A4 : 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	H - Oriegtation			
Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)				
	Paper Source : Roll Paper	-		
Б	M Roll Paper Width : 36-in. Roll (914.4mm)	-		
	N Roll Paper Option	ns		
	P. Output Methog Size Options Defau	lts		
	OK Cancel Apply	Help		

6 Click **O Size Options** to display the **Paper Size Options** dialog box.

- 7 In the Paper Size Options dialog box, select the Oversize check box in Display Series.
- 8 Click OK to close the Paper Size Options dialog box.
- 9 Click Oversize - ISO A4 in the A Page Size list.
- **10** Select and click a roll paper in the **L** Paper Source list.
- **11** Select the width of the loaded roll in the **M Roll Paper Width** list—in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.
- **12** Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings ." >P.161

Printing at Full Size (Mac OS)

This topic describes how to print at full size based on the following example. (Oversized Printing)

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Roll paper

1

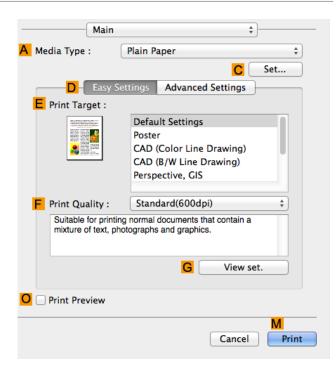
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

Choose Page Setup from the application menu to display the Page Attributes dialog box.

 The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using. If Page Setup is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the Page Attributes dialog box from Page Setup. 	A Settings: Page Attributes \$ B Format For: iPFxxxx \$ Canon iPFxxxx \$ C Paper Size: ISO A4 \$ 210 by 297 mm \$ Orientation: Image:
If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the up part of the printer driver displayed when you select Prin t from the application software menu.	Presets: Default Settings

- 2 Select the printer in the **B** Format for list.
- In **C** Paper Size, click the size of the original. In this case, click ISO A4 Oversize.
- Click **FOK** to close the dialog box.
- 78 5 Choose **Print** in the application menu.

6 Access the **Main** pane.



- **7** In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
- 8 Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.
- 9 Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.
- **10** Access the **Page Setup** pane.

Page	Setup +			
A Paper Source :	Roll Paper \$			
B Roll Width :	24 in. (609.6mm) \$			
D 🗹 Enlarged/Red	uced Printing			
F 💿 Fit Roll Paper Width				
G Scaling : 100 🗘 % (5 - 600)				
📙 🗌 Borderless Pri	nting			
J 📃 🗆 Print Cer	ntered			
K	es at Top or Bottom			
L CRotate P	age 90 degrees			
N 🗾 🗆 Free Lay	out			
	Cancel Print			

11 Select and click a roll paper in the **A Paper Source** list.

12 Select the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer for **B** Roll Width. In this case, ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm) is selected.

13 Confirm the print settings, and then click M Print to start printing.



For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings." → P281

Borderless Printing at Actual Size

Take advantage of borderless printing to print documents such as posters (made up mainly of photos or images) without a surrounding margin, or border.

In regular printing, a margin required by the printer is added around the original. With borderless printing, you can print documents without the margin, so that the printed image covers the entire surface of the paper.

- Borderless printing is only available with rolls.
- Paper you can use for borderless printing is restricted to particular types of paper and rolls of particular widths. (See "Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.") → P.365
- Although it normally prints borderless on the top, bottom, left, and right (4-edge borderless), in the following cases, it becomes borderless only on the left and right (2-edge borderless) because the top and bottom of the printed image are not automatically cut.
 - When paper where the borderless printing is described as two edges only in the Paper Reference Guide (paper where printed image areas cannot be cut cleanly) is selected
 - When the following settings are made in the printer control panel
 - Cutting Mode is Manual
 - CutDustReduct. is On

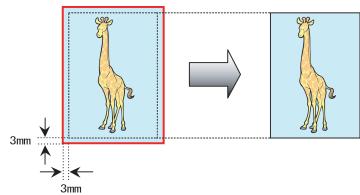
HIII

- When auto cut is configured as not performed in the printer driver
- Borderless printing is not possible if details such as crop marks and margins are included as data on the periphery of the original. Important
 - If the length of the image to print is short, then since the roll paper is fed out to a prescribed length before cutting in order to prevent cutting problems and ejection problems, the trailing edge of the roll paper might not be printed borderless.
 - These features cannot be used in combination with borderless printing: special page layouts, centering originals, and printing cut lines on rolls.
 - If Fit Paper Size or Print Image with Actual Size (Windows only) is selected while performing borderless printing, Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper) cannot be selected. Note that if borderless printing is possible, then even if the original is rotated 90 degrees, it will be printed by automatically rotating the page by 90 degrees.

Choose the method of borderless printing that suits the original, as desired.

Print Image with Actual Size

Prints originals at actual size, without enlarging or reducing them. We recommend when focusing on image quality. You should create the original at a size larger by 3 mm on each side than the paper size.



- Not all page sizes are available.
- Note When performing borderless printing without using **Print Image with Actual Size**, the image deteriorates slightly because the image is automatically enlarged.

For instructions on borderless printing of photos and images at actual size, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows) → P.81
- Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS) → P.83

Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows)

This topic describes how to print borderlessly at actual size based on the following example.



• When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be uneven at the edges. If you require higher image quality, select **No** from the **Automatic Cutting** list in the **Roll Paper Options** dialog box. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. Once printed and cut, please cut the upper and lower bands with scissors.

- · Document: Any type
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Canon Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

Create the original in the source application 3 mm (0.12 in) larger on each side than 254.0×304.8 mm (10×12 in) —that is, 260.0×310.8 mm (10.2×12.2 in)

• If you can specify the margin, as in Microsoft Word, set the margin at 0 mm. For instructions on specifying the margin, refer to the software documentation.

- The extra 3 mm (0.12 in) on each side will not be printed. Create the original so that it fits inside the paper area to be printed on.
- 2 Choose **Print** in the application menu.
- 3 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications .") →P:164

81

iPF685

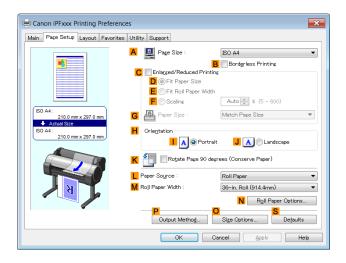
4 Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

Main Page Setup Layout Favorit	es Utility Support
P SO A4: 2100 mm x 297.0 mm	A Media Type : Plain Paper
Actual Size SO A4 : 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	Perspective, GIS Photo (Color)
T	of text, photographs and graphics.
	M Status Monitor About Defaults

5 In the A Media Type list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Canon Heavyweight Coated Paper.

Select the print target in the E Print Target list.

- When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere for borderless printing and the Cutter Unit touches printing surfaces that are not dry yet, it may damage the paper or the edge of the document that is cut, depending on frequency of use. In this kind of situation, change the ink drying time using the following procedure.
 - Click Advanced Settings in Media Type.
 - · Select an ink drying time in the list for the Between Pages setting of Drying Time.
- 7 Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



- 8 In the A Page Size list, click the size of the original as specified in the source application. In this case, click 10"x12".
- 9 Select and click a roll paper in the L Paper Source list.



 $\mathbf{10}$ Select the **B** Borderless Printing check box to display the Information dialog box.

🖶 Canon iPFxxx Printing Prefere	nces	×
Main Page Setup Layout Favorit	es Utility Support	
	🗛 💻 Page Size :	ISO A4
		B Borderless Printing
	Borderless Printing Met	hod
	F O Scale to fit Rol	II Paper Width
	F Print Image wit	
ISO A4 : 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	G Paper Size :	Auto 💌
Borderless(Roll Width) 24-in. Roll (609.6 mm) : 609.6 mm x 867.1 mm	Orientation	ortrait J 🔥 Dandscape
	K	0 degrees (Conserve Paper)
	L Paper Source :	Roll Paper 💌
- K-	M Roll Paper Width :	24-in. Roll (609.6mm) 🔹
		Roll Paper Options
		O Size Options Defaults
	ОК	Cancel Apply Help

Enhanced Printing Options

Select the width of the loaded roll in the Roll Paper Width list—in this case, click 10-in. Roll (254.0mm).

12 Click **OK** to close the **Information** dialog box.

13 In **C Borderless Printing Method**, click **F Print Image with Actual Size**.

14 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings ." →P.161

Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS)

This topic describes how to print borderlessly at actual size based on the following example.



 When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be uneven at the edges. If you require higher image quality, select No from the Automatic Cutting list in the Paper Detailed Settings dialog box. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. Once printed and cut, please cut the upper and lower bands with scissors.

Document: Any type

Note

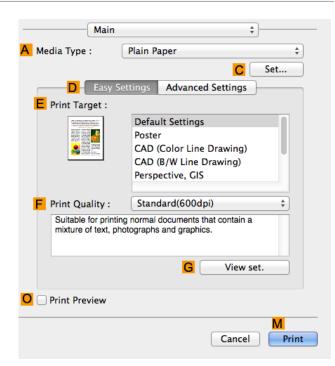
- Page size: 10 × 12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)–Borderless
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Canon Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

• Paper sizes supported for borderless printing are indicated by -Borderless. Note

- Click **FOK** to close the dialog box. 4
- 5 In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.
- 6 Choose **Print** in the application menu.

7

Access the Main pane.



8 In the A Media Type list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Canon Heavyweight Coated Paper.

9 Select the print target in the E Print Target list.



 When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere for borderless printing and the Cutter Unit touches printing surfaces that are not dry yet, it may damage the paper or the edge of the document that is cut, depending on frequency of use. In this kind of situation, change the ink drying time in **Between Pages** in the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box.

10 Access the **Page Setup** pane.

Page	Setup 🔹		
A Paper Source :	Roll Paper \$		
B Roll Width :	24 in. (609.6mm) \$		
D 🗹 Enlarged/Redu	uced Printing		
F 💿 Fit Roll Pape	r Width		
G OScaling :	100 🗘 % (5 - 600)		
H Borderless Printing			
J	ntered		
K	es at Top or Bottom		
L C. Rotate Pa	age 90 degrees		
N 🗾 🗆 Free Lay	out		
	Cancel Print		

Enhanced Printing Options

11 Select and click a roll paper in the **A Paper Source** list.

Select the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer for **B Roll Width**. In this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)** is selected.

12 Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



• For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings ." →P.281

Borderless Printing

Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows)	
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows) Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS)	91
Borderless Printing at Actual Size Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows) Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS)	81

Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size

Take advantage of borderless printing to print documents such as posters (made up mainly of photos or images) without a surrounding margin, or border.

In regular printing, a margin required by the printer is added around the original. With borderless printing, you can print documents without the margin, so that the printed image covers the entire surface of the paper.

- Borderless printing is only available with rolls.
- Paper you can use for borderless printing is restricted to particular types of paper and rolls of particular widths. (See "Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.") →P.365
- Although it normally prints borderless on the top, bottom, left, and right (4-edge borderless), in the following cases, it becomes borderless only on the left and right (2-edge borderless) because the top and bottom of the printed image are not automatically cut.
 - When paper where the borderless printing is described as two edges only in the **Paper Reference Guide** (paper where printed image areas cannot be cut cleanly) is selected
 - When the following settings are made in the printer control panel
 - Cutting Mode is Manual
 - CutDustReduct. is On
 - When auto cut is configured as not performed in the printer driver
 - Borderless printing is not possible if details such as crop marks and margins are included as data on the periphery of the original.
 - If the length of the image to print is short, then since the roll paper is fed out to a prescribed length before cutting in order to prevent cutting problems and ejection problems, the trailing edge of the roll paper might not be printed borderless.
 - These features cannot be used in combination with borderless printing: special page layouts, centering originals, and printing cut lines on rolls.
 - If Fit Paper Size or Print Image with Actual Size (Windows only) is selected while performing borderless printing, Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper) cannot be selected. Note that if borderless printing is possible, then even if the original is rotated 90 degrees, it will be printed by automatically rotating the page by 90 degrees.

Choose the method of borderless printing that suits the original, as desired.

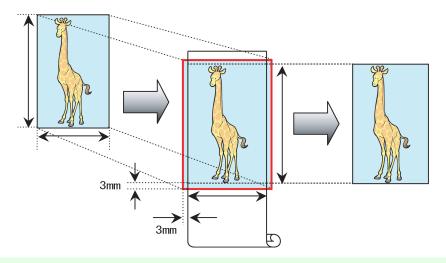
Important

Fit Paper Size

Enhanced Printing Options

Borderless Printing

Enlarge or reduce the original to match the size of the paper you are using.



Note

• The printer driver automatically enlarges originals 3 mm (0.12 in) past the dimensions of the paper on each side. The 3 mm portion beyond the edge on each side is not printed.

For instructions on borderless printing of photos, images, and other documents to match the paper size, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

• Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows) → P.88



• To perform borderless printing with resizing to fit the paper size on Mac OS, select borderless in **Paper Size** and use **Scale to fit paper size** in the **Paper Handling** panel provided by the OS. For more information, see the Mac OS User Manual.

Paper Handl	ing \$	
	Collate pages	
Pages to Print:	All pages \$	
Page Order:	Automatic \$	
[Scale to fit paper size	
Destination Paper Size:	Suggested Paper: ISO A4 \$	
	Scale down only	
	Cancel	Print

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before borderless printing to match the paper size, based on the following example.



• When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be uneven at the edges. If you require higher image quality, select **No** from the **Automatic Cutting** list in the **Roll Paper Options** dialog box. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. Once printed and cut, please cut the upper and lower bands with scissors.

- · Document: Any type
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Canon Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

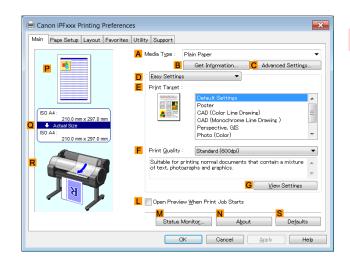
iPF685

1 In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.



If you can specify the margin, as in Microsoft Word, set the margin at 0 mm. For instructions on specifying the margin, refer to the software documentation.

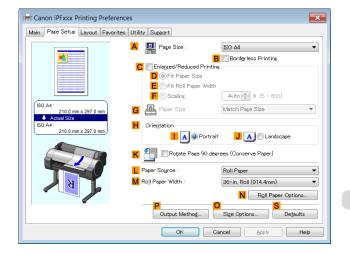
- 2 Choose **Print** in the application menu.
- 3 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications .") → P.164
- 4 Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



5 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click **Canon Heavyweight Coat**ed **Paper**.

- **6** Select the print target in the **E Print Target** list.
 - When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere for borderless printing and the Cutter Unit touches printing surfaces that are not dry yet, it may damage the paper or the edge of the document that is cut, depending on frequency of use. In this kind of situation, change the ink drying time using the following procedure.
 - Click Advanced Settings in Media Type.
 - · Select an ink drying time in the list for the Between Pages setting of Drying Time.

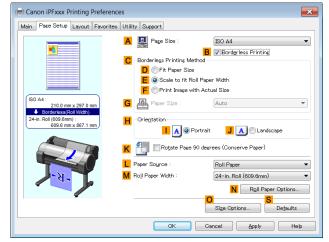
Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



89

8 In the A Page Size list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click 10"x12".

- 9 Select and click a roll paper in the **L** Paper Source list.
- **10** Select the **B** Borderless Printing check box to display the Information dialog box.



- **11** Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list—in this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**.
 - **12** Click **OK** to close the **Information** dialog box.
- 13 In C Borderless Printing Method, click D Fit Paper Size.
- 14 Click Match Page Size in the G Paper Size list.
- **15** Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width

Take advantage of borderless printing to print documents such as posters (made up mainly of photos or images) without a surrounding margin, or border.

In regular printing, a margin required by the printer is added around the original. With borderless printing, you can print documents without the margin, so that the printed image covers the entire surface of the paper.

- · Borderless printing is only available with rolls.
- Paper you can use for borderless printing is restricted to particular types of paper and rolls of particular widths. (See "Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.") →P.365
- Although it normally prints borderless on the top, bottom, left, and right (4-edge borderless), in the following cases, it becomes borderless only on the left and right (2-edge borderless) because the top and bottom of the printed image are not automatically cut.
 - When paper where the borderless printing is described as two edges only in the **Paper Reference Guide** (paper where printed image areas cannot be cut cleanly) is selected
 - When the following settings are made in the printer control panel
 - Cutting Mode is Manual
 - CutDustReduct. is On
 - · When auto cut is configured as not performed in the printer driver

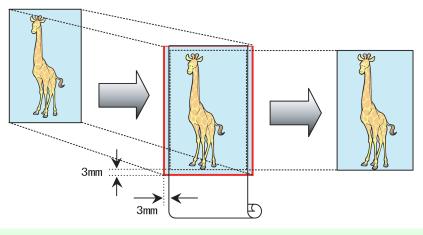


- Important
 - Borderless printing is not possible if details such as crop marks and margins are included as data on the periphery of the original.
 - If the length of the image to print is short, then since the roll paper is fed out to a prescribed length before cutting in order to prevent cutting problems and ejection problems, the trailing edge of the roll paper might not be printed borderless.
 - These features cannot be used in combination with borderless printing: special page layouts, centering originals, and printing cut lines on rolls.
 - If Fit Paper Size or Print Image with Actual Size (Windows only) is selected while performing borderless printing, Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper) cannot be selected. Note that if borderless printing is possible, then even if the original is rotated 90 degrees, it will be printed by automatically rotating the page by 90 degrees.

Choose the method of borderless printing that suits the original, as desired.

Scale to fit Roll Paper Width

Enlarge or reduce the original as a whole to match the roll paper width.



• You can combine this function with rotating pages 90 degrees before printing so that the original width (relative to portrait orientation) matches the roll paper width in borderless printing.

For instructions on borderless printing of photos, images, and other documents to match the roll paper width, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows) → P.91
- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS) → P.93

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before borderless printing to match the roll width, based on the following example.



• When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be uneven at the edges. If you require higher image quality, select **No** from the **Automatic Cutting** list in the **Roll Paper Options** dialog box. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. Once printed and cut, please cut the upper and lower bands with scissors.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Canon Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

Enhanced Printing Options

1

3

4

In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.

Note •

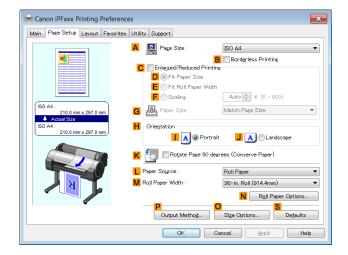
 If you can specify the margin, as in Microsoft Word, set the margin at 0 mm. For instructions on specifying the margin, refer to the software documentation.

- 2 Choose **Print** in the application menu.
 - Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications .") →P.164
 - Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

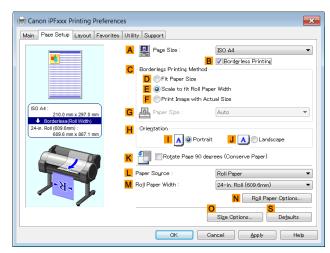
Canon iPFxxx Printing Prefe Main Page Setur Layout Fay	
Main Page Setup Layout Fave	rites Utility Support Media Type : Plain Paper B Get Information C Advanced Settings E Fryst Target :
SO A4 : 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm → Actual Size SO A4 : 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	Default Setting: A Poster Poster Val Color Line Drawing) III CAD (Monochrome Line Drawing) III Prospective, GIS Photo (Color)
	Print Quality: Standard (600dpi) Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics. Use Settings
	Concel Apply Help

5 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click **Canon Heavyweight Coat**ed Paper.

- **6** Select the print target in the **E Print Target** list.
 - When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere for borderless printing and the Cutter Unit touches printing surfaces that are not dry yet, it may damage the paper or the edge of the document that is cut, depending on frequency of use. In this kind of situation, change the ink drying time using the following procedure.
 - Click Advanced Settings in Media Type.
 - · Select an ink drying time in the list for the Between Pages setting of Drying Time.
 - 7 Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



- 8 In the A Page Size list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click ISO A4.
- 9 Select and click a roll paper in the **L Paper Source** list.
- **10** Select the **B** Borderless Printing check box to display the Information dialog box.



- Select the width of the loaded roll in the Roll Paper Width list—in this case, click 10-in. Roll (254.0mm).
- **12** Click **OK** to close the **Information** dialog box.
- 13 In C Borderless Printing Method, make sure E Scale to fit Roll Paper Width is selected.
- 14 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings ." →P.161

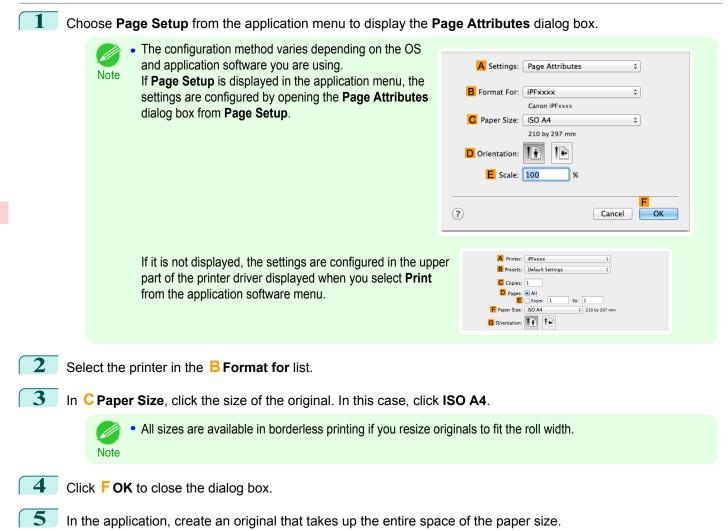
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before borderless printing to match the roll width, based on the following example.



When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be uneven at the edges. If you require higher image quality, select **No** from the **Automatic Cutting** list in the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. Once printed and cut, please cut the upper and lower bands with scissors.

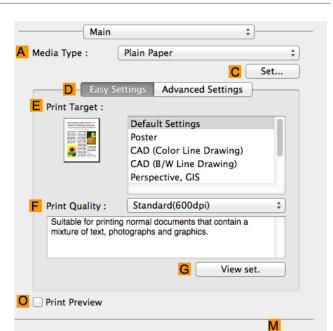
- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Canon Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)



6 Choose **Print** in the application menu.

7

Access the Main pane.



Cancel

Print

8 In the A Media Type list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Canon Heavyweight Coated Paper.

9 Select the print target in the E Print Target list.



 When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere for borderless printing and the Cutter Unit touches printing surfaces that are not dry yet, it may damage the paper or the edge of the document that is cut, depending on frequency of use. In this kind of situation, change the ink drying time in **Between Pages** in the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box.

10 Access the **Page Setup** pane.

Page S	etup 🔹			
A Paper Source :	Roll Paper \$			
B Roll Width :	24 in. (609.6mm) ‡			
D Senlarged/Reduced Printing				
F 💿 Fit Roll Paper Width				
G Scaling : 100 🗘 % (5 - 600)				
Η 🗌 Borderless Print	ting			
J 📃 🗆 Print Cent	tered			
K 🚆 🗌 No Spaces at Top or Bottom				
📙 🗍 🗌 Rotate Page 90 degrees				
N 🗾 🗆 Free Layo	ut			
	Cancel Print			

11 Select and click a roll paper in the **A Paper Source** list.

Select the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer for B Roll Width. In this case, 10 in. (254.0mm) is selected.

Borderless Printing

Note

13 Select the **D** Enlarged/Reduced Printing check box.

- Image: Select the H Borderless Printing check box.

 This ensures that F Fit Roll Paper Width is automatically selected in D Enlarged/Reduced Printing.
- **15** Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.

Printing banners or at other non-standard sizes

Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing) Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Windows) Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS)	. 98
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes	104

Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing)

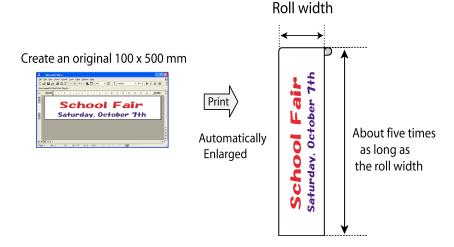
On this printer, large-format printing of up to 18.0 m is available using rolls.

If you use Print Plug-In for Office or PosterArtist, you can easily print maximum 18.0 m vertical or horizontal banners. (Refer to "Print Plug-In for Officefeatures (Windows)" →P.236) and "Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals" →P.41).) However, you may not be able to print 18.0 m due to restrictions in the settable document size according to the application software.

Fit Roll Paper Width

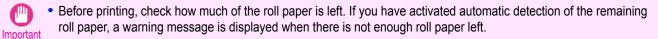
To match the width of vertical and horizontal banners with the width of rolls, use the printer driver function for automatically enlarging/reducing and printing.

For example, if you automatically enlarge a document created with application software such as Microsoft Word, you can print the full width of the roll easily.



For instructions on printing vertical or horizontal banners, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS) → P.101



- If not much ink is left, prepare replacement ink tanks.
- To print at a higher level of quality, in the printer driver, choose **High** or **Highest** in Print Quality, and choose **Unidirectional Printing** as the direction of printing.

Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Windows)

By automatic enlargement of a document created with an application software by the printer driver, you can print maximum 18.0 m vertical or horizontal banners.

However, you may not be able to print 18.0 m due to restrictions in the settable document size according to the application software.

This topic describes how to print a banner about five times as long as the roll width based on the following example.

- · Document: A horizontal banner created in Microsoft Word
- Page size: Non-standard (100×500 mm [3.9×19.7 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 16 in (406.4 mm)

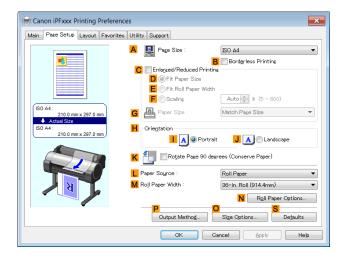
The print procedure is as follows.

- Register a Custom Paper Size in the printer driver. Call a non-standard paper size registered in the printer driver with Custom Paper Size. Once you register Custom Paper Size, you then can select it repeatedly from the paper size list. Custom Paper Size can be set up to 18.0 m.
- 2. In the application, create an original in the size you registered.
- 3. Print the banner, using the settings that correspond to banners.

Registering a Custom Paper Size

This example describes how to register a paper size that is horizontally elongated and suitable for banners in either horizontal or vertical format.

- Display the printer driver dialog box. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu .") →P166
- 2 Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



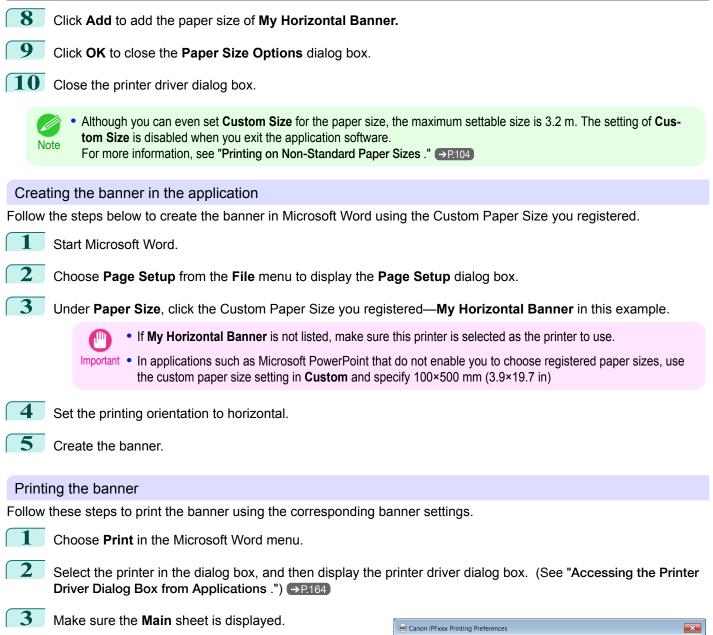
3 Select and click a roll paper in the **L** Paper Source list.

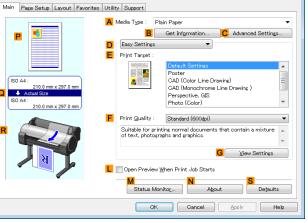
4 Click O Size Options to display the Paper Size Options dialog box.

5 Enter a desired paper name in **Custom Paper Size Name**. **My Horizontal Banner** is used in this example.

In Units, click mm.

Under Paper Size, enter 100 in Width and 500 in Height.





4 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

- 5 After confirming that D Easy Settings is selected, click Poster in the E Print Target list.
 - Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.

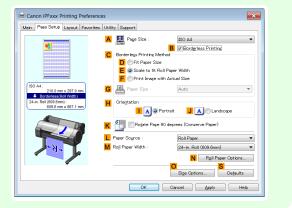
Canon iPFxxx Printing Prefere	inces
Main Page Setup Layout Favor	es Utility Support
	🗛 🛄 Page Size : ISO A4 🗸
	Borderless Printing
	C Enlarged/Reduced Printing
	D Fit Paper Size
	E Fit Roll Paper Width
	E Scaling Auto 🐳 % (5 - 600)
ISO A4 : 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	G Paper Size : Match Page Size 🔻
Actual Size ISO A4 :	
210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	I A @ Portrait J A Candscape
	K 🔄 🔲 Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)
	L Paper Source : Roll Paper 🗸
в	M Roll Paper Width : 36-in. Roll (914.4mm) 🔹
	N Roll Paper Options
	P Output Methog Size Options Defaults
	OK Cancel Apply Help

In the **A Page Size** list, click the size you registered, **My Horizontal Banner**.

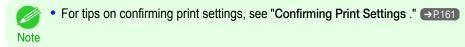
8 Select the C Enlarged/Reduced Printing check box.



 If the C Enlarged/Reduced Printing check box is not displayed on the Page Setup sheet, clear the B Borderless Printing check box.



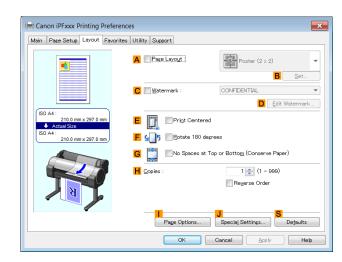
- 9 Select and click a roll paper in the **L Paper Source** list.
- **10** After you click **E Fit Roll Paper Width**, the **Information** dialog box is displayed.
- **11** Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list. In this case, click **16-in. Roll (406.4mm)**, and then click **OK**.
- **12** Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



If printing is unsuccessful, you may be able to print after completing the following setting.

1

On the **Layout** sheet, click **J** Special Settings to display the Special Settings dialog box.



2 In the FineZoom Settings list, click Yes.

Parameter	Settings
Spooling at Printer Driver	Auto
FineZoom Settings B	Auto
Preview Switching C	Off
Application Color Matching Priority	On
Fast Graphic Process	On
Reduce Print Unevenness	On
Adjust Faint Lines	On
spooling at Printer Driver	Auto
pooling at Printer <u>D</u> river	Auto

Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS)

By automatic enlargement of a document created with an application software by the printer driver, you can print maximum 18.0 m vertical or horizontal banners.

This topic describes how to print a banner about five times as long as the roll width based on the following example.

- Document: An original designed for a horizontal banner
- Page Size: Non-standard (100×500 mm [3.9×19.7 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 16 inches (406.4 mm)

The print procedure is as follows.

1. In the application, create an original in the format of a horizontal or vertical banner.

2. In Page Setup, register Custom Paper Sizes.

Once you register **Custom Paper Sizes**, you then can select it repeatedly from the paper size list. **Custom Paper Sizes** can be set up to 18.0 m.

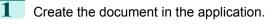
3. Print the banner, using the settings that correspond to banners.

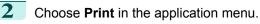


 The following instructions are for OS X v10.7. The method of setting up non-standard paper sizes varies depending on the version and settings of Mac OS X.

1 ---

This example describes how to register and print using a page size that is horizontally elongated and suitable for banners in either horizontal or vertical format.





Register a Custom Paper Sizes

A Printer:	iPFxxxx	\$
B Presets:	Default Settings	\$
C Copies:	1	
D Pages:		
E	From: 1 to: 1	
F Paper Size:	ISO A4 ‡ 210 by 29	7 mm
G Orientation:		

3 Select the printer in the A Printer list.

4	Click Manage Custom Sizes in the F Paper Size list
	to display the Custom Paper Sizes dialog box.

Cu	ustom Paper Sizes		
Untitled	Paper Size:	210 mm Width	297 mm Height
	Non-Printable		\$
	5 mm Left	5 mm Top 5 mm	5 mm Right
+ - Duplicate		Bottom	
?		Cancel	ОК

5 Double-click **Untitled** in the list at left, and then enter a name for the page size you want to register. Here, enter **100*500**.

If the Untitled size is not listed at left, click + below the list.

- 6 Under Paper Size, enter 100 in Width and 500 in Height. Here, measurements are entered in millimeters.
- **7** Specify the margins by entering **3** in **Non-Printable Area**. Here, too, measurements are entered in millimeters.
- 8 Click OK to close the Custom Paper Sizes dialog box.
- 9 In the F Paper Size list, click the size of the original. In this case, click 100*500, the size you registered.
- 10 In **GOrientation**, click the icon of the document in landscape orientation.
- 11 If you configured the settings using the Page Attributes dialog box, click OK to close the dialog box.

Print the banner

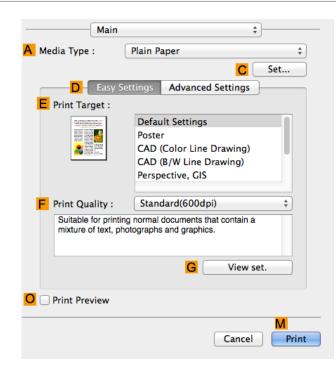
Follow the steps below to print the banner using the corresponding banner settings.

Choose **Print** in the application menu.

102

User's Guide

2 Access the Main pane.



- 3 In the A Media Type list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
- **4** Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.
- 5 Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.
 - 6 Access the Page Setup pane.

Page Set	tup 🗘			
A Paper Source :	Roll Paper \$			
B Roll Width :	24 in. (609.6mm) \$			
D 🗹 Enlarged/Reduced Printing				
F 💽 Fit Roll Paper W	Vidth			
G OScaling :	100 🗘 % (5 – 600)			
📙 🗌 Borderless Printi	ng			
J	red			
K	at Top or Bottom			
L 🗍 🗆 Rotate Page	e 90 degrees			
N 🗾 🗆 Free Layour	t			
	Cancel Print			

7 Select and click a roll paper in the **A Paper Source** list.

8 Select the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer for **B Roll Width**. In this case, **16 in. (406.4mm)** is selected.

9 Select the D Enlarged/Reduced Printing check box.

O Click F Fit Roll Paper Width.

11 Confirm the print settings, and click **M Print** to start printing.

```
Note
```

For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings ." → P.281

Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes

For printing on non-standard size paper, first register the paper size in the printer driver. Once you register a paper size, you then can select it repeatedly from the paper size list. The paper size can be set up to 18.0 m.



• In Windows, although you can even set **Custom Size** for the paper size, the maximum settable size is 3.2 m. The setting of **Custom Size** is disabled when you exit the application software.

For instructions on specifying non-standard paper sizes for printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Windows) → P.104
- Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS) →P.107

Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Windows)

For printing on non-standard size paper, first register the paper size in the printer driver. Call a non-standard paper size registered in the printer driver with Custom Paper Size. Once you register Custom Paper Size, you then can select it repeatedly from the paper size list. Custom Paper Size can be set up to 18.0 m.



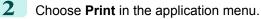
• Although you also can set **Custom Size** for the paper size temporarily, the maximum settable size is 3.2 m. Also, the setting of **Custom Size** is disabled when you exit the application software.

Registering and Printing With a Custom Paper Size

This topic describes how to register a non-standard paper size by the name of **430 mm Square** and print based on the following example.

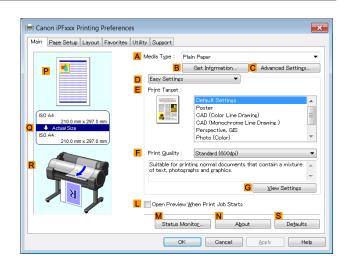
- Document: Any Type
- Page Size: A square sheet (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in])
- Paper: Sheets
- Media Type: Any type
- Paper Size: A square sheet (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in])



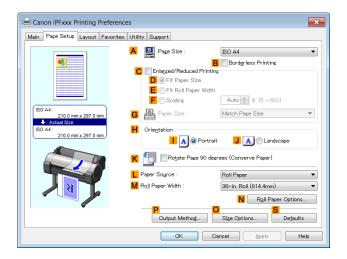


3 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications .") → P.164

4 Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



- 5 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
- 6 After confirming that D Easy Settings is selected, select from the E Print Target list.
 - Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



- 8 Click O Size Options to display the Paper Size Options dialog box.
- 9 Enter a desired paper name in Custom Paper Size Name. 430 mm Square is used in this example.
- **10** Select **mm** in **Units**.
- **11** Enter **430** (16.9 in) in both **Width** and **Height**.

• If you select the **Fix the Ratio of the Width to Height** check box, after you enter a value in either **Width** or **Height**, the other value will be automatically applied based on the original aspect ratio.

- 12 Click Add to register 430 mm Square.
- **13** Click **OK** to close the **Paper Size Options** dialog box.
- **14** Click Manual in the **L** Paper Source list.
- **15** In the **APage Size** list, click the size you added,**430 mm Square**.

16 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

```
Note
```

• For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings ." → P.161

Printing by using Custom Size

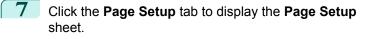
This section describes how to print using **Custom Size** based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: Square of non-standard dimensions (430×430 mm [16.9×16.9 in])
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Any type
- Paper Size: A square sheet (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in])
- Load the square paper (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in]) in the printer.
- 2 Choose **Print** in the application menu.
- 3 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications .") → P.164
- **4** Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

🖶 Canon iPFxxx Printing Preferences
Main Page Setup Layout Favorites Utility Support
A Media Type : Plain Paper B Get Information C Advanced Settings Easy Settings Fryint Target :
SO A4: 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm SO A4: 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm
Print Quality: Standard (6000dpi) Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.
View Settings
OK Cancel Apply Heb

- - 5 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
 - 6 After confirming that D Easy Settings is selected, select from the E Print Target list.

User's Guide



Main Page Setup	Layout Favorite	es Utility	Support	
		A	🛄 Page Size :	ISO A4
6				B Borderless Printing
		C	Enlarged/Reduced Print	ing
			D Fit Paper Size	
			E Fit Roll Paper Widt	
(ISO A4 :			F 🔘 Scaling	Auto 💭 % (5 - 600)
	nm x 297.0 mm	G	Paper S <u>i</u> ze :	Match Page Size
Actual Size	;	–	Orientation	
	nm x 297.0 mm	P	-	
			I 🔊 🔍 Portra	ait <mark>J</mark> A Candscape
	19	K	📳 🔲 Ro <u>t</u> ate Page 90 de	egrees (Conserve Paper)
		L Pa	aper So <u>u</u> rce :	Roll Paper
К		M R	oll Paper Width :	36-in. Roll (914.4mm)
				N Roll Paper Options
	•	_	Output Method	O Size Options Defaults

- 8 Click Manual in the **L** Paper Source list.
- 9 Click Custom Size in the A Page Size list to display the Custom Size Settings dialog box.
- **10** Confirm that **mm** is selected in **Units**.
- **11** Enter **430** (16.9 in) in both **Width** and **Height**.
- **12** Click **OK** to close the **Custom Size Settings** dialog box.
- **13** Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS)

For printing on non-standard size paper, first register the paper size in the printer driver.

Call a non-standard paper size registered in the printer driver with Custom Paper Sizes .

Once you register Custom Paper Sizes, you then can select it repeatedly from the paper size list.

Custom Paper Sizes can be set up to 18.0 m.

This topic describes how to register a non-standard paper size by the name of **430*430** and print based on the following example.

Document: Any Type

Note

- Page Size: A square sheet (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in])
- Paper: Sheets
- Media Type: Any type
- Paper Size: A square sheet (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in])



• The following instructions are for OS X v10.7. The method of setting up non-standard paper sizes varies depending on the version and settings of Mac OS X.

Create the document in the application.



3 Choose Print in the application menu.	
S Choose Print in the application menu.	A Printer: iPFxxxx \$
	B Presets: Default Settings \$
	C Copies: 1
	D Pages: All From: 1 to: 1
	Paper Size: ISO A4 210 by 297 mm
	G Orientation:
4 Select the printer in the A Printer list.	

Click Manage Custom Sizes in the F Paper Size list
to display the Custom Paper Sizes dialog box.

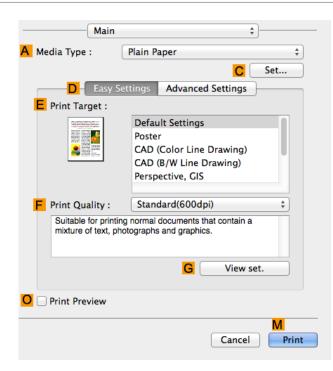
Custom Paper Sizes				
Untitled	Paper Size:	210 mm Width	297 mm Height	
	Non-Printable Area:		÷	
+ - Duplicate	5 mm Left	5 mm Top 5 mm Bottom	5 mm Right	
?		Cancel	ОК	

- **6** In **Paper Size**, enter the height and width of the original. Here, enter **430 mm** in **Height** and **Width**.
- 7 In **Non-Printable Area**, enter **5** for the top and side margins and **23** for the bottom margin. Here, measurements are entered in millimeters.
- 8 Double-click **Untitled** in the list at left in the **Custom Paper Sizes** dialog box and enter the paper name—in this case, **430*430**.
- **9** Click **OK** to close the **Custom Paper Sizes** dialog box.
- **10** In the **F** Paper Size list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **430*430**, the size you registered.
- **11** If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5

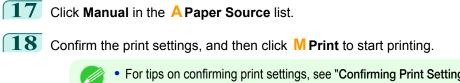
iPF685

12 Access the **Main** pane.



- **13** In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
- 14 After confirming that **D** Easy Settings is selected, select from the **E** Print Target list.
- 15 Make your selection in the **F** Print Quality list.
- **16** Access the **Page Setup** pane.

Page S	Setup +		
A Paper Source :	Roll Paper 🗧		
B Roll Width :	24 in. (609.6mm) \$		
D 🗹 Enlarged/Redu	iced Printing		
F 💿 Fit Roll Paper	rWidth		
G 🔾 Scaling :	100 🗘 % (5 – 600)		
H Borderless Printing			
J	itered		
K	es at Top or Bottom		
📙 🛄 🗌 Rotate Pa	age 90 degrees		
N 🗾 🗆 Free Layo	out		
	Cancel Print		



• For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings ." → P.281

109

Note

Tiling and multiple pages per sheet

Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Windows) Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Mac OS)	
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Windows) Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS)	
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Windows) Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS)	
Printing Posters in Sections Printing Large Posters (Windows)	

Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other

By arranging originals from word-processing or spreadsheet programs or web browser screen shots next to each other on single sheets, you can create highly expressive presentation materials, easy-to-understand meeting materials, and a variety of other printed documents.

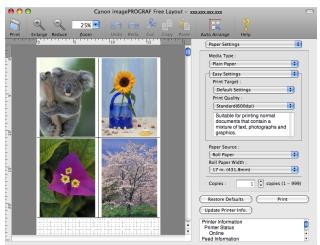
• Free Layout (Windows)

Besides combining multiple pages in a single-page layout, you can combine originals from multiple files—even multiple source applications—in a single-page layout.



• Free Layout (Mac OS)

Besides combining multiple pages in a single-page layout, you can combine originals from multiple files—even multiple source applications—in a single-page layout.



For instructions on arranging originals from multiple applications, refer to the following topics.

- Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Windows) →P.111
- Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Mac OS) →P113

Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Windows)

This topic describes how to arrange multiple originals using the Free Layout function.

- **1** Choose **Print** in the application menu.
- 2 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications .") → P.164
- 3 Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

Canon iPFxxx Printing Preferences	ility Support
	Media Type : Plain Paper Get Information Advanced Settings Easy Settings Print Target :
SO A4 : 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm ↓ Actual Size ISO A4 : 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	Default: Settings A Poster CAD (Color: Line Drawing) CAD (Monochrome Line Drawing) Perspective, OIS Photo (Color) Y
* 🐢 '	Print Quality : Standard (600dpi) Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics. G View Sattings
	Cpen Preview When Print Job Starts M Status Monitor N About Defaults
	OK Cancel Apply Help

4 Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.

Canon iPFxxx Printing Prefer		
Main Page Setup Layout Favor	ites Utility Support	
	A Page Layout	Poster (2 x 2)
	C Watermark :	
		D Edit Watermark
ISO A4 : 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	E	rered
ISO A4 : 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	F 905 Edate 180) degrees
	G	at Top or Botto <u>m</u> (Conserve Paper)
	H Copies :	1 🚔 (1 – 999)
N		Re <u>v</u> erse Order
	Page Options	J Special Settings Defaults
	ОК	Cancel Apply Help

- **5** Select the **A Page Layout** check box.
 - 6 Click Free Layout in the A Page Layout list.
 - When you attempt to print, the **imagePROGRAF Free** Layout window is displayed. (At this point, the document will not be printed yet.)



- **8** Edit and rearrange the image in the **imagePROGRAF Free Layout** window as desired.
 - Note
- Without closing the imagePROGRAF Free Layout window, repeat steps 1–7 to arrange originals from multiple applications on the same page.
- For instructions on editing and rearranging images, refer to the imagePROGRAF Free Layout help topic.





112

• For details on imagePROGRAF Free Layout functions, see "Free Layout." → P.202

Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Mac OS)

This topic describes how to use the Free Layout function to arrange multiple originals next to each other before printing.



Choose **Print** in the application menu.



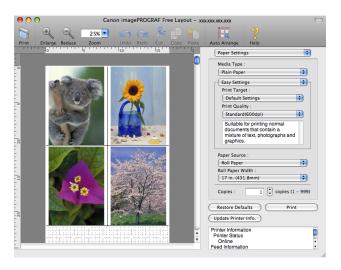
Access the Page Setup pane.

Page Setup \$			
A Paper Source :	Roll Paper \$		
B Roll Width :	24 in. (609.6mm) \$		
D 🗹 Enlarged/Reduced Printing			
F 💽 Fit Roll Paper V	Width		
G OScaling :	100 🗘 % (5 - 600)		
H Borderless Printing			
J	ered		
K	at Top or Bottom		
📙 📋 🗌 Rotate Page 90 degrees			
N 🗾 🗆 Free Layou	ıt		
	Cancel Print		

- 3
 - Select the **N Free Layout** check box.



- Click **M Print**.
- 5 The Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout window is displayed.



6 Edit and rearrange the image in the Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout window as desired.



- Without closing the Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout window, repeat steps 1 to 4 to arrange originals from multiple applications on the same page.
- For instructions on editing and rearranging images, refer to the Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout help topic.

Print from the Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout menu.

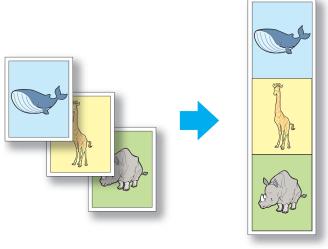


Printing Multiple Pages Continuously

You can print multiple pages as a single continuous image, without margins between pages.

Banner Printing

Enhanced Printing Options



- This feature is only available with rolls. It cannot be used when printing on sheets.
- Important
 When using Banner Printing, some of the settings are disabled, including Borderless Printing, Enlarge/Reduce Printing, and Layout.

For instructions on printing multiple pages continuously, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your operating system.

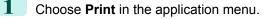
- Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Windows) →P.114)
- Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS) →P.116

Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Windows)

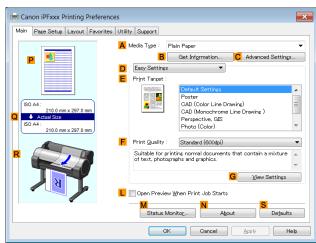
This topic describes how to print multiple pages as a single continuous image, without margins between pages.



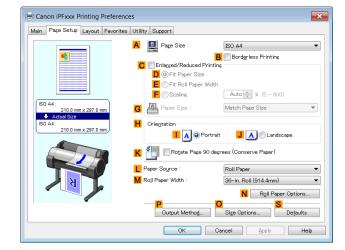
- This feature is only available with rolls. It cannot be used when printing on sheets.
- Important
 When using Banner Printing, some of the settings are disabled, including Borderless Printing, Enlarge/Reduce Printing, and Layout.



2 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications .") → P.164



- **4** In the **A Media Type** list, click the type of paper that is loaded.
 - 5 Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



- **6** Select and click a roll paper in the **L** Paper Source list.
- Click N Roll Paper Options to display the Roll Paper Options dialog box.

Roll Paper Options	
Automatic Cutting :	Yes
B 🔲 Banner Printing	
OK Cancel	Defaults Help

- 8 Select the **B** Banner Printing check box.
- 9 Click OK.

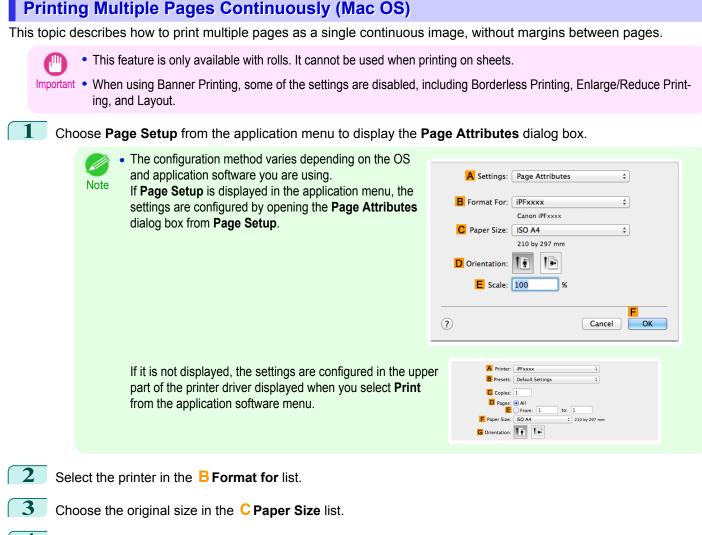
Note

10 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings ." →P.161

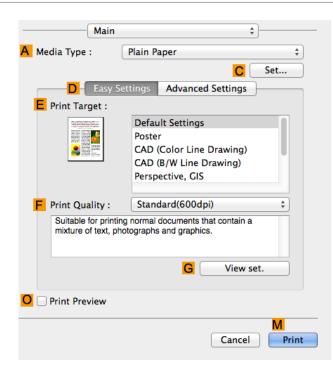
115

Enhanced Printing Options



- 4 Click **FOK** to close the dialog box.
- 5 Choose **Print** in the application menu.

6 Access the Main pane.



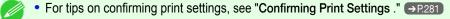
- 7 In the **A Media Type** list, click the type of paper that is loaded.
- 8 Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.
- 9 Make your selection in the **F** Print Quality list.
- **10** Access the **Page Setup** pane.

Page Setup \$			
A Paper Source :	Roll Paper \$		
B Roll Width :	24 in. (609.6mm) \$		
D 🗹 Enlarged/Redu	ced Printing		
F 💿 Fit Roll Paper	Width		
G Scaling : 100 (‡) % (5 – 600)			
H 🗌 Borderless Prin	ting		
📕 👖 🗆 Print Cen	tered		
K	K 🕎 🗌 No Spaces at Top or Bottom		
L CRotate Page 90 degrees			
N <u> </u> Free Layo	ut		
	Cancel Print		



11 Click **Roll Paper (Banner)** in the **A Paper Source** list.

12 Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.

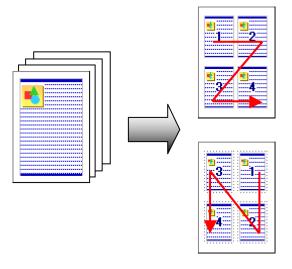


117

Note

Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet

To conserve paper, you can print several pages of the original on a single sheet by reducing the original and dividing the sheet into areas for each page.



Page Layout

Specify a number of pages of the original to print on a single sheet, in a layout of multiple pages per sheet.



• This function cannot be combined with the following options.

- Important Borderless Printing
 - Scaling Originals (Windows)
 - Banner Printing (Windows)
 - When printing using this function, the **Print Centered** setting is disabled.
 - You can print up to 16 pages of the original on a single sheet.
- Note You can also change the page layout order and print page boundary lines, as desired.

For instructions on printing multiple pages per sheet, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Windows) → P.118
- Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS) → P.120

Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Windows)

This topic describes how to print four pages of originals together on a single sheet based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A3 (297.0×420.0 mm [11.7×16.5 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])



Choose **Print** in the application menu.

Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications .") →P.164

Main Page Setup Layout Favor	
	A Media Type : Plain Paper B Get Information C Advanced Settings D Easy Settings F Print Target :
SO A4 : 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm ↓ Actual Size ISO A4 : 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	Default Settings Poster Poster CAD (Color Like Drawing) CAD (Monochrome Line Drawing) Perspective, 035 Photo (Color) V
	Print Quality: Standard (6004pi) Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics. G Ulew Settings
	L Open Preview When Print Job Starts M Status Monitor N About Defaults
	OK Cancel Apply Help

- 4 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
- 5 Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.
- 6 Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.
 - 7 Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.

Main Page Setup Layout Favor	ites Utility Support	
	🗛 📃 Page Size :	ISO A4
	C Enlarged/Reduced Pr	
	D @ Fit Paper Size	
	E O Fit Roll Paper W	
(ISO A4 :	F 🔘 Scaling	Auto 🐳 % (5 - 600)
210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	G 🚇 Paper Size :	Match Page Size 💌
Actual Size	H Orientation	
210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	 	rtrait 📕 🔥 Landscape
A B	K ER Rotate Page 90) degrees (Conserve Paper)
	L Paper Source :	Roll Paper 🗸
И	M Roll Paper Width :	36-in. Roll (914.4mm) 🗸
		Roll Paper Options
· ·	Output Method	O Size Options Defaults
	ОК	Cancel Apply Help

- **8** In **A Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application software. In this case, click **ISO A3**.
 - 9 Select and click a roll paper in the **L** Paper Source list.
- Select the width of the loaded roll in the MRoll Paper Width list—in this case, ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm).

11 Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.

Main Page Setup Layout Favo	rites Utility Support	
	A Page Layout	Poster (2 × 2)
		B Set
	C Watermark :	CONFIDENTIAL
		D Edit Watermark
SO A4 : 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm ↓ Actual Size		
ISO A4 : 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	F 💶 🦻 🔲 Botate 180	degrees
	G	at Top or Botto <u>m</u> (Conserve Paper)
	H Copies :	1 🔷 (1 - 999)
K		Reverse Order
	Page Options	J Special Settings Defaults

iPF685

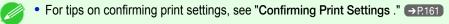
12 Select the **A Page Layout** check box.

13 Click 4 Pages/Sheet in the A Page Layout list.



You can select the layout order for placing four pages on a sheet and a frame border in the Page Layout
Printing dialog box by clicking B Set. If you select a pattern to print borders, the size of the images are reduced about 5% to create space for the printed border. If None is selected, then the images are not reduced
for printing.

14 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS)

This topic describes how to print four pages of an original on a single sheet, based on the following example.

• Document: Any Type

Note

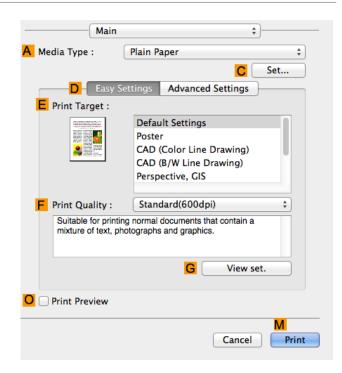
- Page size: A3 (297.0 × 420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- · Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1	Choose Pa	age Setup from the application menu to display	the Page Attributes dialog box.	
	Note Note	 The configuration method varies depending on the orand application software you are using. If Page Setup is displayed in the application menu, settings are configured by opening the Page Attribution dialog box from Page Setup. 	A Settings: Page Attributes +	
		If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the part of the printer driver displayed when you select from the application software menu.		
2	2 Select the printer in the B Format for list.			
3	In the C Paper Size list, click the size of the original. In this case, click ISO A3 .			
4	Click FOK to close the dialog box.			
5	Choose P	rint in the application menu.		
6	Access the	e Layout pane.	Layout A Pages per Sheet: 1 B Layout Direction: C Border: None Two-Sided: Off F Flip horizontally Cancel Print	
7	Click 4 in t	he A Pages per Sheet list.		

Note Y

• You can choose the layout order and specify a boundary line for the four pages in **B** Layout Direction and **C** Border.

8 Access the Main pane.



iPF685

- **9** In the **AMedia Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
- $\mathbf{10}$ Make your selection in the E **Print Target** list.
- (11)Make your selection in the **F** Print Quality list.
- **12** Access the **Page Setup** pane.

Page Setup \$			
A Paper Source :	Roll Paper 🗧		
B Roll Width :	24 in. (609.6mm) ‡		
D Senlarged/Reduc	ced Printing		
F 💽 Fit Roll Paper	Width		
G OScaling :	100 🗘 % (5 - 600)		
📙 🗌 Borderless Print	ing		
J	J 🛛 Print Centered		
K 🛄 🗌 No Spaces	K 🛄 🗌 No Spaces at Top or Bottom		
📙 🗍 🗌 Rotate Page 90 degrees			
N 🕞 Free Layout			
	Cancel Print		

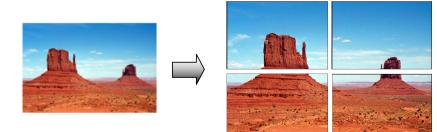
- **13** Select and click a roll paper in the **A Paper Source** list.
- $\mathbf{14}$ Select the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer for **B Roll Width**. In this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)** is selected.

[15] Confirm the print settings, and then click M Print to start printing.



Printing Posters in Sections

You can enlarge an original to print it in sections on several sheets. By assembling the printed sheets, you can create a poster larger than the maximum supported paper size of the printer.



Page Layout

Choose poster printing.



• When printing using this function, the **Print Centered**, **Watermark**, **No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)**, and **Page Options** settings are disabled.

For instructions on printing large posters, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

• Printing Large Posters (Windows) → P.123



This method of poster printing is supported in Windows.

Printing Large Posters (Windows)

You can enlarge an original to print it in sections on several sheets. By assembling the printed sheets, you can create a poster larger than the maximum supported paper size of the printer. This topic describes how to enlarge an A2 original for printing it in sections on four sheets, based on the following example.

- Document: Poster
- Page size: A2 (420.0×594.0 mm [16.5 × 23.4 in])
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper Size: A2 (420.0 × 594.0 mm [16.5 × 23.4 in])

Choose **Print** in the application menu.



Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications .") →P.164

🖶 Canon iPFxxx Printing Preferences	·
Main Page Setup Layout Favorites	Jtility Support
	A Media Type : Plain Paper B Get Information C Advanced Settings
	D Easy Settings
	E Print Target :
ISO A4 :	Poster CAD (Color Line Drawing)
210.0 mm x 297.0 mm ↓ Actual Size ISO A4 : 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	CAD (Monochrome Line Drawing) Perspective, GIS Photo (Color)
	F Print Quality : Standard (600dpi)
R	Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.
	G View Settings
	Copen Preview When Print Job Starts
	M Status Monitor N About Defaults
	OK Cancel Apply Help

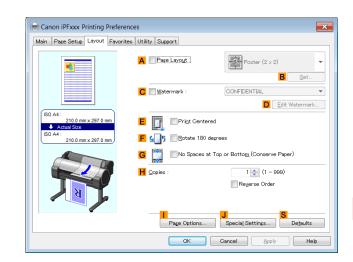
iPF685

- **4** In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
- **5** Click **Poster** in the **E Print Target** list.
- 6 Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.

🖶 Canon iPFxxx Printing Preference	es	×
Main Page Setup Layout Favorites	Utility Support	
	A Page Size : ISO A4	•
	B Bord <u>e</u> rless Printing	
	C Enlarged/Reduced Printing D O Fit Paper Size	
	E Fit Roll Paper Width	
	F Scaling Auto 🚔 % (5 - 600	
ISO A4 : 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	G A Paper Size : Match Page Size	*
Actual Size		
210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	H Orientation	cane
A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A	K 🛅 🔲 Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)	
	Paper Source : Roll Paper	
N N	Roll Paper Width : 36-in. Roll (914.4mm)	•
	N Roll Pape	er Options
a	P S	
	Output Method Size Options	De <u>f</u> aults
	OK Cancel Apply	Help

- **7** In **A Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A2**.
- Click Manual in the L Paper Source list.

9 Click the Layout tab to display the Layout sheet.



10 Select the **A Page Layout** check box.

11 Click **Poster (2 x 2)** in the **A Page Layout** list.

- Follow the steps below to print only a portion of the poster as divided for printing.
- Click **B** Set under **A** Page Layout to display the Pages to Print dialog box.
 - On the Pages to Print dialog box, clear the check boxes of the portion you do not want to print.
 - Click **OK** to close the **Pages to Print** dialog box.

12 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings ."
 P.161

 Note

Centering originals

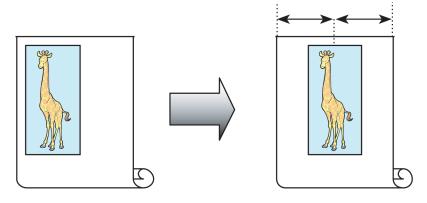
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Windows) Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS)	
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Windows) Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS)	

Printing Originals Centered on Rolls

You can print originals centered on a page—for example, if the paper is larger than the original, or if you are reducing the original.

Print Centered

If you use originals smaller than the roll paper width, you can center them relative to the width when printing.



For instructions on centering originals when printing on rolls, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Windows) →P.126
- Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS) →P.128

Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Windows)

This topic describes how to center originals before printing on rolls based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

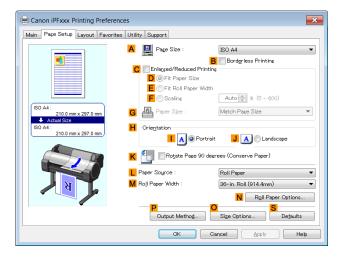


Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications .") → P164

(Canon iPFxxx Printing Prefere Main Page Setup Layout Favori	
P	A Media Type : Plain Paper B Get Information C Advanced Settings Easy Settings F Print Target :
SO A4 : 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm ↓ Actual Size ISO A4 : 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	Default Setting: Poster Poster CAD (Color Line Drawing) CAD (Monochrome Line Drawing) Proter Photo (Color)
R	Print Quality: Standard (6000dpi) Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics. G View Settings
	L Open Preview When Print Job Starts M Status Monitor N About S Defaults OK Cancel Apply Help

- 4 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
- 5 Select the print target in the **E Print Target** list.
- 6 Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



- In the A Page Size list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click ISO A4 or Letter (8.5"x11").
- 8 Select and click a roll paper in the **L Paper Source** list.
- Select the width of the loaded roll in the MRoll Paper Width list—in this case, ISO A3/A4 Roll (297.0mm).

Enhanced Printing Options

10 Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.

Main Page Setup Layout Favo	rites Utility Support	
	A Page Layout	Poster (2 × 2)
	C Watermark :	
ISO A4 :		D Edit Watermark
210.0 mm x 297.0 mm Actual Size ISO A4 :	E	ered
210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	F 95 Ectate 180	degrees
	G	at Top or Botto <u>m</u> (Conserve Paper)
	H Copies :	1 🔿 (1 - 999)
N		Re <u>v</u> erse Order
	Page Options	J Special Settings Defaults

11 Select the **E Print Centered** check box.

12 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS)

This topic describes how to center originals before printing on rolls based on the following example.

• Document: Any Type

Note

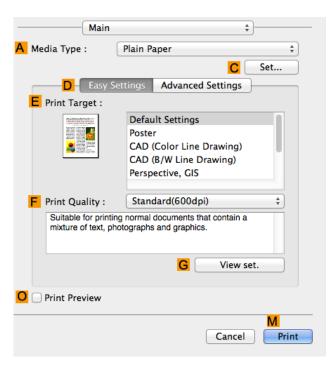
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

Choose Page Setup from the application menu to display the Page Attributes dialog box.

 The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using. If Page Setup is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the Page Attributes dialog box from Page Setup. 	A Settings: Page Attributes \$ B Format For: iPFxxxx \$ Canon iPFxxxx \$ C Paper Size: ISO A4 \$ 210 by 297 mm \$ Orientation: Im Im E Scale: 100 %
If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upp part of the printer driver displayed when you select Print from the application software menu.	? Cancel OC A Printer: B Preset: Default Settings C Copies: 1 B Pages: OHI F Pagers: 604 F Pager Size: 10 by 297 mm C Orientation: Image:

2 Select the printer in the **B** Format for list.

- In **C Paper Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
- Click **FOK** to close the dialog box.
- **5** Choose **Print** in the application menu.
 - 6 Access the **Main** pane.



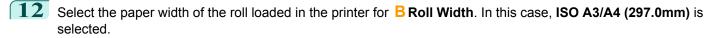
- 7 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
- **8** Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.
- 9 Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.

11 Select and click a roll paper in the **A Paper Source** list.

10 Access the **Page Setup** pane.

Page Setup +					
A Paper Source :	Roll Paper \$				
B Roll Width :	24 in. (609.6mm) ‡				
D Senlarged/Reduce	D Senlarged/Reduced Printing				
F 💽 Fit Roll Paper V	Vidth				
G OScaling :	100 🗘 % (5 - 600)				
📙 🗌 Borderless Printi	ng				
J	ered				
K	at Top or Bottom				
L 🛄 🗌 Rotate Pag	e 90 degrees				
N 🗾 🗆 Free Layou	t				
	Cancel Print				

Note





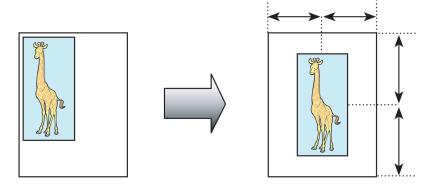
14 Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.

Printing Originals Centered on Sheets

You can print originals centered on a page—for example, if the paper is larger than the original, or if you are reducing the original.

Print Centered

If you use paper larger than the original size or print originals after reduction, the printed images may be aligned in the upper-left corner of the paper. In this case, you can center originals on sheets when printing.



For instructions on centering originals when printing on sheets, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Windows) →P.130
- Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS) → P.132

Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Windows)

This topic describes how to reduce an original 50% for printing centered on a sheet.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])



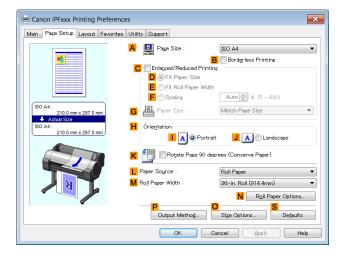
Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications .") →P.164

Canon iPFxxx Printing Prefere	
	A Media Type : Plain Paper B Get Information C Advanced Settings Easy Settings Frint Tarcet :
SO A4 : 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm ↓ Actual Size SO A4 : 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	Default. Settings A Poster Poster CAD (Color Line Drawing) E CAD (Monochrome Line Drawing) Perspective, GS Photo (Color) V
	Print Quality: Standard (600dpi) Suitable for printine normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics. G View Settings
	L Open Preview When Print Job Starts M Status Monitor, N About Defaults OK Cancel Apply Heb

Enhanced Printing Options

- 4 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
- 5 Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.
- 6 Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



- 7 In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
- 8 Select the C Enlarged/Reduced Printing check box.
- 9 Click Match Page Size in the G Paper Size list.
- 10 Click F Scaling and enter 50.
- [11] Click Manual in the L Paper Source list.

12 Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.

Main Page Setup Layout Favo	ites Utility Support	
	A Page Layout	Poster (2 × 2)
	C Watermark :	
ISO A4 : 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	E Pri <u>a</u> t Cente	D Edit Watermark
ISO A4 : 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	F GD 5 R otate 180	
	2012 2012	at Top or Botto <u>m</u> (Conserve Paper)
N	H Copies :	1 🔷 (1 - 999)
	Page Options	J Special Settings Defaults

iPF685

13 Select the **E Print Centered** check box.

14 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



• If you have selected **Manual** as the paper source, follow the instructions on the printer control panel to enter the paper size.



• For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings ." →P.161

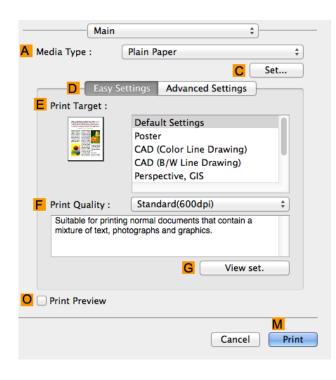
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS)

This topic describes how to center originals for printing on sheets, based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: Non-standard

1	Cho	oose Page Setup from the application menu to display the	Page Attributes dialog box.
		 The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using. If Page Setup is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the Page Attributes dialog box from Page Setup. 	A Settings: Page Attributes B Format For: iPFxxxx Canon iPFxxxx Canon iPFxxxx Paper Size: ISO A4 210 by 297 mm Orientation: imited in the imited i
		If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the u part of the printer driver displayed when you select Prin from the application software menu.	Presets: Default Settings 🗘
2	Sel	lect the printer in the B Format for list.	
3	In the C Paper Size list, click the size of the original. In this case, click ISO A4 - for Paper Tray (Large Mar- gins).		
4	Clic	ck F OK to close the dialog box.	

- **5** Choose **Print** in the application menu.
- 6 Access the **Main** pane.



7 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

8 Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.

Enhanced Printing Options

Centering originals

9 Make your selection in the F Print Quality list.	
10 Access the Page Setup pane.	Page Setup \$
	A Paper Source : Roll Paper \$
	B Roll Width : 24 in. (609.6mm) \$
	 Enlarged/Reduced Printing F • Fit Roll Paper Width S Scaling : 100 + % (5 - 600) H • Borderless Printing J • Print Centered K • No Spaces at Top or Bottom I • Rotate Page 90 degrees N • • Free Layout
 Click Manual in the A Paper Source list. Select the J Print Centered check box. 	
$\boxed{13}$ Confirm the print settings, and then click M Print to start	printing.
• For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Note"	ng Print Settings ." →P.281
• If you have selected Manual as the paper source, follow the paper size.	the instructions on the printer control panel to enter the

Conserving roll paper

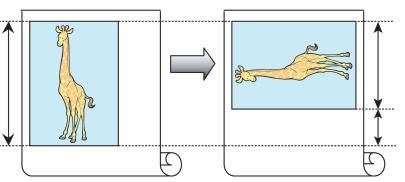
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Windows) Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS)	135
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Windows) Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS)	. 139

Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees

You can conserve roll paper by specifying particular settings as suitable for your original.

Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)

When originals are printed in portrait orientation, the original is rotated 90 degrees before printing if it fits within the roll width. This enables you to conserve paper.



• If the page would exceed the roll paper width after rotation, use this function with Scale to fit Roll Paper Width to print rotated pages.

For tips on conserving roll paper, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Windows) → P.135
- Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS) →P.136

Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Windows)

This topic describes how to conserve paper by rotating originals 90 degrees before printing, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3×11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

This example illustrates how to rotate an A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3×11.7 in) original in portrait orientation 90 degrees to fit within the width of A3/A4 roll paper (297.0 mm [11.7 in]), which enables you to conserve paper.



Choose **Print** in the application menu.

Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications .") →P.164

Enhanced Printing Options

Main Page Setup Layout Favor	ites Utility Support	_
	A Media Type : Plain Paper	•
P 📩	B Get Information C Advanced Settings	
	D Easy Settings	
	E Print Target :	
	Default Settings	
	Poster	
(ISO A4 :	CAD (Color Line Drawing)	Ξ
210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	CAD (Monochrome Line Drawing)	
ISO A4 :	Perspective, GIS	-
210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	Photo (Color)	
	F Print Quality : Standard (600dpi)	•
R	Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture	
	of text, photographs and graphics.	
		× .
	G <u>V</u> iew Settings	
Copen Preview When Print Job Starts		
4	M N S	
	Status Monitor About Defaults	

- 4 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
- 5 Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.

Canon iPFxxx Printing Preferences		
Main Page Setup Layout Favorite	es Utility Support	
	A 📃 Page Size : ISO A4	•
	B Borderless Printing	
	C Enlarged/Reduced Printing	
	D @ Fit Paper Size	
	E Fit Roll Paper Width E Scaling Auto (5 - 600)	
(IS0 A4 :		
210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	G Paper Size : Match Page Size	*
Actual Size ISO A4 :	-Orientation	
210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	O A Contract	
	K 🔄 🔲 Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)	
	Paper Source : Roll Paper	•
В	Roll Paper Width : 36-in. Roll (914.4mm)	•
	N Roll Paper Op	otions
	P Output Methog Size Options De	efaults
	OK Cancel Apply	Help

- In the A Page Size list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click ISO A4 or Letter (8.5"x11").
- **7** Select and click a roll paper in the **L** Paper Source list.
- 8 Select the width of the loaded roll in the MRoll Paper Width list—in this case, ISO A3/A4 Roll (297.0mm).
- **9** Select the **K** Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper) check box.
- **10** Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings ." → P.161

Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS)

136 This topic describes how to conserve roll paper by rotating originals 90 degrees before printing, based on the following example.

Document: Any Type

Note

• Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])

User's Guide

- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

This example illustrates how to rotate an A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in) original in portrait orientation 90 degrees to fit within the width of A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in]), which enables you to conserve paper.

1 (1 Choose Page Setup from the application menu to display the Page Attributes dialog box.			
	Note	 The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using. If Page Setup is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the Page Attributes dialog box from Page Setup. 	Settings: Page Attributes Format For: IPFxxxx Canon IPFxxxx Canon IPFxxxx Paper Size: ISO A4 210 by 297 mm Orientation: Image: Cancel Scale: 100 %	
		If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upp part of the printer driver displayed when you select Print from the application software menu.	Copies: Default Settings : Pages All Settings : Pages All Settings : Copies: 1 Pages All Settings : Copies: 1 Pages All Settings : Copies: 1 Pages Set So A4 : 210 by 297 mm Copientation: I :	
2	Select the _l	printer in the BFormat for list.		

- **3** In **C Paper Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
- 4 Click **FOK** to close the dialog box.
- 5 Choose **Print** in the application menu.

6 Access the **Main** pane.

- 7 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
- 8 Access the Page Setup pane.

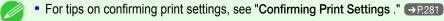
Page S	etup +		
A Paper Source :	Roll Paper	*	
B Roll Width :	24 in. (609.6mm)	*	
D 🗹 Enlarged/Reduced Printing			
F • Fit Roll Paper Width			
G Scaling : 100 🗘 % (5 - 600)			
H Borderless Printing			
J 🛛 Print Centered			
K			
📙 📋 🗆 Rotate Page 90 degrees			
N 🗾 🗆 Free Layo	ut		
	Cancel O	Print	

Select and click a roll paper in the A Paper Source list.
Select the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer for B Roll Width. In this case, ISO A3/A4 (297.0mm) is selected.

11 Select the **L** Rotate Page 90 degrees check box.

Note

12 Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.

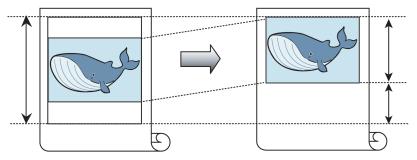


Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins

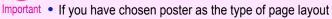
You can conserve roll paper by specifying particular settings as suitable for your original.

• No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)

You can print without feeding the paper for blank portions of originals if there are top and bottom margins in originals. This enables you to conserve as much paper as the size of the margins.



Printing without the top and bottom margins is not supported in the following cases.



- Even during borderless printing, you can print without the top and bottom margins.
- Printing without the top and bottom margins may cause inconsistency in the size of printed documents, depending on the layout of images or text in your originals.

For tips on conserving roll paper, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Windows) → P139
- Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS) → P.141

Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Windows)

This topic describes how to conserve roll paper when printing originals that have a top and bottom margin, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

Choose **Print** in the application menu.

2 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications .") →P.164

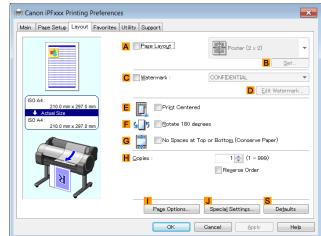
Main Page Setup Layout Favorit	es Utility Support
P	A Media Type : Plain Paper B Get Information C Advanced Settings Easy Settings Frynt Target :
SO A4 : 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm ↓ Actual Size ISO A4 : 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	Opfault Settings A Poster CAD (Monochrome Line Drawing) E CAD (Monochrome Line Drawing) Perspective, GIS Photo (Color)
	F Print Quality : Standard (600dpi) Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics. G View Settings
	Copen Preview When Print Job Starts M Status M About Defaults

- **4** In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
 - 5 Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.

🖶 Canon iPFxxx Printing Preferences		
Main Page Setup Layout Favorit	es Utility Support	
	🗛 📃 Page Size :	ISO A4
		B Borderless Printing
	C Enlarged/Reduced Pr	inting
	D @ Fit Paper Size	
	E O Fit Roll Paper W	
	F 🔘 Scaling	Auto 🔷 🕺 (5 - 600)
ISO A4 : 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm Actual Size	G Paper Size :	Match Page Size 💌
ISO A4 :	H Orientation	
210.0 mm x 297.0 mm		rtrait <mark>J (A)</mark> Candscape
	K 📶 🗖 Rotate Page 90) degrees (Conserve Paper)
	Paper Source :	Roll Paper 🔹
Б	M Roll Paper Width :	36-in. Roll (914.4mm) 🔹
		Roll Paper Options
	Output Method	O Size Options Defaults
	ОК	Cancel Apply Help

- **6** In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
 - 7 Select and click a roll paper in the **L Paper Source** list.
- Select the width of the loaded roll in the MRoll Paper Width list—in this case, ISO A3/A4 Roll (297.0mm).

9 Click the Layout tab to display the Layout sheet.



Enhanced Printing Options

10 Select the **G**No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper) check box.

11 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



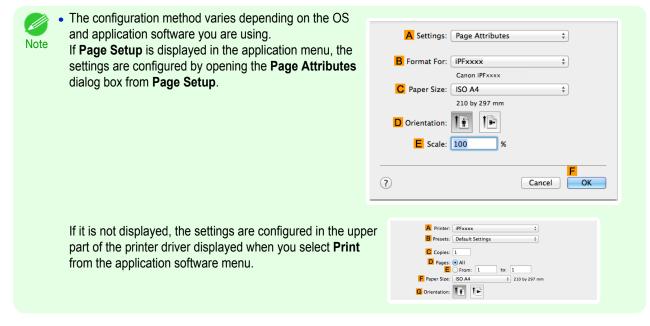
For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings ." →P.161

Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS)

This topic describes how to conserve roll paper when printing originals that have a top and bottom margin, based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- · Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

Choose Page Setup from the application menu to display the Page Attributes dialog box.



Select the printer in the **B** Format for list.

2

÷

С

View set.

Cancel

CAD (Color Line Drawing)

CAD (B/W Line Drawing) Perspective, GIS

G

Standard(600dpi)

Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.

2

F Print Quality :

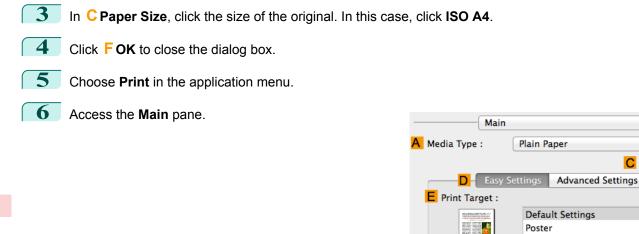
O 🗌 Print Preview

÷

Set...

÷

М Print



In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

Pag	• Setup +
A Paper Source :	Roll Paper
B Roll Width :	24 in. (609.6mm)
D Senlarged/Re	duced Printing
F 💽 Fit Roll Pag	er Width
G 🔾 Scaling :	100 🗘 % (5 - 600)
📙 🗌 Borderless P	rinting
J	entered
K	ces at Top or Bottom
L 📶 🗌 Rotate	Page 90 degrees
N 🗾 🗆 Free La	yout
	Cancel Prin

8 Access the Page Setup pane.

9 Select and click a roll paper in the **A Paper Source** list.

10 Select the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer for B Roll Width. In this case, ISO A3/A4 (297.0mm) is selected.

11 Select the **KNo Spaces at Top or Bottom** check box.

12 Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.

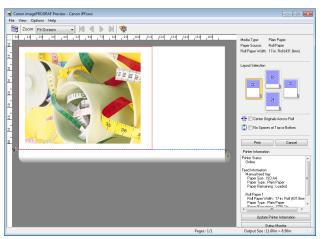


Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing

You can check the print layout on the preview screen.

Open Preview When Print Job Starts (Windows)

While viewing the preview screen, you can also adjust orientation or other settings, and your changes will be instantly applied on the preview screen.

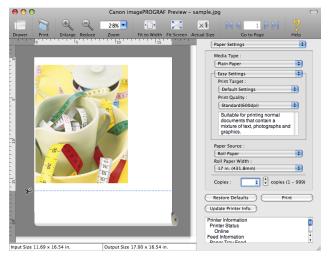




Under some settings and in some environments, PageComposer may be started.

• Preview (Mac OS)

While viewing the preview screen, you can also adjust layout or size settings, and your changes will be instantly applied on the preview screen.



For instructions on how to check the layout before printing, refer to the following topics:

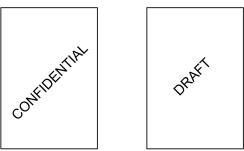
- Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (Windows) →P.162
- Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (Mac OS) → P281

Other useful settings

Printing With Watermarks Printing with Watermarks—COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Windows)	
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Windows) Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS)	
Using Favorites → Using Favorites (Windows) → Using Favorites (Mac OS)	
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Windows) Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS)	

Printing With Watermarks

You can add watermarks (background images) to documents that require special handling.



Watermark

Watermarks are applied to all pages of your document.

• Watermarks are not printed if you select poster as the type of page layout.

Important

The following watermarks are provided:

- CONFIDENTIAL
- COPY
- DRAFT
- FILE COPY
- FINAL
- PRELIMINARY
- PROOF
- TOP SECRET

You can also create your own watermarks. Specify the following options to customize your watermark.

- Watermark string: Specify the font, size, color, and so on. Surround the watermark with a frame, if desired.
- Watermark position: Specify the position on the page, the angle, and so on.
- Watermark printing method: Specify whether to print the watermark superimposed or under the document image. You can also print the watermark only on the first page, if desired.

Watermarks are supported in Windows.

Note • In addition to the provided watermarks, you can create up to 50 original watermarks.

For detailed instructions on printing with watermarks, refer to the following topics:

Printing with Watermarks—COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Windows) →P.146

Printing with Watermarks—COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Windows)

This topic describes how to print with watermarks, based on the following example of printing with a **FILE COPY** watermark.

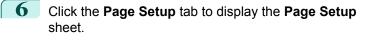
- Document: Any type
- Page size: A2 (420.0×594.0 mm [16.5 × 23.4 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in[)
- Choose **Print** in the application menu.
- 2 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications .") →P.164
 - Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

Main	Page Setup	Layout	Favorites	Utility	Support			
	A4 :	n x 297.0 m	nm	D	Aedia Type : B Easy Settings Print Target : B B B B B B B B B B B B B	Plain Paper Get Information C Poster CAD (Color Line Drawin CAD (Monochrome Line Perspective, GIS		•
R	A4: 210.0 mr	n x 297.0 m		E		Photo (Color) Standard (600dpi) inting normal documents tha graphs and graphics.		•
4	ય	J			Open Preview M Status M	G w When Print Job Starts Ionito <u>r</u>	View Settings	

4 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

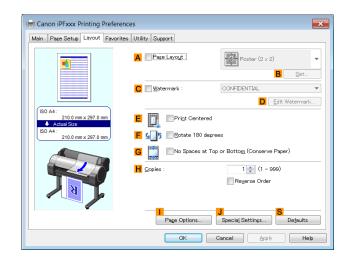
5 Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.

• You can check the settings values selected in the **E Print Target** list by clicking **G View Settings**. Note



	rites Utility Support	
	🗛 📃 Page Size :	ISO A4
	C Colored (Determined Determined	B Borderless Printing
	C Enlarged/Reduced Prin D © Fit Paper Size	nting
	E Fit Roll Paper Wid	-tela
	F Scaling	Auto 💉 % (5 - 600)
ISO A4 : 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	G Paper Size :	Match Page Size 🔻
ISO A4 :	H Orientation	
210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	I A O Port	rait 📕 🔥 🔿 🛛 Landscape
	K 🔚 🗆 Rotate Page 90 (degrees (Conserve Paper)
	Paper Source :	Roll Paper
N N N	M Roll Paper Width :	36-in. Roll (914.4mm)
		N Roll Paper Options

- In A Page Size, click the size of the original as specified in the application software. In this case, click ISO A2.
- 8 Select and click a roll paper in the **L** Paper Source list.
- 9 Select the width of the loaded roll in the MRoll Paper Width list—in this case, ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm).
- **10** Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



11 Select the **C Watermark** check box.

12 Click **FILE COPY** in the **Watermarks** list.



 Click D Edit Watermark to open the Edit Watermark dialog box. In the Edit Watermark dialog box, you can create custom watermarks and change the position and angle of watermarks.

13 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



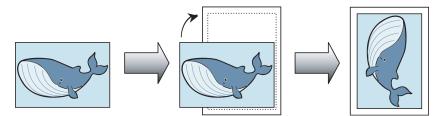
For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings ." (>P.161)

Note

You can specify the original orientation to match the orientation of the paper for printing.

Orientation

Paper is usually loaded in the printer in portrait orientation. When you have an original in landscape orientation, you can specify the printing orientation so that the original is printed in landscape orientation.



Rotate 180 degrees

The original is rotated 180 degrees to print it upside down.

• Mirror

A mirror image of the original is printed.

For instructions on specifying the original orientation before printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Windows) → P.148
- Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS) → P.149

Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Windows)

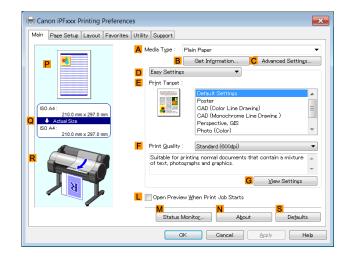
This topic describes how to print an original in landscape orientation after matching the paper orientation, based on the following example.

- Document: An original in landscape orientation
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

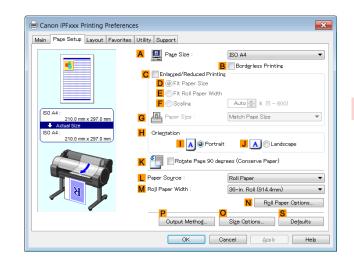
1 Choose **Print** in the application menu.

Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications .") P.164





- 4 In the A Media Type list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
- **5** Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.
- 6 Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.
 - 7 Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



- 8 In the A Page Size list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click ISO A4 or Letter (8.5"x11").
- 9 In HOrientation, click J Landscape.
- **10** Select and click a roll paper in the **L** Paper Source list.
- **11** Select the width of the loaded roll in the **M Roll Paper Width** list—in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.
- **12** Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

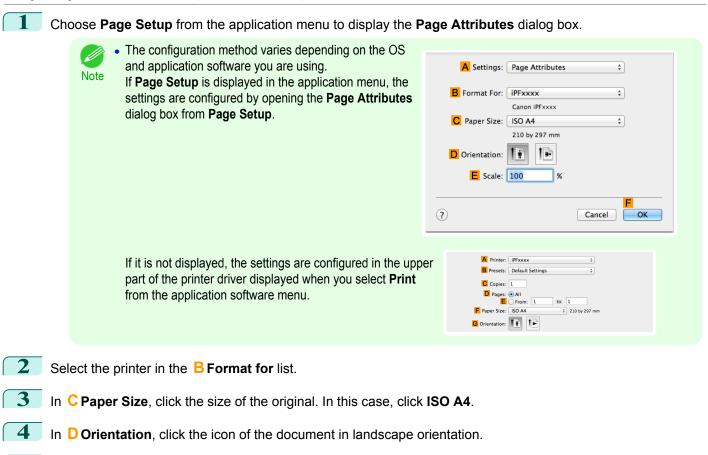


For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings ." → P.161

Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS)

This topic describes how to print an original in landscape orientation after matching the paper orientation, based on the following example.

- Document: An original in landscape orientation
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

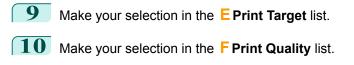


- 5 Click **FOK** to close the dialog box.
- 6 Choose **Print** in the application menu.
 - Access the Main pane.

Main	*]
A Media Type :	Plain Paper 🛟
	C Set
D Easy Se	ettings Advanced Settings
E Print Target :	
	Default Settings
	Poster
	CAD (Color Line Drawing)
	CAD (B/W Line Drawing)
	Perspective, GIS
F Print Quality :	Standard(600dpi) ‡
	g normal documents that contain a otographs and graphics.
	G View set.
O Print Preview	
	Cancel Print

150

8 In the AMedia Type list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.



Access the **Page Setup** pane.

Page S	etup +
A Paper Source :	Roll Paper \$
B Roll Width :	24 in. (609.6mm) ‡
D 🗹 Enlarged/Redu	ced Printing
F 💿 Fit Roll Paper	Width
G OScaling :	100 🗘 % (5 - 600)
H 🗌 Borderless Prin	ting
J	tered
K	s at Top or Bottom
L 🗐 🗆 Rotate Pa	ge 90 degrees
N <u> </u> Free Layo	but
	M
	Cancel

12 Select and click a roll paper in the **A Paper Source** list.

13 Select the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer for **B** Roll Width. In this case, ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm) is selected.

14 Confirm the print settings, and then click **M** Print to start printing.



For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings ." →P.281

Using Favorites

You can register print settings as **Favorites** to reuse settings from a particular job that met your expectations, or settings for a particular page size that you will use repeatedly.

Favorites

Registering a favorite for later use. You can choose the settings you have registered from a list before printing, and you can check the settings details.



• You can also save the favorite settings as files. Using these files is a convenient way to print under the same conditions on another computer. (In Windows.)

For instructions on using favorites to print, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Using Favorites (Windows) → P.163
- Using Favorites (Mac OS) → P.282

Note

Cutting Roll Paper After Printing

Roll paper can be automatically cut after printing.



• It may not be possible to cut certain types of paper, such as adhesive paper. For details on types of paper that cannot be used with the auto cut feature, see the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "Types of Paper.") → P362

Automatic Cutting

Roll paper is cut automatically after printing. If you prefer, you can print continuously without cutting the roll, or you can print a cut line.

For instructions on cutting roll paper after printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Windows) →P.152
- Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS) → P.153

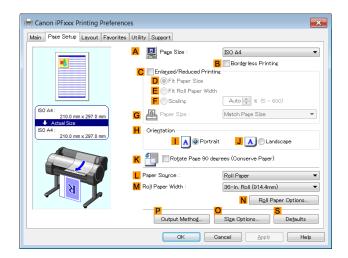
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Windows)

This topic describes how to cut roll paper automatically after printing (using the auto cut function), as well as how to print a cut line for manual cutting.



• The auto cut function is activated on the printer by default and when the printer driver is installed. Follow the steps below to reactivate the function if it is disabled, or to select the setting for printing a cut line instead.

- Choose **Print** in the application menu.
- 2 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications .") →P.164
- 3 Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



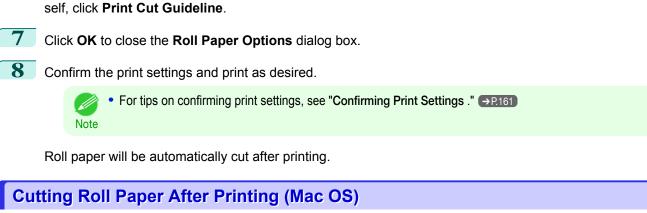
4 Select and click a roll paper in the **L** Paper Source list.

5 Click N Roll Paper Options to display the Roll Paper Options dialog box.

Roll Paper Options	—X —
Automatic Cutting :	Yes 🗸
B 🔲 Banner Printing	
OK Cancel	Defaults Help

Enhanced Printing Options

6



This topic describes how to cut roll paper automatically after printing (using the auto cut function), as well as how to print a cut line for manual cutting.



1

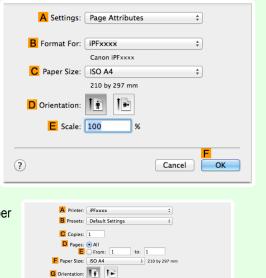
• The auto cut function is activated on the printer by default and when the printer driver is installed. Follow the steps below to reactivate the function if it is disabled, or to select the setting for printing a cut line instead.

To enable automatic cutting, click Yes in the A Automatic Cutting list. If you prefer to cut the paper later your-

Choose Page Setup from the application menu to display the Page Attributes dialog box.



The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using.
 If Page Setup is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the Page Attributes dialog box from Page Setup.



If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.

- 2 Select the printer in the **B** Format for list.
- 3 Choose the original size in the **C Paper Size** list.
- 4 Click **FOK** to close the dialog box.
- **5** Choose **Print** in the application menu.

6 Access the Page Setup pane.

Page S	Setup +
A Paper Source :	Roll Paper \$
B Roll Width :	24 in. (609.6mm) \$
D 🗹 Enlarged/Redu	uced Printing
F 💿 Fit Roll Paper	r Width
G OScaling :	100 🗘 % (5 - 600)
📙 🗌 Borderless Prir	nting
J 🕎 🗆 Print Cer	itered
K	es at Top or Bottom
📙 📶 🗌 Rotate Pa	age 90 degrees
N 🗾 🗆 Free Layo	put
	Cancel Print

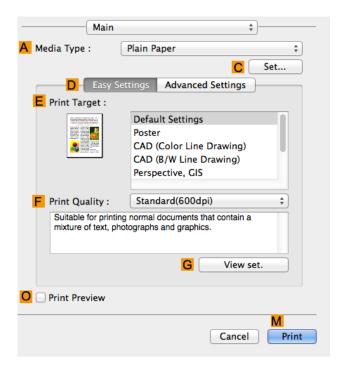
7 Select and click a roll paper in the **A Paper Source** list.



Enhanced Printing Options

Other useful settings

Access the Main pane.



9 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

10	Click C Set to display the Paper Detailed Settings di-
	alog box.

Media Type :	Plain Paper	
Drying Time		
Between Pages :	Printer Default	¢
Between Scans :	Printer Default	ŧ
Roll Paper Margin for Safety		
Near End Margin :	Printer Default	¢
Cut Speed :	Printer Default	ŧ
Automatic Cutting :	Printer Default	ŧ
Mirror		

To enable automatic cutting, click **Printer Default** in the **H** Automatic Cutting list. If you prefer to cut the paper later yourself, click **Print Cut Guideline**.



If the automatic cut function has been deactivated on the printer, change the auto cut setting on the printer
 Control Panel.

- **12** Click **OK** to close the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box.
- **13** Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings ." → P.281

Memo

iPF685

User's Guide

Basic Printing Workflow	15
Enhanced Printing Options	31

Windows Software

Printer Driver	158
Preview	191
Free Layout	202
Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy	225
Print Plug-In for Office	236
→ Status Monitor	512
→ Accounting	517
→ Device Setup Utility	508
Media Configuration Tool	406

Mac OS Software	277
Handling and Use of Paper	361
Control Panel	437
Printer Parts	477
Network Setting	491
Print Job Management	511
Adjustments for Better Print Quality	573
Adjustments for Better Print Quality Maintenance and Consumables	573 589
Maintenance and Consumables	589
Maintenance and Consumables Troubleshooting	589 627

Printer Driver

Printer Driver Settings158Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver160Confirming Print Settings161Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing162Using Favorites163Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications164Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu166Main Sheet167Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box170Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box170View Settings Dialog Box172Color Adjustment Sheet: Color173Object Adjustment Dialog box: Color174Matching Sheet176Object Adjustment Dialog box: Monochrome176Object Adjustment Dialog box: Monochrome176Output Method Dialog box180Paper Size Options Dialog Box181Layout Sheet182Page Options Dialog Box184Special Settings Dialog Box185Favorites Sheet186Utility Sheet187Support Sheet188Settings Summaries Dialog Box188Settings Summaries Dialog Box188Settings Summaries Dialog Box189Device Settings Summaries Dialog Box <th></th> <th></th>		
Confirming Print Settings161Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing162Using Favorites163Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications164Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu166Main Sheet167Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box170Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box170View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application172Color Adjustment Sheet:173Object Adjustment Dialog box: Color174Matching Sheet174Color Adjustment Dialog box: Monochrome176Object Adjustment Dialog box: Monochrome177Page Setup Sheet178Output Method Dialog box180Paper Size Options Dialog Box181Layout Sheet182Page Options Dialog Box184Special Settings Dialog Box185Favorites Sheet186Utility Sheet187Support Sheet188Settings Dialog Box187Support Sheet188Settings Dialog Box187Support Sheet188Settings Summaries Dialog Box189Settings Summaries Dialog Box189	Printer Driver Settings	. 158
Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing162Using Favorites163Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications164Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu166Main Sheet167Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box170Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box170View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application172Color Adjustment Sheet: Color173Object Adjustment Dialog box: Color174Matching Sheet176Object Adjustment Dialog box: Monochrome176Object Adjustment Dialog box: Monochrome177Page Setup Sheet178Output Method Dialog box180Paper Size Options Dialog Box181Layout Sheet182Page Options Dialog Box184Special Settings Dialog Box185Favorites Sheet186Utility Sheet187Support Sheet189Settings Summaries Dialog Box189		
Using Favorites163Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications164Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu166Main Sheet167Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box170Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box170View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application172Color Adjustment Sheet: Color173Object Adjustment Dialog box: Color174Matching Sheet177Page Setup Sheet177Page Setup Sheet178Output Method Dialog Box180Paper Size Options Dialog Box181Layout Sheet182Page Options Dialog Box185Favorites Sheet185Favorites Sheet185Favorites Sheet186Vilility Sheet187Support Sheet187Support Sheet187Support Sheet187Support Sheet187Support Sheet187Support Sheet187Support Sheet188Settings Summaries Dialog Box188Settings Summaries Dialog Box188Settings Summaries Dialog Box189		
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications164Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu166Main Sheet167Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box170Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box170View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application172Color Adjustment Sheet: Color173Object Adjustment Dialog box: Color174Matching Sheet174Color Adjustment Sheet: Monochrome176Object Adjustment Sheet: Monochrome177Page Setup Sheet178Output Method Dialog box180Paper Size Options Dialog Box181Layout Sheet182Page Options Dialog Box185Favorites Sheet185Favorites Sheet186Utility Sheet185Support Sheet187Support Sheet187Support Sheet187Support Sheet187Support Sheet187Support Sheet187Support Sheet188Settings Summaries Dialog Box188Settings Summaries Dialog Box188Settings Summaries Dialog Box188Settings Summaries Dialog Box188		
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu 166 Main Sheet 167 Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box 170 Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box 170 View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application 172 Color Adjustment Sheet: Color 173 Object Adjustment Dialog box: Color 174 Matching Sheet 176 Object Adjustment Dialog box: Monochrome 176 Object Adjustment Dialog box: Monochrome 177 Page Setup Sheet 178 Output Method Dialog box 180 Paper Size Options Dialog Box 181 Layout Sheet 182 Page Options Dialog Box 184 Special Settings Dialog Box 185 Favorites Sheet 186 Utility Sheet 187 Support Sheet 187 Support Sheet 188 Settings Summaries Dialog Box 188	Using Favorites	. 163
Main Sheet167Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box170Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box170View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application172Color Adjustment Sheet: Color173Object Adjustment Dialog box: Color174Matching Sheet174Color Adjustment Sheet: Monochrome176Object Adjustment Dialog box: Monochrome177Page Setup Sheet178Output Method Dialog box180Paper Size Options Dialog Box181Layout Sheet182Page Options Dialog Box185Favorites Sheet186Utility Sheet187Support Sheet186Settings Dialog Box187Support Sheet186Steffings Dialog Box187Support Sheet187Support Sheet188Settings Dialog Box188Settings Summaries Dialog Box189		
Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box170Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box170View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application172Color Adjustment Sheet: Color173Object Adjustment Dialog box: Color174Matching Sheet174Color Adjustment Dialog box: Monochrome176Object Adjustment Dialog box: Monochrome177Page Setup Sheet178Output Method Dialog box180Paper Size Options Dialog Box181Layout Sheet182Page Options Dialog Box185Favorites Sheet186Utility Sheet187Support Sheet187Support Sheet186Settings Dialog Box186Utility Sheet186Support Sheet187Support Sheet187Support Sheet187Support Sheet187Support Sheet188Settings Summaries Dialog Box189	Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu	166
Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box170Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box170View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application172Color Adjustment Sheet: Color173Object Adjustment Dialog box: Color174Matching Sheet174Color Adjustment Dialog box: Monochrome176Object Adjustment Dialog box: Monochrome177Page Setup Sheet178Output Method Dialog box180Paper Size Options Dialog Box181Layout Sheet182Page Options Dialog Box185Favorites Sheet186Utility Sheet187Support Sheet187Support Sheet186Settings Dialog Box186Utility Sheet186Support Sheet187Support Sheet187Support Sheet187Support Sheet187Support Sheet188Settings Summaries Dialog Box189	Main Sheet	167
Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box170View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application172Color Adjustment Sheet: Color173Object Adjustment Dialog box: Color174Matching Sheet174Color Adjustment Sheet: Monochrome176Object Adjustment Dialog box: Monochrome177Page Setup Sheet178Output Method Dialog box180Paper Size Options Dialog Box181Layout Sheet182Page Options Dialog Box184Special Settings Dialog Box185Favorites Sheet186Utility Sheet187Support Sheet187Support Sheet187Support Sheet187Support Sheet188Settings Dialog Box187Support Sheet188Settings Summaries Dialog Box189		
View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application172Color Adjustment Sheet: Color173Object Adjustment Dialog box: Color174Matching Sheet174Color Adjustment Sheet: Monochrome176Object Adjustment Dialog box: Monochrome177Page Setup Sheet178Output Method Dialog box180Paper Size Options Dialog Box181Layout Sheet182Page Options Dialog Box184Special Settings Dialog Box185Favorites Sheet186Utility Sheet187Support Sheet187Support Sheet188Settings Summaries Dialog Box189		
Color Adjustment Sheet: Color173Object Adjustment Dialog box: Color174Matching Sheet174Color Adjustment Sheet: Monochrome176Object Adjustment Dialog box: Monochrome177Page Setup Sheet178Output Method Dialog box180Paper Size Options Dialog Box181Layout Sheet182Page Options Dialog Box184Special Settings Dialog Box185Favorites Sheet186Utility Sheet187Support Sheet188Settings Summaries Dialog Box189		
Object Adjustment Dialog box: Color174Matching Sheet174Color Adjustment Sheet: Monochrome176Object Adjustment Dialog box: Monochrome177Page Setup Sheet178Output Method Dialog box180Paper Size Options Dialog Box181Layout Sheet182Page Options Dialog Box184Special Settings Dialog Box185Favorites Sheet186Utility Sheet187Support Sheet188Settings Summaries Dialog Box189		
Matching Sheet174Color Adjustment Sheet: Monochrome176Object Adjustment Dialog box: Monochrome177Page Setup Sheet178Output Method Dialog box180Paper Size Options Dialog Box181Layout Sheet182Page Options Dialog Box184Special Settings Dialog Box185Favorites Sheet186Utility Sheet187Support Sheet188Settings Summaries Dialog Box189		
Color Adjustment Sheet: Monochrome176Object Adjustment Dialog box: Monochrome177Page Setup Sheet178Output Method Dialog box180Paper Size Options Dialog Box181Layout Sheet182Page Options Dialog Box184Special Settings Dialog Box185Favorites Sheet186Utility Sheet187Support Sheet188Settings Summaries Dialog Box189		
Object Adjustment Dialog box: Monochrome177Page Setup Sheet178Output Method Dialog box180Paper Size Options Dialog Box181Layout Sheet182Page Options Dialog Box184Special Settings Dialog Box185Favorites Sheet185Utility Sheet187Support Sheet188Settings Summaries Dialog Box189		
Page Setup Sheet178Output Method Dialog box180Paper Size Options Dialog Box181Layout Sheet182Page Options Dialog Box184Special Settings Dialog Box185Favorites Sheet186Utility Sheet187Support Sheet188Settings Summaries Dialog Box189		
Output Method Dialog box180Paper Size Options Dialog Box181Layout Sheet182Page Options Dialog Box184Special Settings Dialog Box185Favorites Sheet186Utility Sheet187Support Sheet188Settings Summaries Dialog Box189		
Layout Sheet182Page Options Dialog Box184Special Settings Dialog Box185Favorites Sheet186Utility Sheet187Support Sheet188Settings Summaries Dialog Box189		
Page Options Dialog Box 184 Special Settings Dialog Box 185 Favorites Sheet 186 Utility Sheet 187 Support Sheet 188 Settings Summaries Dialog Box 189	Paper Size Options Dialog Box	. 181
Special Settings Dialog Box185Favorites Sheet186Utility Sheet187Support Sheet188Settings Summaries Dialog Box189		
Favorites Sheet 186 Utility Sheet 187 Support Sheet 188 Settings Summaries Dialog Box 189	Page Options Dialog Box	184
Utility Sheet		
Support Sheet 188 Settings Summaries Dialog Box 189		
Settings Summaries Dialog Box		
5 S	Support Sheet	. 188
Device Settings Sheet	5 · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
	Device Settings Sheet	189

Printer Driver Settings

For instructions on accessing the Windows printer driver, refer to the following topics.

- Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications → P.164
- Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu →P.166

For information on the Windows printer driver settings, refer to the following topics.

Canon iPFxxx Printing Preferences					
Main Page Setup Layout Fav	rites Utility Support				
SO A4: 2100 mm x 2970 mm ▲ ActusiSize SO A4: 2100 mm x 2970 mm	Media Type : Plain Paper Get Information Advanced Settings Easy Settings Print Target : Poster CAD (Monochrome Line Drawing) Perspective, GIS Print Quality : Standard (600dp)				
	Suitable for printine normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.				
	Open Preview When Print Job Starts				
	Status Monitor About Defaults				
	OK Gancel Apply Help				

Main Sheet → P.167

iPF685

You can specify the type of paper, color processing, print quality, print preview, and other settings. Choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the printing application or **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.

- Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box →P.170
- View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (>P.172)
- Color Adjustment Sheet: Color →P.173
- Object Adjustment Dialog box: Color →P.174
- Matching Sheet →P.174
- Color Adjustment Sheet: Monochrome →P.176
- Object Adjustment Dialog box: Monochrome →P.177

Page Setup Sheet → P.178

You can specify the page size of the original, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, the orientation, the paper size and feed source, and automatic cutting.

- Output Method Dialog box →P.180
- Paper Size Options Dialog Box →P.181
- Layout Sheet → P.182

You can specify the page layout, watermarks, the orientation, the number of copies, and print processing options.

- Page Options Dialog Box → P.184
- Special Settings Dialog Box → P.185
- Favorites Sheet → P.186

Groups of print settings you select on each sheet can be saved as a favorite. Favorites you have added can be edited or used at the time of printing as desired.

• Utility Sheet →P.187

You can specify settings related to maintenance for the Printhead and feed amount, as well as settings for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy**.

Support Sheet →P.188

You can view support information and the user manual.

General Sharing	Ports Advanced C	Color Management Security	Device Settings	
Canon iPFxxxx				
Location:				
Comment: Model: Canon iPFxxxx Features Color: Yes Double-sided: No Staple: No Staple: No Speed: Unknown Maximum resolution: xxx dpi				
		Paper available:		
		Letter(8.5"x11")	*	
			-	
Preferences Print Test Page				
OK Cancel Apply Help				

Device Settings Sheet →P.189

You can display settings for optional equipment installed on the printer and see the version information for the printer driver.

imagePROGRAF Free Layout is a feature for freely arranging originals from various source applications on a single page as desired before printing. For details, see "Free Layout." (>P.202)

Note

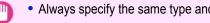
Important

Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy is a feature for automatic enlargement and printing of scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER. For details, see "Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy." (>P.225)

Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy is not displayed in 64-bit editions of Windows.

Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver

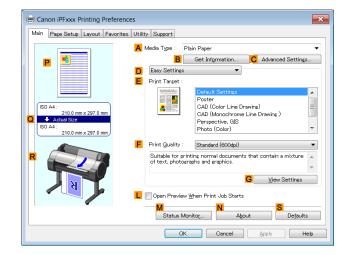
If you have replaced the paper, you must complete the following settings in the printer driver.



Always specify the same type and size of paper in the printer menu and printer driver.

Choose Print in the application menu.

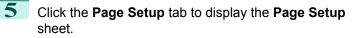
- 2 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications .") → P.164
- 3 Make sure the Main sheet is displayed.

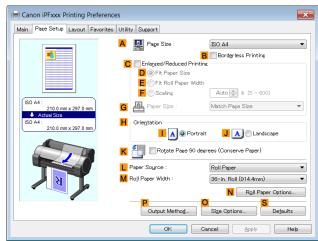


4 In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.



Click the **B** Get Information button to display the Paper Information on Printer dialog box. On the Paper Information on Printer dialog box, you can obtain information on the paper in the printer and configure printer driver settings for the feed source and type of paper. This function requires that the Status Monitor be installed.





Printer Driver

Windows Software

6 In the **A Page Size** list, select the size of the original as specified in the application.

7 In the LPaper Source list, select how paper is supplied.

8 If you have selected roll paper in L Paper Source, select the width of the loaded roll in M Roll Paper Width.



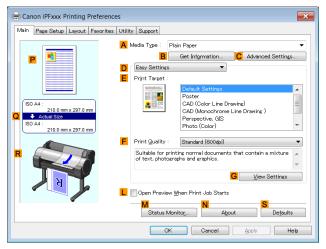
• A variety of settings are available in the printer driver to suit different printing applications. For details on available printing conditions, see "Printer Driver Settings ." →P.158

Confirming Print Settings

There are two ways to confirm the print settings, as follows.

Checking a preview of the settings

A preview of the settings is displayed on the left side of the **Main**, **Page Setup**, and **Layout** sheets. By checking illustrations and numerical values in the preview, you can confirm current settings for the page size, orientation, paper source, layout, and so on.



Display Area	Information Displayed
P Top illustrations	Illustrations indicate the orientation, page layout, borderless printing selection, color mode, and other settings information.
Q Middle, bordered area	The page size, paper size, and method and percentage of enlargement or reduction are indicated.

Display Area	Information Displayed
R Bottom illustrations	Illustrations indicate the feed source, orientation, borderless printing selection, and other set- tings information.



To confirm the Print Target specified in Easy Settings, click G View Settings on the Main sheet to display the View Settings dialog box.

Checking a print preview

You can check an image of the original just as it will be printed.

When you activate this feature, imagePROGRAF Preview or PageComposer is started before printing. Confirming how documents will be printed this way helps prevent printing errors.

For details on print previews, see "Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing." →P.144

Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing

This topic describes how to preview images of print jobs before actually printing them.



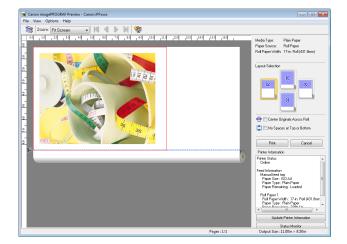
Choose Print in the application menu.

- 2 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications .") → P.164
- 3 Make sure the Main sheet is displayed.

Image: Solution of the section of t	Main Page Setup Layout Fav	
	SO A4: 2100 mm x 297.0 mm ★ Actual Size SO A4: 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	Get Information C Advanced Settings Easy Settings Frint Target : Default Settings Poster CAD (donothrome Line Drawing) Perspective, GIS Photo (Color) F Print Quality : Standard (600dpi) Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture
C View Settings	N	Open Preview When Print Job Starts

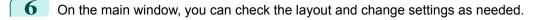
Select the **LOpen Preview When Print Job Starts** check box.

5 After you click OK, when you print a job, the image-PROGRAF Preview window will be displayed.





If PageComposer is running, access the **Special Settings** dialog box from the **Layout** sheet and clear **Pre**view **Switching**.



7 To print, click **Print** in the **File** menu.



Using Favorites

Note

This topic describes how to register favorites and print using favorite settings.

Registering a favorite

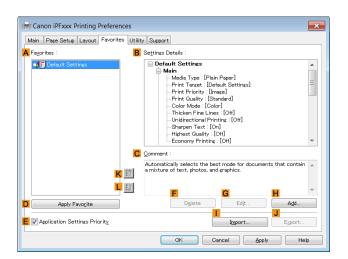
This section describes the procedure for registering printing settings that have been changed in the driver as **Favor-**ites.

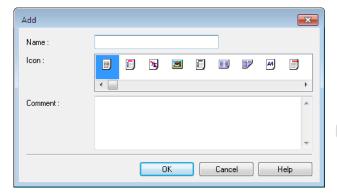


- Choose **Print** in the application menu.
- 2 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications .") → P.164
- 3 Perform normal printing settings. The favorite is registered from here.

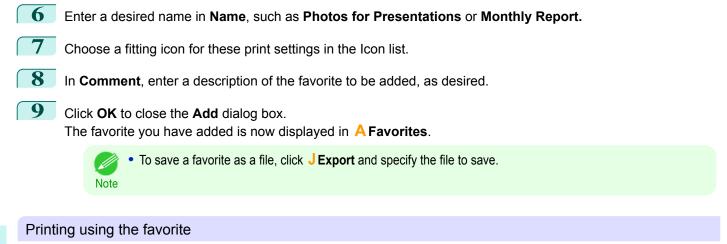
5 Click **H** Add to display the Add dialog box.

4 Click the Favorites tab to display the Favorites sheet.





Windows Software



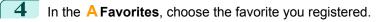
Follow the steps below to print using the favorite you have registered.

1 Choose **Print** in the application menu.

Note

- 2 Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications .") →P.164
- **3** Click the **Favorites** tab to display the **Favorites** sheet.

Canon iPFxxx Printing Preferences	/ Support	×
A Fayorites : B	Se <u>t</u> tings Details :	
Default Settings	Default Settings Main Main Print Target: [Default Settings] Print Target: [Default Settings] Print Quality: [Standard] Color Mode: [Color] Thicken Fine Lines: [Off] Unificential Fine Lines: [Off] Sharpen Text: [On] Highest Quality: [Off] Economy Printing: [Off]	•
K D	Qomment : Automatically selects the best mode for documents that contain a mixture of text, photos, and graphics.	
D Apply Favorite	F G H Delete Edjt Add	-
E 🗸 Application Settings Priority	ingport Export ОК Cancel Дарју Нец	p



• To import a favorite, click Import and specify the favorite file.

5 Click **D** Apply Favorite to replace the favorite settings with the current print settings.

6 Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

For instructions on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings ."
 P.161

Note

164 Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications

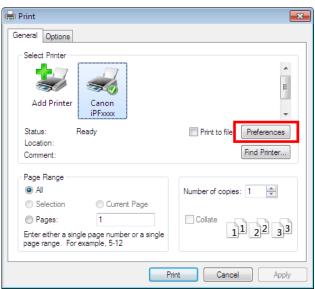
Choose **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.

2 Select the printer, and then display the printer driver dialog box.



 The dialog box for specifying printing conditions varies depending on the source application. In some cases, when you select the printer, a sheet for configuring the printer driver is added to the dialog box. In the following case, click **Preferences**.

• Example: **Print** dialog box displayed by the application software



Six sheets of print settings are displayed by the printer driver: **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Layout**, **Favorites**, **Utility**, and **Support**.

Canon iPFxxx Printing Preference Main Page Setup Layout Favorites	
	Media Type : Plain Paper Get Information Easy Settings Print Tareet : Print T
S0 A4 : 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm → Actual Size S0 A4 : 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	Poster CAD (Color Line Drawing) CAD (Monochrome Line Drawing) Perspective, GIS Photo (Color)
	Print Quality : Standard (600dpi) Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics. Ulew Settings
	Open Preview When Print Job Starts Status Monitor, About Defaults
	OK Cancel Apply Help

 The titles of dialog boxes may vary depending on the application, and sheets other than these six sheets may be displayed.

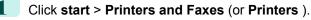
Important

• If you access the printer driver dialog box from the source application, changes you make to the settings will only apply temporarily to that application. Because these are sizes you specify temporarily in the printer driver, the sizes will not be available after you exit the application.

• You can also access the printer driver dialog box from the Windows system menu. To use the settings continuously in all applications, open the printer driver from the system menu to make the settings.

(See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu .") →P.166

Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu





Select the printer, and then display the printer properties dialog box.

	Underson and Co.	und	· ·	✓ 4 Search Devices		<u>×</u>
				1.500		
Add a device	Add a printer	See what's printing	Print server properties	Remove device	-	0
Devices (2) —						
Printers and F	axes (3)	i T				
=	non iPF xxxx Mar	State: 🥑 Default nufacturer: CANON INC. Model: imagePROGF	Category: Pr	ne Device Stage(TM) for Can inter document(s) in queue	on imagePROGRAF Pi	rinte

Canon iPFxxxx Properties					
General Sharing	Ports Advanced Color Management Security Device Settings				
	Canon iPFxxxx				
Location:					
Comment:					
	Canon iPFxxxx				
Features Color: Yes	Paper available:				
Double-side	d: No Letter(8.5"x11")				
Staple: No Speed: Unkn	IOWD				
	esolution: 1200 dpi				
	Preferences Print Test Page				
	OK Cancel Apply Help				



• The Device Settings sheet is also an extension of the printer driver. (See "Device Settings Sheet .") →P.189

Click **Printing Preferences** to display the **Main**(or **Printing Preferences**) dialog box, titled with the name of this printer.

Six sheets of print settings are displayed by the printer driver: **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Layout**, **Favorites**, **Utility**, and **Support**.

🖶 Canon iPFxxx Printing Pre	ferences	X
Main Page Setup Layout Fa	vorites Utility Support	
	Media Type : Easy Settings Print Target :	Plain Paper Get Information Advanced Settings
ISO A4 : 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm Actual Size ISO A4 : 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm		Default Settings A Poster CAD (Color Line Drawing) CAD (Monochrome Line Drawing) Perspective, GIS Phota (Color) ▼
		Standard (600dpi) inting normal documents that contain a mixture graphs and graphics.
		View Settings
	Open Previe	w <u>W</u> hen Print Job Starts
	Status N	fonitor About Defaults
	0	Cancel Apply Help

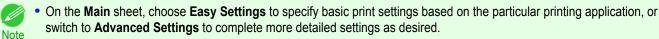
Windows Software

- If you access the printer driver dialog box from the operating system menu, changes you make to the settings will apply to all applications you use for printing.
- You can also access the printer driver dialog box from applications. (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications .") →P.164

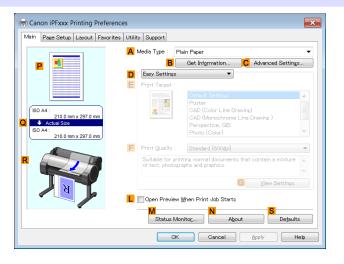
Main Sheet

Important

The following settings are available on the **Main** sheet. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help file.



Common Items



• A Media Type

Select the type of paper.

For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "**Displaying** the **Paper Reference Guide**.") → P.365

• B Get Information

Displays **Paper Information on Printer**. You can update the printer driver settings for the feed source, media type, and roll width by selecting the feed source.

Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box → P.170

• C Advanced Settings

Displays **Paper Detailed Settings**. You can configure the printing settings to match the type of media, such as the ink drying time.

Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box →P.170

• LOpen Preview When Print Job Starts

When the check box is selected, **imagePROGRAF Preview** is launched before printing. This allows you to check on-screen previews of documents before printing.

Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing →P.144

• M Status Monitor

Starts imagePROGRAF Status Monitor.

You can check the printer status, job status, and other conditions. You can also set up email notification if printer errors occur by completing the **Email Notice** settings. For details, refer to the **Status Monitor** help file.

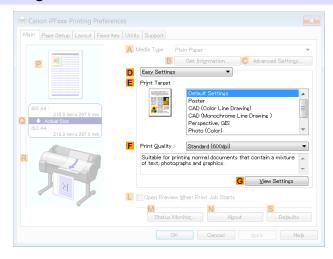
• NAbout

Displays version information for the printer driver.

S Defaults

Restores all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Configuration using Easy Settings



• E Print Target

Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed.

- Printing Photos and Images → P.33
- Printing Line Drawings and Text →P.43
- Printing Office Documents → P.37

Depending on the **A Media Type** setting, some **E Print Target** options may not be available.

• F Print Quality

168

Choose the level of print quality.

Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing → P.58

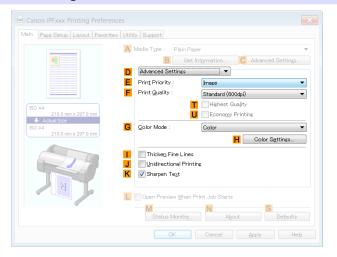
• G View Settings

Displays the **E Print Target** setting values.

You can view and change the order of E **Print Target** setting values.

View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application →P.172

Configuration using Advanced Settings



• E Print Priority

Choose the graphic elements that you want to emphasize for printing.

Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing → P.58

• F Print Quality

Choose the level of print quality.

Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing →P.58

• THighest quality

When the check box is selected, printing is performing focusing on quality. Printing takes longer and consumes more ink than in other modes, but this mode offers superior printing quality.



 If you set F Print Quality to High, you can select T Highest quality. However, depending on A Media Type and E Print Priority, you may not be able to select T Highest quality.

• U Economy Printing

If you select this option, you can print with less ink consumed. However, print quality is lower than in regular printing.

Select this option to save ink, such as when printing to check drawings. Depending on the settings of **A Media Type** and **F Print Quality**, you may not be able to select this option.



If you set F Print Quality to Fast, you can select U Economy Printing. However, depending on A Media Type and E Print Priority, you may not be able to select U Economy Printing.

• G Color Mode

Choose the color mode.

Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing → P.58



Depending on the A Media Type setting, some G Color Mode options may not be available.

• H Color Settings

Click to display the **Color Settings** dialog box for more advanced color settings.

Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver → P.51

Thicken Fine Lines

Select this option to print fine lines more distinctly.

• **J** Unidirectional Printing

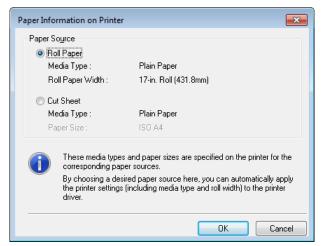
Select this checkbox to prevent problems such as misaligned lines and improve the print quality. However, the printing speed becomes slower.

KSharpen Text

Select this option to print text more sharply.

Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box

On the Paper Information on Printer dialog box, you can obtain information on the paper in the printer and configure printer driver settings for the paper source and media type.



• To display the Paper Information on Printer dialog box, on the Main sheet, click Get Information by Media Type. (See "Main Sheet .") →P.167 Note

A Paper Source

Shows the paper source supported by the printer, as well as information about the loaded paper. To update the paper source and media type settings in the printer driver, select the desired Paper Source option and click OK.

Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box

In the Paper Detailed Settings dialog box, you can set Drying Time for the paper selected with Media Type of the Main sheet, etc.

You can display this dialog box by clicking Advanced Settings of Media Type on the Main sheet. (See "Main Sheet .") → P.167

As for the items for which you can select **Printer Default** in this dialog box, you also can set them from the control panel of the printer. (See "Menu Settings.") → P.459

Paper Detailed Settings				
A Drying Time				
B Between Pages :	Printer Default			
C Between Scans :	Printer Default 🔹			
D Roll Paper Margin for Safety E Near End Margin : Printer Default				
E Cut Speed :	Printer Default			
G Mirror	Cancel Defaults Help			

A Drying Time

Specify the time that the printer waits for ink to dry, as needed. The **Between Pages** setting is only valid for rolls.

• B Between Pages

You can set the time to wait after printing 1 document page until ejecting the paper. Since waiting time is required for ink to dry before a roll is cut, you can deliver paper in the Output Stacker with the ink dried even if **Cutting Mode** is set to **Automatic**.

Setting Item	Details
Printer Default	The setting of the control panel of the printer is applied.
Off	Paper is ejected immediately after printing completes.
30 sec. / 1 min. / 3 min. / 5 min. / 10 min. / 30 min. / 60 min.	Paper is ejected when the set time elapses after printing completes.

C Between Scans

You can set the time to wait after printing 1 line on a page until printing the next line. Set this to avoid bleeding or color unevenness such as when bleeding occurs on a page or when color unevenness occurs during borderless printing.

Setting Item	Details
Printer Default	The setting of the control panel of the printer is applied.
Off	The next line is printed immediately after a line is printed.
1 sec. / 3 sec. / 5 sec. / 7 sec. / 9	The next line is printed when the set time elapses after a line is printed.
Sec.	* Increase the time according to the occurrence condition of bleeding or unevenness.

D Roll Paper Margin for Safety

You can specify the length of a margin on the leading edge of paper to ensure that paper susceptible to curling is held firmly against the Platen.

• E Near End Margin

Specify the length of the Near End Margin (the leading edge margin) of the roll, as needed.

Setting Item	Details	
Printer Default	The setting of the control panel of the printer is applied.	171
3 mm (0.12 in)	The document is printed in the standard size.	
	* Select this when you do not have any problems in printing.	

Setting Item	Details
20 mm (0.8 in)	Select this when rubbing against the printhead occurs such as when using paper that tends to curl.

F Cut Speed

Select the speed of automatic cutting, as needed. You can adjust this setting if paper is not cut well when automatic cutting is used.

Setting Item	Details
Printer Default	The setting of the control panel of the printer is applied.
High Speed	When the Standard setting does not result in cutting the surface cleanly, select this.
Standard	Select this when you do not have any problems in automatic cutting.
Low Speed	This helps prevent adhesive from sticking to the cutter and keeps the cutter sharp if you se- lect it when using adhesive paper.

G Mirror

Specify whether to print a mirror image, as needed. Select this option to print a version of the document or image with the left and right sides inverted.

View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application

In the View Settings dialog box, you can check details of the selected printing application.

Print Target: B Evident Seturgs Poster Poster CAD (Mancharme Line Drawing) Perspective. GIS Proto (Color)		
Poster CAD (Color Line Drawing) CAD (Monochrome Line Drawing) Perspective, GIS		
Office Document Faithful Color Reproduction	-	
	Parameter	Settings
	Print Priority	Image
	Print Quality	Standard
	Color Mode	Color
	[Color Adjustment]	
	Brightness	0
	Contrast	0
	Saturation	0
	Object Adjustment	All
	[Matching]	
	Matching Mode	Driver Matching Mode
	Matching Method	Perceptual
	Thicken Fine Lines	Off Off
	Unidirectional Printing Sharpen Text	On
=5	Highest Quality	Off
<u>10</u>	Economy Printing	Off
10	Contrary mining	01
12		
	OK	Cancel <u>H</u> elp



 To display the View Settings dialog box, on the Main sheet, click View Settings by Print Target. (See "Main Sheet .") →P167

• A Print Target

Shows all **Print Target** options (settings items for the printing application).

• B Name

Identifies the item selected in Print Target by its name and an icon.

C Details

172

Here, you can confirm detailed settings values for each listed item for the selected Print Target.

Color Adjustment Sheet: Color

If the color tone as printed is not as you expected, you can adjust it on the Color Adjustment sheet.

Color Settings						×
Color Adjustment Matching						
AAAA	D Qvan :	0	Low	•	I Igh	
	E <u>M</u> agenta :	0	Low	<u>.</u>	High	
ABCDEF	F Yellow :	0	Low	<u>.</u>	<mark></mark> High	
234567	Gray Tone :	0÷	pol Black	<u> </u>	Warm Black	
Standard	•					
B Wew Color Pattern	H Brightness :	0	* ──	<u> </u>	*	
C Apply to Sample	Contrast :	0	Dark	<u> </u>	Light	
	J Saturation :	0	Low	· · · · ·	High	
			Low K	bject Adjustment	High	_
L						elp



• To display the Color Adjustment sheet, on the Main sheet, click Color Settings by Color Mode in Advanced Settings. (See "Main Sheet .") (>P.167)

• A Sample Type

Choose a sample image from Standard, Portrait, Landscape, or Graphics.

• B View Color Pattern

Select this checkbox to display the color pattern.

• C Apply to Sample

Select this checkbox to apply the changed settings to the sample image.

• D Cyan/ E Magenta/ F Yellow

Fine-tune color tones by adjusting the levels of each color.

• G Gray Tone

Adjust the color tone of grays as desired. Choose Cool Black (tinged with blue) or Warm Black (tinged with red).

• H Brightness

Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).

Contrast

Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.

• J Saturation

Adjust the color intensity as desired. Increasing the **Saturation** setting makes colors more vivid, and reducing the **Saturation** makes colors more subdued.

KObject Adjustment

Select this option to display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, in which you can specify objects subject to color adjustment.

Object Adjustment Dialog box: Color →P.174

S Defaults

Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.



For details on settings items, see "Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver." (>P51)

Object Adjustment Dialog box: Color

In the Object Adjustment dialog box, you can specify what type of print jobs to apply color adjustment to. If an original comprises images, graphics, and text, you can specify which portion to apply color adjustment to.

Object Adjustment
A 🕼 Image
B 🕼 Graphics
ABCD 1234567 C V Text
OK Cancel Defaults Help

 To display the Object Adjustment dialog box, click Object Adjustment on the Color Adjustment sheet. Note

• A Image

Select this option to apply color adjustment to image areas, such as photos.

• B Graphics

Select this option to apply color adjustment to graphics, such as lines and circles.

• C Text

Select this option to apply color adjustment to text.

Matching Sheet

On the Matching sheet, you can specify color matching to compensate for differences in the appearance of colors on various devices.



• If No color correction is selected under Color Mode, the Matching sheet is not displayed.



Note

 To display the Matching sheet, on the Main sheet, click Color Settings in Color Mode in Advanced Settings, and then click the Matching sheet. (See "Main Sheet .") →P.167

Driver Matching Mode

The following options are available when you select Driver Matching Mode in the A Matching Mode list.

Color Adjustment Matching		
Matching Mode :	Driver Matching Mode ICC Matching Mode Host ICM Mode	
Matching Method :	Perceptual	
Gamma :	2.2	
		Defaults

• A Matching Mode

Select the color matching mode to use, as desired.

Normally, select **Driver Matching Mode**. For color matching based on ICC profiles, select **ICC Matching Mode** or **Host ICM Mode**, depending on your color matching system.

• B Matching Method

Select the color matching method that suits the document to be printed. Various **Matching Method** options are available depending on your selection in **Matching Mode**.

• E Gamma

You can adjust the gradation of intermediate tones in an image. **2.2** is normally selected. If you want a softer impression than **2.2**, select **1.8**.

ICC Matching Mode and Host ICM Mode

The following options are available when you select ICC Matching Mode or Host ICM Mode in the A Matching Mode list.

Matching Method : Perceptual Input Profile : aRGB v3.0 (Cenon) ext ABLOD Input Profile : Perceptual Input Profile : aRGB v3.0 (Cenon) Input Profile : aRGB v3.0 (Cenon)	t Profile Setti Image	ings 🔽 Usi	e the Same Profile for All Objects
Alter and Control Alter and Co		Matching Method :	Perceptual
Matching Method : Perceptual Input Profile : (aRGB v3.0 (Cenon) ext ABCD Input Profile : (Perceptual Input Profile : (aRGB v3.0 (Cenon) Input Profile : (aRGB v3.0 (Cenon)	-	Input Profile :	sRGB v3.0 (Canon)
Input Profile : (RGB v3.0 (Canon) ext RABCD Matching Method : (Perceptual Input Profile : (RGB v3.0 (Canon) (RGB v3.0 (Canon)	Graphics	Matching Method :	Percentual
ABCD Matching Method : Perceptual Input Profile : (#RGB v3.0 (Canon)	-	-	
1224567 Input Profile : #RGB v3.0 (Canon)	Text		
Input Profile : sRGB v3.0 (Canon)	ABCD	Matching Method :	Perceptual
Profile Settinge - A. de Cattinge		Input Profile :	sRGB v3.0 (Canon)
	ter Profile Set	tings : Auto :	Settings

• A Matching Mode

Select the color matching mode to use, as desired.

• B Input Profile Settings

You can select Image, Graphics, or Text. You can choose Matching Method and Input Profile.

Various options are available depending on your selected Matching Mode.

To apply the same input profile automatically for **Graphics** and **Text**, select **Use the Same Profile for All Objects**. To apply separate input profiles to **Graphics** and **Text**, clear **Use the Same Profile for All Objects** and specify the individual settings.

• C Printer Profile Settings

Specify the printer profile as desired. Normally, select Auto Settings.

We recommend that you select an ICC profile created using commercially available profile creation software in order to perform color management accurately on paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed confirmed paper.

The created ICC profile needs to be saved in the following folder on the computer you are using. C:\Windows\system32\spool\drivers\color folder



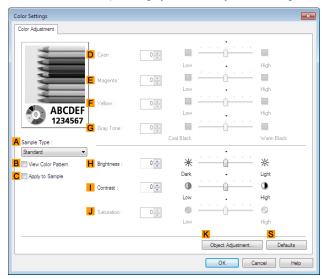
Note

• C: may vary according to the user environment.

• For details on settings items, see "Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver."
PE51

Color Adjustment Sheet: Monochrome

On the **Color Adjustment** sheet for monochrome printing, you can adjust the brightness and contrast.



Note

176

To display the Color Adjustment sheet, on the Main sheet, click Color Settings by Color Mode in Advanced Settings. (See "Main Sheet .")
 P167

• A Sample Type

Choose a sample image from Standard, Portrait, Landscape, or Graphics.

• B View Color Pattern

Select this checkbox to display the color pattern.

iPF685

• C Apply to Sample

Select this checkbox to apply the changed settings to the sample image.

• D Cyan/ E Magenta/ F Yellow

Not available.

• G Gray Tone

Not available

• H Brightness

Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).

Contrast

Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.

J Saturation

Not available.

KObject Adjustment

Select this option to display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, in which you can specify objects subject to color adjustment.

Object Adjustment Dialog box: Monochrome →P.177

• S Defaults

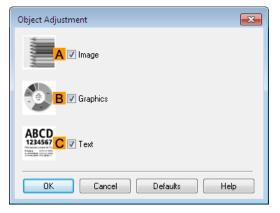
Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.



For details on settings items, see "Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver." →P.51

Object Adjustment Dialog box: Monochrome

In the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, you can specify what type of print jobs to apply color adjustment to. If an original comprises images, graphics, and text, you can specify which portion to apply color adjustment to.



• To display the Object Adjustment dialog box, click Object Adjustment on the Color Adjustment sheet.

• A Image

Note

Select this option to apply color adjustment to image areas, such as photos.

• B Graphics

Select this option to apply color adjustment to graphics, such as lines and circles.

• C Text

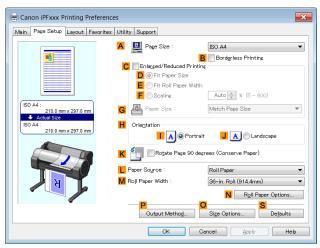
Select this option to apply color adjustment to text.

Page Setup Sheet

The following settings are available on the **Page Setup** sheet. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help file.

Printer Driver

178



• A Page Size

Select the page size as specified in the source application. For details on available page sizes, see "Paper Sizes." →P362

• B Borderless Printing

	Borderless Printing
Borderless Printing Method	
D 💿 Fit Paper Size	
E 💿 Scale to fit Roll Paper	Width
G F O Print Image with Actua	l Size
Paper Size :	Auto 💌

Borderless printing is available if roll paper is selected in the **L** Paper Source list. Choose from the following options when this setting is activated.

- Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size → P.87
- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width →P90
- Borderless Printing at Actual Size →P.80

• D Fit Paper Size

Scales the document image to match the paper size.

• E Scale to fit Roll Paper Width

Scales the document image to match the roll width.

• F Print Image with Actual Size

Prints documents at their actual size. This function is available when you have selected the size same as the width of **Roll Paper** for either the length or width of the document from the **A Page Size** list.

• G Paper Size

Available when **D** Fit Paper Size is selected. Choose the size of the paper you will print on. For details on available paper sizes, see "Paper Sizes." **P**362 Paper sizes compatible with borderless printing are shown in the list.

• CEn	larged/Reduced Printing	
-------	-------------------------	--

CI Enlarged/Reduced Printing	
D Fit Paper Size	
E 💿 Fit Roll Paper Width	
G F © Scaling	Auto 🔪 % (5 - 600)
Paper Size :	Match Page Size 🔹

Choose from the following options when this setting is activated.

- Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size → P.65
- Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width → P.67
- Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value →P.71

• D Fit Paper Size

Scales the document image to match the paper size.

• E Fit Roll Paper Width

Scales the document image to match the roll width.

• F Scaling

Resizes the document image based on a specified scaling value. Enter a value in a range of 5-600.

G Paper Size

Choose the size of the paper you will print on. For details on available paper sizes, see "Paper Sizes." →P.362

• H Orientation

Choose the printing orientation.

• Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation → P.148

• K Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)

Activate this setting to rotate the document image by 90 degrees before printing.

- Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees →P.135
- L Paper Source

Choose the feed source, as desired. Options displayed in the list vary depending on the selection in **Media Type** on the **Main** sheet.

• M Roll Paper Width

Choose the roll width. For details on available roll widths, see "Paper Sizes." →P.362

• N Roll Paper Options

Complete optional roll paper settings. Click to display the Roll Paper Options dialog box.

Roll Paper Options	
Automatic Cutting :	Yes
B 🔲 Banner Printing	
OK Cancel	Defaults Help

Under A Automatic Cutting, you can specify Yes or No and Print Cut Guideline.

Cutting Roll Paper After Printing →P.152

Select **B** Banner Printing when printing multiple pages continuously.

• Printing Multiple Pages Continuously →P.114

POutput Method

Click to display the **Output Method** dialog box, which enables you to complete the **Output Method** and **Name of data to be saved** settings.

• Output Method Dialog box →P.180

O Size Options

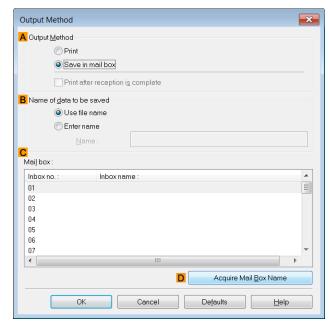
Click to display the **Paper Size Options** dialog box, which enables you to register additional paper sizes or select the size system for use.

- Paper Size Options Dialog Box → P.181
- S Defaults

Restores all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Output Method Dialog box

The **Output Method** dialog box allows you to select the **Output Method** and set the save settings when saving to the box.







• To display the **Output Method** dialog box, on the **Page Setup** sheet, click **Output Method**. (See "Page Setup Sheet .") → P178

• A Output Method

If **Print** is selected, the print job is saved to the printer hard disk after printing has finished.

If **Save in mail box** is selected, the print job is saved to the printer hard disk. If you choose **Save in mail box**, also specify the destination personal box in the **Mail box** list.

If **Print after reception is complete** is checked, you can prevent degradation of print quality that occurs when receiving a print job is interrupted and printing is aborted in the middle.

These can be selected as Print options.

• B Name of data to be saved

To use the file name, choose Use file name.

Otherwise choose Enter name and enter a name in Name.

• C Mail box

Displays a list of mail boxes. If you choose **Save in mail box**, also specify the destination personal box from the list.

• D Acquire Mail Box Name

When this is clicked, the box name acquired from the printer main unit is displayed in Mail box.

Paper Size Options Dialog Box

In the **Paper Size Options** dialog box, you can create and register your own Custom Paper Size. The sizes you define are listed with standard paper sizes for selection later as needed.

aper Size Options			
Paper Size <u>L</u> ist :		С	Custom Paper Size Name :
Name	Size	-	
• ISO A0 • ISO A1 • ISO A2+ • ISO A2+ • ISO A3+ • ISO A3 • ISO A4 • JIS B0 • JIS B1 • JIS B2 • JIS B3 • Delete	841.0 x 1189.0 594.0 x 841.0 431.8 x 609.6 420.0 x 594.0 329.0 x 483.0 210.0 x 297.0 1030.0 x 1456.0 728.0 x 1030.0 515.0 x 728.0 364.0 x 515.0	E	Units © mm jinch Paper Size Borderless Printing Size Fix the Batio of the Width to Height Width : 210.0 mm(100.0 - 1118.0) Height : 297.0 mm(203.2 - 18000.0) F Add
Display Series : ✓ 1 ISO A ─ 2 ISO B ✓ 3 JIS (B	(B3, B4,)	7 <u>5</u> ARC	(C3, C4,) ♥ Photo CH (A, B,) □ Oversize Cl (A, B,) □ Qther
			OK Cancel <u>H</u> elp

- You cannot create any arbitrary roll paper width as a Custom Paper Size.
- If you select a Paper Size from Paper Size Options, load paper of a size equal to or larger than the Paper Size Options into the printer. If the size of the loaded paper is smaller than the Paper Size Options, an incomplete output image may be printed.

• To display the **Paper Size Options** dialog box, on the **Page Setup** sheet, click **Paper Size Options**. (See "**Page Setup** Sheet .") (>P178)

• A Paper Size List

Shows the names and sizes of paper that can be used with the printer driver.

B Delete

Custom paper sizes created by users can be deleted from the **A Paper Size List**, as needed.

However, they cannot be deleted in the following situations.

- If a standard paper size of the printer driver is selected.
- If an oversized paper size is selected.
- If a paper size marked with a red circle is selected.

Custom Paper Size Name

You can name Custom Paper Size as desired.

D Units

Windows Software

Printer Driver

Specify the desired unit of measure for the Custom Paper Size height and width.

• E Paper Size

Specify the desired **Width** and **Height**. You can make your selection from sizes that are compatible with **Borderless Printing** by selecting **Borderless Printing Size**. To maintain the aspect ratio of the **Width** and **Height** as you resize the paper, select **Fix the Ratio of the Width to Height**.

• FAdd

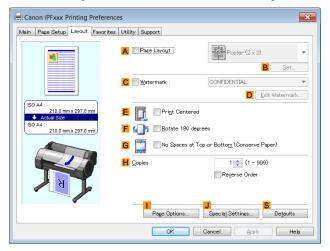
Enables you to register the custom paper size you have specified or overwrite an existing custom paper size.

G Display Series

You can limit the number of options shown in Page Size, Paper Size, and Paper Size List.

Layout Sheet

The following settings are available on the Layout sheet. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



• A Page Layout

Activate this setting to select a particular page layout.

- Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet →P.118
- Printing Posters in Sections →P.123
- Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other →P.110
- Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals →P.41

iPF685

• B Set

Click to display one of the following dialog boxes depending on the selection in **A Page Layout**. In these dialog boxes, you can specify layout details and which pages to print, as well as other settings.

- Page Layout Printing
- Pages to Print
- Free Layout Settings

• C Watermark

Activating this option makes two settings available, Watermarks and D Edit Watermark.

Printing With Watermarks → P.145

Watermarks

Lists the provided watermarks. Choose the watermark to print.

• D Edit Watermark

Click to display the Edit Watermark dialog box for creating your own, original watermark.

• E Print Centered

Activate this setting to print document images in the center of the paper.

- Printing Originals Centered on Rolls →P.126
- Printing Originals Centered on Sheets →P.130

• F Rotate 180 degrees

Activate this option to rotate document images by 180 degrees before printing.

G No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)

Activate this setting to print the next image skipping blank areas above and below printable data in documents, which enables you to conserve the paper.

Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins →P.139

• H Copies

Enter the number of copies to print, in a range of 1-999.

Reverse Order

Activate this option to print pages in reverse order.

Page Options

Click to display the **Page Options** dialog box, which enables you to complete settings for printing the user name, date, or page number in the header or footer.

Page Options Dialog Box → P.184

• J Special Settings

If the printing results are not as you expected, click this option to display the **Special Settings** dialog box and change how printing is processed.

Special Settings Dialog Box → P.185

• S Defaults

Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Page Options Dialog Box

The Page Options dialog box offers the following settings.

Page Options
Print Date : <mark>A</mark>
Do Not Print 🔹
Print Time Also B
Print User Name : C
Do Not Print 🔹
Print Page Number : D
Do Not Print 🔹
E Format Settings
OK Cancel Defaults Help



• To display the Page Options dialog box, on the Layout sheet, click Page Options. (See "Layout Sheet .")
P.182 Note

• A Print Date

Select where the date is printed, as desired. To print the time as well, select **B** Print Time Also.

• C Print User Name

Select where the user name is printed, as desired.

• D Print Page Number

Select where the page number is printed, as desired.

• E Format Settings

Click to display the Format Settings dialog box, which enables you to complete format-related settings.

Format Settings	•
Font :	(Arial
Style :	Regular
Size :	11 🚔 Points (1 - 72)
Color :	Black 👻
OK	Cancel Defaults Help

Note

. If you specify the same position for multiple items, the items are printed from left to right in this order: date, user name, and page number.

• When you print multiple pages per sheet using Page Layout Printing or similar functions, these items will be printed for each page.

Special Settings Dialog Box

If the printing results are not as you expected, you can change how printing is processed in the **Special Settings** dialog box.

C - Win
Settings
Auto
Auto
Off
On
On
On
On
Auto

- To display the **Special Settings** dialog box, on the **Layout** sheet, click **Special Settings**. (See "Layout Sheet .") **P182**
 - Click the processing method for **Parameter** within the **Settings Summaries** frame to display a list of the setting details under the frame.

• A Spooling at Printer Driver

Sets whether or not print jobs are spooled in the printer driver and processed by PageComposer. Printing results may be improved in some cases by setting this to **No** or **No (EMF Spooling)**.



 When set to No or No (EMF Spooling), functions such as Page Layout, Watermark, Reverse Order, Page Options, FineZoom Settings, and Preview Switchingcan no longer be used.

B FineZoom Settings

This function is used in large-format printing.

If it is set to **Yes**, problems in the printing may be improved.

If it is set to No, image distortions such as fine lines disappearing may be improved.

C Preview Switching

When this setting is turned on, PageComposer starts when printing is performed with the **Open Preview When Print Job Starts** check box selected in the **Main** sheet.

• D Application Color Matching Priority

When this is on, you can give applications priority in color management.

• E Fast Graphic Process

Turning this setting on may help produce the expected results if image colors are inconsistent in printed documents or if lines are printed in varying thicknesses.



This function cannot be used on 64-bit version of Windows.

• F Reduce Print Unevenness

If you want to reduce unevenness of the printed image, turn this on to improve the print result. However, printing may take longer for some images.

• G Adjust faint lines

Turn this off to obtain expected results when fine lines have been printed in a color different from other diagrams and illustrations. However, lines in some colors may appear broken.

Favorites Sheet

The following settings are available on the **Favorites** sheet. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.

🖶 Canon iPFxxx Printing Preferences		×
Main Page Setup Layout Favorites Utilit	y Support	
A Fayorites : B	Se <u>t</u> tings Details :	
Default Setting	Default Settings Main Main -Print Target: [Default Settings] -Print Target: [Default Settings] -Print Quality: [Standard] -Color Mode: [Color] -Color Mode: [Color] -Thicken Fine Lines: [Off] -Unidirectional Printing: [Off] -Sharpen Text: [Cn] -Hichast Quality: [Off] -Economy Printing: [Off]	
C	<u>C</u> omment :	
K D	Automatically selects the best mode for documents that contain a mixture of text, photos, and graphics.	
L ED	F G H	~
D Apply Favorite	Delete Edit Add	
E V Application Settings Priority	Import J	
	OK Cancel Apply He	lp

• A Favorites

Printing favorites you have created are listed with Default Settings favorites.

Using Favorites →P.151

• B Settings Details

Displays details of the favorite selected in the **A Favorites**.

• C Comment

Displays notes registered in the favorite.

• D Apply Favorite

Click to change the current print settings to those of the favorite selected in the A Favorites.

• E Application Settings Priority

Activate this setting to use settings values specified in the source application in preference to favorite settings selected in the **A Favorites**, when clicking **D Apply Favorite**. For details on the settings items used in preference, refer to the printer driver help.

• F Delete

Click to delete the selected favorite from the A Favorites list.

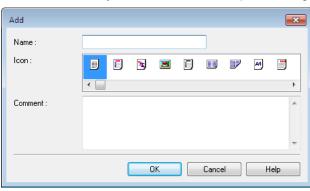
• GEdit

Click to display the **Edit** dialog box, which enables you to change the name and icon for the favorite selected in the **A Favorites** list.

• H Add

iPF685

Click to display the Add dialog box, which enables you to add the current print settings as a favorite.



• Import

Click to display the **Open** dialog box, which enables you to import favorite settings saved as a file.

• J Export

Click to display the Save As dialog box, which enables you to save the favorite settings as a file.

• KUp

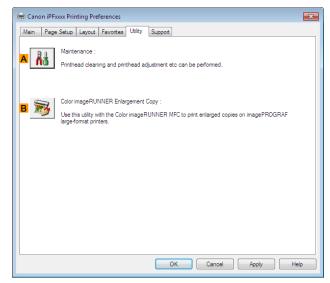
Click to move the selected favorite up in the **A** Favorites list.

• Down

Click to move the selected favorite down in the **A** Favorites list.

Utility Sheet

The following items can be executed on the **Utility** sheet. For details on the utilities, refer to the relevant utility help.



• A Maintenance

Click to start the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, which offers the following maintenance for the printer.

- Nozzle (ink ejecting outlet) check
- Nozzle (ink ejecting outlet) cleaning
- Head alignment adjustment
- · Feed amount adjustment

Printer Driver

• B Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy

Click to launch **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** (iR enlargement copy), which enables you to create hot folders used for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** and assign print settings to hot folders.

Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER →P.234

For details, see "Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy." →P.225



Support Sheet

Note

On the **Support** sheet, you can view support information and the user's manual.

🖶 Canon iPF6	5400S Printing Preferences	X
Main Page	Setup Layout Favorites Utility Support	
A	Support Information : Accesses the Canon support webpage, where you can find the latest printer information, check for software updates, and browse other information.	
B	User Menual : Connects to the Internet and displays the printer user's manual.	
	C Settings Summaries	
	OK Cancel Apply He	lp

• A Support Information

Click to access the Canon support webpage, where you can find the latest information on the printer and consumables, check for printer driver updates, and browse other information.

• B User Manual

Click to connect to the Internet and display the printer user's manual.

• C Settings Summaries

Click to display the **View Settings** dialog box, which enables you to confirm the settings for the **Main**, **Page Set-up**, **Layout**, and **Favorites** sheets.

Settings Summaries Dialog Box

The Settings Summaries dialog box enables you to confirm the settings for the Main, Page Setup, Layout, and Favorites sheets.

Settings Summaries		×
Main Page Setup Layout Favorites De	evice Settings	
Parameter	Settings	•
Media Type	Plain Paper	_
[Paper Detailed Settings]		=
Between Pages	Printer Default	
Between Scans	Printer Default	
Near End Margin	Printer Default	
Cut Speed	Printer Default	
Mirror	Off	
Print Target	Default Settings	
Print Priority	Image	
Print Quality	Standard	
Color Mode	Color	*
	A Copy	
		<

• A Copy

Click to copy the settings information to the clipboard. You can paste the settings information into a file created with a text editor or similar application.

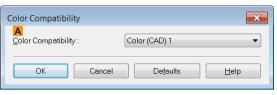
Device Settings Sheet

Many settings items on the printer properties sheets are controlled by Windows applications. However, the **Device Settings** sheet is for configuring the printer, and it is an extension of the printer driver. The following settings are available on the **Device Settings** sheet.

ntering with the second			— ×
General Sharing Ports Advan	ced Color Management Security	Device Settings	
	A		
		Color Compatibility	About
	ОК	Gancel	Apply Help
	UK		Apply Help

• A Color Compatibility

Click to display the **Color Compatibility** dialog box, which enables you to adjust colors if you have selected **Color Mode** > **Color (CAD)**.



• For details on color settings, see "Specifying Colors and Printing CAD Drawings." (>P.48)

• BAbout

You can display version information for the printer driver.

User's Guide

Preview

The Features of Preview Starting Preview	191 191
Preview Main Window Dialog Area	193 195
Enlarge/Reduce the screen display Moving a Page Using the ruler	196
Priority setting for rotating 90 degrees Printing with Selecting the Layout	
Print on the Center Not Print Spaces at the Top/Bottom	

The Features of Preview

The main features of Preview are as follows.

- While viewing this screen, you can adjust layout settings of a document created with application software.
- · You can not only adjust layout settings but also your changes will be instantly applied on the preview screen, and you can print the preview screen as it is seen.



2

. The media type, image size, detailed media settings, and the printer settings can cause the actual print output to differ from the Preview settings.

Starting Preview

Follow the procedure below to start the Preview.

Start the apllication software which you use.

From the application software's File menu, select the printer setup menu to open the Print dialog box.



• Normally, select **Print** from the **File** menu.

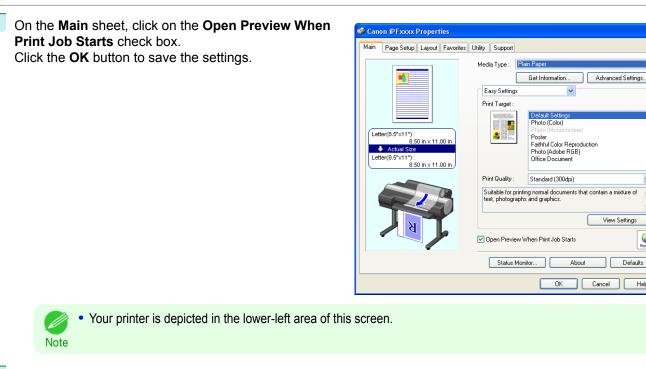
3



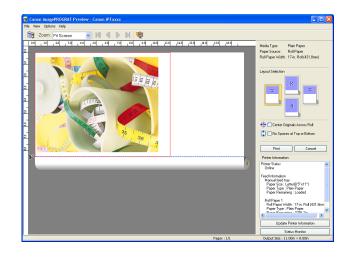
٢

Defaults

Help

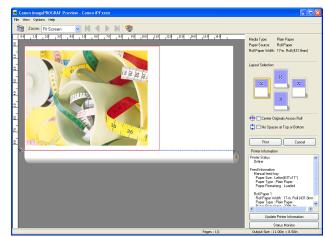


- 4 On the **Print** dialog box in the apllication software, click the **Print** button.
- 5 Preview main window is displayed.



Preview Main Window

The Preview main window consists of the menu and tool bars, preview and dialog area and status bar.





• You can use the **View** menu to show or hide the tool bar.

Menu Bar

This allows you to select menus required for operations.



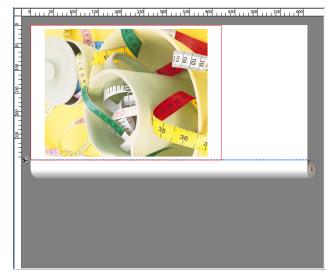
Tool Bar

This allows you to select tool buttons required for major operations.

R	Zoom:	Fit Screen	*	N		2

Preview Area

You can check the settings you made in this area.



Windows Software

Dialog Area

This allows you to set the print conditions and perform a print job. For more information about Dialog Area, see "Dialog Area." →P195

Media Type: Plain Paper Paper Source: Roll Paper Roll Paper Width: 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)
Layout Selection
R R N
🕂 🗌 Center Originals Across Roll
÷
📮 🗔 No Spaces at Top or Bottom
Print Cancel
Printer Information
Printer Status Online
Feed Information Manual feed tray Paper Size : Letter(8.5''x11'') Paper Type : Plain Paper Paper Remaining : Loaded
Roll Paper 1 Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm Paper Type : Plain Paper Paper Reporting : 2004 1m
Dapar Domaining - 320ft 1 in

Status Bar

This shows the message, Pages and Output Size.

Rotating images 90 degrees can conserve paper.

Pages : 1/1

Output Size : 11.7in × 16.5in

Dialog Area

You can select the layout and print on the center.

Media Type: Plain Paper Paper Source: Roll Paper Roll Paper Width: 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)	
Layout Selection	
the Center Originals Across Roll	
🚺 🔲 No Spaces at Top or Bottom	
Print Cancel)
Print Cancel)
)
Printer Information Printer Status)
Printer Information Printer Status Online Feed Information Manual feed tray Paper Size : Letter(8.5"x11") Paper Type : Plain Paper)
Printer Information Printer Status Online Feed Information Manual feed tray Paper Size : Letter(8.5"x11") Paper Type : Plain Paper Paper Remaining : Loaded Roll Paper 1 Roll Paper 1 Roll Paper Vidth : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm Paper Type : Plain Paper Paper Typ	
Printer Information Printer Status Online Feed Information Manual feed tray Paper Size: Letter(8.5"x11") Paper Type : Plain Paper Paper Remaining : Loaded Roll Paper 1 Roll Paper Vidth : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm Paper Type : Plain Paper Paper Demoising : 2209 1in)

• Media Type/Paper Source/Paper Size

You can confirm the information that is set.

Layout Selection

You can print which conserves paper by selecting the layout. For more information about **Layout Selection**, see "**Printing with Selecting the Layout**." (>P.198)

Center Originals Across Roll

You can print on the center of the media loaded in the printer. For more information about **Center Originals Across Roll**, see "**Print on the Center**." **PR200**



• Available only if rolls are selected in Paper Source.

No Spaces at Top or Bottom

You can save paper on not to feed roll paper for the empty spaces when the print data contains spaces at the top or bottom.

For more information about No Spaces at Top or Bottom, see "Not Print Spaces at the Top/Bottom." (>P.201)



• Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

Print Button

Click the button to start printing.

Windows Software

Preview

Cancel Button

Click the button to stop printing.

Printer Information

You can confirm the information acquired from the printer.

Update Printer Information Button
 Click the button to update the printer information with connecting to the printer.

Status Monitor Button

Click the button to start Status Monitor.

Enlarge/Reduce the screen display

You can enlarge or reduce the screen display when you select **Zoom** from the **View** menu.

Setting	Details
Fit Screen	Display all.
Fit to Width	Display to the width of the paper.
Reduce	Display at half of the standard size.
Standard	Display at the standard size.
Enlarge	Display with the double of the standard size.
Enlarge More	Display with the triple of the standard size.

• This item can be selected even if you have clicked the ▼ button in the toolbar Zoom.

Moving a Page

Note

You can move a page to display when you select Go to Page from the View menu.

Setting	Details
First Page	Go to the first page.
Previous Page	Go to the previous page.
Next Page	Go to the next page.
Last Page	Go to the last page.
Go To Page	Go to the specified page.



Using the ruler

You can confirm the layout with using the ruler.

- Switching the ruler Show/Hide In the **View** menu, select **Ruler** to switch the ruler Show/Hide.
- Changing the ruler unit
 - You can set the ruler unit when you select **Units** from the **View** menu.

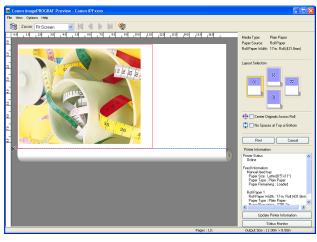
Setting	Details
mm	Use mm as the ruler unit.
inch	Use inches as the ruler unit.

Priority setting for rotating 90 degrees

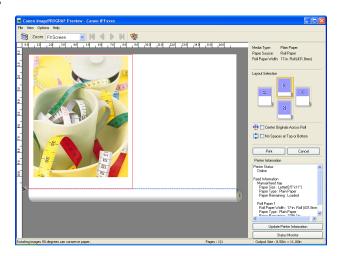
You can select Rotate 90 Degrees If Possible or Use Driver Settings from the Options menu.

🖬 Canon imagePROGRAF Preview - Canon iPFxxxx		
	File View Options Help	
	✓ Rotate 90 Degrees If Possible	
	Use Driver Settings	
0		
Setting	Details	
Rotate 90 Degrees If Possible	Rotates pages in portrait orientation 90 degrees before printing. Pages are only rotated if they can fit lengthwise across the roll.	
Use Driver Settings	Follows printer driver settings when determining whether to rotate pages.	

Selecting Rotate 90 Degrees If Possible or Placing a checkmark for Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper) on the printer driver



Selecting Use Driver Settings



 \mathcal{R}

Cancel

Print

Printer Information Printer Status Online

Feed Information Manual feed tray Paper Size : Letter(8.5''x11'') Paper Type : Plain Paper Paper Remaining : Loaded

Roll Paper 1 Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm Paper Type : Plain Paper Paper Pamaining : 2206 1in

Update Printer Information

Printing with Selecting the Layout You can print which conserves paper by selecting the layout. **1** In Layout Selection, click the layout button to use. Media Type: Plain Paper Paper Source: Roll Paper Roll Paper Width: 17-in. Roll (431.8mm) Layout Selection R \simeq R 🕀 🔲 Center Originals Across Roll 🚺 🔲 No Spaces at Top or Bottom

Button	Details
Upper Button	Turn at the position of
Right Button	Turn at the position of
Left Button	Turn at the position of
Lower Button	Turn at the position of

Windows Software

Right Button or Left Button can be selected only when the rotated pages can fit lengthwise across the roll.
 By clicking Right Button or Left Button, you can save paper by printing in landscape orientation on roll paper.
 You can select only Upper Button or Lower Button if Cut Sheet is selected.

Button	Details
R	The button is selected currently.
R	The button can be selected.
R	The button can not be selected.

Click the **Print** button.

Printing on the selected layout begins.

Print on the Center

You can print on the center of the media loaded in the printer.

Click the **Center Originals Across Roll** check box on.

Layout Selection	
₩ R N	
🕀 🗌 Center Originals Across Roll	
🚺 🔲 No Spaces at Top or Bottom	
Print Cancel	
Printer Information	
Printer Status Online	^
Feed Information Manual feed tray Paper Size : Letter(8.5''x11'') Paper Type : Plain Paper Paper Remaining : Loaded	
Roll Paper 1 Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm Paper Type : Plain Paper Paper Pempirine : 2299 1in	~
Update Printer Information	
Status Monitor	

Media Type: Plain Paper Paper Source: Roll Paper Roll Paper Width: 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)

2 Click the **Print** button.

Printing on the center begins.



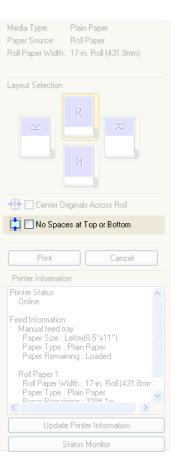
• Available only if rolls are selected in Paper Source.

Not Print Spaces at the Top/Bottom

You can save paper on not to feed roll paper for the empty spaces when the print data contains spaces at the top or bottom.



Click the **No Spaces at Top or Bottom** check box on.





Click the **Print** button.

Printing on the settings with no spaces at top or bottom begins.

Preview

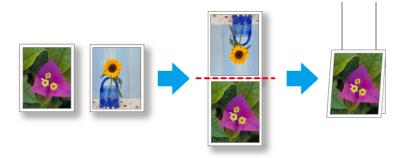
Free Layout

The Features of Free Layout	
The Features of Free Layout Starting Free Layout	
	200
Free Layout Main Window	
Detailed Settings	
Preferences Dialog Box	
Page Options Dialog Box	
Zoom Dialog Box	
Format Dialog Box	
	200
Laying out a Multiple-File Document on One Page	
Laying out a Document Created with Multiple Application Programs on One Page	
Selecting an Object	
Changing the Object Size	
Moving an Object	
Rotating an Object	
Laying out Objects Automatically	
Aligning Objects	
Changing the Object Overlapping Order	
Pasting a Copied or Cut Object	
Folded Duplex Window	221
Finished Size Settings Dialog Box	
Binding Settings Dialog Box	
Prints using Folded Duplex	

The Features of Free Layout

The main features of Free Layout are as follows.

- Allows you to lay out at will and print a document created with application software.
- You can not only lay out multiple pages on one page but also lay out and print a multiple-file document on one page, or lay out and print a document created with multiple application programs on one page.
- Any two pages can be arranged and printed in a layout that becomes duplex on folding. This can be used such as for advertising posters that are suspended from the ceiling.



Note

 The media type, image size, detailed media settings, and the printer settings can cause the actual print output to differ from the Free Layout settings.

Starting Free Layout

Follow the procedure below to start the Free Layout.

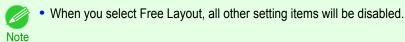
- **1** Start the apllication software which you use.
- 2 From the application software's File menu, select the printer setup menu to open the Print dialog box.
 - Normally, select Print from the File menu.
- **3** From the list, select the printer and select the **Layout** sheet.

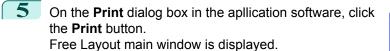




• Your printer is depicted in the lower-left area of this screen.

4 In the Layout sheet, click on the Page Layout check box and select Free Layout from the list. Click the **OK** button to save the settings.







Free Layout Main Window

The Free Layout main window consists of the menu and tool bars, layout area and status bar.



• You can use the **View** menu to show or hide the tool and status bar.

• Menu Bar

Note

This allows you to select menus required for operations.

<mark>1 imagePROGRAF Free Layout - Canon iPFxxxx</mark> Ele Edit <u>V</u>iew <u>O</u>bject <u>H</u>elp

Tool Bar

This allows you to select tool buttons required for major operations.



Layout Area

This allows you to lay out objects and edit the object size and orientation.



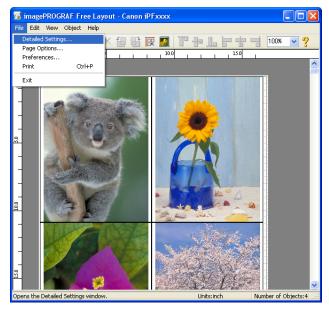
Status Bar

This shows the paper size, unit of length, and number of objects.

Roll Paper : 24-in. Roll (609.6mm)	Units:inch	Number of Objects:4
------------------------------------	------------	---------------------

Detailed Settings

The printer driver opens when you select **Detailed Settings** from the **File** menu. The printer driver is used to configure basic settings to match the type of media loaded in the printer.



Refer to "Printer Driver" →P.158 for details on the printer driver.



 When you select the Detailed Settings, the only three sheets displayed are the Main sheet, the Page Setup sheet, and the Layout sheet. Some of the printer driver settings may be disabled.

Preferences Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you select Preferences from the File menu. This allows you to configure the preferences of Free Layout.

Units	
🔘 mm	
🔘 inch	
Gridlines:	1.97 😂 inch(0.39-7.88)
Divisions:	
Divisions:	4 🗢 sections (1-10)
Grid Color:	Gray 🗸
Auto Arrange Spacing:	0.00 🗢 inch(0.00-3.94)
Object Frame Style:	Solid Line 🗸
	Cancel Defaults

Units

Set the unit for paper length, margins, and so on.

Gridlines

You can input a grid line width value in numerical characters so that they serve as a guide to laying out objects.



You can input between 10.0 and 200.0(mm) (between 0.39 and 7.88(inch)).

You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

Preferences

Divisions

You can change the number of divisions of grid lines so that they serve as a guide to laying out objects.



You can input between 1 and 10.

• You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

Grid Color

Select the grid line color.

Auto Arrange Spacing

Change the object-to-object spacing to be applied in the operation of laying out objects automatically.



206

- You can input between 0.0 and 100.0(mm) (between 0.00 and 3.94(inch)).
- You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

Object Frame Style

You can select the object frame style for printing.

The following settings are available for the object frame style.

Setting	Details
None	You can print with no frame style.

Setting	Details
Solid Line	You can print the solid line as the frame style.
Dotted Line	You can print the dotted line as the frame style.
Dashed Line	You can print the dashed line as the frame style.
Crop Marks	You can print with the crop marks.

Page Options Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you select **Page Options** from the **File** menu. This allows you to configure the roll paper length, object layout order, and margins of Free Layout.

Page Options	×
Roll Paper Length Auto Settings Manual Settings 36.00 inch(8.00-708.66) 	
Order: Upper Left to Right	
Margins	
Top: 0.00 🗢 inch	
Left: 0.00 🗘 inch Right: 0.00 🗘 inch	
Bottom: 0.00 🗢 inch	
OK Cancel Defaults	-

Roll Paper Length

Set the length of one page to print on roll paper. The following settings are available for roll paper length.

Setting	Details	
Auto Settings The one-page length to be printed on roll paper is automatically set so that the laid-or jects are printed on one page.		
Manual Settings	You can input the length of one page to print on roll paper in numerical characters.	



• Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

• You can input between 203.2 and 18000.0(mm) (between 8.00 and 708.66(inch)).

• You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

Order

Set the object layout order.

The following settings are available for order.

Setting	Details	
Upper Left to Right	The objects are laid out from upper left to right.	
Upper Left to Bottom	The objects are laid out from upper left to bottom.	
Upper Right to Left	The objects are laid out from upper right to left.	
Lower Left to Top	The objects are laid out from lower left to top.	



• When you have selected Roll Paper Length > Auto Settings and Paper Orientation > Vertical, you can choose Upper Left to Right or Upper Right to Left.

• When you have selected Roll Paper Length > Auto Settings and Paper Orientation > Horizontal, you can choose Upper Left to Bottom or Lower Left to Top.

Margins

You can input the paper margins in numerical characters.



- You can input between 0.0 and 50.0(mm) (between 0.00 and 1.97(inch)).
- You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

Zoom Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you select **Zoom** from the **View** menu. You can enlarge or reduce the screen display.

Zoom		×
<u>S</u> caling:	100	%(25-400)
	0	K Cancel

Scaling

Set the magnification for enlargement or reduction of the screen display.

- **Ø**)
- You can input between 25 and 400.
- Note
 You can change the numbers by clicking ▼ button.

Format Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you select Format from the Object menu after you select an object.

Size Sheet

You can rotate, enlarge, or reduce an object.

F	rmat	×
	Size Position	_
	 Rotate Rotate Right Rotate Left 	
	 ☐ Enl./Red ○ Scaling 100	
	Fit Photo Size 89x127 mm (3.5"x5")	
	Object Size	
	Height 10.75 inch	
	Width 8.23 inch	
	OK Cancel Defaults	

208

Windows Software

Free Layou



• When the objects are not selected, you can not select Format.

Rotate

When you place a checkmark here, you can select Rotate Right or Rotate Left.

Setting	Details
Rotate Right Rotates the object 90 degrees clockwise.	
Rotate Left Rotates the object 90 degrees counterclockwise.	



• When several objects are selected, you cannot select Rotate.

• Enl./Red.

When you place a checkmark here, you can select Scaling, Fit Paper Size, or Fit Photo Size.

Setting	Details	
Scaling Allows you to input the value of the enlargement or reduction ratio of an object		
Fit Paper Size	Prints by enlarging or reducing each object to match the paper size. If you are using roll paper, objects are enlarged or reduced so that the width of each object matches the width of the roll paper.	
Fit Photo Size	Prints all of the objects at the specified photo size.	

Note

• You can input between 25 and 600.

• You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

Position Sheet

You can rotate, enlarge, or reduce an object.

Format 🛛 🔀		
Size Position		
Object Position Vertical Pos: 0.12 🗢 inch(-10.63-708.54) Horizontal Pos: 0.12 🗢 inch(-8.11-16.88) Page Pos: 1 🗘 (1-1)		
Object Size		
Height 10.75 inch		
Width 8.23 inch		
OK Cancel Defaults		



• When the objects are not selected, you can not select Format.

Object Position

You can move the object position by changing the values.

Setting	Details
Vertical PosYou can input the number of the vertical position in numerical characters.	
Horizontal Pos You can input the number of the horizontal position in numerical characters.	
Page Pos You can input the number of the page position in numerical characters.	

Object Size

You can confirm the object size.



Note

Laying out a Multiple-File Document on One Page

• When several objects are selected, you cannot display Object Size.

You can lay out and print a multiple-file document on one page.

From the application software's **File** menu, select the printer setup menu to open the **Print** dialog box.



• Normally, select **Print** from the **File** menu.

2 Click **Properties** to open the **Properties** dialog box.

Print				? 🗙
Printer <u>N</u> ame: Status: Type: Where: Comment: Page range ③ <u>A</u> ll ③ Current ○ Current	Canon IPFxxxx Idle Canon IPFxxxx IP_xxxxxxxxx page Selection	Copies Number of copiess:	1 Collate	Properties Find Printer Print to file Manual duplex
ranges from th section	age numbers and/or page separated by commas counting e start of the document or the . For example, type 1, 3, 5–12 , p1s2, p1s3–p8s3		Collage	
Print <u>w</u> hat:	Document 🗸	Zoom		
P <u>ri</u> nt:	All pages in range 🛛 🗸	Pages per sheet:	1 page	*
		Scale to paper size:	No Scaling	*
Options			OK	Cancel

4

3 In the **Page Setup** sheet, select **Paper Source**.





Your printer is depicted in the lower-left area of this screen.

In the **Layout** sheet, click on the **Page Layout** check box and select Free Layout from the list.

Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences				
	Page Layout :			
	Set			
(Letter(8.5"×11"):	Edit Watermark			
8.50 in x 11.00 in ◆ Actual Size Letter(8.5"x11"): 8.50 in x 11.00 in	Print Centered			
	No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)			
	Copies : 1 (1 - 999)			
	Collate			
	Page Options Special Settings Defaults			
	OK Cancel Help			



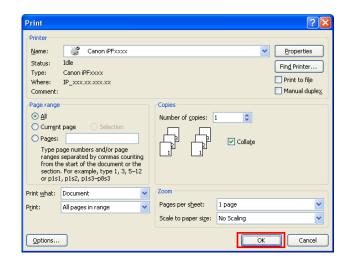
• Your printer is depicted in the lower-left area of this screen.

• When you select Free Layout, all other setting items will be disabled.



Free Layout starts, laying out the document created

with application software in the layout area as an ob-





7 Leaving Free Layout running, open other files with the application software and repeat the above steps.

Laying out a Document Created with Multiple Application Programs on One Page

You can lay out and print a document created with multiple application programs on one page.

From the application software's **File** menu, select the printer setup menu to open the **Print** dialog box.

• Normally, select **Print** from the **File** menu.

ject.

1

Note

2 Click **Properties** to open the **Properties** dialog box.

Print		? 🛛
Printer Name: Status: Type: Where: Comment:	Canon IPFxxxx Idle Canon IPFxxxx IP_xxxxxxxxxx	Fing Printer Fing Printer Print to file Manual duple <u>x</u>
ranges from th section		Copies Number of gopies: 1 🗘
Print <u>w</u> hat: P <u>r</u> int:	Document All pages in range	Zoom Pages per sheet: 1 page 🗸 Scale to paper size: No Scaling 🗸
Options		OK Cancel

213

3 In the **Page Setup** sheet, select **Paper Source**.

Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences		
Main Page Setup Layout Favorites	Utility Support	
	Page Size :	Letter(8.5"x11")
	_	Borderless Printing
	Enlarged/Reduced Pr	inting
	Fit Paper Size	
	 Fit Roll Paper W 	
	Scaling	Auto 🔷 % (5 - 600)
Letter(8.5"×11"): 8.50 in × 11.00 in	Paper Size :	Match Page Size 💉
Actual Size Letter(8.5"x11"):	 Orientation 	
8.50 in x 11.00 in		rtrait 🔼 🔿 Landscape
Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)) degrees (Conserve Paper)
	Paper Source :	Roll Paper 🗸 🗸
	Roll Paper Width :	17-in. Roll (431.8mm)
	nui raper wiutri.	17-In. Holi (431.8mm)
		Roll Paper Options
		Size Options Defaults
	(OK Cancel Help

Note

• Your printer is depicted in the lower-left area of this screen.

4 In the Layout sheet, click on the Page Layout check box and select Free Layout from the list.

🕹 Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences 🛛 🔀		
Main Page Setup Layout Favorites Utility Support		
	Page Layout : Free Layout	
	Set	
	Watermark : CONFIDENTIAL	
Edit Waterma		
Letter(8.5"x11"): ↓ Actual Size Print Centered		
Letter(8.5"×11"): 8.50 in × 11.00 in	L Rotate 180 degrees	
	No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)	
	Copies : 1 💙 (1 - 999)	
N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N N	Reverse Order	
	Page Options Special Settings Defaults	
	OK Cancel Help	



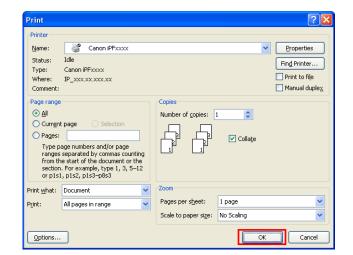
Your printer is depicted in the lower-left area of this screen.

• When you select Free Layout, all other setting items will be disabled.



Click the **OK** button to save the settings.

In the **Print** dialog box, select the pages to print and the number of copies, and click the **OK** button.



Free Layout starts, laying out the document created with application software in the layout area as an object.

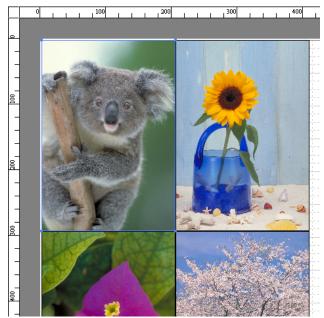


Leaving Free Layout running, open other files with other application software and repeat the above steps.

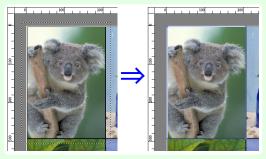
(7

Selecting an Object

When an object is selected, a select box (blue border) appears around the object.



- To select an object, click that object.
- Note To select multiple successive objects, click them while holding down the Shift key.
 - To select multiple arbitrary objects, click them while holding down the Ctrl key.
 - To select all objects, select Select All from the Edit menu.
 - When you specify the area with dragging the mouse, the object in the area is selected.



Changing the Object Size

You can change the object size by means of mouse operation or by specifying a scaling value.

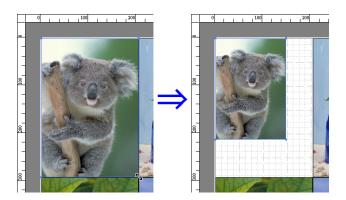
• The vertical-to-horizontal ratio remains unchanged when the object is enlarged or reduced.

Resizing by means of mouse operation

Select an object.

Note

2 Place the pointer at a corner of the selection box around the object to show the arrow handle, and drag this handle to change the object size.



Windows Software

Resizing by specifying a scaling value Select an object.

Click on the Enl./Red. checkbox in the Format Dialog Box →P.208) and select Scaling.

2 You either enter numbers directly.

- You can input between 25 and 600.
- Note You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

3 Click the **OK** button.

Moving an Object

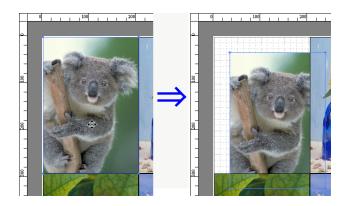
You can move the object position.



Select an object.

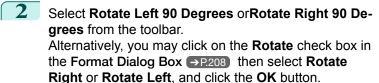
2 Place the pointer inside the selection box of the object to show the crosshair handle, and drag it to move the object.

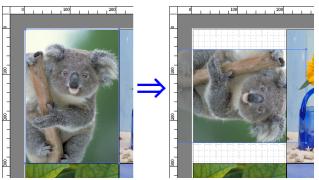
Alternatively, you can move the **Object Position** by changing the values in **Vertical Pos**, **Horizontal Pos** and **Page Pos** in the Format Dialog Box \rightarrow P208.





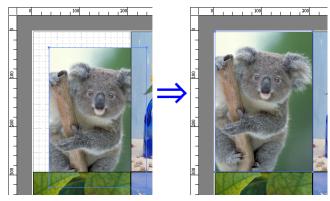
Select an object.





Laying out Objects Automatically

Click **Auto Arrange Object** in the tool bar. This automatically lays out objects. Alternatively, you may select **Auto Arrange Object** from the **Object** menu.



• The object layout order varies depending on the **Order** setting in the **Page Options Dialog Box** (>P207) dialog box.

Aligning Objects

You can align objects systematically.



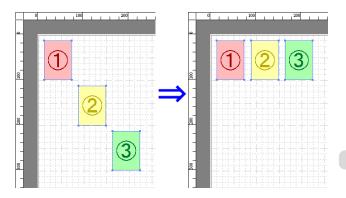
Note

- Select multiple objects.
- 2 Click the align button from the toolbar.

Alternatively, you may select the align menu from the **Object** menu.

Align Top

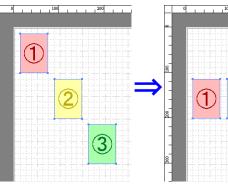
Lays out the objects, justifying them to the top.

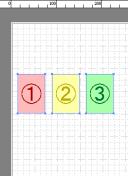


Free Layout

Center Vertically

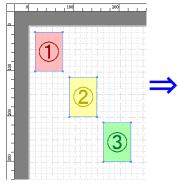
Lays out the objects, justifying them to the vertical center.

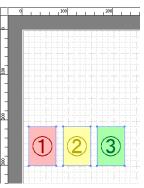




Align Bottom

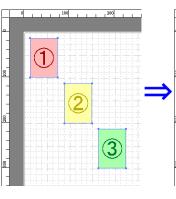
Lays out the objects, justifying them to the bottom.

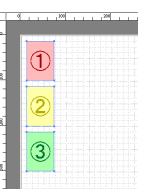




Align Left

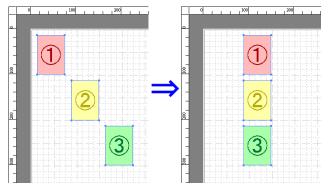
Lays out the objects, justifying them to the left.





Center Horizontally

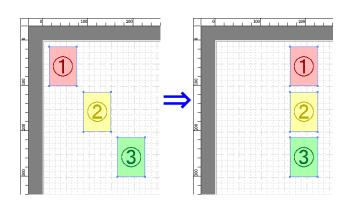
Lays out the objects, justifying them to the horizontal center.



Windows Software

Align Right

Lays out the objects, justifying them to the right.



Changing the Object Overlapping Order

You can change the object overlapping order.



2

Select an object.

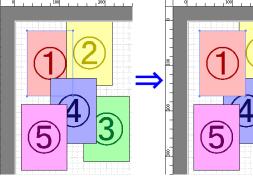
Select the Overlapping Order menu from the Object menu.

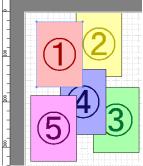
• The order of overlapping affects the order of objects automatically laid out.

• You can also select by clicking the right button of the mouse on an object. Note

Bring to Front

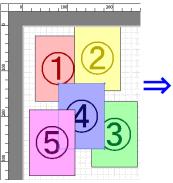
Moves the object to the frontmost position.

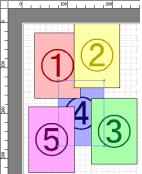




Send to Back

Moves the object to the backmost position.





Free Layout

Bring Forward

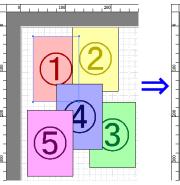
Moves the object one position to the front.

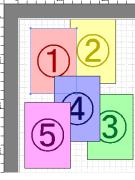
iPF685

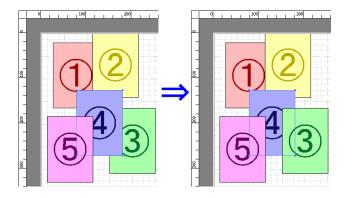
Free Layout



Moves the object one position to the back.







Pasting a Copied or Cut Object

- Click Copy or Cut from the toolbar. Alternatively, you may select Copy or Cut from the Edit menu.
- 2 Click **Paste** from the toolbar. Alternatively, you may select **Paste** from the **Edit** menu.
 - Mage The cop
 - The copied or cut object is laid out at the end of the page.
 - Note You can also select by clicking the right button of the mouse on an object.
 - In order to paste an object on any position that you like, you can paste the object with **Pointed Paste** by clicking the right button of the mouse on any position that you want.

Folded Duplex Window

This window is displayed if you select **Folded Duplex** from the **Edit** menu after selecting an object. Using the **Folded Duplex** function allows you to print with fold lines added.

The Folded Duplex window consists of the menu and tool bars, layout area and status bar.



• The toolbar and status bar can be toggled between hidden and displayed from the **View** menu.

Menu Bar

Note

This allows you to select menus required for operations.

File Edit Options View Help

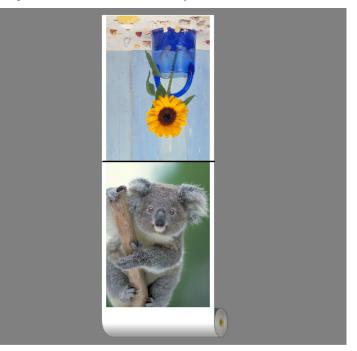
Tool Bar

This allows you to select tool buttons required for major operations.



Layout Area

This allows you to check the arrangement and orientation of objects.



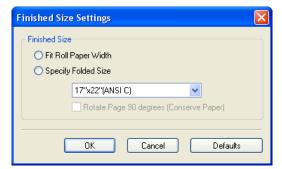
Status Bar

This shows the paper source, roll paper width, and output size.

Roll Paper Width:17-in. Roll (431.8mm) Output Size:17.00inch x 44.26inch

Finished Size Settings Dialog Box

This dialog box is displayed when you select **Finished Size Settings** from the **Edit** menu. This allows you to configure finished size settings.



Finished Size

Selects the method for setting the finished size.

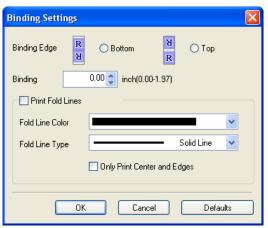
The following settings are available for the finished size.

Setting	Details
Fit Roll Paper Width	Prints by automatically enlarging or reducing the entire document so that the width of the document matches the roll paper width.
Specify Folded Size	Prints by automatically enlarging or reducing the entire document to match the size of the paper. Select the actual size of the paper you want to print on in Fit Paper Size .

Setting	Details
Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)	Prints by rotating pages by 90 degrees. Pages are automatically rotated if they will fit within the roll paper width when rotated, and are not rotated if they will not fit within the roll paper width.

Binding Settings Dialog Box

This is displayed when you select **Binding Settings** from the**Edit** menu. This allows you to configure the binding edge settings.



• Binding Edge

Configures the binding edge when folding paper.

The following settings are available for the binding edge.

Setting	Details
Bottom	Prints by placing the binding margin (gutter) at the bottom of the document.
Тор	Prints by placing the binding margin (gutter) at the top of the document.

Binding

Configures the binding margin (gutter).

Prints by creating a binding margin (gutter) of the specified size. Enter the margin size as a number.



The values that can be entered are 0 to 50 (mm).

Print Fold Lines

Configures the color and type of fold lines.



• To not print fold lines, clear the **Print Fold Lines** checkbox.

Fold Line Color

You can select the fold lines.

• Fold Line Type

You can select the fold lines.

The following settings are available for the fold line type.

Setting	Details	223
Solid Line	You can print the solid line as the frame style.	
Dotted Line	You can print the dotted line as the frame style.	

Dashed Line

Only Print Center and Edges

Setting

To print fold lines at the center and both edges, select the **Only Print Center and Edges** checkbox.

Prints using Folded Duplex This prints 2 pages consecutively. Folding back the paper at the fold lines of the center substitutes for duplex printing. Select two objects from the layout area of Free Layout. Select Folded Duplex from the Edit menu of Free Layout. Open the **Folded Duplex** window and arrange the selected objects in the layout area. 3 Open the Finished Size Settings dialog box from the Edit menu. 4 Select Fit Roll Paper Width or Specify Folded Size in Finished Size. Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper) is also available when Specify Folded Size is selected. Note Click **OK** to save the settings. 6 Open the **Binding Settings** dialog box from the **Edit** menu. Select Bottom or Top in Binding Edge. 8 Specify the **Binding** width in **Binding**. 9 Configure the Fold Line Color and Fold Line Type from Print Fold Lines.



 When the Only Print Center and Edges checkbox is selected, fold lines are only printed at the three locations of the center and both edges.

- **10** Click **OK** to save the settings.
- **11** Confirm the print setting and begin printing.

Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy

The Features of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Starting Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy	
Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Dialog Box	. 226
Hot Folder Creating a New Hot Folder Specifying an Existing Shared Folder as a Hot Folder	. 228
Setting the Print Parameters Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER	

The Features of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy

The main features of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy are as follows.

- Allows the document scanned with the Color imageRUNNER to be automatically enlarged and printed.
- You can perform basic printer settings such as printer selection, media type and output profile selection, and matching methods, in addition to borderless printing and enlargement/reduction process without growing through the printer driver.



 The media type, image size, detailed media settings, and the printer settings can cause the actual print output to differ from the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy settings.

Starting Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy

Follow the procedure below to start the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy.

To start by selecting **Printers and Faxes** from the **start** button

Open the folder of the OS you are using for configuring printers. For example, on Windows XP click the **start** button on the desktop, and then select **Printers and Faxes**.

2 Right-click the Printers icon and select **Printing Preferences** to open the **Printing Preferences** dialog box. In the **Utility** sheet, click the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** button.

💩 Canon iPFxxxx Printing Preferences	×
Main Page Setup Layout Favorites Utility Support	_
Maintenance : Printhead cleaning and printhead adjustment etc can be performed.	
Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy : Use this utility with the Color imageRUNNER MFC to print enlarged copies on imagePR0GRAF large-format printers.	
OK Cancel Apply Help	,

box displays.

The Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy dialog

User's Guide

```
Add to Startup folder
                                                                               📃 Save Printed Data
                                                                                               About
                                                                                                              Operation Guide
                                                                                                                          Help Close
           • If you click on the Add to Startup folder check box in the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy dialog box, the
     icon of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility will appear on the task bar when starting Windows thereafter.
    Note
To start by selecting Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy from the start button
       From the Windows start button, select Color image-
                                                                              💼 imagePROGRAF Printer Driver Extra Kit 🕨
                                                                                                           Not color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy
       RUNNER Enlargement Copy.
                                                                                                           Readme_English.txt
                                                                                                           👸 Uninstaller ( imagePROGRAF Printer Driver Extra Kit )
 2
       The Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy dialog
                                                                              🞏 Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy
       box displays.
                                                                               Hot Folder:
                                                                                Name
                                                                                           Shared Name Printer Name Status
                                                                                                                     Details
                                                                                                                                      Add.
                                                                                                                                       Edit
```

🞏 Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy

Shared Name Printer Name Status

Details

Hot Folder: Name

Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Dialog Box

The explanation below is on the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy dialog box.

Color imageR	UNNER Enlarge	ement Copy				
Hot Folder:						
Name	Shared Name	Printer Name	Status	Details		Add
ICC Matching.	ICC Matchin	Canon iPFxxxx	active			
						Edit
						Delete
				Start	Stop	
Add to Startup fr	older					
Save Printed Da	ita					
(About		Operat	ion Guide	Help	Close

Add to Startup folder

About

Operation Guide

Help Close

Add...

Note

Hot Folder

Enlargement Copy." → P.225



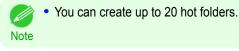
The hot folder list appears. Add Button Click the button to open the Easy Setup Wizard dialog box so that you can add a hot folder. • Edit Button From the Hot Folder list, select a hot folder and click the button to open the Add/Edit Hot Folder dialog box that allows you to edit the hot folder. • Delete Button From the Hot Folder list, select a hot folder and click the button to delete the hot folder. Start Button Clicking the button changes the status of the selected **inactive** Hot Folder to **active**. • Stop Button Clicking the button changes the status of the selected **active** Hot Folder to **inactive**. Add to Startup folder Register the application in the Windows startup menu. Save Printed Data Automatically saves printed data. • About Button Click the button to display the name and the version number of the utility. • Operation Guide Button Click the button to display the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Setup Manual.

For the step to open the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy dialog box, see "Starting Color imageRUNNER

Hot Folder

Hot folder refers to a folder used for Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy.

- When transferred to the PC's hot folder, the document data scanned with the Color imageRUNNER is printed in enlarged size from the printer according to the print conditions set in the hot folder.
- You can create a new hot folder, edit or delete an existing one, and set print conditions at will.



Creating a New Hot Folder

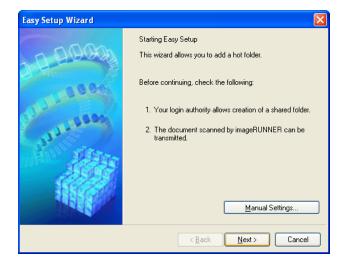
- 1
- Open the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box, and then click the **Add** button.

Name	Shared Name	Printer Name	Status	Details		Add
						E dit
						Delete
						Delete
				Start	Stop	
	p folder					



• For the step to open the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy dialog box, see "Starting Color image-RUNNER Enlargement Copy." → P225

2 The Easy Setup Wizard dialog box displays. Click the Next button.



3	Select the type of printer to use
	Click the Next button.

Easy Setup Wizard		×
Printer Selection	(
1. Printer Selection	Select the printer.	
2. Select Media Type	Printer	
3. Select Paper Size	Canon iPFxxxx Canon iPFxxxx Canon iPFxxxx	
4. Set Color		
5. Set Shared Name		
6. Completing Easy Setup		
	< Back Next > Cance	1

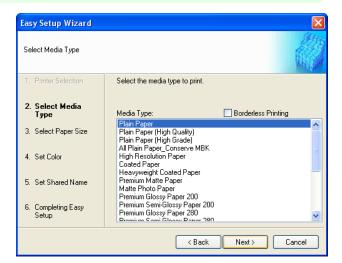
Windows Software

4 Select the media type to print.

• If the **Borderless Printing** checkbox is checked, only media types that can be used for borderless printing are displayed in the list.

Click the **Next** button.

Note



5 Select roll paper or cut sheet to print. Also, select the media size to print. Click the **Next** button.

Select the color matching method.

Click the Next button.

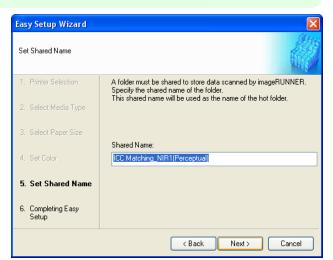
Easy Setup Wizard	X
Select Paper Size	
1. Printer Selection	Select roll paper or cut sheet to print. Also, select the paper size to print.
2. Select Media Type	Paper Size
3. Select Paper Size	O Roll Paper Roll Paper Width:
4. Set Color	17-in. Roll (431.8mm) 💌
5. Set Shared Name	O Cut Sheet Paper Size:
6. Completing Easy Setup	· opci otc. [Letter(8.5'\x11'') ▼
	< Back Next > Cancel

Easy Setup Wizard	
Set Color	
1. Printer Selection	Select the color matching method. Note: We recommend selecting the color profile supported by the imageRUNNER model you use.
2. Select Media Type	Set Color:
3. Select Paper Size	ICC Matching_NIR1(Perceptual)
4. Set Color	ICC Matching_NIR1(Colorimetric (No Wht-pnt Corr)) ICC Matching_NIR2(Perceptual) ICC Matching_NIR2(Colorimetric)
5. Set Shared Name	ICC Matching_NIR2(Saturation)
6. Completing Easy Setup	Crables color constant in a sign of
	< Back Next > Cancel

229



- This shared name is used as the name of the hot folder.
- You cannot use the **Back** button, after clicking the **Next** button here.



8 Click **Finish** button to close the **Easy Setup Wizard** dialog box.

Completing Easy Setup		
1. Printer Selection	Hot folder setup is comple Perform setup on the imag scanned data can be stor	eRUNNER operation panel so that the
2. Select Media Type	Settings Details	
3. Select Paper Size	Parameter	Settings
э. эенесс парег этzе	Hot Folder	ICC Matching_NIR1(Perceptu
4. Set Color	Shared Name Page Setup	ICC Matching_NIR1(Perceptu-
5. Set Shared Name	Media Type Print Priority	Plain Paper Image
	Print Quality	Standard (600dpi)
6. Completing Easy Setup	Media Source	Boll Paper

The hot folder you have created appears in the Hot Folder list in the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy dialog box.

Name	Shared Name	Status active	Details			Add Edit Delete
Add to Startup fo	lider		Start	Stop	2	

Specifying an Existing Shared Folder as a Hot Folder

- Share the folder you want to specify as a hot folder.
- 2 Open the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy dialog box, and then click the Add button.

Name	Shared Name	Printer Name	Status	Details		Add
						E dit
						Delete
						1
				Start	Stop	
Add to Startup	folder					
Save Printed D	ata					



• For the step to open the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy dialog box, see "Starting Color image-RUNNER Enlargement Copy." (>P.225)

3 The **Easy Setup Wizard** dialog box displays. Click the **Manual Settings** button.

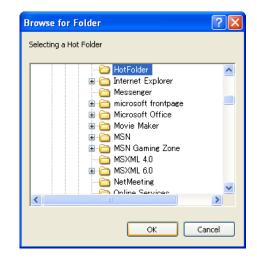
Easy Setup Wizard	
0000	Starting Easy Setup This wizard allows you to add a hot folder.
1040	Before continuing, check the following:
0	1. Your login authority allows creation of a shared folder.
(Jaken)	The document scanned by imageRUNNER can be transmitted.
	<u>M</u> anual Settings
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel

User's Guide

4 The Add/Edit Hot Folder dialog box displays. Enter the hot folder name in Name. Click the Browse botton, with selecting Specify a folder, to set the existing shared folder.

dd/Edit Hot Fold	er	
Name:	ICC Matching_NIR1(Perceptual)	
Printer		
Printer Name	Canon iPFxxxx Proper	ties
Hot folder manageme	nt	
Specify a shared n	ame	
 Specify a folder 		
	B	rowse
Apply Sharpness		
Sharpness	00) 🗹 🖕 '	High

5 The location of the folders will appear. Select the folder to specify a hot folder, and click the **OK** button.



6	As necessary, set the print conditions in the hot folder.
	(See "Setting the Print Parameters.") →P.234
	Click the OK button to close the Add/Edit Hot Folder
	dialog box.

Add/Edit Hot Folder	
Name:	ICC Matching_NIR1(Perceptual)
Printer	
Printer Name Ca	anon iPFxxxx Properties
Hot folder management	
O Specify a shared name	•
 Specify a folder 	C:\Program Files\HotFolder
	Browse
Apply Sharpness Sharpness	Low High
0 🔹 (0-500)	
ОК	Cancel Defaults Help

The hot folder you have created appears in the Hot Folder list in the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy dialog box.

Name Shi	ared Name Printer Name	Status	Details		Add
ICC Matching	Canon iPFxxxx	active			
					Edit
					Delete
			Start	Stop	
Add to Startup folder					
J Add to Stattup tolder					

Setting the Print Parameters

The printer driver opens when you click the **Properties** button in the **Add/Edit Hot Folder** dialog box. The printer driver is used to configure basic settings to match the type of media loaded in the printer.

Add/Edit Hot Folder		X
Name:	ICC Matching_NIR1(Perceptual)	
C Printer		
Printer Name Car	non iPFxxxx Properties	
L		
─ Hot folder management —		
O Specify a shared name	Г	
 Specify a folder 		
	C:\Program Files\HotFolder	
	Browse	
Apply Sharpness		
Sharpness	Low High	
0 🔷 (0-500)		
ОК	Cancel Defaults Help]

Refer to "Printer Driver" →P.158) for details on the printer driver.

Note

• The only three sheets displayed are the **Main** sheet, the **Page Setup** sheet, and the **Layout** sheet. Some of the printer driver settings may be disabled.

Apply Sharpness

Place a checkmark here to set the sharpness.

Drag the slider bar to the left or right to adjust. You can also adjust by directly entering a number in the numeric input field.

You can input between 0 and 500.

Note
• You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

• You cannot be applied to PDF files.

Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER

Scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER can be enlarged and printed automatically. Originals you create by scanning with a Color imageRUNNER are transferred to a "hot folder" and printed automatically after enlargement according to printing conditions you specify for that folder.

This processing sequence is called the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** function. To use **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy**, first complete these settings in the following order.

- Register a hot folder on your computer. Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER and complete the settings for enlargement copy. For details, see "Creating a New Hot Folder." → P.228
- 2. Complete the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER. Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder.

After these settings are complete, you can print enlarged copies of scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER.

Completing the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.

Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder. It is easy to send scanned originals to the hot folder if you assign the scanning settings and destination to a **Favorites** button on the Color imageRUNNER. For instructions on assigning scanning settings and destinations to a **Favorites** button, refer to the setting manual, displayed by clicking **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Setup Manual** button of **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** utility, or refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

Scanning the original and print an enlargement

Follow the steps below to scan an original on the Color imageRUNNER for enlarged printing on the printer. For detailed instructions, refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

- **1** Load the original on the platen glass or document feeder of the Color imageRUNNER.
- **2** Press **Send** to display the screen for transmission.
- **3** Press **Favorites**, and then press the **Favorites** button assigned to the hot folder.
- 4 Press **Start** on the control panel. If you scan originals on the platen glass, after scanning all originals, press **Done** on the touch-panel display.

Scanned originals are sent to the hot folder and automatically enlarged and printed following the conditions you specified for the folder.

Print Plug-In for Office

Print Plug-In for Officefeatures Steps to install Steps to uninstall When Print Plug-In for Office is not displayed	
To start from Microsoft Word Print Matching Roll Width(Word) Borderless Printing(Word) Multi-Page Printing(Word) Register the settings (Word) Print Using Registered Settings(Word) Portrait Orientation/Landscape Orientation(Word)	
To start from Microsoft PowerPoint Print Matching Roll Width(PowerPoint) Borderless Printing(PowerPoint) Multi-Page Printing(PowerPoint) Register the settings (PowerPoint) Print Using Registered Settings(PowerPoint) Portrait Orientation/Landscape Orientation(PowerPoint)	
To start from Microsoft Excel Print Entire Sheet(Excel) Print Selected Area(Excel) Configuring Binding (Excel)	
Configuring Special Settings	

Print Plug-In for Officefeatures

Print Plug-In for Office is a Plug-In that enables easy printing from Microsoft Office.

- It is displayed on the toolbar/ribbon, so it is easily accessible.
- It can be set by just selecting from the Wizard.
- Large-Format Printing custom size can also be set in the Wizard from Microsoft Word or Microsoft Power-Point.
- Custom size can be set automatically from Microsoft Excel.
- The layout can be checked before printing by starting the preview screen.



• 64 bit edition Windows OS operates only on WOW64 (32 bit emulator).



Important

 The Print Plug-In for Office toolbar/ribbon might not be displayed in Microsoft Office after installing imagePROG-RAF Print Plug-In for Office. For details, refer to "When Print Plug-In for Office is not displayed" (>P240).

- If you opened the Office document from Internet Explorer, the software will not run correctly.
- · If you are editing an embedded object or link object, the software will not run correctly.
- If you added the imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In ribbon to the Microsoft Office Quick Access toolbar, the software will not run correctly.

1

Steps to install

Below are the steps to install Print Plug-In for Office.



• You must log into Windows as an Administrator before the installation.

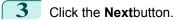
Insert "User Software CD-ROM" into the CD-ROM drive and start the installer.



• If the installer screen does not appear automatically, open the CD-ROM drive icon of your computer and double-click the **iPFInst.exe** icon.

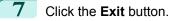
2 Click the imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In button.





limagePROGRAF Prin	t Plug-In for Office Setup Wizard 🛛 🛛 🗙
	Welcome to the imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Office Setup Wizard
	This wizard will install imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Office on your computer.
CEPE F F	Next > Cancel

4	Read the License Agreement, and click the Yes but-	🥲 imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Office Setup Wizard
	ton.	License Agreement Please read the following license agreement completely and carefully. Click Yes to agree to the license agreement.
		CANON SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT IMPORTANT-READ THIS AGREEMENT BEFORE INSTALLING THE SOFTWARE!
		This legal document is a license agreement between you and Canon Inc. ("Canon") governing your use of the software and the online or electric manual (collectively, the "SOFTWARE"). BY INSTALLING THE SOFTWARE, "POU ARE DEEMED TO HAVE AGREED TO BE BOUND BY THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT, PROMPTLY CLOSE THIS INSTALLATION PROGRAM AND DO NOT INSTALL THE SOFTWARE.
		In consideration of the right to use the SOFTWARE, you agree to abide by the terms and conditions of this Agreement.
		GRANT OF LICENSE AND RESTRICTIONS: You may use ("use" shall mean storing, loading, o you agree to the terms in license agreement?
		< <u>Back</u> Yes
5	Click the Start button.	🧐 imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Office Setup Wizard
		Ready to Install the Program. The wizard is ready to begin installation.
		Click Start to begin the installation.
		If you want to review or change any of your installation settings, click Back. Click Cancel to quit the wizard.
		Cancel
6	Click the Yes button.	imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Office
		Installation cannot be stopped once it starts. Do you want to continue?
		Yes No
	• The following message may be displayed in Window later OS. If this happens, install the .NET Framewo following the procedure.	
		 Download and install this feature Windows will get the files that it needs from Windows Update and complete the installation. Skip this installation
		Your apps might not work correctly without this feature. I all me more about this feature Cancel



The installation for **Print Plug-In for Office** is complete.

🥮 imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Office Setup Wizard	
imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Office installation is complete.	
imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Office This plug-in makes it easy to print to imagePROGRAF large-format printers from icons in the toolbar. imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In X Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In Create a page size for	,
ImagePROGRAF Print Plug-In	×
imagePROGRAF - Canon iPFxxxx - 🛛 🧊 Print 😂 Paper Setting	s
Print using your customized settings	
Esit	



- When you install this software, the virtual printer Canon imagePROGRAF PrintPlugIn may be installed. If you want to use this software, do not uninstall the virtual printer Canon imagePROGRAF PrintPlugIn.
- The Print Plug-In for Office toolbar/ribbon might not be displayed in Microsoft Office after installing imagePROG-RAF Print Plug-In for Office.
 - Refer to the following topic for details on how to display the imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Office toolbar/ribbon.
 - When Print Plug-In for Office is not displayed →P.240

Steps to uninstall

Below are the steps to uninstall Print Plug-In for Office.

- If Microsoft Office is open, close it.
- 2 Select **Control Panel** from the **start** menu.
- **3** Open **Add or Remove Programs**.
- 4 Select imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In, and click the Remove button.

5	Currently installed programs: Show updates	Sort by: Name	
I <u>h</u> ange or Remove	🔀 High Definition Audio Driver Package - KB888111		
Programs	ITML Help Workshop	Size	3.87MB
The last	គ្រឹ imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In	Size	22.42MB
Add New	Click here for support information.		rarely
Programs	To change this program or remove it from your computer, click Change or Remove.	Change	Remove
G	🔀 Intel(R) Graphics Media Accelerator Driver		
ld/Remove	😼 Intel(R) Management Engine Interface		
Windows	Intel(R) PRO Network Connections Drivers		
omponents	😻 McAfee VirusScan Enterprise	Size	41.91MB
	Hicrosoft .NET Framework 2.0	Size	88.28MB
Set Program	A Microsoft Office 2000 SR-1 Standard	Size	124.00MB
ccess and Defaults	🔀 M5XML 4.0 SP2 (KB936181)	Size	2.62MB
Derdato	🙀 Realtek High Definition Audio Driver	Size	31.21MB
	🗒 Shared Add-in Extensibility Update for Microsoft .NET Framework 2.0 (KB908002)	Size	0.29MB
	ở Shared Add-in Support Update for Microsoft .NET Framework 2.0 (KB908002)	Size	0.05MB
	Windows Installer 3.1 (KB893803)		



You cannot uninstall Print Plug-In for Office if an Office application is running. When a message appears, select Cancel and close all Office applications that are running.

When Print Plug-In for Office is not displayed

Buttons such as Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In sometimes do not appear in the Word, PowerPoint and Excel Office applications, and the **Print Plug-In for Office** functions are not available.

In this event, re-install Print Plug-In for Office.

If you are using Microsoft Office 2003 or later, you can also enable add-ins to display Print Plug-In for Office. See below for the procedure for re-installing the plug-in or enabling add-ins.

Re-installing Print Plug-In for Office

If a problem occurs, such as the system or an application terminating abnormally, the Microsoft Office application disables add-ins as a safety precaution.

In this event, you will need to re-install Print Plug-In for Office to display the imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In toolbar/ ribbon.



 You cannot re-install Print Plug-In for Office once an Office application is running. When the message appears, select Cancel and close the active Office application.

Re-install Print Plug-In for Office as follows:



Close Microsoft Office if it is open.

Install Print Plug-In for Office.

For information about instsalling, see "Steps to install." →P.237

Enabling **Print Plug-In for Office** for items disabled in Office applications

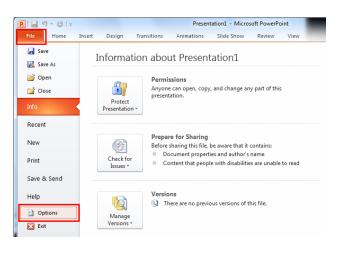
If a problem occurs, such as the system or an application terminating abnormally, the Microsoft Office application disables add-ins as a safety precaution.

In this event, you will need to restore the disabled add-ins in order to display the imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In toolbar/ribbon.

Use the procedure below to restore the add-ins disabled by Microsoft Office.

For Microsoft Office 2010 or later

Select Options from the File menu.



2 From the list on the left side of the **<application name> options** dialog box, select **Add-ins**.



Select **Disabled Items** in the **Manage** combo box and click the **Go** button.

owerPoint Options				? →
General	🔒 Vie	w and manage Microsoft Office Ac	ld-ins.	
Proofing	-107	,		
Save	Add-ins			
Language	Name 🔶		Location	Туре
Advanced		plication Add-ins Application Add-ins		
Customize Ribbon	Inactive A	pplication Add-ins		
Ouick Access Toolbar	Custom X		C:\es\Microsoft Office\Office14\OFFRHD.DLL	Document Inspector
Quice recess rooman		Dn-Slide Content	C:\es\Microsoft Office\Office14\OFFRHD.DLL	Document Inspector
Add-Ins	Off-Slide		C:\es\Microsoft Office\Office14\OFFRHD.DLL	Document Inspector
Trust Center	OneNote	Notes about PowerPoint Presentations		COM Add-in
		t Related Add-ins	C:\es\Microsoft Office\Office14\OFFRHD.DLL	Document Inspector
		t Related Add-ins		
	NO DOCU	ment Related Add-Ins		
	Disabled	Application Add-ins		
	imagePRO	GRAF Print Plug-In	C:\iles\Canon\iPF PrintPlug-In\iPFAddinIF.dll	COM Add-in
	Add-in:	Custom XML Data		
	Publish			
	Compat		vailable	
	Location			
	Descript	tion: Inspects for custom XML data s	tored with this document.	
	M <u>a</u> nage:	COM Add-ins 💌 Go		
		COM Add-ins		
		PowerPoint Add-ins		OK Cancel
		Actions		Cancer
		Disabled Items		

4 If Addin imageprograf print plug-in (ipfaddinif.dll) is displayed in the **Disabled Items** dialog box, select it and click the **Enable** button.

Disabled Items	
The items listed below were disabled because they prevented PowerPoint from functioning correctly.	
Please note that you may have to restart PowerPoint for these changes to take place.	
Select the ones you wish to re-enable.	
Addin: imageprograf print plug-in (ipfaddinif.dll)	
<u>E</u> nable <u>C</u> lose	

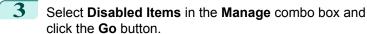
5 Close all the dialog boxes and restart the Office application.

For Microsoft Office 2007

Click the **Office** button and then click the **<application name> options** button.



2 From the list on the left side of the **<application name> options** dialog box, select **Add-ins**.

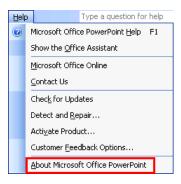


Neoling Save Add-ins Add-ins Add-ins Cutomize No.etc: Application Add-ins Cutomize No.etc: Application Add-ins Cutomize No.etc: Application Add-ins Cutomize Cutomize Coll.metry Application Add-ins Coll.metryMicrosoft Office/Office12/OfFRHD Dat Document Inspecto Exercise Diff.Side Content Coll.metryMicrosoft Office/Office12/OfFRHD Dat Document Inspecto Diff.Side Content Coll.metryMicrosoft Office/Office12/OffRHD Dat Document Diff.Side Content Coll.metryMicrosoft Office/Office12/OffRHD Dat Diff.Side Content Coll.metryMicrosoft Office/Office12/OffRHD Dat Document Diff.Side Content Coll.metryMicrosoft Office/Office12/OffRHD Dat Document Diff.Side Content Coll.metryMicrosoft Office/Office12/OffRHD Dat Diff.Side Content Coll.metryMicrosoft Office/Diff.Side Content Col	Popular	View and manage Microsoft Of	Wise add inc	
Add-Ins Add	Denation	View and manage Microsoft Of	nice add-ins.	
Name Location Type Advanced Name Location Type Active Application Add-ins Name Name Name Notation Add-ins Classification Add-ins Document Inspecto Drisble Content Classification Add-ins Document Inspecto Drisble Content Classification Add-ins Document Inspecto Document Inspecto Classification Add-ins Document Inspecto Document Inspecto Classification Add-ins Document Inspecto No Document Inspecto Classification Add-ins Document Inspecto No Document Inspecto Name COM Add-in	Frooring			
Add-in: Custom ML Data Add-in: Custom ML Data Add-in: Custom ML Data Add-in: Countern	Save	Add-ins		
Add.htr Cuttom XML Data Document Related Add-ins Document Related Add-ins Duration XML Data CLMathResolution Add-ins Description Document Related Add-ins Document Related Add-ins Document Related Add-ins Document Related Add-ins CLMathResoldt Office/Office12/OFFRHD.DLL Document Inspecto Document Related Add-ins CLMathResoldt Office/Office12/OFFRHD.DLL Document Inspecto Document Related Add-ins CLMathResoldt Office/Office12/OFFRHD.DLL Document Inspecto Document Related Add-ins No. Document Related Add-ins Document Related Add-ins No. Document Related Add-ins COM.Add-ins Document Inspecto Document Related Add-ins No. Document Related Add-ins Document Related Add-ins No. Document Related Add-ins miscoree.dll COM Add-in Add-ins Control WML Data Decument. No. Document Related Related Related Related Add-ins COM Add-ins Manage Disabled Dynagram Flies/Microsoft Office/Office12/OFFRHD.DLL Decument Related Add-ins Manage Disabled Dynagram Flies/Microsoft Office/Office12/OFFRHD.DLL Decument Related Add-ins Manage Disabled Dynagram Flies/Microsoft Office/Office12/OFFRHD.DLL Decu	Advanced	Name	Location	Туре
Turt Center Cullet Million Add ins Cullet Million Add ins Document Respect Cuttor MAD Data Cullet Million Add ins Document Respect Control Million Document Respect Cullet Million Add ins Document Respect Document Resided Add ins Chullet Million Add ins Chullet Million Add ins Document Respect Document Resided Add ins Chullet Million Add ins Document Resided Add ins No Document Respect Document Resided Add ins Chullet Million Add ins Document Resided Add ins Document Resided Add ins Document Resided Add ins No Document Resided Add ins Document Resided Add ins Document Respect Document Resided Add ins No Document Resided Add ins Document Resided Add ins Document Respect Document Resided Add ins No Document Resided Add ins Document Resided Add ins Document Respect Disablect Adjustion Add ins mageROGRAF Finit Pug-In miscoree dll COM Add.in Add.ins Cottom XML Data Document Document Respect Publisher Microsoft Office(Diffiel2)OFFRHD DUL Decuter XML Data Publisher Microsoft Office(Diffiel2)OFFRHD DUL Decuter XML Data	Eustomize			
Luit Center CLitex1Microsoft Office/Differ2D/OFFRHD.DLL Document Inspecto Invisible Origitation Notes CLitex1Microsoft Office/Differ2D/OFFRHD.DLL Document Inspecto Document Restard Address CLitex1Microsoft Office/Differ2D/OFFRHD.DLL Document Inspecto Document Restard Address CLitex1Microsoft Office/Differ2D/OFFRHD.DLL Document Inspecto Disabled Application Address microsoft Office/Differ2D/OFFRHD.DLL Document Restard Address Disabled Application Address microsoft Office/Differ2D/OFFRHD.DLL Document Restard Address Address: Cutom XML Data COM Address COM Address Address: Cutom XML Data COM Address COM Address Integration: Cipportant Tiere/Microsoft Office/Differ2D/OFFRHD.DLL Decument Restard Address Integration: Cipportant Tiere/Microsoft Office/Differ2D/OFFRHD.DLL Decument Restard Address Integration: Cipportant Tiere/Microsoft Office/Differ2D/OFFRHD.DLL Decument Restard Address Integration: Integration: Gommont Cotto Address Officiel: Cipportant Tiere/Microsoft Office/Differ2D/OFFRHD.DLL Cotto Address Decoment Restard: Gommont Gommont Cotto Address	kdd-Ins	Inactive Application Add-ins		
Invisible On-Side Content Drif Side Content Orf Side Content Orf Side Content Orf Side Content Orf Side Content Presentation Notes Cl_iiie/Microsoft Office/Office2/OFFRHD.DLL Document Inspecto Document	rust Center		C:\iles\Microsoft Office\Office12\OFFRHD.DLL	Document Inspector
esources Off.Silde Content Cl_Liles/Microsoft Office/Office12/OFFRD.DLL Document Inspecto Document Related Adds ins No Document Related Adds ins No Document Related Adds ins No Document Related Adds ins Could Adds in	and control			Document Inspector
Occument Related Add vins No Document Related Add vins Disabled Add Add vin Disabled Add Street Add vin: Conton: NAL Data Publisher: Microsoft Corporation Location: C: Program Fliet Microsoft Office12/OFFRHD DLL Description: Inspects for custom XML data stored with this document. Manage Disabled Items Go COM Add vins GO COM Add vins OK Cance	esources			Document Inspector
No Document Ministri Advins Disabiled Apglication Add ins maperROGRAF Pint Plug-In Add-in Add-in:				Document Inspector
No Document Ministri Advins Disabiled Apglication Add ins maperROGRAF Pint Plug-In Add-in Add-in:		Document Related Add-ins		
Add.in: COM Add.in Add.in: Couton 3ML Data Poblishe: Microsoft Corporation Location: Cl:Program Files/Microsoft Office12/OFFRHD DLL Description: Inspects for custom XML data stored with this document. Manage: Disabled Item:				
Add-in: COM Add-in Add-in: Coston 7ML Data Poblishe: Liston 7ML Data Poblishe: Microsoft Corporation Location: CliProgram Files/Microsoft Office12/OFFRHD.DLL Description: Inspects for custom XML data stored with this document. Manage Disabled Items: Go. COM Add-ins PowerPowerPoint Add-ins Cot Cance		Disabled Application Add.ins		
Add-in: Cuttom XML Data Publishe: Microsoft Corporation Location: Cl/Program Files/Microsoft Office/Office/21/OFFRHD DLL Description: Inspects for custom XXM, data stored with this document. Idanage: Disabind Rem: COM Add-ins RowerPoint Add			mscoree.dll	COM Add-in
Publisher: Microsoft Capperation Location: C/Program Files/Microsoft Office/Office12/OFFRHD DLL Description: Inspects for custom XAIL data stored with this document. Manage: Disabled thems: COM Add-ins: PowerFormint Add-ins: OK Cance				
Manage: Disabled Items v Go COM Add-ins Powerforth Add-ins OK Cance				
COM Add-Ins PowerPoint Add-Ins OK Cance		Publisher: Microsoft Corporation	nt Office\Office12\OFFRHD.DLL	
PowerPoint Add-ins OK Cance		Publisher: Microsoft Corporation Location: C:\Program Files\Microso		
PowerPoint Add-ins OK Cance		Publisher: Microsoft Corporation Location: C:\Program Files\Microsof Description: Inspects for custom XML	data stored with this document.	
OK Calce		Publisher: Microsoft Corporation Location: C\Program Files/Microso Description: Inspects for custom XML Manage: Disabled Items	data stored with this document.	
		Publisher: Microsoft Corporation Location: Cr/Hogram Files/Microso Description: Inspects for custom XML Manage: Disabled Items COM Add-ins	data stored with this document.	ex

4 If Addin imageprograf print plug-in (ipfaddinif.dll) is displayed in the **Disabled Items** dialog box, select it and click the Enable button.

Disabled Items
The items listed below were disabled because they prevented PowerPoint from functioning correctly.
Please note that you may have to restart PowerPoint for these changes to take place.
Select the ones you wish to re-enable.
Addin: imageprograf print plug-in (ipfaddinif.dll)
-
Enable Close

- **5** Close all the dialog boxes and restart the Office application.
 - For Microsoft Office 2003
 - 1 Click **About <application name>** in the **Help** menu of application.



User's Guide

2 Click the **Disabled Items** button in the **About <application name>** dialog box.

About Micr	osoft Office PowerPoint 🛛 🗙
	Microsoft@ Office PowerPoint@ 2003 (11.5529.5606) Part of Microsoft Office Professional Edition 2003 Copyright © 1987-2003 Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved. Portions of International CorrectSpell** spelling correction system © 1993 by Lemont & Hauspie Speech Products N.V. All rights reserved. French spelling checker and distoinates © 1994-2000 SYNAPSE Developpement. Toulouse (France). All rights reserved. Spanich Spelling Engine © 1998-2002 by SIGNUM Cia. Luda. Quito, Ecuador. All rights reserved. Spanich Thesaurus Engine © 1998-2002 by SIGNUM Cia. Luda. Quito, Ecuador. All rights reserved. This product is licensed to:
D≡	View the End-User License Agreement
treaties. Unau it, may result	computer program is protected by copyright law and international thorized reproduction or distribution of this program, or any portion of in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the int possible under the law. Iech Support Disabled Items

3 If Addin imageprograf print plug-in (ipfaddinif.dll) is displayed in the Disabled Items dialog box, select it and click the Enable button.

Disabled Items	<
The items listed below were disabled because they prevented PowerPoint from functioning correctly. Please note that you may have to restart PowerPoint for these changes to take place.	
Select the ones you wish to re-enable.	
imageprograf print plug-in (ipfaddinif.dll)	
Enable Cose	

4 Close all the dialog boxes and restart the Office application.

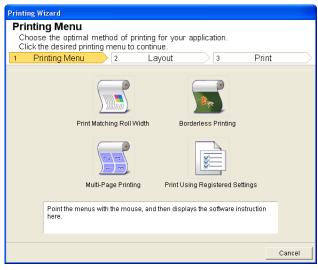
To start from Microsoft Word

Below are the steps to start Print Plug-In for Office from Microsoft Word

DEIOW	are the steps to start Frint Flug-in for Office from wicrosoft wor	u.
1	Start Microsoft Word.	
2	If Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In is displayed on the toolbaribbon, click it.	Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In
	 If the imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In toolbar/ribbon is not "When Print Plug-In for Office is not displayed" P240 	
3	Check that the imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In toolbar/ribbon is displayed.	imagePROGRAF Canon iPFxxxx Print Paper Settings imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In

4	Click the buttons on the toolbar/ril	bbon according to the items you want to set.
	Icon	Contents
	imagePROGRAF 👻	Displays the About , Help , and Special Settings dialog boxes. You can change the settings using the Special Settings dialog box.
	Menu	Refer to "Configuring Special Settings" (>P.275) for details.
	Can on iPFxxxx 🔹	Select Printer. If you select Show All Printers , the imagePROGRAF printers will be displayed again. Se-
	Printer list	lect this when you want to display all printer drivers or update the display.
	Print	The print Wizard is displayed. The settings Print Matching Roll Width , Borderless Printing , Multi-Page Printing , and Print Using Registered Settings can be set.
	PrintButton	
		Large-Format Wizard is displayed. Settings for Portrait or Landscape Orientation can be set.
	Paper Settings	
	Paper Settings Button	

Printing Wizard dialog box



• If you want to change the display to another file or application while the **Printing Wizard** is open, close the **Printing Wizard** dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ribbon.

Large-Format Printing Wizard dialog box

Large-Format Printing Wizard	
Large-Format Printing Menu Create a page size to suit your printing application. Click the desired large-format printing menu.	
1 Large-Format Printing Menu 2 Create Page Si:	ze
Landscape Orientation Landscape Orientation Portrait Orientation Point the menus with the mouse, and then displays the software instruction here.	n
	Cancel

- If you want to change the display to another file or application while the Large-Format Printing Wizard is open, close the Large-Format Printing Wizard dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ribbon.
 - The layout may collapse if you create a form using existing data. If that is the case, modify the data again.

Print Matching Roll Width(Word)

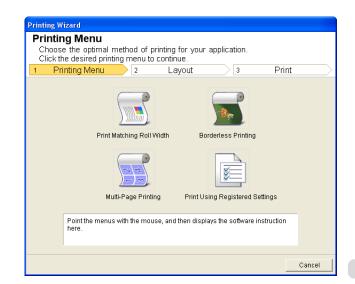
Prints to the edge of the roll width. You can print large exhibits and posters, and also print Portrait and Landscape orientations made in **Large-Format Printing Wizard**.

- Start Microsoft Word.
 - If Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In is displayed, click it.

Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In
imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In



Click **Print** from the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon. The **Printing Wizard** dialog box is displayed.





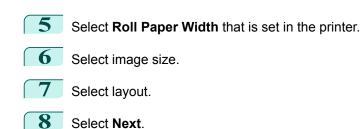


• If you want to change the display to another file or application while the **Printing Wizard** is open, close the **Printing Wizard** dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ ribbon.

4 Click Print Matching Roll Width.

Printing Wizard				
Print Matching Roll Width Complete the settings so that the original fits the roll width. Select the roll width and image layout and click Next.				
1 Printing Menu 2	Layout	3	Print >	
17.00 inch	Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)			
22.10 inch R	Image Size :	R N	★ (47 - 100)	
	< Back	Next >	Cancel	

Windows Software

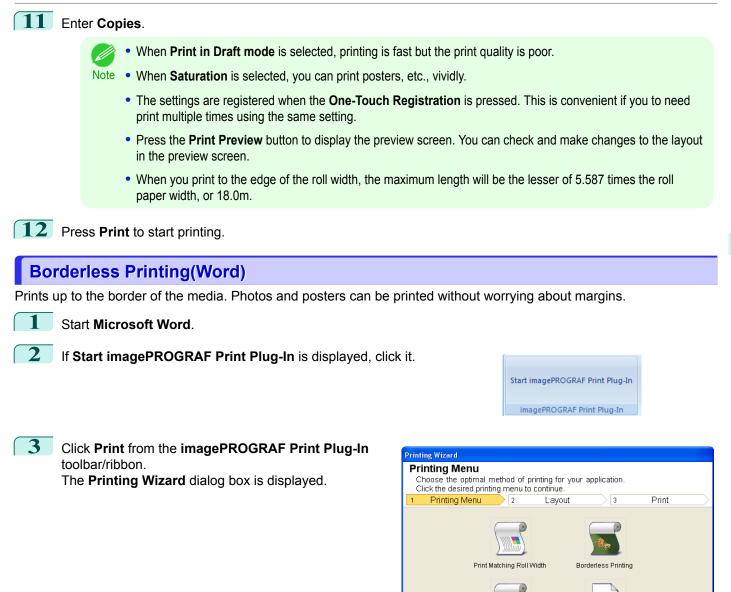


Printing Wizard	
Print	
Complete these settings to print	
	ange of pages to print, and then click Print.
1 Printing Menu > 2	Layout 3 Print
	Printer : Canon iPFxxxx
17.00 inch	Media Type :
	Plain Paper 📃 🔽
	Print <u>R</u> ange :
	All Pages
22.10 inch	C Current Page
_	C Pages <u>F</u> irst: 1 <u>→</u> (1 - 2000)
	Last: 1 📰 (1 - 2000)
	Cop <u>i</u> es : 1 + (1 - 999)
	F Print in <u>D</u> raft mode
	Sat <u>u</u> ration
	Print Pre <u>v</u> iew
One-Touch Registration	< Back Print Cancel



Select Media Type.

10 Select **Print Range** from **All Pages**, **Current Page**, and **Pages**. If **Pages** is selected, enter the number of pages.



to change the display to another file or application while the **Printing Wizard** is open, close the

Multi-Page Printing

Point the menus with the mouse, and then displays the software instruction

Print Using Registered Settings

Important

 If you want to change the display to another file or application while the Printing Wizard is open, close the Printing Wizard dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ ribbon. Windows Software

Print Plug-In for Office

4 Click Borderless Printing.

Information Confirm that your original cover	e the entire name
	з ше епше раде.
R	R
Choose how to proceed Continue using the plug-in	
C Return to application	
□ Don't display this message again	ОК

5 A confirmation dialog box is displayed. If the data fills up the page, confirm that **Continue using the plug-in** is selected in **Choose how to proceed** and press **OK**.



• To adjust the data, select **Return to application** and press **OK**. Exit **Print Plug-In for Office** and return to the application.



7

Select Roll Paper Width that is set in the printer.

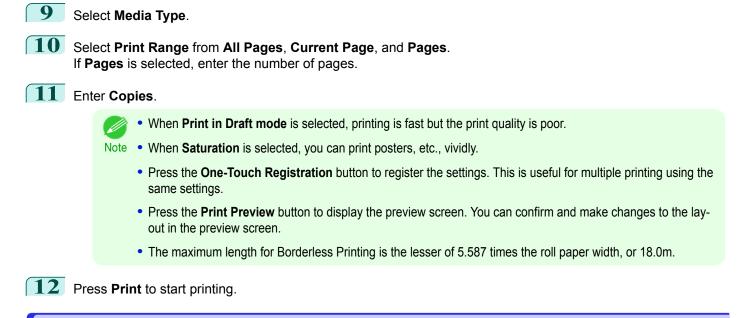
Select layout.





iPF685

Specify the media type and the Printing Menu 2	Layout		Print
	Printer : Cano	n iPFxxxx	
17.00 inch	Media Type :		
	Heavyweight Co	ated Paper	•
	Print Range :		
22.09 Inch R	All Pages		
	C Current Page		
	C Pages	<u>F</u> irst:	1 🕂 (1 - 2000)
		Last:	1 🚊 (1 - 2000)
	Cop <u>i</u> es :		1 1 (1 - 999)
•	Print in Draft r		
	Saturation		



Multi-Page Printing(Word)

Prints multiple pages as one page. You can print handouts into a single page, or print matter with many pages.

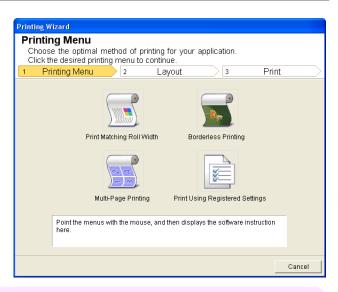
1 Start **Microsoft Word**.

If Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In is displayed, click it.

Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In

3 Click **Print** from the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon.

The **Printing Wizard** dialog box is displayed.



Important

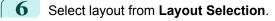
• If you want to change the display to another file or application while the **Printing Wizard** is open, close the **Printing Wizard** dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ ribbon.

4 Click Multi-Page Printing.

Printing Wizard Multi-Page Printing Complete the settings for printing multiple pages per sheet. Select the roll width and image layout and click Next. Printing Menu 2 Layout 3				
17.00 inch 22.10 inch	Roll Paper Width : 17-In: Roll (431.8mm)			
< Back Next > Cancel				



Select Roll Paper Width that is set in the printer.



Windows Software

Print Plug-In for Office



Printing Wizard Print Complete these settings to print from the source application. Specify the media type and the range of pages to print, and then click Print. Printing Menu Iz Levout I3 Print			
	Printer : Canon iPFxxxx		
17.00 inch	Media Type :		
	Plain Paper 💌		
	Print <u>R</u> ange :		
	All Pages		
	C Current Page C Pages First: 1 = (1 - 2000)		
	Last: 1 = (1 - 2000)		
	Cop <u>i</u> es : 1 - (1 - 999)		
	☐ Print in <u>D</u> raft mode ☐ Sat <u>u</u> ration		
]	Print Pre <u>v</u> iew		
One-Touch Registration	< <u>B</u> ack <u>P</u> rint Cancel		

8 Select Media Type.

Select **Print Range** from **All Pages**, **Current Page**, and **Pages**. If **Pages** is selected, enter the number of pages.

10 Enter Copies.

9

- When Print in Draft mode is selected, printing is fast but the print quality is poor.
- Note When Saturation is selected, you can print posters, etc., vividly.
 - The settings are registered when the One-Touch Registration is pressed. This is convenient if you to need
 print multiple times using the same setting.
 - Press the **Print Preview** button to display the preview screen. You can check and make changes to the layout in the preview screen.
 - The maximum length for Multi-Page Printing is the lesser of 5.587 times the roll paper width, or 18.0m.

11 Press **Print** to start printing.

Register the settings (Word)

If you are going to print multiple times using the same setting, you can select **One-Touch Registration**. Registered settings can be recalled from **Print Using Registered Settings**.

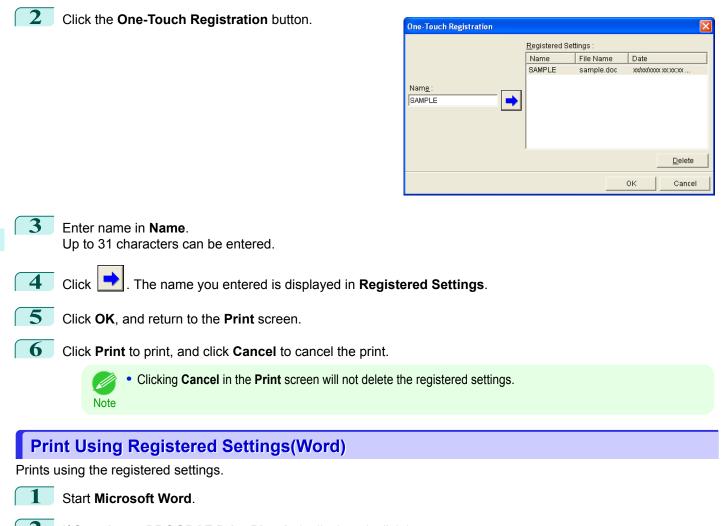
Set up to the **Print** screen from **Print Matching Roll Width**,**Borderless Printing** or **Multi-Page Printing** of **Printing Menu**.

Up to 20 items can be registered.

Note • The available settings are as follows.

- Print Matching Roll Width(Word) → P.245
- Borderless Printing(Word) → P.247
- Multi-Page Printing(Word) → P.249

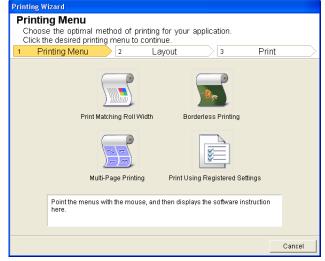
251



If Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In is displayed, click it.



3 Click **Print** from the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon. The **Printing Wizard** dialog box is displayed.



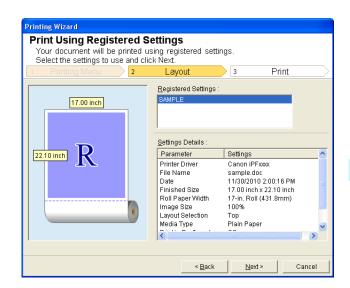


5



If you want to change the display to another file or application while the **Printing Wizard** is open, close the **Printing Wizard** dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/
ribbon.





Click the Nextbutton.

Printing Wizard		
Print Complete these settings to print Specify the media type and the ra	nge of pages to print, a	
17.00 inch	Printer : Canon iPFxxxx Media Type : Plain Paper	
[22.10 inch] R	Print <u>R</u> ange : • All Pages • Current Page • Pages First	
	Copies :	
	☐ Print in <u>D</u> raft mode ☐ Sat <u>uration</u>	
,		Print Pre <u>v</u> iew
One-Touch Registration	< <u>B</u> ack	Print Cancel

6 Select Media Type.

Select **Print Range** from **All Pages**, **Current Page**, or **Pages**. If **Pages** is selected, enter the number of pages.

8 Enter Copies.

- When **Print in Draft mode** is selected, printing is fast but the print quality is poor.
- Note When Saturation is selected, you can print posters, etc., vividly.
 - Press the Print Preview button to display the preview screen. You can check and make changes to the layout in the preview screen.
 - The maximum print length when printing with the registered settings is the lesser of 5.587 times the roll paper width, or 18.0m.

9 Press Print to start printing.

Print to the edge of the roll width. You can print large exhibits and posters, or print the Landscape or Portrait Orientation Page Sizes made in the Large-Format Printing Wizard.

Create Page Size in Portrait or Landscape Orientation.

Use the Large-Format Printing Wizard to create portrait page sizes for Potrait Orientation, and landscape page sizes for Landscape Orientation.

Start Microsoft Word.

If Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In is displayed, click it.

Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In
imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In

Click Paper Settings from the imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In toolbar/ribbon. The Large-Format Printing Wizard dialog box is displayed.



Note

 If you want to change the display to another file or application while the Large-Format Printing Wizard is open, close the Large-Format Printing Wizard dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ribbon.

Large-Format Printing Wizard	
Large-Format Printing Menu Create a page size to suit your printing application. Click the desired large-format printing menu.	
1 Large-Format Printing Menu 2 Create Page Size	
Landscape Orientation	
Point the menus with the mouse, and then displays the software instruction here.	
	Cancel

4 Click Portrait Orientation or Landscape Orientation.

• The steps taken to create a Portrait Page Size will be used as an example to explain the procedure.

iPF685

Large-Format Printing Wizard		
Portrait Orientation Create a page size in portrait orientation. Enter the roll width and length and click Create Page. Large-Format Printing Menu 2 Create Page Size		
17.00 inch 94.98 inch R	Roll Paper Width : [17-in. Roll (431.9mm)) Length : 94.98 ≟ inch (17.00 - 94.98) ⊆	
	< Back Create Page Cancel	

5 Adjust Length from the list-box or slide-bar.

Click the **Create Page** button.

Click**OK** if the message is displayed.

Info	rmation	
Follow these steps to adjust the original created in the source application. To print, use the Printing Wizard.		
		imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In
	imagePROGRAF * Canon iPFxxxx	Print Paper Settings
	imagePROGRAF P	rint Plug-In
Г	Don't display this message again	ОК

8 Edit and create the document.



Important

Printing is done in Print Matching Roll Width of the Printing Wizard. For details on Print Matching Roll Width, see "Print Matching Roll Width(Word)." →P.245

• The layout may collapse if you create a form using existing data. If that is the case, modify the data again.

To start from Microsoft PowerPoint

Start Microsoft PowerPoint.

Below are the steps to start Print Plug-In for Office from Microsoft PowerPoint.



If **Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** is displayed on the toolbar/ ribbon, click it.

Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In If the imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In toolbar/ribbon is not displayed, refer to the following.

Important • When Print Plug-In for Office is not displayed →P240

Click the buttons on the toolbar/ribbon according to the items you want to set.

3 Check that the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon is displayed.

Icon

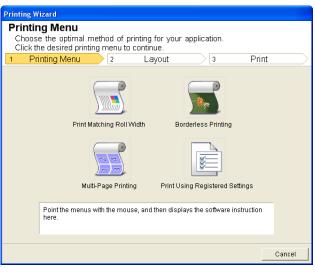
imagePROGRAF *	Canon iPFxxxx	Ŧ	Print	Paper Settings
imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In				

4

imagePROGRAF - Menu	Displays the About , Help , and Special Settings dialog boxes. (See "Configuring Special Settings.") →P.275
Canon iPFxxxx Printer list	Select Printer. If you select Show All Printers , the imagePROGRAF printers will be displayed again. Select this when you want to display all printer drivers or update the display.
Print PrintButton	The print Wizard is displayed. The settings Print Matching Roll Width , Borderless Printing , Multi-Page Printing , and Print Using Registered Settings can be set.
	Large-Format Wizard is displayed.
Paper Settings Paper Settings Button	Settings for Portrait or Landscape Orientation can be set.

Printing Wizard dialog box

Contents



Important

 If you want to change the display to another file or application while the Printing Wizard is open, close the Printing Wizard dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ ribbon.



• If you open a password protected document as read-only, the **Printing Wizard** cannot be run.

Large-Format Printing Wizard dialog box

Large-Format Printing Wizard	
Large-Format Printing Menu Create a page size to suit your printing application. Click the desired large-format printing menu.	
1 Large-Format Printing Menu 2 Create Page Siz	ie 🔷
Landscape Orientation Landscape Orientation Portrait Orientation Point the menus with the mouse, and then displays the software instruction here.	n
	Cancel

- If you want to change the display to another file or application while the Large-Format Printing Wizard is open, close the Large-Format Printing Wizard dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ribbon.
 - The layout may collapse if you create a form using existing data. If that is the case, modify the data again.



If you open a password protected document as read-only, the **Large-Format Printing Wizard** cannot be run. Remove the password protection.

Print Matching Roll Width(PowerPoint)

Prints to the edge of the roll width. You can print large exhibits and posters, and also print Portrait and Landscape orientations made in **Large-Format Printing Wizard**.

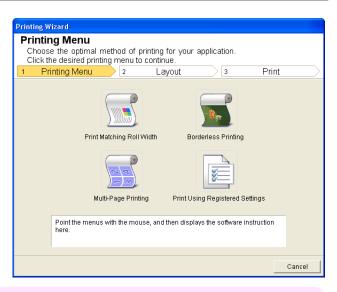


- Start Microsoft PowerPoint.
- If Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In is displayed, click it.



3 Click **Print** from the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon.

The **Printing Wizard** dialog box is displayed.



Important

• If you want to change the display to another file or application while the **Printing Wizard** is open, close the **Printing Wizard** dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ ribbon.

Click Print Matching Roll Width.

Printing Wizard	
Print Matching Roll Widtl Complete the settings so that th Select the roll width and image la Printing Menu 2	ne original fits the roll width.
17.00 inch	Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)
12.79 inch R	Image Size : 100 🖆 % (62-100)
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel

5 Select Roll Paper Width that is set in the printer.



Select image size.

7 Select layout.

8 Select Next.

Printing Wizard	
Print Complete these settings to print Specify the media type and the ro Printing Menu	from the source application. ange of pages to print, and then click Print.
	Printer : Canon iPFxxxx
17.00 inch	<u>M</u> edia Type :
	Plain Paper 🗸 🗸
 ח	Print <u>R</u> ange :
12.79 inch	All Slides
~~~	C Current Slide
	C Slides Eirst: 1 📑 (1 - 1)
	Last: 1 📩 (1 - 1)
	Cop <u>i</u> es : 1 (1 - 999)
	Print in <u>D</u> raft mode
	Sat <u>u</u> ration
	Print Preview
One-Touch Registration	< <u>B</u> ack <u>P</u> rint Cancel



**10** Select **Print Range** from **All Slides**, **Current Slide**, and **Slides**. If **Slides** is selected, enter the slide number.

# **11** Enter **Copies**.

- When Print in Draft mode is selected, printing is fast but the print quality is poor.
- Note When Saturation is selected, you can print posters, etc., vividly.
  - The settings are registered when the **One-Touch Registration** is pressed. This is convenient if you to need print multiple times using the same setting.
  - Press the **Print Preview** button to display the preview screen. You can check and make changes to the layout in the preview screen.
  - When you print to the edge of the roll width, the maximum length will be the lesser of 14.22 times the roll paper width, or 18.0m.
- **12** Press **Print** to start printing.

# **Borderless Printing(PowerPoint)**

Prints up to the border of the media. Photos and posters can be printed without worrying about margins.

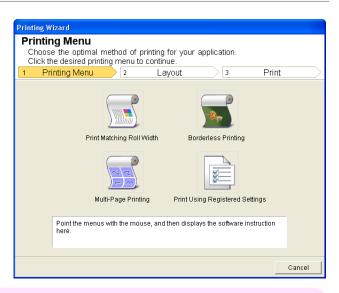
- Start Microsoft PowerPoint.
- If Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In is displayed, click it.

Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In

imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In

# 3 Click **Print** from the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon.

The **Printing Wizard** dialog box is displayed.



Important

• If you want to change the display to another file or application while the **Printing Wizard** is open, close the **Printing Wizard** dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ ribbon.

4 Click Borderless Printing.

Information Confirm that your original covers the entire page.
Choose how to proceed © Continue using the plug-in © Return to application
□ Don't display this message again OK

**5** A confirmation dialog box is displayed. If the data fills up the page, confirm that **Continue using the plug-in** is selected in **Choose how to proceed** and press **OK**.



To adjust the data, select Return to application and press OK. Exit Print Plug-In for Office and return to the application.

iPF685

Printing Wizard Borderless Printing Complete the settings for bord Select the roll width and image	ayout and click Next.
1 Printing Menu 2	Layout 3 Print
	Roll Paper Width :
17.00 inch	17-in. Roll (431.8mm) 💌
12.74 inch R	Layout Selection :
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel

6 Select Roll Paper Width that is set in the printer.

7 Select layout.

8 Select Next.

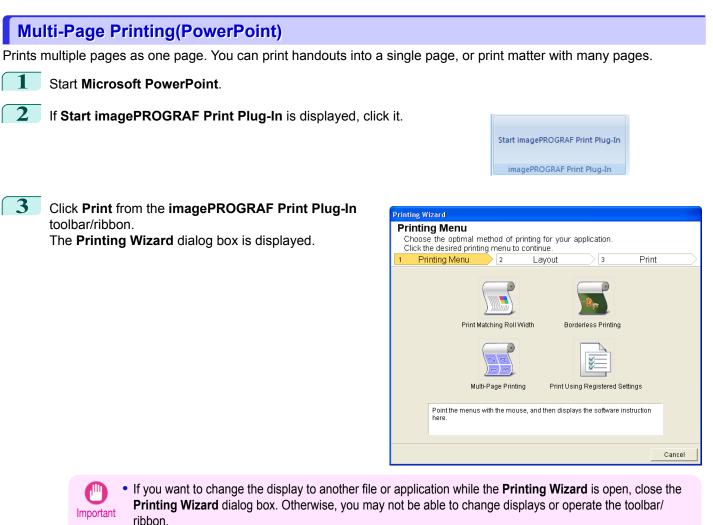
Printing Wizard			
Print Complete these settings to print Specify the media type and the ra			
	Printer : Canon	iPFxxxx	
17.00 inch	Media Type :		
	Heavyweight Coa	ited Paper	•
12.74 inch	Print <u>R</u> ange :		
	<ul> <li>All Slides</li> <li>Current Slide</li> </ul>		
	C Slides	First:	1 🗮 (1 - 1)
		— <u>L</u> ast:	1 🗮 (1 - 1)
	Cop <u>i</u> es :		1 📫 (1 - 999)
	Print in Draft m	rode	
	Sat <u>u</u> ration		
,			Print Preview
One-Touch Registration	< <u>B</u> a	k	Print Cancel

# 9 Select Media Type.

**10** Select **Print Range** from **All Slides**, **Current Slide**, and **Slides**. If **Slides** is selected, enter the slide number.

# **11** Enter **Copies**.

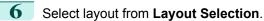
- When **Print in Draft mode** is selected, printing is fast but the print quality is poor.
- Note When Saturation is selected, you can print posters, etc., vividly.
  - Press the **One-Touch Registration** button to register the settings. This is useful for multiple printing using the same settings.
  - Press the **Print Preview** button to display the preview screen. You can confirm and make changes to the layout in the preview screen.
  - The maximum length for Borderless Printing is the lesser of 14.22 times the roll paper width, or 18.0m.



## 4 Click Multi-Page Printing.

Printing Wizard Multi-Page Printing Complete the settings for printing Select the roll width and image lay Printing Menu 2	
17 00 inch 1 22.55 inch 2	Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.9mm)
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel

Select Roll Paper Width that is set in the printer.



iPF685



Printing Wizard	
Print Complete these settings to print Specify the media type and the ra	from the source application. ange of pages to print, and then click Print.
	Printer : Canon iPFxxxx
17.00 inch	Media Type :
	Plain Paper 🔹
1	Print <u>R</u> ange :
	<ul> <li>All Slides</li> </ul>
22.55 inch	C Current Slide
2	○ Slides Eirst: 1
	Last: 1 💼 (1 - 1)
	Cop <u>i</u> es : 1 - 999)
	Print in Draft mode
	Sat <u>u</u> ration
	Print Pre <u>v</u> iew
One-Touch Registration	< Back Print Cancel

# 8 Select Media Type.

Select **Print Range** from **All Slides**, **Current Slide**, and **Slides**. If **Slides** is selected, enter the slide number.

## **10** Enter Copies.

9

- When Print in Draft mode is selected, printing is fast but the print quality is poor.
- Note When Saturation is selected, you can print posters, etc., vividly.
  - The settings are registered when the One-Touch Registration is pressed. This is convenient if you to need
    print multiple times using the same setting.
  - Press the **Print Preview** button to display the preview screen. You can check and make changes to the layout in the preview screen.
  - The maximum length for Multi-Page Printing is the lesser of 14.22 times the roll paper width, or 18.0m.

**11** Press **Print** to start printing.

# **Register the settings (PowerPoint)**

If you are going to print multiple times using the same setting, you can select **One-Touch Registration**. Registered settings can be recalled from **Print Using Registered Settings**.

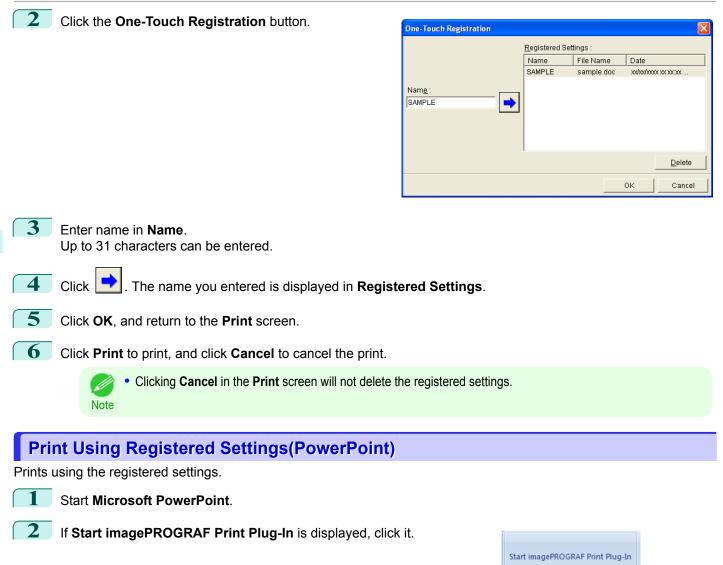
Set up to the **Print** screen from **Print Matching Roll Width**,**Borderless Printing** or **Multi-Page Printing** of **Printing Menu**.

Up to 20 items can be registered.

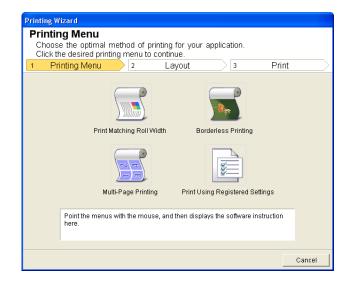
Note • The available settings are as follows.

- Print Matching Roll Width(PowerPoint) → P.257
- Borderless Printing(PowerPoint) → P.259
- Multi-Page Printing(PowerPoint) → P.262

1



3 Click **Print** from the **imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In** toolbar/ribbon. The **Printing Wizard** dialog box is displayed.



imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In

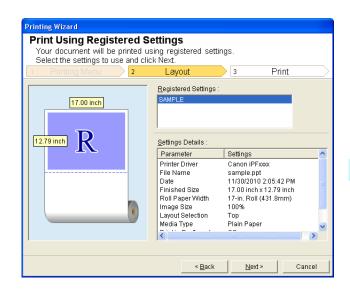


5



If you want to change the display to another file or application while the **Printing Wizard** is open, close the
 **Printing Wizard** dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/
 ribbon.





Click the Nextbutton.

Printing Wizard				
Print				
Complete these settings to print	from the source	e applicatio	on.	
Specify the media type and the ra				
1 Printing Menu 2		3	Print	
				_
	Printer : Cano	n iPFxxxx		
17.00 inch	Media Type :			
	Plain Paper			•
				_
12.79 inch R	Print <u>R</u> ange :			
	All Slides			
	C Current Slide			
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Slides	<u>F</u> irst :	1 🕂 (1 - 1)	
		Last:	1 🗮 (1 - 1)	
	Operion :	<u></u>		
	Cop <u>i</u> es :		1 🛨 (1 - 999)	·
	Print in Draft	node		
	□ Sat <u>u</u> ration			
			Print Pre <u>v</u> iew	¢
			17	
One-Touch Registration	< <u>B</u> ;	ack	Print Cance	el

# 6 Select Media Type.

Select **Print Range** from **All Slides**, **Current Slide**, and **Slides**. If **Slides** is selected, enter the slide number.

# 8 Enter Copies.

- When **Print in Draft mode** is selected, printing is fast but the print quality is poor.
- Note When Saturation is selected, you can print posters, etc., vividly.
  - Press the Print Preview button to display the preview screen. You can check and make changes to the layout in the preview screen.
  - The maximum print length when printing with the registered settings is the lesser of 14.22 times the roll paper width, or 18.0m.

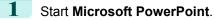
# 9 Press Print to start printing.

# Portrait Orientation/Landscape Orientation(PowerPoint)

Print to the edge of the roll width. You can print large exhibits and posters, or print the Landscape or Portrait Orientation Page Sizes made in the Large-Format Printing Wizard.

Create Page Size in Portrait or Landscape Orientation.

Use the **Large-Format Printing Wizard** to create portrait page sizes for Potrait Orientation, and landscape page sizes for Landscape Orientation.

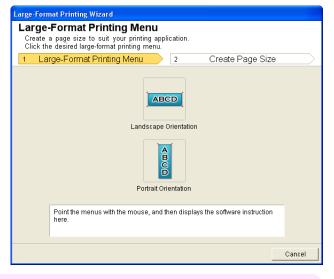


If Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In is displayed, click it.



Click Paper Settings from the imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In toolbar/ribbon.

The Large-Format Printing Wizard dialog box is displayed.



• If you want to change the display to another file or application while the Large-Format Printing Wizard is open, close the Large-Format Printing Wizard dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ribbon.

# 4 Click Portrait Orientation or Landscape Orientation.

Note

• The steps taken to create a Portrait Page Size will be used as an example to explain the procedure.

266

iPF685

Large-Format Printing Wizard	
Portrait Orientation Create a page size in portrait orientation. Enter the roll width and length and click Create Port Large-Format Printing Menu 2	
[17.00 inch [94.98 inch]	Roll Paper Width :         17-in. Roll (431 8mm)         Length :         94.98 ♣ inch (17.00 - 94.98)         -         -
	< Back Create Page Cancel

7

5 Adjust Length from the list-box or slide-bar.

Click the **Create Page** button.

Click**OK** if the message is displayed.

Info	rmation	
Ģ	Follow these steps to adjust the application. To print, use the Printing Wizard.	original created in the source
		imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In
	imagePROGRAF * Canon iPFxxxx imagePROGRAF F	Print Paper Settings
Г	Don't display this message again	ОК

8 Edit and create the document.

• The layout may collapse if you create a form using existing data. If that is the case, modify the data again.



 Printing is done in Print Matching Roll Width of the Printing Wizard. For details on Print Matching Roll Width, see "Print Matching Roll Width(PowerPoint)." (>P.257)

# To start from Microsoft Excel

Below are the steps to start Print Plug-In for Office from Microsoft Excel.



Start Microsoft Excel.





Windows Software

Important

• If the imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In toolbar/ribbon is not displayed, refer to the following.

When Print Plug-In for Office is not displayed →P.240

3	Check that the imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In toolbar/ribbon is
	displayed.

imagePROGRAF *	Canon iPFxxxx	-	Print
imagel	PROGRAF Print Plug-Ir	1 I	

4

Click the buttons on the toolbar/ril	obon according to the items you want to set.				
Icon	Contents				
imagePROGRAF *	Displays the About, Help, and Special Settings dialog boxes. (See "Configuring Special Settings.") →P275				
Menu	octangs. ) Mizro				
Canon iPFxxxx	Select Printer. If you select <b>Show All Printers</b> , the <b>imagePROGRAF</b> printers will be displayed again. Se- lect this when you want to display all printer drivers or update the display.				
Print PrintButton	The print Wizard is displayed. The settings <b>Print Entire Sheet</b> and <b>Print Selected Area</b> can be set.				

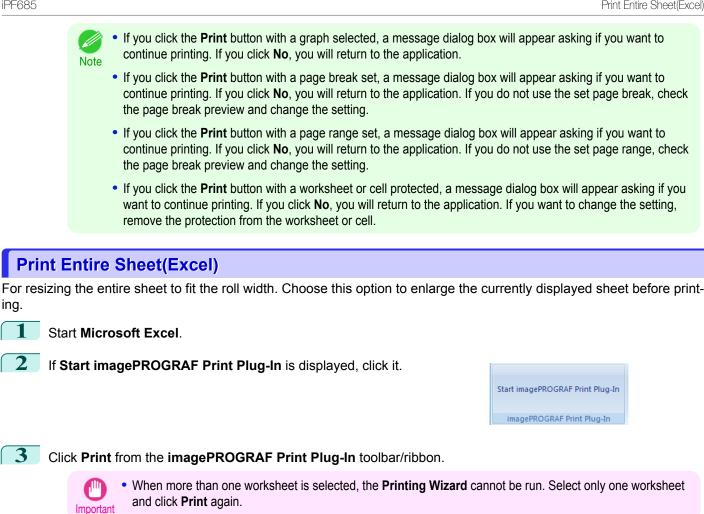
### Printing Wizard dialog box

Printing	Wizard					
Print Choo	ing Menu Ise the optima	al method of pr inting menu to		application.		
	Printing Menu		Layout	3	Print	$ \longrightarrow $
	Point the me here.	Print Entire Shee		elected Area	instruction	
						Cancel

- If you want to change the display to another file or application while the **Printing Wizard** is open, close the **Printing Wizard** dialog box. Otherwise, you may not be able to change displays or operate the toolbar/ribbon.
  - The Printing Wizard will not start if you click the Print button on the toolbar/ribbon while editing a cell.
  - When more than one worksheet is selected, the **Printing Wizard** cannot be run. Select only one worksheet and click **Print** again.
  - When an object is selected, the **Printing Wizard** is not started if you click the **Print** button on the toolbar/ ribbon.
  - If the paper size in Excel is blank, the **Printing Wizard** cannot be run. From the **File** menu in Excel, select **Page Setup** and check **Paper size**.

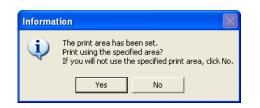
ing.

3



If a print area is set, a confirmation message dialog box will appear.

To print the entire sheet, cancel the setting of the print area.



The **Printing Wizard** dialog box is displayed.

Printing Wizard					
Printing Men Choose the opti Click the desired	<b>U</b> mal method of pr I printing menu to	inting for your continue.	application.		
1 Printing Me	nu 2	Layout	3	Print	$ \longrightarrow $
Point the here.	Print Entire Sheet		elected Area	Instruction	
					Cancel

# 4 Click **Print Entire Sheet**.

A message will appear informing you that analysis is in progress.

e the optima ne desired pri			nting for y continue.	our app	lication.		
inting Menu		2	Layout		3	F	Print
	Analyz	ina data	a. Please v	vait			
	Analyz	ing uato	1.1 16436 9	vait.			

The Layout menu will appear automatically.

Printing Wizard				
Print Entire Sheet Complete the settings so that th Select the roll width and image la			vidth.	
1 Printing Menu 2	Layo	out	3 F	Print
17.00 inch		er Width : oll (431.8mm)		•
17.87 inch R	Image S		R	<ul> <li>♣ % (47 - 100)</li> <li>J ⊕</li> <li>Imding Settings     </li> </ul>
		< Back	Next >	Cancel

• If data analysis requires time, a message dialog will appear. If you select **No**, you will return to the application. Note

- 5 Select Roll Paper Width that is set in the printer.
- **6** Select image size.
- **7** Select layout.
- To configure **Binding**, click the **Binding Settings** button. Refer to **"Configuring Binding (Excel)"** (>P.274) for details on the procedure for configuring **Binding**.



1 Printing Menu 2	: from the source application. ange of pages to print, and then click Print.
17.00 inch 17.87 inch R	Printer:       Canon i PFxxxx         Media Type:       Image: Plain Paper         Copies:       1 min (1 - 999)         No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)         Print in Draft mode         Saturation

# **10** Select Media Type.

## **11** Enter Copies.

- **12** If the upper and lower margins are too wide, check **No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)**. The upper and lower margins can be checked in **Print Preview**.
  - When **Print in Draft mode** is selected, printing is fast but the print quality is poor.
  - Note When Saturation is selected, you can print posters, etc., vividly.
    - Press the **Print Preview** button to display the preview screen. You can check and make changes to the layout in the preview screen.
    - When you print to the edge of the roll width, the maximum print length is 18.0m.

**13** Press **Print** to start printing.



- If divided into plural pages, try reducing the data size or the range you select.
- Important You cannot run Print or Print Preview if you select it for a worksheet with no data displayed.

# **Print Selected Area(Excel)**

For resizing the selected range of cells to fit the roll width. Choose this option to enlarge a particular part of the sheet before printing.



Start Microsoft Excel.



If Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In is displayed, click it.

	Start imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In
l	imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In



Click Print from the imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In toolbar/ribbon.



• When more than one worksheet is selected, the **Printing Wizard** cannot be run. Select only one worksheet and click **Print** again.

# If a print area is set, a confirmation message dialog box will appear.

To print the selected area, cancel the setting of the print area.

(į)	The print area has been set. Print using the specified area? If you will not use the specified print area, click No.
	Yes No

The **Printing Wizard** dialog box is displayed.

Printing Wi	izard					
Choose		method of pri ting menu to c		application.		
	nting Menu	2	Layout	3	Print	$ \rightarrow $
		rint Entire Sheet		lected Area	nstruction	
					0	Cancel

# **4** Click **Print Selected Area**.

Important

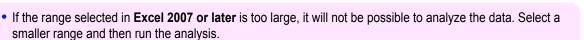
• If only one cell is selected, Print Selected Area cannot be selected.

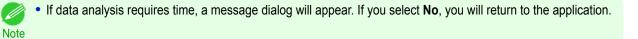
A message will appear informing you that analysis is in progress.

ing Wizard					
inting Menu					
hoose the optima			application.		
lick the desired pr Printing Menu		Layout	3	Print	
Finding Menu	2	Layout		Filli	
	Analvzing dat	a. Please wait.			
	, ,				
					icel I
					1991

## The Layout menu will appear automatically.

Printing Wizard				
Print Selected Area Complete the settings so that th Select the roll width and image la			idth.	
1 Printing Menu 2	Layo	out	3 F	Print
17.00 inch		er Width : oll (431.8mm)		<b>_</b>
17.87 inch R	Image S		R X	<ul> <li>₩ (47 - 100)</li> <li>J ⊕</li> <li>Inding Settings</li> </ul>
		< <u>B</u> ack	<u>N</u> ext >	Cancel





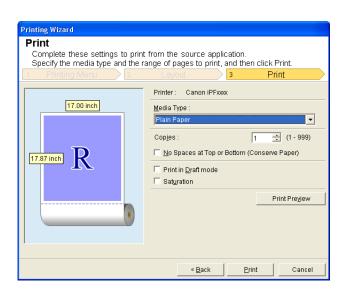
- Select Roll Paper Width that is set in the printer.
- 6 Select image size.

Important

- Select layout.
- 8 To configure **Binding**, click the **Binding Settings** button. Refer to "Configuring Binding (Excel)" (>P.274) for details on the procedure for configuring Binding.
- 9 Select Next.

**10** Select Media Type.

**11** Enter Copies.



Windows Software

Print Plug-In for Office

iPF685

12 If the upper and lower margins are too wide, check **No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)**. The upper and lower margins can be checked in **Print Preview**.

- When **Print in Draft mode** is selected, printing is fast but the print quality is poor.
- Note When Saturation is selected, you can print posters, etc., vividly.
  - · Press the Print Preview button to display the preview screen. You can check and make changes to the layout in the preview screen.
  - When you print to the edge of the roll width, the maximum print length is 18.0m.

**13** Press **Print** to start printing.



- If divided into plural pages, try reducing the data size or the range you select.
- Important You cannot run **Print** or **Print Preview** if you select it for a worksheet with no data displayed.

Windows Software

# **Configuring Binding (Excel)**

You can configure **Binding** margins for binding printouts.

Configure the settings up to Layout Selection in the Layout screen in Print Entire Sheet or Print Selected Area.

Refer to "Print Entire Sheet(Excel)" (>P269) and "Print Selected Area(Excel)" (>P271) for the configuration methods.

2 Click the **Binding Settings** button.



You cannot click the Binding Settings button in the following situations.

- Important When the Image Size is set to a value smaller than 100%
  - · When a graph is selected
  - When page breaks have been set
  - · When a sheet or cell is protected

Open the Binding Settings dialog box.

🔽 Binding		
Binding Edge :	Long Edge (Left)	-
Binding Margin :	Standard (Approx. 0.4 in)	•

If the **Binding** checkbox is not checked, select it to turn binding on.

- Select Binding Edge.
- Select Binding Margin.



Click the **OK** button. Return to the **Layout** screen.

Check that the **Binding** settings are applied in the preview screen.

Complete the settings so that the Select the roll width and image to the roll width and image to the setting Menu 2	
17.00 inch	Roll Paper Width : 17-in. Roll (431.8mm)
16.13 inch	Image Size : 100 🖆 % (49 - 100)

Windows Software

**7** Configure the settings in the **Printing Wizard** dialog box.

# **Configuring Special Settings**

You can configure Special Settings from the imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In toolbar.

Click imagePROGRAF in the toolbar, and select Special Settings.

Special Settings	×
<ul> <li>✓ Show progress indicator during plug-in startup</li> <li>✓ Center sheets and print areas</li> <li>✓ Ensure image quality when creating page sizes</li> <li>✓ Correct the print area when analyzing</li> </ul>	
OK Cancel	

**2** Turn the checkbox for the item you want to change on or off.

Item	Details
Show progress indicator during plug-in startup	When this setting is off, hides the progress indicator that appears while the plug-in is starting up.
Center sheets and print areas	When this setting is off, printing is performed without changing the position. When this setting is on, printing is performed with the top, bottom, left, and right margins layed out equally. When this setting is off, printing is performed without changing the position. This function is only valid in <b>Microsoft Excel</b> .
Ensure image quality when creating page sizes	When this setting is on, documents are created at the maximum size. This reduces the enlargement ratio during actual printing, which minimizes degradation of the quality of photos, etc. This function is only valid in <b>Microsoft PowerPoint</b> .
Correct the print area when analyzing	For data that cannot be processed with usual data analysis, the print area is corrected and then the data is processed. When data analysis fails, you may be able to print by turning on this checkbox. This function is only valid in <b>Microsoft Excel</b> .

**3** Click **OK** to close the **Special Settings** dialog box.

# Memo

# iPF685

User's Guide

Basic Printing Workflow	15
Enhanced Printing Options	31
Windows Software	157

# Mac OS Software

Printer Driver	278
Preview	296
Free Layout	319
Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy	344
→ Printmonitor	515
→ Media Configuration Tool	420

Handling and Use of Paper	361
Control Panel	437
Printer Parts	477
Network Setting	491
Print Job Management	511
Adjustments for Better Print Quality	573
Maintenance and Consumables	589
Troubleshooting	627
Error Message	657
Specifications	681
Appendix	685

# **Printer Driver**

Printer Driver Settings	
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver Confirming Print Settings Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing Using Favorites	
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications	
Main Pane Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box View set. Dialog Box for the Printing Application Matching pane	
Color Settings Pane: Color Object Adjustment dialog box: Color Color Settings Pane: Monochrome	
Object Adjustment dialog box: Monochrome Page Setup Pane Additional Settings Pane	

# **Printer Driver Settings**

For instructions on accessing the Mac OS printer driver, refer to the following topics.

Printer:	iPFxxxx \$	
Presets:	Default Settings \$	
Copies:	1	
Pages:	All     From: 1 to: 1	
Paper Size:	ISO A4 \$ 210 by 297 mm	
Orientation:		
	Preview	-
✓ Auto ○ Scale ● Scale	Layout Color Matching Paper Handling Cover Page	
Copies I	Main Page Setup Additional Settings	
	Cancel	

For information on the Mac OS printer driver settings, refer to the following topics.

• Main Pane →P.283

You can specify the media type, color processing, print quality, print preview, and other settings. Choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the printing application or **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.

Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box → P.286

- iPF685
- View set. Dialog Box for the Printing Application →P.288
- Color Settings Pane: Color → P.291
- Object Adjustment dialog box: Color → P.292
- Matching pane → P.288
- Color Settings Pane: Monochrome → P.292
- Object Adjustment dialog box: Monochrome →P.293
- Page Setup Pane →P.294 You can specify the page size of the original, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, the orientation, the paper size and source, and automatic cutting.
- Additional Settings Pane →P.295 You can configure the method of outputting print jobs to the printer.

With the **imagePROGRAF Free Layout** feature, you can arrange originals from various source applications on a single page before printing. For details, see "Free Layout." →P.319

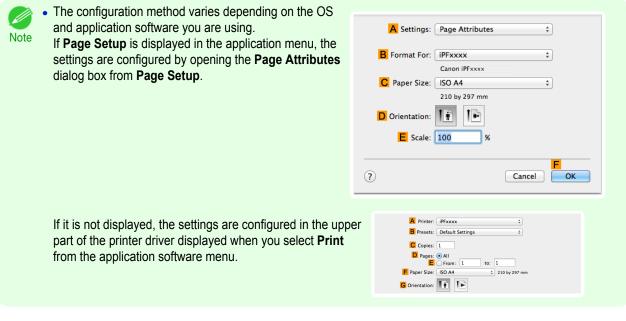
With the **imagePROGRAF Preview** feature, you can check the layout before printing and adjust layout or size settings while viewing a preview screen. For details, see "**Preview**." (→P.296)

With the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** feature, you can automatically enlarge and print scanned originals from a **Color imageRUNNER**. For details, see "Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy." →P.344

# **Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver**

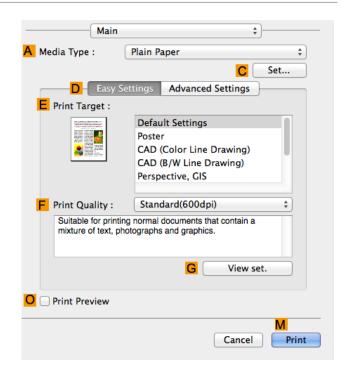
If you have replaced the paper, you must complete the following settings in the printer driver.

This sets the **B** Format for and **C** Paper Size.



- 2 Select the printer in the **APrinter** list.
- **3** Choose the original size in the **F** Paper Size list.
- 4 If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **FOK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

## 5 Access the **Main** pane.



**6** In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

7 Access the Page Setup pane.

Page S	Setup +
A Paper Source :	Roll Paper 🗘
B Roll Width :	24 in. (609.6mm) \$
D 🗹 Enlarged/Redu	ced Printing
F 💿 Fit Roll Paper	Width
G OScaling :	100 🗘 % (5 - 600)
Η 🗌 Borderless Prin	ting
J 🕎 🗆 Print Cen	tered
K	s at Top or Bottom
📙 📶 🗌 Rotate Pa	age 90 degrees
N 🗾 🗆 Free Layo	but
	Cancel Print

 8 In the A Paper Source list, select how paper is supplied.
 9 If Roll Paper is selected in A Paper Source, select the width of the roll paper that is loaded in B Roll Width.
 If a variety of settings are available in the printer driver to suit different printing applications. For details on available printing conditions, see "Printer Driver Settings ." (>P.278)

# **Confirming Print Settings**

The ways to confirm what printing conditions have been specified are as follows.

## Checking a print preview

You can check an image of the original just as it will be printed. Confirming the image of print jobs beforehand helps prevent printing errors. For details on print previews, see "Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing." 
P.144

# **Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing**

This topic describes how to check the layout before printing using the Canon imagePROGRAF Preview function.

1

Choose **Print** in the application menu.

Main ÷ A Media Type : Plain Paper ÷ C Set... D Easy Settings Advanced Settings E Print Target : **Default Settings** -----đ Poster 2 CAD (Color Line Drawing) CAD (B/W Line Drawing) Perspective, GIS * Standard(600dpi) F Print Quality : Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics. G View set. O 🗌 Print Preview Μ Cancel Print

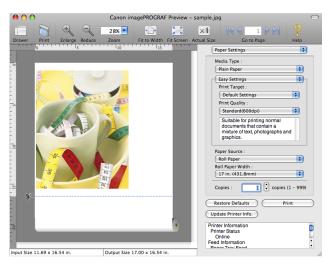
Access the **Main** pane.

Select the **OPrint Preview** check box.



Printer Driver





Mac OS Software Printer Driver

6 Check the layout and adjust settings in the Canon imagePROGRAF Preview window as desired.

Print from the Canon imagePROGRAF Preview menu.



• For details on imagePROGRAF Preview functions, see "Preview." → P.296

# **Using Favorites**

You can use the Presets function in Mac OS for favorite-based printing.



• In the printing dialog box, click **Save As** in the **Presets** list to save the current print settings. This is a standard feature of the operating system. For details, refer to the Mac OS documentation.

# Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications

In the application software, select **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.



• This dialog box includes basic printing options and enables you to choose the printer, specify the range of pages, number of copies, and so on.

Select the printer in the **Printer** list.

Printer:	iPFxxxx ‡
Presets:	Default Settings 🗧
Copies:	1
Pages:	• All
	○ From: 1 to: 1
Paper Size:	ISO A4 ‡ 210 by 297 mm
Orientation:	

### Main Pane

# **3** Click **Print** to start printing.

As shown in the following illustration, you can switch to other panes in this dialog box to complete settings for various methods of printing, including enlarged and reduced printing, borderless printing, and so on.

Printer: iPFxxxx	\$
Presets: Default Settings	\$
Copies: 1	
Pages: • All From: 1 to: 1	
Paper Size: ISO A4	97 mm
Orientation:	
<ul> <li>✓ Preview</li> <li>Layout</li> <li>Color Matching</li> <li>Paper Handling</li> <li>Cover Page</li> <li>Main</li> <li>Page Setup</li> <li>Copies Additional Settings</li> </ul>	
Copies Additional Settings	l Print

# **Main Pane**

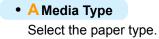
Note

The following settings are available on the Main pane. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.

• On the **Main** pane, choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the print target, or switch to **Ad-vanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.

## Common Items

Main	<b>*</b>
A Media Type :	Plain Paper 🗧
	C Set
D Easy Se	ettings Advanced Settings
E Print Target :	
	Default Settings Poster CAD (Color Line Drawing) CAD (B/W Line Drawing) Perspective, GIS
F Print Quality :	Standard(600dpi)
	g normal documents that contain a otographs and graphics.
	G View set.
D Print Preview	
	Cancel Prin



For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "**Displaying** the **Paper Reference Guide**.") → P.365

## • C Set

Displays **Paper Detailed Settings**. You can configure the printing settings to match the type of media, such as the ink drying time.

Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box → P.286

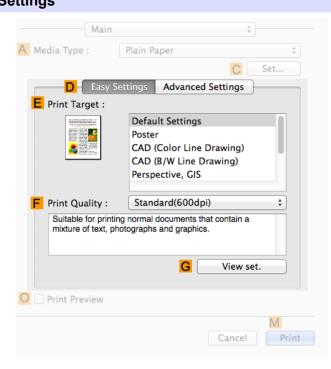
## • OPrint Preview

Important

When the check box is selected, **imagePROGRAF Preview** is launched before printing. This allows you to check on-screen previews of documents before printing.

Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing →P.144

# Configuration using Easy Settings



## • E Print Target

Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed.

- Printing Photos and Images →P.33
- Printing Office Documents →P.37)

## • F Print Quality

Choose the level of print quality.

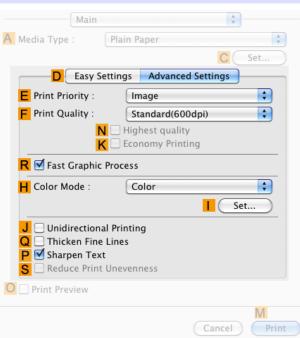
## • G View set.

284

Click to display the **View set.** dialog box, which enables you to confirm the settings for the selected item from the **E Print Target** list or change the order of items listed in **E Print Target**.

View set. Dialog Box for the Printing Application →P.288

## Configuration using Advanced Settings



## • E Print Priority

Choose the graphic elements that you want to emphasize for printing.

### • F Print Quality

Choose the level of print quality.

• Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing → P.58

### • N Highest quality

When the check box is selected, printing is performing focusing on quality. Printing takes longer and consumes more ink than in other modes, but this mode offers superior printing quality.



If you set F Print Quality to High, you can select N Highest quality. However, depending on A Media Type, you may not be able to select N Highest quality.

## • KEconomy Printing

When this mode is selected, you can print with less ink consumed. However, print quality is lower than in regular printing. Select this option to save ink, such as when printing to check drawings. Depending on the **A Media Type** and **F Print Quality** settings, this mode may not be available.



If you set F Print Quality to Fast, you can select K Economy Printing. However, depending on A Media Type, you may not be able to select K Economy Printing.

## • **R** Fast Graphic Process

Select this option to print faster than usual, when possible.

## • H Color Mode

Choose the color mode.

Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing → P.58

## Set

Click to display the **Color Settings** dialog box for more advanced color settings.

• Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver →P.51

## • J Unidirectional Printing

Select this checkbox to prevent problems such as misaligned lines and improve the print quality. However, the printing speed becomes slower.

## • **Q** Thicken Fine Lines

Select this check box to print fine lines more distinctly.

## • P Sharpen Text

Select this check box to print text more sharply.

## • S Reduce Print Unevenness

Select this checkbox for two-pass printing to reduce color shading. This option is displayed if you have selected Plain Paper in **Media Type** and **Office Document** in **Print Priority**.

# Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box

The **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box offers the following settings. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.

ledia Type :	Plain Paper	
Drying Time		
Between Pages :	Printer Default	÷
Between Scans :	Printer Default	÷
Roll Paper Margin for Safety		
Near End Margin :	Printer Default	÷
Cut Speed :	Printer Default	÷
Automatic Cutting :	Printer Default	*
Mirror		
Revert	Cancel	(

To display the Paper Detailed Settings dialog box, on the Main pane, click Set by Media Type. (See "Main Pane.") → P283

## A Media Type

B Drying Time

Note

The paper selected with **Media Type** of the **Main** panel is displayed. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide**.") (See "**Displaying the** 

# 286

Specify the time that the printer waits for ink to dry, as needed. The Between Pages setting is only valid for rolls.

## C Between Pages

You can set the time to wait after printing 1 document page until ejecting the paper. Since waiting time is required for ink to dry before a roll is cut, you can deliver paper in the Output Stacker with the ink dried even if **Cutting Mode** is set to **Automatic**.

Setting Item	Details
Printer Default	The setting of the control panel of the printer is applied.
None	Paper is ejected immediately after printing completes.
30 sec. / 1 min. / 3 min. / 5 min. / 10 min. / 30 min. / 60 min.	Paper is ejected when the set time elapses after printing completes.

## • D Between Scans

You can set the time to wait after printing 1 line on a page until printing the next line. Set this to avoid bleeding or color unevenness such as when bleeding occurs on a page or when color unevenness occurs during borderless printing.

Setting Item	Details
Printer Default	The setting of the control panel of the printer is applied.
None	The next line is printed immediately after a line is printed.
<b>1 sec. / 3 sec. / 5 sec. / 7 sec. / 9</b> The next line is printed when the set time elapses after a line is printed.	
sec.	* Increase the time according to the occurrence condition of bleeding or unevenness.

## E Roll Paper Margin for Safety

You can specify the length of a margin on the leading edge of paper to ensure that paper susceptible to curling is held firmly against the Platen.

## • F Near End Margin

Specify the length of the Near End Margin (the leading edge margin) of the roll, as needed.

Setting Item	Details	
Printer Default	The setting of the control panel of the printer is applied.	
3 mm (0.12 in)	The document is printed in the standard size.	
	* Select this when you do not have any problems in printing.	
20 mm (0.8 in)	Select this when rubbing against the printhead occurs such as when using paper that tends to curl.	

## **G** Cut Speed

Select the speed of automatic cutting, as needed. You can adjust this setting if paper is not cut well when automatic cutting is used.

Setting Item	Details	
Printer Default	The setting of the control panel of the printer is applied.	
High Speed	When the Standard setting does not result in a clean cut surface, select this.	
Standard	Select this when you do not have any problems in automatic cutting.	
Low Speed	This helps prevent adhesive from sticking to the cutter and keeps the cutter sharp if you select it when using adhesive paper.	

## H Automatic Cutting

Set whether to perform roll cutting automatically or print a cut line.

## The following settings are available for automatic cutting.

Setting Item	Details	
Printer Default	The setting of the control panel of the printer is applied.	
None	After printing completes, the roll is not cut per page, and the next page of data is printed successively.	
Print Cut Guideline	After printing completes, a line is printed per page, and the next page of data is printed successively.	

## J Mirror

Specify whether to print a mirror image, as needed. Select this option to print a version of the document or image with the left and right sides inverted.

# View set. Dialog Box for the Printing Application

In the View set. dialog box, you can check details of the selected printing application.

A Print Target :	B Default Settings	
Default Settings Poster CAD (Color Line Drawing) CAD (B/W Line Drawing) Perspective, GIS Photo (Color) Office Document Faithful Color Reproduction	C Details :	
	Parameter Print Priority Print Quality Color Mode Thicken Fine Lines Sharpen Text Reduce Print Unevenness Color Adjustment : Bri Color Adjustment : Sa Object Adjustment Matching Method	0 0

● To display the View set. dialog box, on the Main pane, click View set. by Print Target. (See "Main Pane .") ●P.283 Note

## • A Print Target

Shows all **Print Target** options (settings items for the printing application).

## • B Name

Identifies the item selected in **Print Target** by its name and an icon.

## C Details

Here, you can confirm detailed settings values for each item selected in the Print Target list.

## Matching pane

On the **Matching** pane, you can specify color matching to compensate for differences in the appearance of colors on various devices.



288

• The Matching pane is not displayed when No color correction or Monochrome is selected in Color Mode.



• To display the Matching pane, on the Main pane click Color Settings by Color Mode in Advanced Settings, and then click the Matching tab. (See "Main Pane .") → P.283

#### **Driver Matching Mode**

The following options are available when you select **Driver Matching Mode** in the **A Matching Mode** list.

Color Settings		
	Color Adjustment Matching	
Matching Mode :	Driver Matching Mode ICC Matching Mode	
Matching Method :	Perceptual	
Gamma :	2.2	
Revert		Cancel OK

#### • A Matching Mode

Select the color matching mode to use, as desired.

Normally, select **Driver Matching Mode**. For color matching based on ICC profiles, select **ICC Matching Mode** depending on your color matching system.

#### • B Matching Method

Select the color matching method that suits the document to be printed. Various **B** Matching Method options are available depending on your selection in **A** Matching Mode.

#### • E Gamma

You can adjust the gradation of intermediate tones in an image. **2.2** is normally selected. If you want a softer impression than **2.2**, select **1.8**.

#### ICC Matching Mode

The following options are available when you select ICC Matching Mode, in the A Matching Mode list.

Color Settings	
	Color Adjustment Matching
A Matching Mode :	Driver Matching Mode (Kyuanos) ICC Matching Mode
B Input Profile Settings :	sRGB v3.0 (Canon)
C Matching Method :	Perceptual
D Printer Profile Settings :	sRGB v3.0 (Canon)
Revert	Cancel OK



To display the Matching pane, on the Main pane, click Color Settings by Color Mode in Advanced Settings, and then click the Matching tab. (See "Main Pane .") →P.283

#### A Matching Mode

Select the color matching mode to use, as desired.

#### • B Input Profile Settings

#### You can choose Input Profile.

Various options are available depending on your selected **A Matching Mode**.

#### C Matching Method

#### You can choose **C** Matching Method.

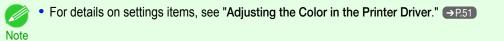
Various options are available depending on your selected **A Matching Mode**.

#### • **D** Printer Profile Settings

Specify the printer profile as desired.

We recommend that you select an ICC profile created using commercially available profile creation software in order to perform color management accurately on paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed confirmed paper.

The created ICC profile needs to be saved in the following folder on the computer you are using. /user/(user name)/library/ColorSync/Profiles folder



## Color Settings Pane: Color

In general, make any needed adjustments to the color of documents in the application used to create them. However, if the color tone as printed is not as you expected, you can also adjust the color in the printer driver. If the color tone as printed is not as you expected, you can adjust it on the **Color Adjustment** pane.

	Color Adjustment	Matching	
	Color Balance		
	D Cyan :	Low	High
3	0 🗘 (-30 - 30)	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	<b>_</b>
	E Magenta :	Low	High
	0 🗘 (-30 - 30)	•Ò	<b>—</b>
	F Yellow :	Low	High
ABCDEF	0 🗘 (-30 - 30)	· • · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
1234567	G Gray Tone :	Cool	Warm
Sample Type :	0 🗘 (-30 - 30)	· • · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
	H Brightness :	Dark	Light
View Color Pattern	0 (‡) (-30 - 30)	*	<u> </u>
Apply to Sample	Contrast :	Low	High
	0 🗘 (-30 - 30)	•	•
	J Saturation :	Low	High
	0 🗘 (-30 - 30)	) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) (	📀
		K Ob	oject Adjustment
Revert		Cancel	ок

- To display the Color Adjustment pane, on the Main pane click Color Settings by Color Mode in Advanced Settings. (See "Main Pane .") → P.283 Note
  - For details on settings items, see "Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver." (>P.51)

#### • A Sample Type

Choose a sample image from Standard, Portrait, Landscape, or Graphics.

• B View Color Pattern

Select this checkbox to display the color pattern.

C Apply to Sample

Select this checkbox to apply the changed settings to the sample image.

#### • D Cyan/ E Magenta/ F Yellow

Correct color tones by adjusting the levels of each color.

G Gray Tone

Adjust the color tone of grays as desired. Choose **Cool** (tinged with blue) or **Warm** (tinged with red).

• H Brightness

Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).

Contrast

Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the Contrast makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.

#### J Saturation

Adjust the color intensity as desired. Increasing the Saturation setting makes colors more vivid, and reducing the Saturation makes colors more subdued.

#### KObject Adjustment

Select this option to display the Object Adjustment dialog box, in which you can specify objects subject to color adjustment.

• Object Adjustment dialog box: Color →P.292

## **Object Adjustment dialog box: Color**

In the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, you can specify what type of print jobs to apply color adjustment to. If an original comprises images, graphics, and text, you can specify which portion to apply color adjustment to.

Object Adjustment
A Mimages
B Graphics
Revert Cancel OK

Mac OS Software

To display the Object Adjustment dialog box, click Object Adjustment on the Color Adjustment panel.

Note

#### • A Images

Select this option to apply color adjustment to image areas, such as photos.

• B Graphics

Select this option to apply color adjustment to graphics, such as lines and circles.

• C Text

Select this option to apply color adjustment to text.

## **Color Settings Pane: Monochrome**

On the Color Adjustment pane for monochrome printing, you can adjust the brightness and contrast.

Color Settings				
	Color Adjus	tment		
Color Balance	2			
D Cyan :		Low		High
	(-30 - 30)	<b>—</b>		<u> </u>
E Magenta :		Low		High
0 (	(-30 - 30)	<b>—</b>	_ <u>Ó</u>	<u> </u>
F Yellow :		Low		High
ABCDEF	(-30 - 30)	A      A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A     A  A     A     A     A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A  A   A   A   A   A   A   A   A   A   A   A   A   A   A   A   A   A   A   A   A   A   A   A	_ <u>Ó</u>	<u> </u>
1234567 G Gray Tone :		Cool		Warm
	(-30 - 30)	· •	_ <u>Ò</u>	<u> </u>
Standard H Brightness :		Dark		Light
View Color Pattern	(-30 - 30)	* —	<u>_</u>	<u> </u>
Apply to Sample   Contrast :		Low		High
	(-30 - 30)	o		<u> </u>
J Saturation :		Low	_	High
0	(-30 - 30)		_Ó	- 0
			K Objec	t Adjustment
Revert			Cancel	ОК



- To display the Color Adjustment pane, on the Main pane, click Color Settings in Advanced Settings. (See "Main Pane .") → P283
- For details on settings items, see "Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver." (>P.51)

#### • A Sample Type

Choose a sample image from Standard, Portrait, Landscape, or Graphics.

#### • B View Color Pattern

Select this checkbox to display the color pattern.

#### • C Apply to Sample

Select this checkbox to apply the changed settings to the sample image.

#### • D Cyan/ E Magenta/ F Yellow

Not available.

#### • G Gray Tone

Not available.

#### • H Brightness

Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).

#### Contrast

Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.

#### • J Saturation

Not available.

#### • KObject Adjustment

Select this option to display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, in which you can specify objects subject to color adjustment.

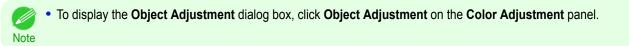
Object Adjustment dialog box: Monochrome →P.293

## **Object Adjustment dialog box: Monochrome**

In the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, you can specify what type of print jobs to apply color adjustment to. If an original comprises images, graphics, and text, you can specify which portion to apply color adjustment to.



Printer Driver



• A Images

Select this option to apply color adjustment to image areas, such as photos.

• B Graphics

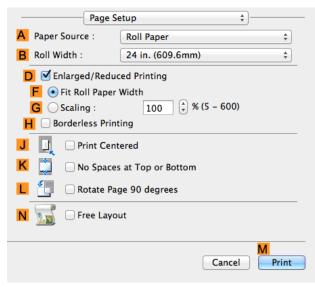
Select this option to apply color adjustment to graphics, such as lines and circles.

• C Text

Select this option to apply color adjustment to text.

#### Page Setup Pane

The following settings are available on the **Page Setup** pane. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



#### • A Paper Source

Choose how paper is supplied.

Options displayed in the list vary depending on the selection in **A Media Type** in the **Main** pane.

#### • B Roll Width

Select the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer.

#### • D Enlarged/Reduced Printing

Select this checkbox to choose the following options.

- Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width → P.67
- Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value → P.71

#### • F Fit Roll Paper Width

Resizes the document image to match the roll width.

#### G Scaling

294

Resizes the document image based on a specified scaling value. Enter a value in a range of **5–600**.

#### H Borderless Printing

Borderless printing is available if roll paper is selected in the **A Paper Source** list.

Activate this setting for borderless printing to match the size and width of the paper.

- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width →P90
- Borderless Printing at Actual Size →P.80

#### J Print Centered

Select this checkbox to print document images in the center of the paper.

- Printing Originals Centered on Rolls →P.126
- Printing Originals Centered on Sheets →P.130

#### • KNo Spaces at Top or Bottom

Select this checkbox to print the next image skipping blank areas above and below printable data in documents, which enables you to conserve the paper.

Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins →P139

When Print Preview is selected on the Main panel, Print Preview is disabled.

#### • L Rotate Page 90 degrees

Select this checkbox to rotate the document image by 90 degrees before printing.

Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees →P.135

#### • N Free Layout

Select this checkbox to start **imagePROGRAF Free Layout** before printing. This allows you to print multiple documents next to each other.

Important

## Additional Settings Pane

The following settings are available on the Additional Settings pane.

Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other →P.110



#### • A Send job to

You can configure the method for saving print jobs to the printer hard disk.

#### • B Print after reception is complete

You can prevent degradation of print quality that occurs when receiving a print job is interrupted and printing is aborted in the middle.

## Preview

The Features of Preview	296
Starting Preview	296
Preview Main Window	208
Paper Settings Panel	
Easy Settings	
Advanced Settings	
Output Settings Panel	
Color Settings Panel	
Color Adjustment	
Matching	
Driver Matching Mode	311
ICC Matching Mode	312
ColorSync	313
Proferences Dialog Roy	212
Preferences Dialog Box Zoom Dialog Box	
Go to Page Dialog Box	
do to r age blatog box	
Print with No Borders	
Print on the Center	
Not Print Spaces at the Top/Bottom	
Print Page Rotated 90 Degrees	
Display with Fitting to the Width of the Paper	
Display with All	
Display with Actual Size	
Moving a Page	318

## The Features of Preview

The main features of Preview are as follows.

- While viewing this screen, you can adjust layout settings of a document created with application software.
- You can not only adjust layout settings but also your changes will be instantly applied on the preview screen, and you can print the preview screen as it is seen.

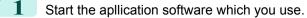


 The media type, image size, detailed media settings, and the printer settings can cause the actual print output to differ from the Preview settings.

## **Starting Preview**

Note

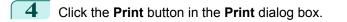
Follow the procedure below to start the Preview.

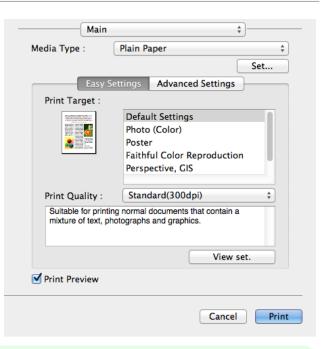


**2** From the application software's **File** menu, select the printer setup menu to open the **Print** dialog box.

• Normally, select **Print** from the **File** menu.

296 Click **Print Preview** in the **Main** panel to attach a checkmark.





Mac OS Software



· Your printer is depicted in the lower-left area of this screen.

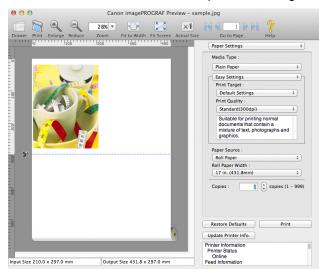


**5** Preview main window is displayed.



## **Preview Main Window**

The Preview main window consists of the menu and tool bars, and preview, dialog, drawer and status area.





You can use the View menu to show or hide the tool bar.

#### • Menu Bar

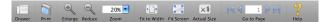
Note

This allows you to select menus required for operations.

```
📹 imagePROGRAF Advanced Preview File Edit View Object Window Help
```

#### Tool Bar

This allows you to select tool buttons required for major operations.



#### Preview Area

You can check the settings you made in this area.

0 15 10 115 20 125



Dialog Area

This allows you to set the print conditions and perform a print job.

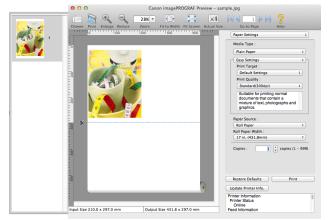
Paper Settings \$
Media Type :
Plain Paper \$
Easy Settings +
Print Target :
Default Settings \$
Print Quality :
Standard(300dpi) +
Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.
Paper Source :
Roll Paper \$
Roll Paper Width :
17 in. (431.8mm) ‡
Copies : 1 (*) copies (1 – 999)
Restore Defaults Print
Update Printer Info.
Printer Information Printer Status Online Feed Information

• Drawer Area

This allows you to display the thumbnails of a document.

This area appears when you click **Drawer** from the tool bar.

Alternatively, you may select **Drawer** from the **View** menu.



# Mac OS Software

Preview

Status Area

This shows Input Size and Output Size.

```
Input Size 16.54 x 23.39 in.
```

Output Size 24.00 x 23.39 in.

## **Paper Settings Panel**

This panel appears when you select **Paper Settings** in the dialog area.

Paper Settings \$
Media Type :
Plain Paper +
Easy Settings \$
Print Target :
Default Settings \$
Print Quality :
Standard(300dpi) ‡
Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.
Paper Source :
Roll Paper \$
Roll Paper Width :
17 in. (431.8mm) ‡
Copies : 1 (+) copies (1 – 999)
Restore Defaults Print
Update Printer Info.
Printer Information Printer Status Online Feed Information



#### Media Type

This allows you to select the media type.





 Always select media type that is actually set in the printer. When the media you chose is different from the media set in the printer, you may not receive the desired print results.

#### Easy Settings / Advanced Settings

Two modes are available to provide the optimum print settings for jobs.

The settings available on each mode are as follows.

- Easy Settings → P.302
- Advanced Settings → P.303

#### Paper Source

You can select the paper source.

The following settings are available for paper source.

Setting	Details
Manual	Select for manual paper feed printing.
Roll Paper	Select to print on roll paper.

#### Roll Paper Width

This selects the width of the roll media set to the printer.



• Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

#### Copies

You can input the number of print copies in numerical characters.



- The maximum value is 999.
- You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

#### • Restore Defaults Button

Click the button to reset to the setting when starting Preview.

#### • Print Button

Click the button to begin printing.

#### • Update Printer Info. Button

Click the button to acquire printer information.

## Easy Settings

You can easily select the best settings for the print job by just selecting an item from the print target list that matches the content of the document.

Paper Settings \$
Media Type :
Plain Paper \$
Easy Settings +
Print Target :
Default Settings \$
Print Quality :
Standard(300dpi) +
Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.
Paper Source :
Roll Paper \$
Roll Paper Width :
17 in. (431.8mm) ‡
Copies : 1 (*) copies (1 – 999)
Restore Defaults Print
Update Printer Info.
Printer Information Printer Status Online Feed Information

#### Print Target

You can easily select the best settings for the print job simply.

If you select each Print Target item the corresponding comment for that item is displayed below the list.

Setting	Details
Default Settings	Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs, and graphics.
Poster	The best setting for posters. Prints using vivid and high impact colors.
CAD (Color Line Drawing)	Prints the fine lines of CAD drawings and other such documents sharp and clear.
CAD (B/W Line Drawing)	Suitable for printing CAD drawings with sharp, dark lines.
Perspective, GIS	Suitable for attractive printing of 3D-CAD drawings, perspective drawings, and GIS drawings including maps.
Photo (Color)	Suitable for printing photographic images captured with a digital camera.
Office Document	Suitable for printing handouts as well as general office documents for which print clarity is key.
Faithful Color Reproduction	Prints by faithfully reproducing the colors of the original image.
Custom Settings	Suitable for printing documents for which Advanced Settings have been specified.



302

• The number of settings available for selection depends on the media type.

#### Print Quality

Selecting print quality strikes a balance between the quality of the printed image and printing speed.

The level of the print quality and resolution settings are displayed in the following combinations.

Setting	Details
Print Quality	Highest quality / Highest / High / Standard / Fast
Resolution	1200dpi / 600dpi / 300dpi

The availability of settings is determined by the media type and print priority selections.

Note • Printing time is longer and more ink is consumed with **High** than with **Fast**, however, print quality is higher.

- Printing time is shorter and less ink is consumed with Fast than with High, however, print quality is lower.
- For **Highest quality**, the resolution is not displayed.

## **Advanced Settings**

Presents detailed settings for the print quality, the color mode, and other items so you can select the values for these settings yourself.

Paper Settings \$
Media Type :
Plain Paper \$
Advanced Settings \$
Print Priority :
Image +
Print Quality :
Standard(300dpi) +
Paper Source : Roll Paper \$ Roll Paper Width : 17 in. (431.8mm) \$
Copies : 1 (+) copies (1 – 999)
Restore Defaults Print
Update Printer Info.
Printer Information Printer Status Online Feed Information

#### • Print Priority

Select a print quality mode that is appropriate for the print job.

Setting	Details
Image	This mode achieves the best results for printing photographic images and illustrations.
Line Drawing	This mode is best for printing CAD drawings with fine lines or wall newssheet or other docu- ments that contain large amounts of text. However, you may not achieve the quality you ex- pect with printing photographs or other images with many filled areas. For these types of jobs, select <b>Image</b> .
Office Document	Prints common office documents, such as proposals, memos for distribution, etc., so they are easy to read.



• The number of settings available for selection depends on the media type.

#### Print Quality

Selecting print quality strikes a balance between the quality of the printed image and printing speed.

The level of the print quality and resolution settings are displayed in the following combinations.

Sett	ing	Details
Print Quality		Highest quality / Highest / High / Standard / Fast
Resolution		1200dpi / 600dpi / 300dpi

- The availability of settings is determined by the media type and print priority selections.
- Note Printing time is longer and more ink is consumed with High than with Fast, however, print quality is higher.
  - Printing time is shorter and less ink is consumed with Fast than with High, however, print quality is lower.
  - For **Highest quality**, the resolution is not displayed.

## **Output Settings Panel**

This panel appears when you select **Output Settings** in the dialog area.

Output Settings \$
<ul> <li>Enlarged/Reduced Printing</li> <li>Fit Paper Size</li> <li>Fit Roll Paper Width</li> <li>Scaling</li> <li>100 \$% (5 - 600)</li> <li>Borderless Printing</li> <li>Paper Size</li> <li>ISO A4 \$</li> <li>Print Centered</li> </ul>
No Spaces at Top or Bottom Rotate Page
Rotate Right 90 Degrees         Rotate Left 90 Degrees         Rotate 180 degrees
Restore Defaults Print
Update Printer Info.
Printer Information Printer Status Online Feed Information

#### Enlarged/Reduced Printing

Select the method for enlarged/reduced printing.

The following settings are available for enlarged/reduced printing.

Setting	Details
Fit Paper Size	Enlarges/reduces the whole page automatically to fit the media size selected for output. Select the media size to print from <b>Paper Size</b> .

Setting	Details
Fit Roll Paper Width	Enlarges/reduces the whole page automatically to fit the width of the roll paper with the page width.
	*Make sure that the width of the roll paper in the printer is set correctly for <b>Roll Paper Width</b> in the <b>Paper Settings</b> panel. *Displayed only if rolls are selected in <b>Paper Source</b> .
Scaling	Enlarges/reduces the whole page by the scaling rate as specified. Input the scaling value in numerical characters. You can specify a range between 5 and 600%.
	<ul> <li>*You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.</li> <li>*Although Scaling can be set to make the image larger than the media size, the part that does not fit in the media cannot be printed.</li> <li>*This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in Borderless Printing.</li> </ul>

#### Borderless Printing

You can print the media without margins on all sides when the roll paper with the specific width and the specific media type is used.

For more information about Borderless Printing, see "Print with No Borders." (>P314)



Available only if rolls are selected in Paper Source.

• This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Print Centered**.

#### Paper Size

You can select the size of the print media.



This is not displayed when Fit Roll Paper Width is set in Enlarged/Reduced Printing.

#### Print Centered

You can print on the center of the media loaded in the printer.

For more information about Print Centered, see "Print on the Center." (→P.315)



This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in **Borderless Printing**.

#### No Spaces at Top or Bottom

You can save paper on not to feed roll paper for the empty spaces when the print data contains spaces at the top or bottom.

For more information about No Spaces at Top or Bottom, see "Not Print Spaces at the Top/Bottom." (>P315)



Available only if rolls are selected in Paper Source.

Note

#### Rotate Page

Select the method for rotating page.

The following settings are available for rotating page.

Setting	Details
Rotate Right 90 Degrees	Rotates the portrait page right 90 degrees and print in landscape orientation. When the rota- ted page can fit in the width of roll paper, the page is rotated automatically, and when it can not fit in the width of roll paper, the page is not rotated.
Rotate Left 90 Degrees	Rotates the portrait page left 90 degrees and print in landscape orientation. When the rotated page can fit in the width of roll paper, the page is rotated automatically, and when it can not fit in the width of roll paper, the page is not rotated.
Rotate 180 degrees	Allows you to rotate the image 180 degrees from the vertical to the right.

Restore Defaults Button

Click the button to reset to the setting when starting Preview.

Print Button

Click the button to begin printing.

• Update Printer Info. Button

Click the button to acquire printer information.

## **Color Settings Panel**

This panel appears when you select Color Settings in the dialog area.

Color Settings	\$
Color Mode :	
Color	\$
Color Adjustment	\$
Cyan :	
0	- <u>`</u>
Magenta :	
	- <u>`</u>
Yellow :	
0	
Brightness :	
O ♥ ★ └──	- <u></u> ?r-
Saturation :	
	- <u>`</u>
Gray Tone :	
	- <u>`</u>
Bartan Bafarta	Duine
Restore Defaults	Print
Update Printer Info.	
Printer Information Printer Status Online	1

#### Color Mode

Note

You can select a color mode to suit the print job.

Setting	Details
Color	Enables color printing.
Monochrome	Disables color printing and converts image from continuous color to grayscaled mono- chrome.
Color (CAD)	Prints lines in the best color possible so they are easy to see.
Monochrome Bitmap	Prints all colors other than white in black.
Monochrome (BK ink)	Select to print all lines with black ink.
No color correction	Prints without performing color matching in the printer driver. Select this when color matching is performed by the application such as Adobe Photoshop or when you want to print color charts using the profile creation tool.



• The availability of settings depends on the print priority and media type selections.

# Mac OS Software

Preview

#### Color Adjustment / Gray Adjustment / Matching

You can set the color adjustment and matching.

- Color Adjustment → P.307
- Matching → P.309

 Matching is not displayed if No color correction has been selected in Color Mode. 

Note

Restore Defaults Button

Click the button to reset to the setting when starting Preview.

• Print Button

Click the button to begin printing.

#### • Update Printer Info. Button

Click the button to acquire printer information.

**Color Adjustment** 

You can set the color adjustment.

#### Adjusting Color

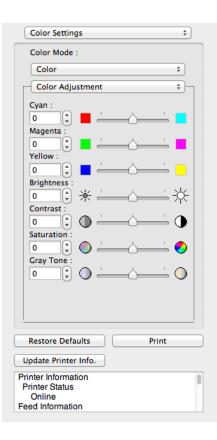
Normally colors should be adjusted in the software application, but if you see colors in the printout that do not match colors on the screen, you can perform color adjustments.



Select Color on Color Mode in the Color Settings panel.



Select Color Adjustment.



## **3** Drag each slider to the left or right to adjust.

Setting	Details
Cyan	Adjusts the strength of colors to compensate the hues.
Magenta	Adjusts the strength of colors to compensate the hues.
Yellow	Adjusts the strength of colors to compensate the hues.
Brightness	Adjusts the brightness of the entire image. When the results of the printout are brighter than the original images such as the original photo before scanning and graphics created on the display, or when you want to print in different degrees of brightness, use this feature.
Contrast	Adjusts the relative brightness between the brightest and darkest portions of the image. *For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
Saturation	Adjusts the hues for vivid color or dark color.
Gray Tone	Adjusts gray from cool black (bluish tones) to warm black (reddish tones).



• You can also click the up or down arrow, or enter the number directly to increase or decrease the value. Note

#### Adjusting Monochrome

Use the monochrome setting to print monochrome images of color photographs captured with a scanner or digital camera or other color images.



Mac OS Software

Preview

Select Monochrome on Color Mode in the Color Settings panel.



## Select Color Adjustment.

Monochrome         Color Adjustment         Cyan :         0       ⊕         Magenta :         0       ⊕         Yellow :       □         0       ⊕         Brightness :       □         0       ⊕         Contrast :       □         0       ⊕         Gray Tone :       □         0       ⊕	; ; , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
Cyan : 0 0 0 Magenta : 0 0 0 Vellow : 0 0 0 Brightness : 0 0 0 Saturation : 0 0 0 Gray Tone :	
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	
0	
Yellow : 0	- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	- × - - - - - -
Brightness : 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	
0   *     Contrast :     0     2     0     2     0     2     0     2     0     2     0     2     0     2     3aturation :     0     2     3aturation :     0     2     3aturation :     0     2     3aturation :	, ` ↓ ` ●
Contrast : 0	7x 0 0
0 0 Cray Tone :	  
Saturation : 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	
Gray Tone :	🕗
	<u> </u>
Restore Defaults	Print
pdate Printer Info.	
nter Information rinter Status	

3	Drag each slider to the left or right to adjust.	
	Setting	Details
	Brightness	Adjusts the brightness of the entire image. When the results of the printout are brighter than the original images such as the original photo before scanning and graphics created on the display, or when you want to print in different degrees of brightness, use this feature.
	Contrast	Adjusts the relative brightness between the brightest and darkest portions of the image. *For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.



• You can also click the up or down arrow, or enter the number directly to increase or decrease the value.

## Matching

You can set the matching.



• If No color correction is selected under Color Mode, the Matching is not displayed.

#### Important

Color Settings \$
Color Mode :
Color \$
Matching +
Matching Mode :
Driver Matching Mode \$
Matching Method :
Perceptual \$
Color Space :
⊖ sRGB
O Adobe RGB
Gamma :
Item 1 ‡
Input Profile :
sRGB v3.0 (Canon) \$
Printer Profile :
sRGB v3.0 (Canon) +
Soft Proof
Restore Defaults Print
Update Printer Info.
Printer Information Printer Status Online Feed Information

#### Matching Mode

You can select a matching mode to suit the print job.

Setting	Details
Driver Matching Mode (→P.311)	Enables printing of optimal color tones using a driver specific color profile. You should nor- mally select this mode.
ICC Matching Mode →P.312	Enables color matching using ICC profiles. Select this if you want to print by specifying the input profile, printer profile, and matching method in detail. This allows you to use ICC profiles for digital cameras and scanners, ICC profiles created using the profile creation tool, etc.

Setting	Details
ColorSync →P.313	Enables color matching by using the ColorSync function of OS X. Select this if you want to perform soft proofing using ColorSync before printing.

- You need to set each correction on the printer driver.
- Note ColorSync needs to be selected in the Color Matching panel of the driver in order to select ColorSync.

#### Matching Method

You can select a matching method to suit the print job.

#### Gamma

You can adjust the gradation of intermediate tones in an image. **2.2** is normally selected. If you want a softer impression than **2.2**, select **1.8**.



• You can select only after Driver Matching Mode has been selected in Matching Mode.

#### Input Profile

Select the input profile.



• You can select only after ICC Matching Mode has been selected in Matching Mode.

#### Printer Profile

Select the printer profile.



• You can select only after ICC Matching Mode has been selected in Matching Mode.

#### Soft Proof

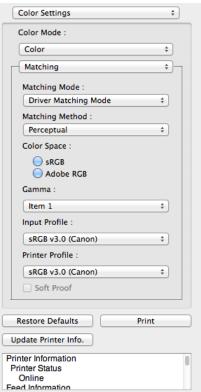
When you place a checkmark here, **ColorSync** applies to the preview area.



· You can select only after ColorSync has been selected in Matching Mode.

## **Driver Matching Mode**

**1** Under **Matching Mode**, select **Driver Matching Mode**.



Setting	Details	
Auto	Automatically selects the best color matching method for each Image, Graphics, Text.	
Perceptual	Color-matching optimized for printing typical photos attractively. Smooth gradation is a fea- ture. This is also an easy-to-use mode when performing color adjustment using application software.	
Saturation	Color-matching optimized for printing posters, etc., vividly.	
Colorimetric	Color-matching optimized for printing image data with accurate colors in input color space. This is the easiest-to-use mode when you want to adjust the color and print. However, gra- dation may be lost for colors of wider range than the color reproduction range of the printer Generally, this is also called relative colorimetric.	

Click the Matching Method list, and then select a setting.

Mac OS Software

(1)

Matchin	a Mode
matorini	gineau

Under Matching Mode, select ICC Matching Mode.

Color Settings	\$
Color Mode :	
Color	\$
Matching	÷
Matching Mode :	
ICC Matching Mode	\$
Matching Method :	
Perceptual	\$
Color Space :	
SRGB Adobe RGB	
Gamma :	
Item 1	\$
Input Profile :	
sRGB v3.0 (Canon)	\$
Printer Profile :	
sRGB v3.0 (Canon)	\$
Soft Proof	
1	
Restore Defaults Print	
Update Printer Info.	
Printer Information Printer Status Online Feed Information	0

**2** Click the **Matching Method** list, and then select a setting.

Setting	Details
Perceptual	Color-matching optimized for printing typical photos attractively. Smooth gradation is a fea- ture. This is also an easy-to-use mode when performing color adjustment using application software.
Saturation	Color-matching optimized for printing posters, etc., vividly.
Colorimetric	Color-matching optimized for printing image data with accurate colors in input color space. This is the easiest-to-use mode when you want to adjust the color and print. However, gra- dation may be lost for colors of wider range than the color reproduction range of the printer. Generally, this is also called relative colorimetric.
Colorimetric (No White-Point Cor- rection)	The processing method of color-matching is identical to <b>Colorimetric</b> . Use this when you want to further reproduce the target paper material color of the image data. Generally, this also is called absolute colorimetric.

3 Click the Input Profile list and select an input profile.

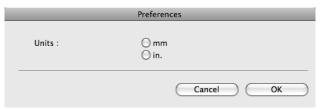
**4** Click the **Printer Profile** list and select a printer profile.

eck that ColorSync is selected in Matching Mode.	
Color Matching Matching Mode : ColorSync Matching Method : Perceptual Color Space : SRGB Adobe RGB Gamma : Item 1 Input Profile : SRGB v3.0 (Canon Printer Profile : SRGB v3.0 (Canon	
Matching Matching Mode : ColorSync Matching Method : Perceptual Color Space : SRGB Adobe RGB Gamma : Item 1 Input Profile : SRGB v3.0 (Canon Printer Profile : SRGB v3.0 (Canon	
Matching Mode : ColorSync Matching Method : Perceptual Color Space : SRGB Adobe RGB Gamma : Item 1 Input Profile : SRGB v3.0 (Canon Printer Profile : SRGB v3.0 (Canon	\$
ColorSync Matching Method : Perceptual Color Space : SRGB Adobe RGB Gamma : Item 1 Input Profile : SRGB v3.0 (Canon Printer Profile : SRGB v3.0 (Canon	\$
ColorSync Matching Method : Perceptual Color Space : SRGB Adobe RGB Gamma : Item 1 Input Profile : SRGB v3.0 (Canon Printer Profile : SRGB v3.0 (Canon	
Perceptual Color Space : SRGB Adobe RGB Gamma : Item 1 Input Profile : SRGB v3.0 (Canon Printer Profile : SRGB v3.0 (Canon	\$
Color Space : SRGB Adobe RGB Gamma : Item 1 Input Profile : SRGB v3.0 (Canon Printer Profile : SRGB v3.0 (Canon	
SRGB Adobe RGB Gamma : Item 1 Input Profile : SRGB v3.0 (Canon Printer Profile : SRGB v3.0 (Canon	\$
Adobe RGB     Gamma :     Item 1     Input Profile :         sRGB v3.0 (Canon     Printer Profile :         sRGB v3.0 (Canon	
Item 1 Input Profile : sRGB v3.0 (Canon Printer Profile : sRGB v3.0 (Canon	
Input Profile : SRGB v3.0 (Canon) Printer Profile : SRGB v3.0 (Canon)	
sRGB v3.0 (Canon Printer Profile : sRGB v3.0 (Canon	\$
Printer Profile : sRGB v3.0 (Canon	
sRGB v3.0 (Canon	\$
Soft Proof	\$
Restore Defaults	Print
Update Printer Info.	
Printer Information	
Printer Status Online	

2 To apply **ColorSync** to previews, check the **Soft Proof** check box.

## **Preferences Dialog Box**

This dialog box appears when you select **Preferences** from the **imagePROGRAF Advanced Preview** menu. You can set the preferences for Preview.

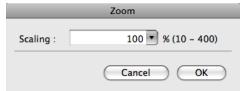


#### • Units

Set the unit for paper length, margins, and so on.

## **Zoom Dialog Box**

This dialog box appears when you select **Zoom** from the **View** menu. You can enlarge or reduce the screen display.



313

Preview

Set the magnification for enlargement or reduction of the screen display.



You can input between 10 and 400.

You can change the numbers by clicking ▼ button.

## Go to Page Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you select **Go to Page** from the **View** menu.

	Go to Page
Page :	1
	Cancel OK



• You can not select Go to Page if the document is only one page.

#### Page

Note

Input the page number in numerical characters to display in the preview area.

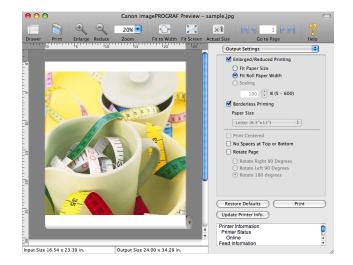


• You can change the numbers in the range of the page of the documents.

## **Print with No Borders**

You can use the borderless printing function to print without margins surrounding the image.

- With some media borderless printing can be performed only between two edges.
- Note To use the borderless printing function, the specified media must be set to the printer.
- 1 On the Paper Settings Panel →P.300, select Roll Paper in Paper Source.
- 2 On the Output Settings Panel (>P304), click the Enlarged/Reduced Printing check box on.
- 3 Select Fit Roll Paper Width.
- 4 Click the **Borderless Printing** check box on.



iPF685

Preview

Note

Preview

5 Click the **Print** button.

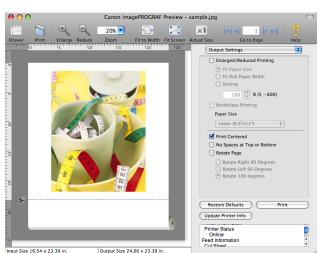
Borderless printing begins.

## **Print on the Center**

You can print on the center of the media loaded in the printer.



1 On the Output Settings Panel →P.304), click the Print Centered check box on.





Note

1

Click the **Print** button.

Printing on the center begins.

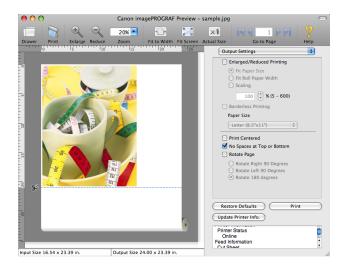
## Not Print Spaces at the Top/Bottom

You can save paper on not to feed roll paper for the empty spaces when the print data contains spaces at the top or bottom.



On the Paper Settings Panel (>P.300), select Roll Paper in Paper Source.

## 2 On the Output Settings Panel → P.304 , click the No Spaces at Top or Bottom check box on.



Preview

Mac OS Software

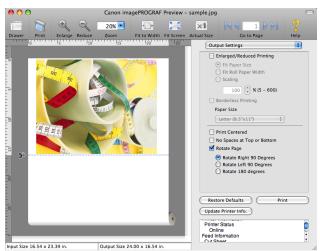
Click the **Print** button.

Printing on the settings with no spaces at top or bottom begins.

## Print Page Rotated 90 Degrees

You can save paper by printing in landscape orientation on roll paper.

- 1 On the Paper Settings Panel →P.300, select Roll Paper in Paper Source.
- 2 On the Output Settings Panel →P.304), click the Rotate Page check box on.
- 3 Select Rotate Right 90 Degrees or Rotate Left 90 Degrees.



4 Click the **Print** button.

Printing on rotating 90 degrees begins.

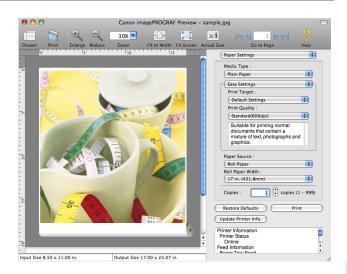
## Display with Fitting to the Width of the Paper

In the preview area, you can display to the width of the paper.



**1** Select **Fit to Width** from the tool bar.

2 Fitting to the width of the paper, it is displayed.

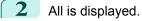


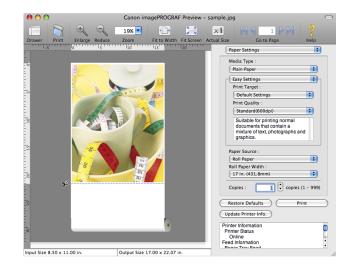
## **Display with All**

In the preview area, you can display all.



Select **Fit Screen** from the tool bar.



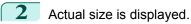


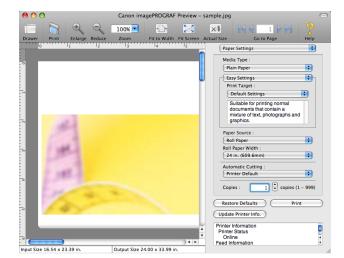
## **Display with Actual Size**

In the preview area, you can display the actual size.

Select XI Actual Size from the tool bar.

Preview





# Preview

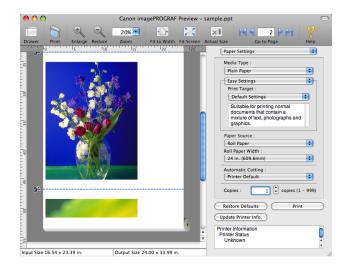
## Moving a Page

You can move a page to display in the preview area.

1	Select each button in <b>Go to Page</b> on the tool bar.	
---	----------------------------------------------------------	--

Setting	Details
	Go to the first page.
$\mathbf{<}$	Go to the previous page.
	Go to the next page.
	Go to the last page.

The target page appears.



• You can also move a page by clicking the page on the thumbnails.

Note

## **Free Layout**

The Features of Free Layout       319         Starting Free Layout       319
Free Layout Main Window321Paper Settings Panel323Easy Settings324Advanced Settings326Color Settings Panel327Color Adjustment328Matching330Driver Matching Mode332ICC Matching Mode333ColorSync334
Preferences Dialog Box334Page Setup Dialog Box335Zoom Dialog Box336Format Dialog Box337
Laying out a Multiple-File Document on One Page337Laying out a Document Created with Multiple Application Programs on One Page338Selecting an Object338Changing the Object Size339Moving an Object339Rotating an Object340Laying out Objects Automatically340Aligning Objects340Changing the Object Overlapping Order342Pasting a Copied or Cut Object343

## The Features of Free Layout

The main features of Free Layout are as follows.

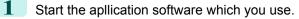
- Allows you to lay out at will and print a document created with application software.
- You can not only lay out multiple pages on one page but also lay out and print a multiple-file document on one page, or lay out and print a document created with multiple application programs on one page.



• The media type, image size, detailed media settings, and the printer settings can cause the actual print output to differ from the Free Layout settings.

## **Starting Free Layout**

Follow the procedure below to start the Free Layout.



From the application software's File menu, select the printer setup menu to open the Print dialog box.



• Normally, select **Print** from the **File** menu.

319

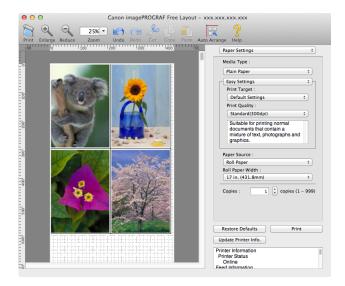
Mac OS Software

Free Layout

3 Click on Free Layout in the Page Setup panel to attach a checkmark.

lick the <b>Print</b> button in the <b>Print</b> dialog box.	Page Setup +	
	Paper Source : Roll Width :	Roll Paper
		24 in. (609.6mm)
	<ul> <li>Enlarged/Reduced Printing</li> <li>Fit Roll Paper Width</li> </ul>	
	Borderless Pr	inting
	🔄 🗌 Print Ce	entered
	in the second	ces at Top or Bottom
	Rotate	Page 90 degrees
	🗾 🗹 Free La	yout
		Cancel
<ul> <li>Your printer is depicted in the lower-left area of this</li> </ul>	screen.	

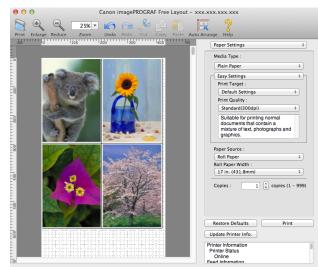
**5** Free Layout main window is displayed.



iPF685

## Free Layout Main Window

The Free Layout main window consists of the menu and tool bars, layout area and dialog areas.





• You can use the **View** menu to show or hide the tool.

#### • Menu Bar

This allows you to select menus required for operations.

📹 imagePROGRAF Advanced Preview File Edit View Object Window Help

#### Tool Bar

This allows you to select tool buttons required for major operations.



#### Layout Area

#### This allows you to lay out objects and edit the object size and orientation.

0 100 200 1300 400 500 600



#### Dialog Area

This allows you to set the print conditions and perform a print job.

Paper Settings \$
Media Type :
Plain Paper +
Easy Settings +
Print Target :
Default Settings +
Print Quality :
Standard(300dpi) +
Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.
Paper Source : Roll Paper +
Roll Paper Width :
17 in. (431.8mm) ‡
Copies : 1 (+) copies (1 - 999)
Restore Defaults Print
Update Printer Info.
Printer Information Printer Status Online Feed Information

## Paper Settings Panel

This panel appears when you select **Paper Settings** in the dialog area.

Paper Settings \$
Media Type :
Plain Paper \$
Easy Settings +
Print Target :
Default Settings \$
Print Quality :
Standard(300dpi) +
Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.
Paper Source :
Roll Paper \$
Roll Paper Width :
17 in. (431.8mm) ‡
Copies : 1 (+) copies (1 – 999)
Restore Defaults Print
Update Printer Info.
Printer Information Printer Status Online Feed Information

#### Media Type

This allows you to select the media type.



• Always select media type that is actually set in the printer. When the media you chose is different from the media set in the printer, you may not receive the desired print results.

#### Easy Settings / Advanced Settings

Two modes are available to provide the optimum print settings for jobs. The settings available on each mode are as follows.

- Easy Settings → P.324
- Advanced Settings → P.326

#### Paper Source

You can select the paper source.

The following settings are available for paper source.

Setting	Details
Manual	Select for manual paper feed printing.
Roll Paper	Select to print on roll paper.

#### Roll Paper Width

This selects the width of the roll media set to the printer.



• Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

#### Copies

You can input the number of print copies in numerical characters.

The maximum value is 999.

Note • You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

#### Restore Defaults Button

Click the button to reset to the setting when starting Free Layout.

Print Button

Mac OS Software

Free Layout

Click the button to begin printing.

• Update Printer Info. Button

Click the button to acquire printer information.

## **Easy Settings**

You can easily select the best settings for the print job by just selecting an item from the print target list that matches the content of the document.

Paper Settings \$
Media Type :
Plain Paper 💠
Easy Settings +
Print Target :
Default Settings \$
Print Quality :
Standard(300dpi)
Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.
Paper Source :
Roll Paper \$
Roll Paper Width :
17 in. (431.8mm) ‡
Copies : 1 (+) copies (1 – 999)
Restore Defaults Print
Update Printer Info.
Printer Information Printer Status Online Feed Information

#### Print Target

You can easily select the best settings for the print job simply.

If you select each Print Target item the corresponding comment for that item is displayed below the list.

Setting	Details
Default Settings	Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs, and graphics.
Poster	The best setting for posters. Prints using vivid and high impact colors.
CAD (Color Line Drawing)	Suitable for printing fine lines such as drawings clearly.
CAD (B/W Line Drawing)	Suitable for printing CAD drawings with sharp, dark lines.

Setting	Details	
Perspective, GIS	Suitable for attractive printing of 3D-CAD drawings, perspective drawings, and GIS drawings including maps.	
Photo (Color)	Suitable for printing photographic images captured with a digital camera.	
Office Document	Suitable for printing handouts as well as general office documents for which print clarity is key.	
Faithful Color Reproduction	Prints by minimizing color differences. Suitable for when the printing results are too vivid or when printing scanned images.	
Custom Settings	Suitable for printing documents for which Advanced Settings have been specified.	

• The number of settings available for selection depends on the media type.

## Print Quality

Note

Selecting print quality strikes a balance between the quality of the printed image and printing speed.

The level of the print quality and resolution settings are displayed in the following combinations.

Setting	Details
Print Quality	Highest quality / Highest / High / Standard / Fast
Resolution	1200dpi / 600dpi / 300dpi

• The availability of settings is determined by the media type and print priority selections.

Note • Printing time is longer and more ink is consumed with **High** than with **Fast**, however, print quality is higher.

- Printing time is shorter and less ink is consumed with Fast than with High, however, print quality is lower.
- For Highest quality, the resolution is not displayed.

Mac OS Software

Free Layout

# Advanced Settings

Presents detailed settings for the print priority, the print quality, and other items so you can select the values for these settings yourself.

Paper Settings +
Media Type :
Plain Paper 💠
Advanced Settings +
Print Priority :
Image ‡
Print Quality :
Standard(300dpi) +
Paper Source :
Roll Paper \$
Roll Paper Width :
17 in. (431.8mm) ‡
Copies : (1 – 999)
Restore Defaults Print
Update Printer Info.
Printer Information Printer Status Online Feed Information

# Print Priority

Select a print quality mode that is appropriate for the print job.

Setting	Details
Image	This mode achieves the best results for printing photographic images and illustrations.
Line Drawing	This mode is best for printing CAD drawings with fine lines or wall newssheet or other docu- ments that contain large amounts of text. However, you may not achieve the quality you ex- pect with printing photographs or other images with many filled areas. For these types of jobs, select <b>Image</b> .
Office Document	Prints common office documents, such as proposals, memos for distribution, etc., so they are easy to read.



• The number of settings available for selection depends on the media type.

#### Print Quality

Selecting print quality strikes a balance between the quality of the printed image and printing speed.

The level of the print quality and resolution settings are displayed in the following combinations.

Setting	Details
Print Quality	Highest quality / Highest / High / Standard / Fast
Resolution	1200dpi / 600dpi / 300dpi

- The availability of settings is determined by the media type and print priority selections.
- Note Printing time is longer and more ink is consumed with High than with Fast, however, print quality is higher.
  - Printing time is shorter and less ink is consumed with Fast than with High, however, print quality is lower.
  - For **Highest quality**, the resolution is not displayed.

# **Color Settings Panel**

This panel appears when you select Color Settings in the dialog area.

Color Settings	\$		
Color Mode :			
Color	\$		
Color Adjustment	÷		
Cyan :			
0			
Magenta :			
0	<b>_</b>		
Yellow :			
0 🗘 🗖 🧰			
Brightness :			
0 🗘 🐇 📥			
Contrast :			
Saturation :			
	👩 🗌		
Gray Tone :			
<u>I</u>			
Restore Defaults	Print		
Update Printer Info.	Update Printer Info.		
Printer Information Printer Status Online Feed Information	0		

## Color Mode

You can select a color mode to suit the print job.

Setting	Details
Color	Enables color printing.
Monochrome	Disables color printing and converts image from continuous color to grayscaled mono- chrome.
Color (CAD)	Prints lines in the best color possible so they are easy to see.
Monochrome Bitmap	Prints all colors other than white in black.
Monochrome (BK ink)	Select to print all lines with black ink.
No color correction	Prints without performing color matching in the printer driver. Select this when color matching is performed by the application such as Adobe Photoshop or when you want to print color charts using the profile creation tool.



• The availability of settings depends on the print priority and media type selections.

## Color Adjustment / Matching

You can set the color adjustment and matching.

- Color Adjustment → P.328
- Matching → P.330

Matching is not displayed if No color correction has been selected in Color Mode.

Note

.....

#### Restore Defaults Button

Click the button to reset to the setting when starting Free Layout.

#### Print Button

Click the button to begin printing.

## • Update Printer Info. Button

Click the button to acquire printer information.

# **Color Adjustment**

You can set the color adjustment.

#### Adjusting Color

Normally colors should be adjusted in the software application, but if you see colors in the printout that do not match colors on the screen, you can perform color adjustments.



Select Color on Color Mode in the Color Settings panel.



Select Color Adjustment.

Color Settings	\$
Color Mode :	
Color	\$
Color Adjustment	÷)
Cyan :	
Magenta :	
Vellow :	
Brightness :	
Contrast :	
	<u> </u>
Saturation :	
	<u> </u>
Gray Tone :	
	<u> </u>
1	
Restore Defaults	Print
Update Printer Info.	
rinter Information	
Printer Status	
Online Feed Information	
eed Information	

**3** Drag each slider to the left or right to adjust.

Setting	Details
Cyan	Adjusts the strength of colors to compensate the hues.
Magenta	Adjusts the strength of colors to compensate the hues.
Yellow	Adjusts the strength of colors to compensate the hues.
Brightness	Adjusts the brightness of the entire image. When the results of the printout are brighter than the original images such as the original photo before scanning and graphics created on the display, or when you want to print in different degrees of brightness, use this feature.
Contrast	Adjusts the relative brightness between the brightest and darkest portions of the image. *For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
Saturation	Adjusts the hues for vivid color or dark color.
Gray Tone	Adjusts gray from cool black (bluish tones) to warm black (reddish tones).



• You can also click the up or down arrow, or enter the number directly to increase or decrease the value.

# Adjusting Monochrome

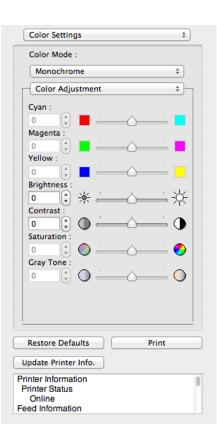
Use the monochrome setting to print monochrome images of color photographs captured with a scanner or digital camera or other color images.



Select Monochrome on Color Mode in the Color Settings panel.

2

Select Color Adjustment.



3

# Drag each slider to the left or right to adjust. Setting Details Brightness Adjusts the brightness of the entire image. When the results of the printout are brighter than the original images such as the original photo before scanning and graphics created on the display, or when you want to print in different degrees of brightness, use this feature. Contrast Adjusts the relative brightness between the brightest and darkest portions of the image. *For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.



• You can also click the up or down arrow, or enter the number directly to increase or decrease the value.

# Matching

You can set the matching.



0	Color Settings ‡
C	Color Mode :
(	Color \$
Ц	Matching +
	Matching Mode :
	Driver Matching Mode \$
	Matching Method :
	Perceptual \$
	Color Space :
	○ sRGB
	O Adobe RGB
	Gamma :
	(Item 1 ‡
	Input Profile :
	sRGB v3.0 (Canon) \$
	Printer Profile :
	sRGB v3.0 (Canon) \$
	Soft Proof
R	lestore Defaults Print
Up	date Printer Info.
Pri (	ter Information nter Status Online d. Information

If No color correction is selected under Color Mode, the Matching is not displayed.

#### Matching Mode

You can select a matching mode to suit the print job.

Setting	Details
Driver Matching Mode (→P.332)	Enables printing of optimal color tones using a driver specific color profile. You should nor- mally select this mode.
ICC Matching Mode →P.333	Enables color matching using ICC profiles. Select this if you want to print by specifying the input profile, printer profile, and matching method in detail. This allows you to use ICC profiles for digital cameras and scanners, ICC profiles created using the profile creation tool, etc.

Mac OS Software

Free Layout

	IVIALCH III 19
Setting	Details
ColorSync →P.334	Enables color matching by using the ColorSync function of OS X. Select this if you want to perform soft proofing using ColorSync before printing.
	rection on the printer driver. selected in the <b>Color Matching</b> panel of the driver in order to select <b>ColorSync</b> .
Matching Method	
You can select a matching method	to suit the print job.
• Gamma	
You can adjust the gradation of interpression than <b>2.2</b> , select <b>1.8</b> .	ermediate tones in an image. 2.2 is normally selected. If you want a softer im-
• You can select only after Note	Driver Matching Mode has been selected in Matching Mode.
Input Profile     Select the input profile.	
• You can select only after Note	ICC Matching Mode has been selected in Matching Mode.
Printer Profile     Select the printer profile.	
	ICC Matching Mode has been selected in Matching Mode.
Soft Proof When you place a checkmark here	e, <b>ColorSync</b> applies to the layout area.
	ColorSync has been selected in Matching Mode.

# Driver Matching Mode

**1** Under **Matching Mode**, select **Driver Matching Mode**.

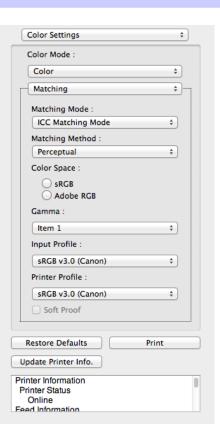
Color Settings	\$
Color Mode :	
Color	\$
Matching	\$
Matching Mode :	
Driver Matching Mode	\$
Matching Method :	
Perceptual	\$
Color Space :	
SRGB	
Adobe RGB	
Gamma :	
Item 1	\$
Input Profile :	
sRGB v3.0 (Canon)	\$
Printer Profile :	
sRGB v3.0 (Canon)	\$
Soft Proof	
1	
Restore Defaults	Print
Update Printer Info.	
Printer Information	
Printer Status Online	
Feed Information	

Setting	Details	
Auto	Automatically selects the best color matching method for each Image, Graphics, Text.	
Perceptual	Color-matching optimized for printing typical photos attractively. Smooth gradation is a fe ture. This is also an easy-to-use mode when performing color adjustment using applicati software.	
Saturation	Color-matching optimized for printing posters, etc., vividly.	
Colorimetric	Color-matching optimized for printing image data with accurate colors in input color space. This is the easiest-to-use mode when you want to adjust the color and print. However, gra- dation may be lost for colors of wider range than the color reproduction range of the printer Generally, this is also called relative colorimetric.	

2	Click the <b>Matching Method</b> list, and then select a setting.
---	-------------------------------------------------------------------

Match	ina M	lada
Malui		loue

Under Matching Mode, select ICC Matching Mode.



**2** Click the **Matching Method** list, and then select a setting.

Setting	Details
Perceptual	Color-matching optimized for printing typical photos attractively. Smooth gradation is a fea- ture. This is also an easy-to-use mode when performing color adjustment using application software.
Saturation	Color-matching optimized for printing posters, etc., vividly.
Colorimetric Color-matching optimized for printing image data with accurate colors in input This is the easiest-to-use mode when you want to adjust the color and print. H dation may be lost for colors of wider range than the color reproduction range Generally, this is also called relative colorimetric.	
Colorimetric (No White-Point Cor- rection)	The processing method of color-matching is identical to <b>Colorimetric</b> . Use this when you want to further reproduce the target paper material color of the image data. Generally, this also is called absolute colorimetric.

- **3** Click the **Input Profile** list and select an input profile.
- **4** Click the **Printer Profile** list and select a printer profile.

Co	orSync	
1	Check that <b>ColorSync</b> is selected in <b>Matching Mode</b> .	
1	check that colorsync is selected in matching mode.	Color Settings \$
		Color Mode :
		Color ÷
		Matching +
		Matching Mode :
		ColorSync ‡
		Matching Method :
		Perceptual ‡
		Color Space :
		SRGB Adobe RGB
		Gamma :
		(Item 1 ÷
		Input Profile :
		sRGB v3.0 (Canon) \$
		Printer Profile :
		sRGB v3.0 (Canon) ‡
		Soft Proof
		Restore Defaults Print
		Update Printer Info.
		Printer Information Printer Status
		Online Feed Information

2 Place a checkmark on **Soft Proof** to simulate the output product in Layout Area.

# **Preferences Dialog Box**

This dialog box appears when you select **Preferences** from the imagePROGRAF Advanced Preview menu. You can set the preferences for Free Layout.

	Preferences
Units :	⊖mm ⊖in.
Gridlines :	1.97 (*) in. (0.39 - 7.87)
Divisions :	4 🗘 sections (1-10)
Grid Color :	Gray
Print Object Frames	
Object Frame Style :	Solid
Auto Arrange Spacing :	0.00 (+) in. (0.00 - 3.94)
	Cancel OK

# Units

334

Set the unit for paper length, margins, and so on.

# Gridlines

You can input a grid line width value in numerical characters so that they serve as a guide to laying out objects.



You can input between 10.0 and 200.0(mm) (between 0.39 and 7.87(inch)).

• You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

#### Divisions

You can change the number of divisions of grid lines so that they serve as a guide to laying out objects.



You can input between 1 and 10.

• You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

#### Grid Color

Select the grid line color.

#### Print Object Frames

You can print the object border.



• If you do not want to print the object border, deselect the Print Object Frames check box.

## Object Frame Style

You can select the object frame style for printing.

The following settings are available for the object frame style.

Setting	Details
Solid Line	You can print the solid line as the frame style.
Dotted Line         You can print the dotted line as the frame style.	
Dashed Line	You can print the dashed line as the frame style.

#### Auto Arrange Spacing

Change the object-to-object spacing to be applied in the operation of laying out objects automatically.



You can input between 0.0 and 100.0(mm) (between 0.00 and 3.94(inch)).

• You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

# **Page Setup Dialog Box**

This dialog box appears when you select **Page Setup** from the **File** menu. This dialog box provides selections for setting the media size, orientation and other important features.

Page Setup		
Paper Orientation :		
Vertical	🛄 🔿 Horizontal	
Roll Paper Length : Auto Settings 708.66 (1) in. (8.00 - 708.66)		
Order :	Upper Left to Right	
Paper Size :	Letter (8.5"x11")	
	Cancel OK	

#### Paper Orientation

This selects the paper orientation.

Free Layout

#### The following settings are available for orientation.

Setting	Details	
Vertical	Prints the image and text created with the application software in the orientation as it is.	
Horizontal	Prints the image and text by rotating sideways 90 degrees from the orientation as specified in the application.	

#### Roll Paper Length

Set the length of one page to print on roll paper.

When you place a checkmark on **Auto Settings**, the one-page length to be printed on roll paper is automatically set so that the laid-out objects are printed on one page.

- Available only if rolls are selected in Paper Source.
- Note You can input between 203.2 and 18000.0(mm) (between 8.00 and 708.66(inch)).
  - You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

#### Order

Set the object layout order.

The following settings are available for order.

Setting	Details	
Upper Left to Right	ft to Right The objects are laid out from upper left to right.	
Upper Left to Bottom         The objects are laid out from upper left to bottom.		



 When you have selected Roll Paper Length > Auto Settings and Paper Orientation > Vertical, you can choose only Upper Left to Right.

 When you have selected Roll Paper Length > Auto Settings and Paper Orientation > Horizontal, you can choose only Upper Left to Bottom.

#### Paper Size

You can select the size of the print media.



You cannot display this if Roll Paper is selected in Paper Source.

Note

# **Zoom Dialog Box**

This dialog box appears when you select **Zoom** from the **View** menu. You can enlarge or reduce the screen display.

Zoom		
Scaling :	100 💌 % (10 - 400)	
	Cancel OK	

#### Scaling

Set the magnification for enlargement or reduction of the screen display.



- You can input between 10 and 400.
- You can change the numbers by clicking ▼ button.

Free Layout

# Format Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you select **Format** from the **Object** menu after you select an object. You can rotate, enlarge, or reduce an object.

	Format
Rotate	
O Rotate Rig O Rotate Le	-
Scaling : Object Size	100 🗘 % (25 - 400)
Height	11.69 in.
Width	8.28 in.
	Cancel OK



• When the objects are not selected, you can not select Format.

#### Rotate

When you place a checkmark here, you can select Rotate Right or Rotate Left.

Setting	Details
Rotate Right	Rotates the object 90 degrees clockwise.
Rotate Left	Rotates the object 90 degrees counterclockwise.



When several objects are selected, you cannot select Rotate.

#### Scaling

You can input the value for enlargement or reduction of the obeject in numerical characters.



You can input between 25 and 400.

• You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

#### Object Size

You can confirm the object size.



When several objects are selected, you cannot display Object Size.

# Laying out a Multiple-File Document on One Page

You can lay out and print a multiple-file document on one page.

From the application software's File menu, select the printer setup menu to open the Print dialog box.



Normally, select **Print** from the **File** menu.

337

Click on Free Layout in the Page Setup panel to attach a checkmark.

Free Layout

- 3 In the **Print** dialog box, select the pages to print and the number of copies, and click the **Print** button. Free Layout starts, laying out the document created with application software in the layout area as an object.
- 4 Leaving Free Layout running, open other files with the application software and repeat the above steps.

# Laying out a Document Created with Multiple Application Programs on One Page

You can lay out and print a document created with multiple application programs on one page.

From the application software's **File** menu, select the printer setup menu to open the **Print** dialog box.



• Normally, select **Print** from the **File** menu.

- 2 Click on Free Layout in the Page Setup panel to attach a checkmark.
- 3 In the **Print** dialog box, select the pages to print and the number of copies, and click the **Print** button. Free Layout starts, laying out the document created with application software in the layout area as an object.
- 4 Leaving Free Layout running, open the files with other application software and repeat the above steps.

# **Selecting an Object**

When an object is selected, a select box (blue border) appears around the object.



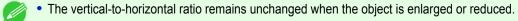
• To select an object, click that object.

- To select multiple successive objects, click them while holding down the shift key.
- To select multiple arbitrary objects, click them while holding down the command key.
- To select all objects, select Select All from the Edit menu.

Note

# Changing the Object Size

You can change the object size by means of mouse operation or by specifying a scaling value.



#### Resizing by means of mouse operation

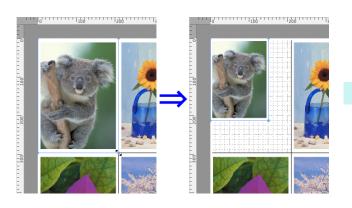


Note

Select an object.

2

Place the pointer at a corner of the selection box around the object to show the arrow handle, and drag this handle to change the object size.



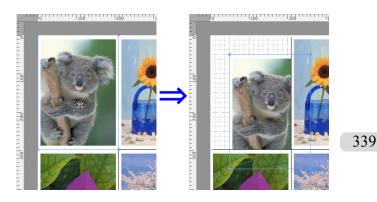
Resi	zing by specifying a scaling value
1	Select an object.
2	Open the Format Dialog Box →P.337 .
3	Use Scaling to set the magnification for enlargement or reduction. You either enter numbers directly.
	<ul> <li>You can input between 25 and 400.</li> <li>Note</li> <li>You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.</li> </ul>
4	Click the <b>OK</b> button.

# Moving an Object

You can move the object position.



- Select an object.
- 2 Place the pointer inside the selection box of the object to show the crosshair handle, and drag it to move the object.



# Rotating an Object

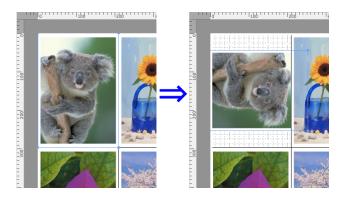
You can rotate the object.



2

Select an object.

Select Rotate Left or Rotate Right from the toolbar. Alternatively, you may click on the Rotate check box in the Format Dialog Box →P337) then select Rotate Right or Rotate Left, and click the OK button.

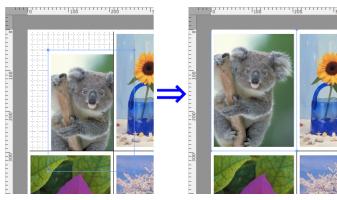


Note

• When several objects are selected, you cannot select Rotate.

# Laying out Objects Automatically

Click **Auto Arrange** in the tool bar. This automatically lays out objects. Alternatively, you may select **Auto Arrange Object** from the **Object** menu.



• The object layout order varies depending on the **Order** setting on the **Page Setup Dialog Box** → P.335 .

# **Aligning Objects**

You can align objects systematically.



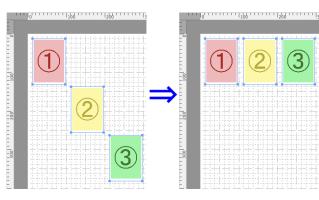
Note

Select multiple objects.



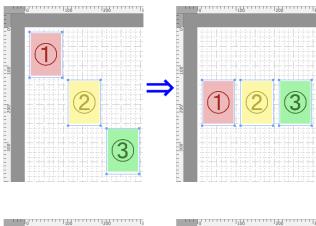
# Align Top

Lays out the objects, justifying them to the top.



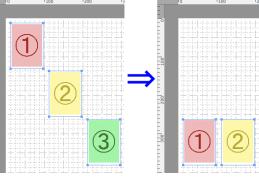
# Center Vertically

Lays out the objects, justifying them to the vertical center.



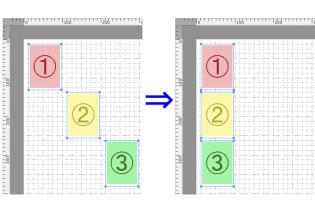
# Align Bottom

Lays out the objects, justifying them to the bottom.

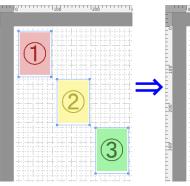


# Align Left

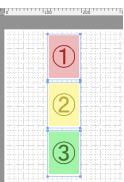
Lays out the objects, justifying them to the left.



Lays out the objects, justifying them to the horizontal center.

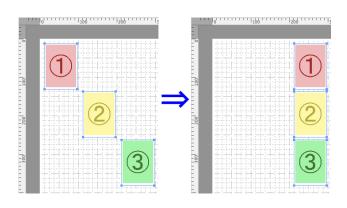


300



# Align Right

Lays out the objects, justifying them to the right.



# Changing the Object Overlapping Order

You can change the object overlapping order.

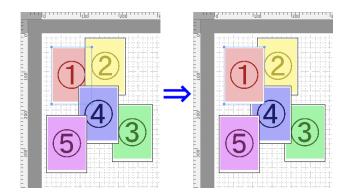


Select an object.

2 Select the overlapping order menu from the **Object** menu.

# Bring to Front

Moves the object to the frontmost position.



Mac OS Software

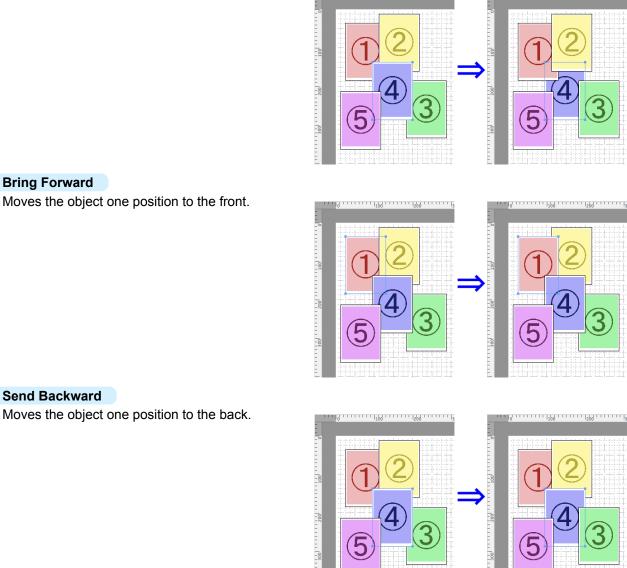
Mac OS Software

Free Layout

# Send to Back

Bring Forward

Moves the object to the backmost position.



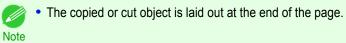
# Send Backward

Moves the object one position to the back.

# Pasting a Copied or Cut Object

Click Copy or Cut from the toolbar. Alternatively, you may select Copy or Cut from the Edit menu.

2 Click Paste from the toolbar. Alternatively, you may select **Paste** from the **Edit** menu.



# Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy

The Features of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Starting Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy	344 344
Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Dialog Box	
Hot Folder	345
Creating a New Hot Folder	346
Editing a Hot Folder (Setting Print Conditions)	347
Deleting a Hot Folder	
Setting the Print Parameters Paper Settings Panel Easy Settings Advanced Settings Output Settings Panel Color Settings Panel Driver Matching Mode ICC Matching Mode	
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER	358

# The Features of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy

The main features of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy are as follows.

- Allows the document scanned with the Color imageRUNNER to be automatically enlarged and printed.
- You can perform basic printer settings such as printer selection, media type and output profile selection, and matching methods, in addition to borderless printing and enlargement/reduction process without growing through the printer driver.



• The media type, image size, detailed media settings, and the printer settings can cause the actual print output to differ from the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy settings.

# Starting Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy

You can start the utility by clicking on the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy.app icon in Applications > Canon Utilities > iR Enlargement Copy.



• If you are using OS X v10.7 and later, start it from Launchpad.

# Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Dialog Box

The explanation below is on the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy dialog box.

Name	Hot Folder	Destination	Folder Path
	s in the folder		
-	es in the folder entire folder, as well a	s items in the list above	Delete
O Delete the	e entire folder, as well a	s items in the list above	Delete
-	e entire folder, as well a	s items in the list above	Delete
O Delete the	e entire folder, as well a	s items in the list above	Delete
O Delete the Enlarged Copy S Add	e entire folder, as well a ettings Add Destination		Delete
O Delete the	e entire folder, as well a ettings		Delete
O Delete the Enlarged Copy S Add Edit	e entire folder, as well a ettings Add Destination		Delete



For the step to open the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy dialog box, see "Starting Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy." →P.344

· Delete files in the folder

From the Hot Folder list, select a hot folder and click the **Delete** button to delete only files in the hot folder.

#### Delete the entire folder, as well as items in the list above

From the Hot Folder list, select a hot folder and click the **Delete** button to delete the hot folder.

Delete Button

Select Delete files in the folder or Delete the entire folder, as well as items in the list above and click this button to delete the hot folder or only files in the hot folder.

Add Button

Click the button to open the **Destination Selection** dialog box so that you can add a hot folder.

Edit Button

From the Hot Folder list, select a hot folder and click this button to open the Add/Edit Hot Folder dialog box that allows you to edit the hot folder.

#### Monitor Hot Folder Constantly

If the check box is selected, the Hot Folder is monitored from after the next login.

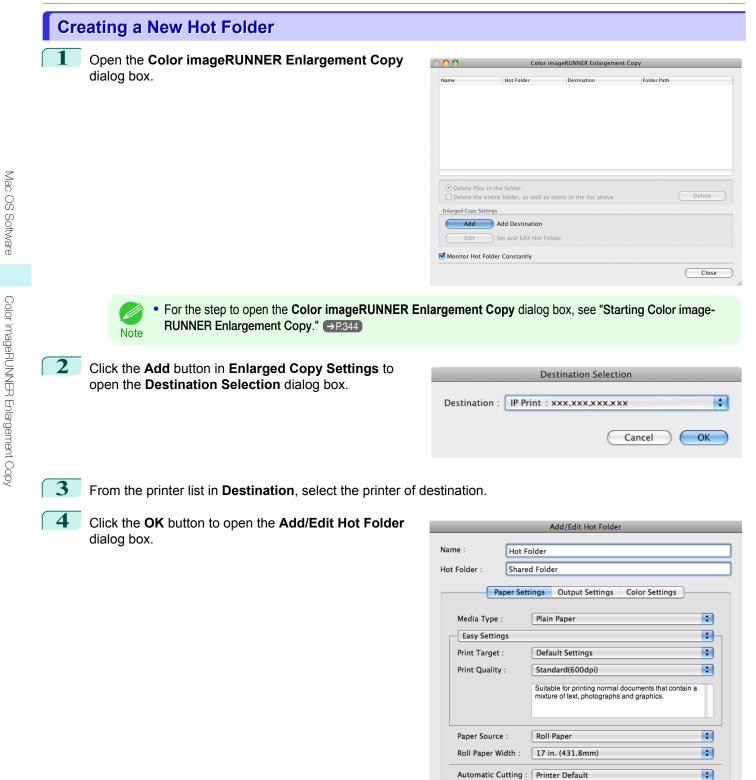
# **Hot Folder**

Hot folder refers to a folder used for Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy.

- When transferred to the PC's hot folder, the document data scanned with the Color imageRUNNER is printed in enlarged size from the printer according to the print conditions set in the hot folder.
- You can create a new hot folder, edit or delete an existing one, and set print conditions at will.



You can create up to 10 hot folders.



5 In **Name**, enter the name to display in the Hot Folder list.

In **Hot Folder**, enter the Hot Folder name.

6

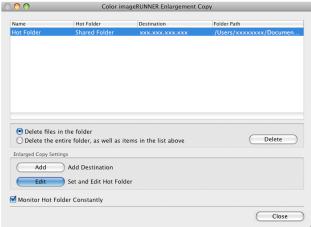
ОК

1 🔹 copies (1 - 999)

Cancel

Copies

7	Click the <b>OK</b> button. The created Hot Folder is listed in	000	Color im	ageRUNNER Enlargement	Сору
	the <b>Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy</b> dialog box.	Name Hot Folder	Hot Folder Shared Folder	Destination xxx.xxx,xxx.xxx	Folder Path /Users/xxxxxxx/Documen
		Enlarged Copy Setti Add Edit	ntire folder, as well as in ings Add Destination Set and Edit Hot Fold		Delete
		Monitor Hot Fo	Ider Constantly		Close
9 10	From the <b>Apple</b> Menu, open the <b>Sharing</b> dialog box for <b>S</b> For OS X v10.6: Check the <b>File Sharing</b> checkbox and click the <b>Options</b> Check the <b>Share files and folders using FTP</b> and <b>Shar</b> ure the sharing. For OS X v10.7 and later: Check the <b>File Sharing</b> checkbox and click the <b>Options</b> Check the <b>Share files and folders using SMB</b> checkbox	button. <b>e files and</b> button.	folders us	-	eckboxes to config-
	• You can create up to 10 hot folders. Note				
Edi	ting a Hot Folder (Setting Print Conditions	s)			
1	Open the <b>Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy</b> dialog box.	Name Hot Folder	Color im Hot Folder Shared Folder	ageRUNNER Enlargement Destination	Copy Folder Path /Users/xxxxxxxxx/Documen





iPF685

Select the Hot Folder from the Hot Folder list.

**3** From **Enlarged Copy Settings**, click **Edit** button to open the **Add/Edit Hot Folder** dialog box.

347

Mac OS Software

Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy



# Make the necessary settings in the Paper Settings Panel $\rightarrow$ P.350.

	Add/Edit Hot Folder
Name :	Hot Folder
Hot Folder :	Shared Folder
Pap	er Settings Output Settings Color Settings
Media Type :	Plain Paper
Easy Setting	5
Print Target :	Default Settings
Print Quality :	Standard(600dpi)
	Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.
Paper Source	Roll Paper
Roll Paper Wic	Ith : 17 in. (431.8mm)
Automatic Cu	tting : Printer Default
Copies	1 🗘 copies (1 - 999)
	Cancel

# Make the necessary settings in the Output Settings Panel →P.354 .

lame :	Hot Folder
lot Folder :	Shared Folder
	Paper Settings Output Settings Color Settings
🗌 Enlarg	ed/Reduced Printing
	Media Size
O Fit F	Roll Paper Width
🔘 Scal	ling 100 🗘 % (5 – 600)
Bor	derless Printing
Pap	er Size : ISO A4
Prin	t Centered
	Spaces at Top or Bottom
	ate Page
	Rotate Right 90 Degrees
O F	Rotate Left 90 Degrees Rotate 180 degrees

iPF685
--------

6	Make the necessary settings in the Color Settings Pan-
	el →P.356 .

		Add/Edit Hot Folde	r	
Name :	Hot F	older		
Hot Folder :	Share	d Folder		
Pa	per Sett	ings Output Settings	Color Settings	
Color Mode :		Color		A V
Matching Mo	de :	Driver Correction		Å
Matching Met	thod :	Perceptual		A T
Input Profile	:			
sRGB v3.0 (				A Y
Printer Profile				
sRGB v3.0 (	Canon)			Ť
			Cancel	ОК

7 Click the **OK** button to close the **Add/Edit Hot Folder** dialog box.

8 From the Apple Menu, open the Sharing dialog box for System Preferences.

# 9 For OS X v10.6:

Check the File Sharing checkbox and click the Options button.

Check the Share files and folders using FTP and Share files and folders using SMB checkboxes to configure the sharing.

For OS X v10.7 and later:

Check the File Sharing checkbox and click the Options button.

Check the Share files and folders using SMB checkbox to configure the sharing.



• If you've made shared settings when you created a new Hot Folder, you do not need to execute steps 8 to 9.

# **Deleting a Hot Folder**

Open the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box.

Name	Hot Folder	Destination	Folder Path
Hot Folder	Shared Folder	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX	/Users/xxxxxxx/Documen.
O Delete files	in the folder		
O Delete files • Delete the	in the folder entire folder, as well as it	ems in the list above	Delete
• Delete the	entire folder, as well as it	ems in the list above	Delete
• Delete the	entire folder, as well as it	ems in the list above	Delete
Delete the	entire folder, as well as it		Delete

_____

349

Select the Hot Folder you want to delete from the Hot Folder list.

OK

#### 3 Select Delete the entire folder, as well as items in the list above, and then click the **Delete** button.

Read the messag, e and then click the **OK** button.

• Select Delete files in the folder to delete only files in the hot folder.



Cancel

Mac	
SO	
Software	

4

Note

# You can set the print conditions in the setting panels within the Add/Edit Hot Folder dialog box. The settings available on each panel are as follows. Paper Settings Panel → P.350 Output Settings Panel → P.354

**Setting the Print Parameters** 

Color Settings Panel → P.356)

# **Paper Settings Panel**

lame :	Hot Folde	r
lot Folder :	Shared Fo	lder
	Paper Settings	Output Settings Color Settings
Media Typ	e: Pla	ain Paper
Easy Sett	ings	
Print Targe	et : De	fault Settings
Print Quali	ty: St	andard(600dpi)
	C.,	
		table for printing normal documents that contain a ture of text, photographs and graphics.
Paper Sour	mi	
Paper Sour Roll Paper	ce : Ro	dure of text, photographs and graphics.
	ce : Rc Width : 17	ture of text, photographs and graphics.

## Easy Settings / Advanced Settings

Two modes are available to provide the optimum print settings for jobs. The settings available on each mode are as follows.

- Easy Settings → P.352
- Advanced Settings → P.353

# Media Type

This allows you to select the media type.





 Always select media type that is actually set in the printer. When the media you chose is different from the media set in the printer, you may not receive the desired print results.

#### Paper Source

You can select the paper source.

The following settings are available for paper source.

Setting	Details
Manual	Select for manual paper feed printing.
Roll Paper	Select to print on roll paper.

### Roll Paper Width

This selects the width of the roll media set to the printer.



• Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

## Automatic Cutting

You can set the printer to cut roll paper automatically or print a guideline for cutting. The following settings are available for automatic cutting.

Setting	Details
Printer Default	The value set on the printer operation panel takes priority.
None	Each page is not cut after it is printed and printing continues without interruption.
Print Cut Guideline	A print cut guideline is printed after each page and printing continues without interruption.



• Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

#### Copies

You can input the number of print copies in numerical characters.

• The maximum value is 999.

Note • You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.

# **Easy Settings**

You can easily select the best settings for the print job by just selecting an item from the print target list that matches the content of the document.

me :	Hot Fo	lder	
t Folder :	Shared	Folder	
	Paper Setti	ngs Output Settings Color Settings	
Media Typ	e :	Plain Paper	A V
Easy Sett	ings		÷
Print Targe	et:	Default Settings	\$
Print Quali	ty :	Standard(600dpi)	\$
		Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.	t
Paper Sour	rce :	Roll Paper	Å
Roll Paper	Width :	17 in. (431.8mm)	A V
Automatic	Cutting :	Printer Default	A V
Copies		1 (+) copies (1 – 999)	

# Print Target

You can easily select the best settings for the print job simply.

If you select each Print Target item the corresponding comment for that item is displayed below the list.

Setting	Details
Default Settings	Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs, and graphics.
Office Document	Suitable for printing handouts as well as general office documents for which print clarity is key.
Poster	The best setting for posters. Prints using vivid and high impact colors.
CAD (Color Line Drawing)	Prints the fine lines of CAD drawings and other such documents sharp and clear.
CAD (B/W Line Drawing)	Suitable for printing CAD drawings with sharp, dark lines.
Perspective, GIS	Suitable for attractive printing of 3D-CAD drawings, perspective drawings, and GIS drawings including maps.
Photo (Color)	Suitable for printing photographic images captured with a digital camera.
Faithful Color Reproduction	Prints by faithfully reproducing the colors of the original image.
Custom Settings	Suitable for printing documents for which Advanced Settings have been specified.

• The number of settings available for selection depends on the media type.

#### Print Quality

Note

Selecting print quality strikes a balance between the quality of the printed image and printing speed.

The level of the print quality and resolution settings are displayed in the following combinations.

Setting	Details
Print Quality	Highest / High / Standard / Fast
Resolution	1200dpi / 600dpi / 300dpi

- The availability of settings is determined by the media type and print priority selections.
- Note Printing time is longer and more ink is consumed with High than with Fast, however, print quality is higher.
  - Printing time is shorter and less ink is consumed with Fast than with High, however, print quality is lower.

# **Advanced Settings**

Presents detailed settings for the print priority, the print quality, and other items so you can select the values for these settings yourself.

ie :		
Folder :		
Paper Se	ettings Output Settings Color Settings	
Media Type :	Plain Paper	A V
Advanced Setting	35	¢
Print Priority :	Image	¢
		_
Print Quality :	Standard(600dpi)	\$
Paper Source :	Roll Paper	÷
Paper Source : Roll Paper Width :	Roll Paper           17 in. (431.8mm)	4 
Paper Source :	Roll Paper           17 in. (431.8mm)	÷

#### • Print Priority

Select a print quality mode that is appropriate for the print job.

Setting	Details
Image	This mode achieves the best results for printing photographic images and illustrations.
Line Drawing	This mode is best for printing CAD drawings with fine lines or wall newssheet or other docu- ments that contain large amounts of text. However, you may not achieve the quality you ex- pect with printing photographs or other images with many filled areas. For these types of jobs, select <b>Image</b> .
Office Document	Prints common office documents, such as proposals, memos for distribution, etc., so they are easy to read.



• The number of settings available for selection depends on the media type.

#### Print Quality

Selecting print quality strikes a balance between the quality of the printed image and printing speed.

The level of the print quality and resolution settings are displayed in the following combinations.

Setting	Details	
Print Quality	Highest / High / Standard / Fast	3
Resolution	1200dpi / 600dpi / 300dpi	

Mac OS Software

Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy

- The availability of settings is determined by the media type and print priority selections.
- Note Printing time is longer and more ink is consumed with High than with Fast, however, print quality is higher.
  - Printing time is shorter and less ink is consumed with Fast than with High, however, print quality is lower.

# **Output Settings Panel**

ime : ot Folder :			
	per Settings	Output Settings	Color Settings
	a durand D. S. s	1	
	educed Print	ing	
Fit Paper Fit Roll P	aper Width		
⊖ Scaling	uper main	100 🔹 % (5 -	- 600)
Borderles	ss Printing		
Paper Siz		ISO A4	•
i aper biz			
Print Cen	itered		
No Space	es at Top or I	Bottom	
Rotate Pa	age		
🔘 Rotate	e Right 90 De	egrees	
🔘 Rotate	e Left 90 Deg	grees	
Rotate	e 180 degree	5	

# Enlarged/Reduced Printing

Select the method for enlarged/reduced printing.

The following settings are available for enlarged/reduced printing.

Setting	Details
Fit Paper Size	Enlarges/reduces the whole page automatically to fit the media size selected for output. Select the media size to print from <b>Paper Size</b> .
Fit Roll Paper Width	Enlarges/reduces the whole page automatically to fit the width of the roll paper with the page width. *Make sure that the width of the roll paper in the printer is set correctly for <b>Roll Paper Width</b> in the <b>Paper Settings</b> panel. *Displayed only if rolls are selected in <b>Paper Source</b> .
Scaling	<ul> <li>Enlarges/reduces the whole page by the scaling rate as specified. Input the scaling value in numerical characters. You can specify a range between 5 and 600%.</li> <li>*You can change the numbers by clicking either ▲ button or ▼ button.</li> <li>*Although Scaling can be set to make the image larger than the media size, the part that does not fit in the media cannot be printed.</li> <li>*This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in Borderless Printing.</li> </ul>

# Borderless Printing

You can print the media without margins on all sides when the roll paper with the specific width and the specific media type is used.



Note

• Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

# Paper Size

You can select the size of the print media.



This is not displayed when Fit Roll Paper Width is set in Enlarged/Reduced Printing.

## Print Centered

Select this feature to print the image in the center of a cut sheet or to print left and right margins evenly from the edges of roll paper.



This feature is useful when you print the document enlarged or reduced with Scaling as well. When an image is scaled, it is always enlarged or reduced in reference to a starting point in the upper left corner of the page. If the image is reduced, the bottom and right margins are enlarged and the top and left margins remain unchanged. At that point, you can set all margins evenly with this feature.

# No Spaces at Top or Bottom

You can set the printer to print without any empty area when the print data contains empty area at the top or bottom. Since the printer does not feed paper over the empty area, you can save paper.



• Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

## Rotate Page

Select the method for rotating page.

The following settings are available for rotating page.

Setting	Details
Rotate Right 90 Degrees	Rotates the portrait page right 90 degrees and print in landscape orientation. When the rota- ted page can fit in the width of roll paper, the page is rotated automatically, and when it can not fit in the width of roll paper, the page is not rotated.
	*When <b>Fit Roll Paper Width</b> is selected under <b>Enlarged/Reduced Printing</b> , then the image is enlarged or reduced after rotating to fit the width of the roll paper.
Rotate Left 90 Degrees	Rotates the portrait page left 90 degrees and print in landscape orientation. When the rotated page can fit in the width of roll paper, the page is rotated automatically, and when it can not fit in the width of roll paper, the page is not rotated.
	*When <b>Fit Roll Paper Width</b> is selected under <b>Enlarged/Reduced Printing</b> , then the image is enlarged or reduced after rotating to fit the width of the roll paper.
Rotate 180 degrees	Allows you to rotate the image 180 degrees from the vertical to the right.



• Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

# Output Method Button

Click the button to open the **Output Method** dialog box. In this dialog box, you can specify the object output method.

# **Color Settings Panel**

Paper Se	ttings Outpu	it Settings	Color Settings	]
Tuper se	congo outpe	it settings	color settings	
Color Mode :	Color			+
Matching Mode :	Driver Corre	ction		\$
Matching Method :	Perceptual			\$
nput Profile : sRGB v3.0 (Canon				\$
Printer Profile :	)			•
sRGB v3.0 (Canon	)			\$

# Color Mode

You can select a color mode to suit the print job.

Setting	Details
Color	Enables color printing.
Monochrome	Disables color printing and converts image from continuous color to grayscaled mono- chrome.
Color (CAD)	Prints lines in the best color possible so they are easy to see.
Monochrome Bitmap	Prints all colors other than white in black.
Monochrome (BK ink)	Select to print all lines with black ink.

• The availability of settings depends on the print priority and media type selections.

# Matching Mode

Note

Under Matching Mode, select the matching mode.

Setting	Details
Driver Matching Mode →P.357	Enables printing of optimal color tones using a driver specific color profile. You should nor- mally select this mode.
ICC Matching Mode (→P.358)	Enables color matching using ICC profiles. Select this if you want to print by specifying the input profile, printer profile, and matching method in detail. This allows you to use ICC profiles for digital cameras and scanners, ICC profiles created using the profile creation tool, etc.
No Correction	No color matching is performed. Select this option when you want to perform color matching in the software application.

Cancel OK

# Driver Matching Mode

# **1** Under **Matching Mode**, select **Driver Matching Mode**.

me :	Hot Fo	older		
t Folder :	Share	d Folder		
F	aper Sett	ings Output Settings	Color Settings	
Color Mode		Color		Å
Matching M	lode :	Driver Correction		¢
Matching M Matching M		Driver Correction Perceptual		¢
-	lethod :			
Matching N	lethod : e :			
Matching M	lethod : e : (Canon)			\$

# Click Matching Method list, and then select a setting.

Setting	Details
Auto	Automatically selects the best color matching method for each Image, Graphics, Text.
Perceptual	Color-matching optimized for printing typical photos attractively. Smooth gradation is a fea- ture. This is also an easy-to-use mode when performing color adjustment using application software.
Saturation	Color-matching optimized for printing posters, etc., vividly.
Colorimetric	Color-matching optimized for printing image data with accurate colors in input color space. This is the easiest-to-use mode when you want to adjust the color and print. However, gra- dation may be lost for colors of wider range than the color reproduction range of the printer. Generally, this is also called relative colorimetric.

Mac OS Software

Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy

# ICC Matching Mode

# Under Matching Mode, select ICC Matching Mode.

ne :	Hot F	older		
Folder :	Share	d Folder		
	Paper Set	tings Output Settings	Color Settings	
Color Mo	ode :	Color		A V
Matching	Mode :	ICC Matching Mode		¢
	9 Mode : 9 Method :	ICC Matching Mode Perceptual		¢
	Method :			
Matching	Method :	Perceptual		
Matching	9 Method : ofile : 3.0 (Canon)	Perceptual		•
Matching Input Pro sRGB vi Printer P	9 Method : ofile : 3.0 (Canon)	Perceptual		•
Matching Input Pro sRGB vi Printer P	g Method : ofile : 3.0 (Canon) rofile :	Perceptual		•
Matching Input Pro sRGB vi Printer P	g Method : ofile : 3.0 (Canon) rofile :	Perceptual		•

# **2** Click **Matching Method** list, and then select a setting.

Setting	Details
Perceptual	Color-matching optimized for printing typical photos attractively. Smooth gradation is a fea- ture. This is also an easy-to-use mode when performing color adjustment using application software.
Saturation	Color-matching optimized for printing posters, etc., vividly.
Colorimetric	Color-matching optimized for printing image data with accurate colors in input color space. This is the easiest-to-use mode when you want to adjust the color and print. However, gra- dation may be lost for colors of wider range than the color reproduction range of the printer. Generally, this is also called relative colorimetric.
Colorimetric (No White-Point Cor- rection)	The processing method of color-matching is identical to <b>Colorimetric</b> . Use this when you want to further reproduce the target paper material color of the image data. Generally, this also is called absolute colorimetric.

Click the Input Profile list, and then select an input profile.



 To match the color on the printing, select the input profile for Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy of the Color imageRUNNER type in use.

4 Click the **Printer Profile** list, and then select a printer profile.

# Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER

Scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER can be enlarged and printed automatically. Originals you create by scanning with a Color imageRUNNER are transferred to a "hot folder" and printed automatically after enlargement according to printing conditions you specify for that folder.

This processing sequence is called the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** function.

To use Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, first complete these settings in the following order.

1. Register a hot folder on your computer.

Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER and complete the settings for enlargement copy. For details, see "Creating a New Hot Folder." →P.346

 Complete the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER. Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder.

After these settings are complete, you can print enlarged copies of scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER.

Completing the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.

Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder. It is easy to send scanned originals to the hot folder if you assign the scanning settings and destination to a **Favorites** button on the Color imageRUNNER. For instructions on assigning scanning and sending settings to the **Favorites** button, refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

# Scanning the original and print an enlargement

Follow the steps below to scan an original on the Color imageRUNNER for enlarged printing on the printer. For detailed instructions, refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.



Load the original on the platen glass or document feeder of the Color imageRUNNER.



Press **Send** to display the screen for transmission.

Press **Favorites**, and then press the **Favorites** button assigned to the hot folder.

4 Press **Start** on the control panel. If you scan originals on the platen glass, after scanning all originals, press **Done** on the touch-panel display.

Scanned originals are sent to the hot folder and automatically enlarged and printed following the conditions you specified for the folder.

# Memo

# iPF685

User's Guide

Basic Printing Workflow	15
Enhanced Printing Options	31
Windows Software	157
Mac OS Software	277

# Handling and Use of Paper

Paper	362
Handling rolls	372
Handling sheets	394
Output Stacker	401
Media Configuration Tool (Windows)	406
Media Configuration Tool (Mac OS)	420

Control Panel	437
Printer Parts	477
Network Setting	491
Print Job Management	511
Adjustments for Better Print Quality	573
Maintenance and Consumables	589
Maintenance and Consumables Troubleshooting	589 627
Troubleshooting	627

# User's Guide

# Paper

Types of Paper Paper Sizes	
Using Paper Other Than Genuine Paper and feed confirmed Paper Printing on Paper Other Than Genuine Paper and feed confirmed Paper Using Existing Settings	
Displaying the Paper Reference Guide Updating paper information	

# Types of Paper

The following types of paper are supported by the printer. For details on the paper supported by the printer, refer to the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.") → P.365

- Plain Paper
- Coated Paper
- Photo Paper
- Glossy Paper
- Proofing Paper
- CAD-dedicated Paper Etc.

The following content is described in the Paper Reference Guide.

- Types of paper
- · Paper handling
- Paper product specifications
- Use precautions
- Setting of printer driver, control panel etc.

### Paper Reference Guide display method

You can display the **Paper Reference Guide** from [imagePROGRAF Support Information]. (See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide**.") **Paper Reference Guide**.")

### 1. Method of Updating Supported Paper

### Photo Paper

To use newly released paper, register the latest paper information on the printer with the Media Configuration Tool. (See "Updating paper information.") **PR368** 



To install the Paper Reference Guide and register paper types applicable to your region on your printer even when not using the printer driver, install the Media Configuration Tool. (See "Media Configuration Tool (Windows).") → P406 (See "Media Configuration Tool (Mac OS).") → P420

# Paper Sizes

### Rolls

Rolls that meet the following conditions are supported.

- 362
- Outer diameter: Up to 150 mm (6 in)
- Inner diameter of paper core: 2 or 3 inches
- Printing side out

Paper

Roll Width	Roll Paper Width Setting in Printer Driver (*1)	Borderless Printing (*1)
609.6 mm (24.00 in)	24-in. Roll (609.6mm)	Yes
594.0 mm (23.39 in)	ISO A1/A2 Roll (594.0mm)	Yes
515.0 mm (20.28 in)	JIS B2/B3 Roll (515.0mm)	Yes
431.8 mm (17.00 in)	17-in. Roll (431.8mm)	Yes
420.0 mm (16.54 in)	ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)	Yes
406.4 mm (16.00 in)	16-in. Roll (406.4mm)	No
355.6 mm (14.00 in)	14-in. Roll (355.6mm)	Yes
300.0 mm (11.81 in)	300mm Roll (300.0mm)	Yes
297.0 mm (11.69 in)	ISO A3/A4 Roll (297.0mm)	Yes
257.0 mm (10.12 in)	JIS B4 Roll (257.0mm)	Yes
254.0 mm (10.00 in)	10-in. Roll (254.0mm)	Yes

*1: For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "Types of Paper.") → P362

### Sheets

Sheets of the following sizes are supported.

Paper Sizes	Dimensions
ISO A1	594.0 × 841.0 mm (23.39 × 33.11 in)
ISO A2+	431.8 × 609.6 mm (17.00 × 24.00 in)
ISO A2	420.0 × 594.0 mm (16.54 × 23.39 in)
ISO A3+	329.0 × 483.0 mm (12.95 × 19.02 in)
ISO A3	297.0 × 420.0 mm (11.69 × 16.54 in)
ISO A4	210.0 × 297.0 mm (8.27 × 11.69 in)
ISO B2	500.0 × 707.0 mm (19.69 × 27.83 in)
ISO B3	353.0 × 500.0 mm (13.90 × 19.69 in)
ISO B4	250.0 × 353.0 mm (9.84 × 13.90 in)
JIS B2	515.0 × 728.0 mm (20.28 × 28.66 in)
JIS B3	364.0 × 515.0 mm (14.33 × 20.28 in)
JIS B4	257.0 × 364.0 mm (10.12 × 14.33 in)
22"x34"(ANSI D)	558.8 × 863.6 mm (22.00 × 34.00 in)
17"x22"(ANSI C)	431.8 × 558.8 mm (17.00 × 22.00 in)
11"x17"(Ledger)	279.4 × 431.8 mm (11.00 × 17.00 in)
13"x19"(Super B)	330.2 × 482.6 mm (13.00 × 19.00 in)
Letter(8.5"x11")	215.9 × 279.4 mm (8.50 × 11.00 in)
Legal(8.5"x14")	215.9 × 355.6 mm (8.50 × 14.00 in)
24"x36"(ARCH D)	609.6 × 914.4 mm (24.00 × 36.00 in)
18"x24"(ARCH C)	457.2 × 609.6 mm (18.00 × 24.00 in)
12"x18"(ARCH B)	304.8 × 457.2 mm (12.00 × 18.00 in)
9"x12"(ARCH A)	228.6 × 304.8 mm (9.00 × 12.00 in)
DIN C2	458.0 × 648.0 mm (18.03 × 25.51 in)
DIN C3	324.0 × 458.0 mm (12.76 × 18.03 in)
DIN C4	229.0 × 324.0 mm (9.02 × 12.76 in)

Paper Sizes	Dimensions
20"x24"	508.0 × 609.6 mm (20.00 × 24.00 in)
18"x22"	457.2 × 558.8 mm (18.00 × 22.00 in)
14"x17"	355.6 × 431.8 mm (14.00 × 17.00 in)
12"x16"	304.8 × 406.4 mm (12.00 × 16.00 in)
10"x12"	254.0 × 304.8 mm (10.00 × 12.00 in)
10"x15"	254.0 × 381.0 mm (10.00 × 15.00 in)
US Photo 16"x20"	406.4 × 508.0 mm (16.00 × 20.00 in)
Poster 20"x30"	508.0 × 762.0 mm (20.00 × 30.00 in)
13"x22"	329.0 × 558.0 mm (12.95 × 21.97 in)
Poster 300x900mm	300.0 × 900.0 mm (11.81 × 35.43 in)
Custom Paper Size	203.2 x 279.0 mm (8.00 x 10.98 in) to 610.0 x 1600.0 mm (24.02 x 62.99 in)



• For details on non-standard Custom Paper Size, see "Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes." → P.104

Note • Borderless printing is not supported on sheets.

# Using Paper Other Than Genuine Paper and feed confirmed Paper

When using this printer to print on paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed confirmed paper, use paper that meets the following conditions.



• Refer to **Paper Reference Guide** for details on genuine Canon paper and feed confirmed paper. (See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide**.") → P365

- Paper where the size is described in "Paper Sizes" (See "Paper Sizes.") → P.362
- Paper where the thickness is described in "Paper Thickness" in "Specifications" (See "Specifications.") → P.682
- Paper where bleeding and ink overflow does not occur when printing
- Paper that does not warp severely when loading the paper or printing



 If you use paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed confirmed paper, Canon provides absolutely no guarantees regarding print quality or paper feed properties. Refer to Paper Reference Guide for details on genuine Canon paper and feed confirmed paper. (See "Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.") 

 P365

Load paper in the printer and then select the paper type in the control panel and printer driver and print. You can print easily by selecting from existing settings provided in the printer control panel and printer driver. (See "Printing on Paper Other Than Genuine Paper and feed confirmed Paper Using Existing Settings.") PR364

# Printing on Paper Other Than Genuine Paper and feed confirmed Paper Using Existing Settings

You can easily print on paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed confirmed paper without making complicated settings by selecting existing settings provided in the printer control panel and printer driver depending on the media type you are using. The existing settings consist of general-purpose paper settings provided for each media type and special settings that allow you to select the amount of ink to use.



364

 The genuine Canon paper settings provided in the printer control panel and printer driver are optimized for genuine Canon paper. If these settings are selected for printing on paper other than genuine Canon paper, the ink may bleed or the printhead may rub against the paper. In order to easily print on paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed confirmed paper, we recommend that you select one of the following general-purpose paper settings or special settings.

Pape

User's Guide



• For an overview of the media types, see "Types of Paper." → P.362

Note • For details on how to select the media type in the control panel and printer driver, see "Types of Paper." → P.362

### **Choosing General-Purpose Paper Settings**

Since these settings anticipate a wide variety of paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed confirmed paper, these settings will make it difficult for bleeding ink and the printhead rubbing to occur. Refer to the following table for the relationships between the conditions of the paper other than genuine Canon paper and feed confirmed paper and the media type to select.

Туре	Approximate weight	Approximate thickness	Printer control panel	Printer driver
Plain Paper	70 g/m²	0.09 mm (0.0035 in.)	Plain Paper	Plain Paper
Coated Paper	90 g/m²	0.13 mm (0.0051 in.)	LW. Coated Paper	Lightweight Coated Paper
	170 g/m²	0.22 mm (0.0087 in.)	HW. Coated Paper	Heavyweight Coated Paper
Photo Paper	180 g/m²	0.18 mm (0.0071 in.)	LW. Photo Paper	Lightweight Photo Paper
			LWPhotoPaper(LI)(*1)	Lightweight Photo Paper (LowInk)(*1)
	260 g/m²	0.26 mm (0.010 in.)	HW. Photo Paper	Heavyweight Photo Paper
			HWPhotoPaper(LI)(*1)	Heavyweight Photo Paper (LowInk)(*1)
Proof	80 g/m²	0.10 mm (0.0039 in.)	News Proof	(*2)
Sign/CAD Paper	150 g/m²	0.11 mm (0.0043 in.)	CAD Clear Film	CAD Clear Film
	90 g/m²	0.08mm (0.0031 in.)	CAD Trce(LowInk)	CAD Tracing Paper (Low Ink)
	100 g/m²	0.13 mm (0.0051 in.)	Syn.Papr(LowInk)	Synthetic Paper (LowInk)

*1: Print using slightly less ink. Try this if you are concerned about rubbing of ink after printing.

*2: Software RIP is required separately.

### Selecting Special Settings

Special settings are provided that allow you to select the amount of ink used in steps. You can fix lackluster colors or bleeding ink by selecting special settings where the amount of ink used is suitable for the paper you are using. "Special 1" uses the least amount of ink, with the amount of ink used increasing through 5 steps as the number increases up to "Special 5" which uses the greatest amount of ink. Although colors become more vivid as the amount of ink used increases, bleeding also occurs more easily. We recommend that you try in order starting from "Special 1" while checking the state of the printing.

### **Displaying the Paper Reference Guide**

The **Paper Reference Guide** are not included. To view, display the **Paper Reference Guide** on the website from the links in the installed software. An Internet connection is required in order to view them.

### Windows

The basic instructions for displaying the Paper Reference Guide from the printer driver are as follows.

**1.** Open the printer driver.

(See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows).") →P.164 (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows).") →P.166

# 2. Select the **Support** sheet and click the **User Manual** button.

	xxx Printing Preferences
<b>W</b>	Support Information : Accesses the Canon support webpage, where you can find the latest printer information, check for software updates, and browse other information.
	User Manual : Connects to the Internet and displays the printer user's manual.
	Settings Summaries

iPF685

Paper

### 3. Click Paper Reference Guide.

60	v 💋		🗸 😽 🗶 Live Search	2
774 ME		9.44 A-40 VILA		
* *	🏉 Manual Top		💁 • 🖸 · 🖶 • 🖗 <-20	• ③ ツール◎ •
	Ci	anon	<b>W</b> ImagePROGRAF	
		>User's Guide		
		>Paper Reference Guide		

### Mac OS

The basic instructions for displaying the **Paper Reference Guide** from the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor are as follows.

1. Click the System Preferences icon in the Dock.



2. Click Print & Scan. (This is identified as Printers & Scanners or Print & Fax in other versions of Mac OS X.)



Print & Scan

Default printer: Last Printer Used

General Driver Supply Levels Utility

Default paper size: A4

Click the lock to prevent further changes.

Name: Canon iPFxxxx

Canon iPFxxxx

Kind: Canon iPFxxxx Status: Idle

Open Print Queue... Options & Supplies..

Share this printer on the network Sharing Preferences...

\$

?

O
O
O
O
Show All

**R** 9

+ -

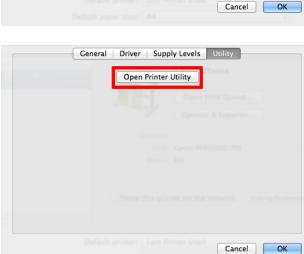
Location:

User's Guide

Queue Name: Canon_iPFxxxx Driver Version: X.XX

3. Select the printer from the list of printers and click Options &

5. Click Open Printer Utility.



Paper

367

Supplies.

4. Click Utility.

### 6. Click Support.

00	Can	ion iPFxxxx		
Printer Ready.				
	Ready.			
	Driver Hard I	Disk Utility	Support	Replace Paper
Document	User	Status	Size	Page Ci

Paper

### 7. Click the User Manual button.

00	Canon iPFxxxx
Printer	Ready.
	Ready.
	Driver   Hard Disk   Utility Support
	Support Information Accesses the Canon support webpage, where you can find the latest information on the printer and consumables, check for driver updates, and browse other information.
	User Manual Connects to the Internet and displays the printer user's manual.

8. Click Paper Reference Guide.



# Updating paper information

As for paper information of the printer Control Panel and printer driver, you can update it to the latest information by downloading and installing the latest version of Media Information File from the imagePROGRAF website. The latest Media Information File can be downloaded by accessing the imagePROGRAF website from the links in the software installed on your computer. Contact your Canon dealer if you are unable to download it. For details on Media Information File (Media Information File), refer as follows.

- - Media Configuration Tool (Windows) → P.406
  - Media Configuration Tool (Mac OS) → P.420



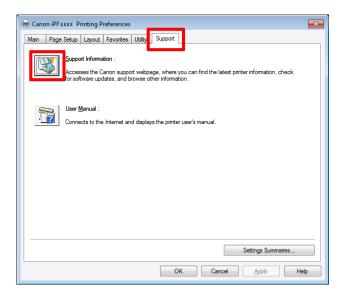
When your version of Media Configuration Tool is older than the version released on the imagePROGRAF website, download and install the latest version of Media Configuration Tool before installing Media Information File. If you do not install the latest version of Media Configuration Tool before installing Media Information File, the latest paper information cannot be updated.

### Windows

The basic instructions for accessing the dedicated website from the printer driver are as follows.

- Open the printer driver.
   (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows).") →P.164
   (See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows).") →P.166
- 2. Select the Support sheet and click the Support Information button.

The default browser on your computer is started and the imagePROGRAF webpage is displayed.



### Mac OS

The basic instructions for accessing the dedicated website from the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor are as follows.

- 1. Click the System Preferences icon in the Dock.
- 2. Click Print & Scan. (This is identified as Printers & Scanners or Print & Fax in other versions of Mac OS X.)





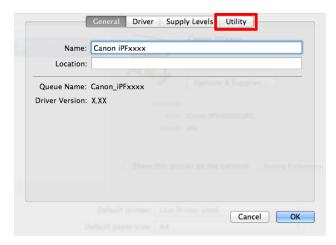
Paper

 Select the printer from the list of printers and click Options & Supplies.



# 4. Click Utility.

5. Click Open Printer Utility.



General Driver Supply Levels Utility
Open Printer Utility
Open Print Queue
Default printer, i Last Printer Used
Cancel OK

Paper

iPF685

000	Canon iPFxxxx	
Printer Ready.		
	Ready.	
	Driver Hard Disk Utility Support	_
Document	User Status Size Page C	
_		

# 7. Click the Support Information button.

The default browser on your computer is started and the imagePROGRAF webpage is displayed.

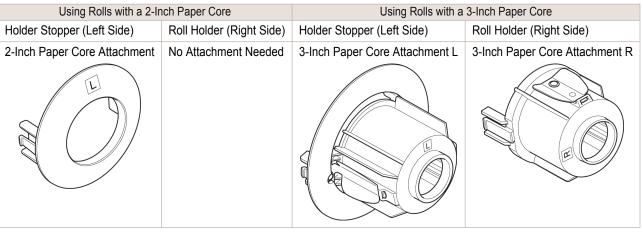
Canon IPFXXXX
Ready.
Ready.
Driver Hard Disk Utility Support
Support Information Accesses the Canon support webpage, where you can find the latest information on the printer and consumables, check for driver updates, and browse other information.
User Manual Connects to the Internet and displays the printer user's manual.

# Handling rolls

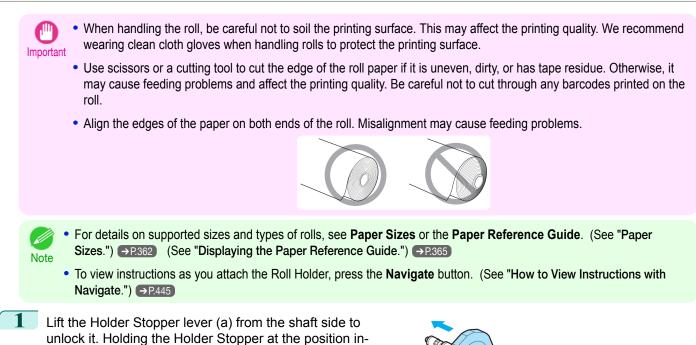
Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls Loading Rolls in the Printer	372 375
Changing the Type of Paper Specifying the Paper Length	378 380
Removing the Roll from the Printer Removing the Roll Holder from Rolls	380 383
<ul> <li>→ Clearing Jammed Roll Paper</li> <li>→ Clearing Jammed Paper (Paper Feed Slot)</li> </ul>	629 635
Feeding Roll Paper Manually Keeping Track of the Amount of Roll Paper Left Specifying the Ink Drying Time for Rolls	385
Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls Cutting the Leading Edge of Roll Paper Automatically Reducing Dust from Cutting Rolls	391
Roll Holder Set	488

# Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls

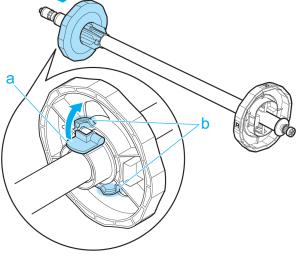
When printing on rolls, attach the Roll Holder to the roll. Rolls have a two- or three-inch paper core. Use the correct attachment for the paper core. The printer comes equipped with the 2-Inch Paper Core Attachment installed.



• Set the roll on a table or other flat surface so that it does not roll or fall. Rolls are heavy, and dropping a roll may cause injury.



dicated (b), remove it from the Roll Holder.



Handling rolls

2

### • Using rolls with a 2-inch paper core

Holder Stopper (Left Side)	Roll Holder (Right Side)
Align the tips (a) of the 2-Inch Paper Core Attachment with the holes (b) of the Holder Stopper and insert it firmly.	No attachment is needed.
Using rolls with a 3-inch paper core	

### Using rolls with a 3-inch paper core

Holder Stopper (Left Side)	Roll Holder (Right Side)
Align the tips (a) of the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment L with the holes (b) of the Holder Stopper and insert it firmly.	Align the tips (a) of 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment R with the holes (b) of the Roll Holder and insert it firmly.
b	

### iPF685

3 With the edge of the roll paper facing forward as shown, а insert the Roll Holder from the right of the roll. Insert it firmly until the roll touches the flange (a) of the Roll Holder, leaving no gap. R 4 Insert the Holder Stopper from the left in the Roll Holder as shown. Holding it at the position shown (b), push it firmly in until the flange (a) of the Holder Stopper touches the roll. Lock the Holder Stopper lever (c) by pushing it П down toward the shaft side. a

# Loading Rolls in the Printer

Follow these steps to load rolls in the printer.



1

• Before loading rolls, make sure the printer is clean inside the Top Cover and around the Ejection Guide. If these areas are dirty, we recommend cleaning them in advance. (See "Cleaning Inside the Top Cover.") 
PE614

Press the Load button.



Handling and Use of Paper

Handling rolls

# **2** Press ▲ or ▼ to select "Load Roll Paper", and then press the OK button.

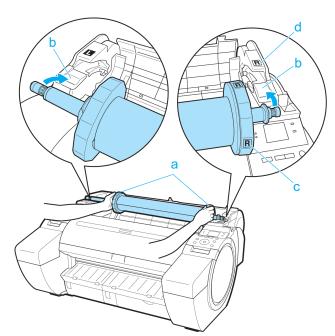


• If any paper has been advanced that will not be used, a message is shown requesting you to remove it. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button. Remove the paper and go to the next step.

**3** Positioning your hands as shown, open the Roll Cover.

4 Holding the Roll Holder flange (a), rest the Roll Holder shaft on the Roll Ledge (b).

At this time, position the holder so that the  $\mathbf{R}$  label (c) on the [W label (c) on the Roll Holder flange is aligned with the  $\mathbf{R}$  label (d) on the printer .



Handling and Use of Paper

Handling rolls

- Do not force the Roll Holder into the printer with the right and left ends reversed. This may damage the printer and Roll Holder.
- Do not release the flanges until the holder is loaded in the Roll Holder Slot.
- Be careful not to pinch your fingers between the Roll Loading Slots (b) and the Roll Holder shaft (c) when loading rolls.

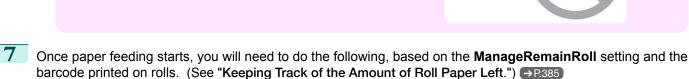
**6** Insert the edge of the roll in the Paper Feed Slot (a) and advance the roll until you hear the feed tone.

Caution

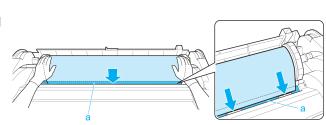
Holding the Roll Holder flange (a), guide the holder

along the Roll Loading Slots (b) on both ends, keeping the holder level as you load it in the Roll Holder Slot.

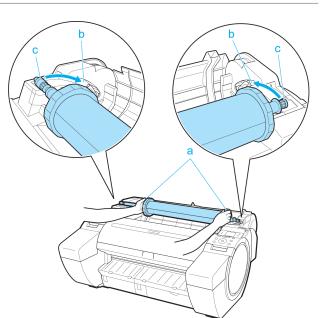
- Be careful not to soil the printing surface of roll paper as you insert it in the slot. This may affect the printing quality. We recommend wearing clean cloth gloves when handling rolls to protect the printing surface.
  - · If the paper is wrinkled or warped, straighten it out before loading it.
  - Load paper straight so it is not fed askew.



ManageRe- mainRoll	Barcodes	Printer Operation After the Paper is Fed			
Off	Printed	menu for selection of the type of paper is automatically shown on the Display Screen.			
	Not printed	Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the <b>OK</b> button.			
On	Printed	The type and amount of paper left is automatically detected based on the barcode printed on the roll. There is no need to specify the type and length of the paper.			





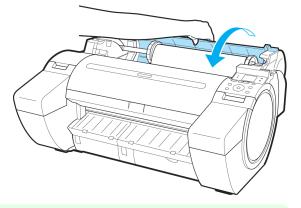


	ManageRe- mainRoll	Barcodes	Printer Operation After the Paper is Fed
C	Dn	Not printed	A menu for selection of the paper type and length is automatically shown on the Display Screen. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type and length of paper loaded, and then press the <b>OK</b> button.



• For details on types of paper to select, see the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.") → P.365

**8** Holding it at the positions indicated, close the Roll Cover.





• Cut the edge of the roll after the paper is advanced if it is soiled or if there are cuts from scissors or the blade after removing creased edges. (See "Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls.") (>P.388)

# Changing the Type of Paper

Follow these steps to change the type of paper specified on the printer after you have loaded paper. If you will continue using this type of paper later, selecting **Keep Paper Type** > **On** will save the time and effort of configuring the media type setting when you load the paper again. The current media type settings before you select **On** will be automatically selected at that time. (See "Using the Same Type of Paper Regularly.") →P379



 For best printing results, the printer fine-tunes the print head height and the feed amount for each type of paper. Be sure to select the type of paper to use correctly before printing.

• Because the printer fine-tunes the feed amount for each type of paper, the margins and the size of printed images may vary depending on the type of paper used. If margins and the size of images are not as you expected, adjust the paper feed amount.

(See "Adjusting the Feed Amount.") →P.581

 Rolls and sheets have different printing areas, and sheets having a larger bottom margin than rolls. (See "Print Area.") 

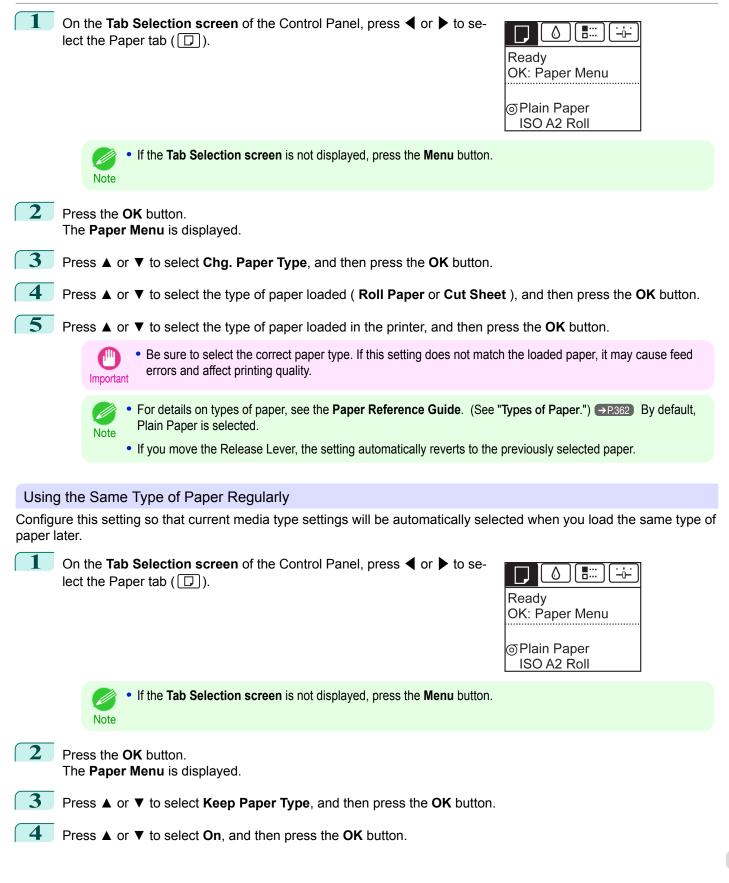
 PE684

### Changing the Type of Paper



• When you load a roll, a menu for selection of the type of paper is shown on the Display Screen. Select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button.

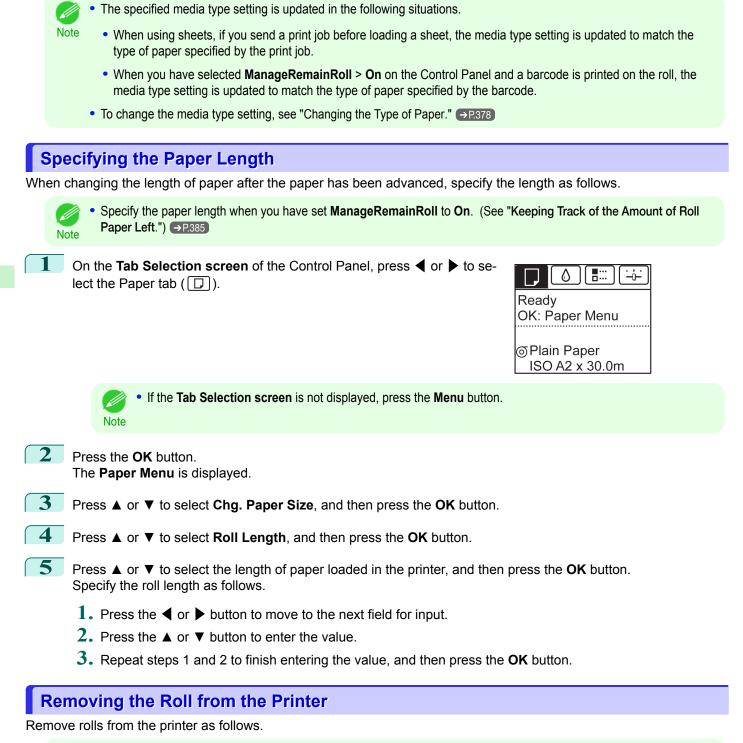
If no barcode has been printed on the roll and you have set **ManageRemainRoll** to **On**, specify the roll length after the type of paper. (See "Specifying the Paper Length.") **PR380** 



379

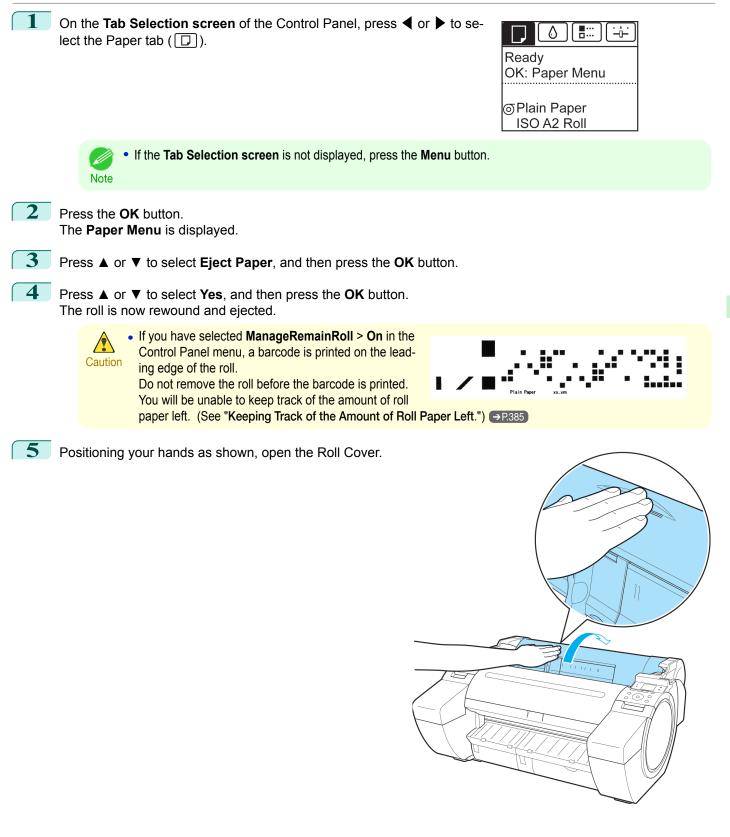
Handling and Use of Paper

Handling rolls



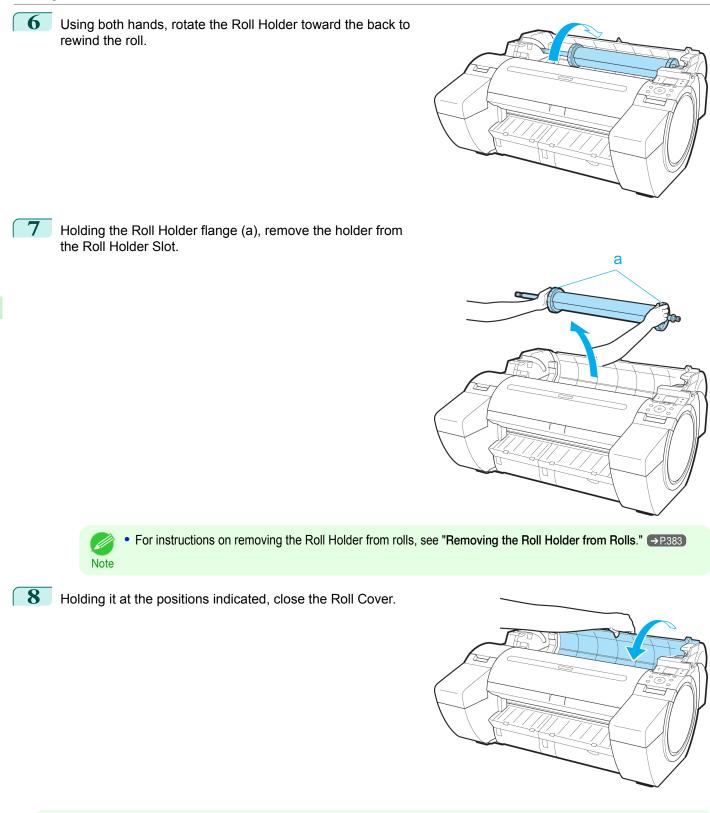


If you need to cut the roll, see "Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls." →P.388



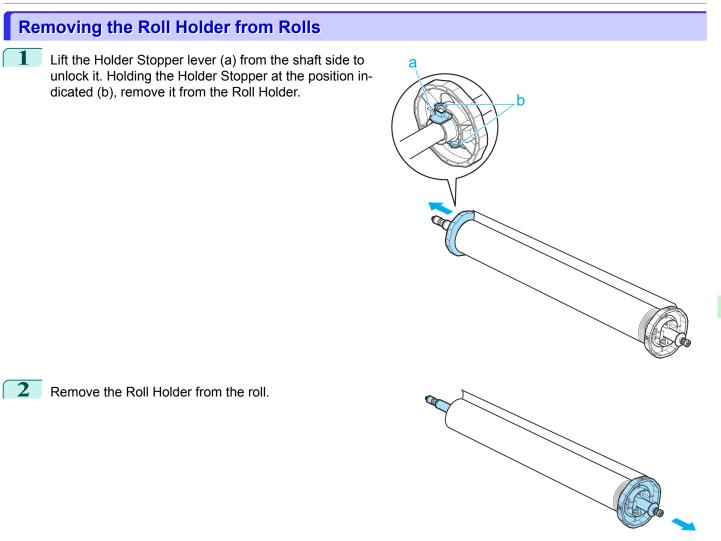
Handling and Use of Paper

Handling rolls



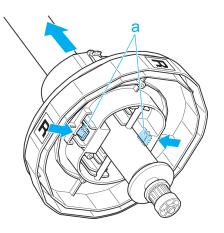
• To load new roll paper in the printer at this point, see "Loading Rolls in the Printer." →P.375

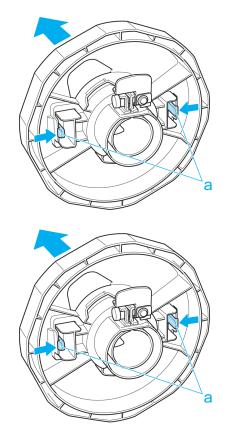
Note



3 When removing attachments, push the tips (a) in as you remove the attachment.

• 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment R (Roll Holder side)







2

Store the roll in the original bag or box, away from high temperature, humidity, and direct sunlight. If paper is not
stored properly, the printing surface may become scratched, which may affect the printing quality when you use it
again.

# Feeding Roll Paper Manually

2-Inch Paper Core Attachment

After a roll has been advanced, you can press the **Feed** button to feed or retract the roll with the ▲ and ▼ buttons.



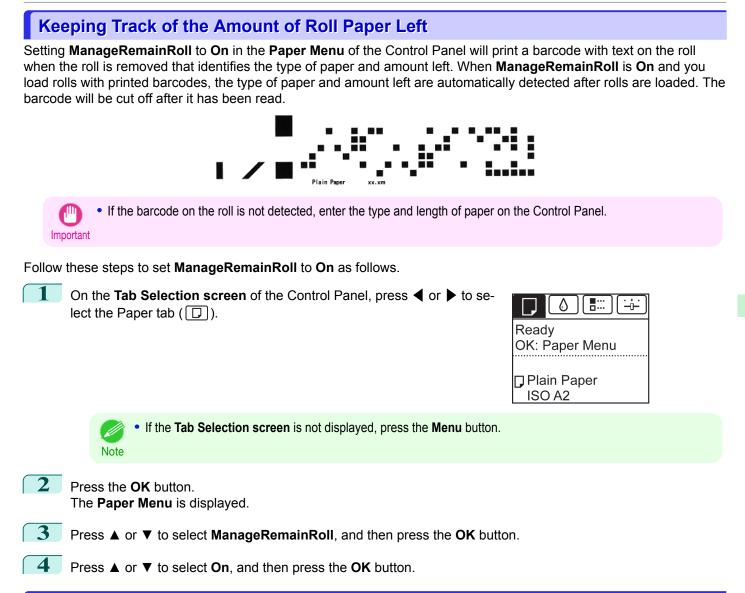
**1** Press the **Feed** button.

Press the  $\blacktriangle$  or  $\checkmark$  button to advance or retract the roll.

Press ▲ to retract the roll manually. Press ▼ to advance the roll manually.

If you hold down ▲ or ▼ for less than a second, the roll will move about 1 mm (0.04 in).
 If you hold down ▲ or ▼ for more than a second, the roll will move until you release the button. Release the button when the Display Screen indicates "End of paper feed. Cannot feed paper more.".

Handling rolls



# Specifying the Ink Drying Time for Rolls

When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere, ink may be transferred onto the paper surface during ejection, soiling it. In that case, you may be able to improve the condition by setting the time to wait for the ink to dry after printing.

- Note
- If the Cutter touches the print surface on which the ink is not dry, the paper surface may become scratched or soiled, or the paper surface may rub when the paper falls and the surface may become soiled.
- To wait for the ink to dry without allowing printed documents to fall after printing, set **Cutting Mode** on the menu of the printer to **Eject**. (See "Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls.") **PR388**
- The settings can also be made from the Control Panel on the printer. Select the type of paper from Paper Details in Paper Menu. (See "Menu Settings.") →P.459

### Windows

Display the printer driver dialog box.

(See "Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows).") -P.166

then click OK.

dows).") → P.170

2 Select the Main sheet and click C Advanced Settings in A Media Type.

**3** In the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box displayed

(See "Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Win-

next, select the desired settings values in **B** Between Pages and **C** Between Scans in **A** Drying Time, and

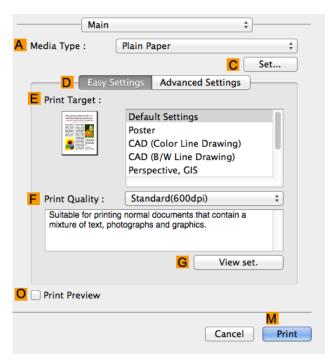
Hain Page Setup Layout Favorito	
	A Media Type : Plain Paper     B Get Information C Advanced Settings      Essy Settings     Print Tarcet :
SO A4 : 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm ↓ Actual Size ISO A4 : 210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	Default Sertives         A           Poster         CAD (Color Line Drawing)         III           CAD (Monochrome Line Drawing)         Perspective, GIS         Photo (Color)
R (20)	F Print Quality : Standard (600dpl)  Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs and graphics.
1 a J	G View Settings Copen Preview When Print Job Starts M Status Monitor About Defaults
	OK Cancel Apply Help

Paper Detailed Settings	
🔨 Drying Time	
Between Pages :	Printer Default
Between Scans :	Printer Default 🔹
Roll Paper Margin for Safety	
Near End Margin :	Printer Default 🔹
Cut Speed :	Printer Default
G 🕅 Mirror	
ОК	Cancel Defaults Help

### Mac OS

1 Choose **Print** in the application menu.

# 2 Select the Main pane and click C Settings in A Media Type.



3 In the Paper Detailed Settings dialog box displayed next, select the desired settings values in C Between Pages and D Between Scans in B Drying Time, and then click OK. (See "Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac

**OS)**.") →P.286

Media Type :	Plain Paper	
Drying Time		
Between Pages :	Printer Default	ŧ
Between Scans :	Printer Default	ŧ
Roll Paper Margin for Safety		
Near End Margin :	Printer Default	ŧ
Cut Speed :	Printer Default	ŧ
Automatic Cutting :	Printer Default	ŧ
Mirror		

# Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls

How rolls are cut after ejection varies depending on printer settings.

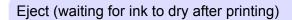
	Cutting Method	Printer Setting		Driver Setting	
Automatic	The roll is automatically cut by the Cutter Unit follow- ing printer driver settings. Media Menu > Pa		Automatic	Automatic Cutting	Yes
Eject (wait- ing for ink to dry after printing)	Choose this setting if you prefer not to have docu- ments dropped immediately after printing, as when waiting for ink to dry. To cut the roll with the Cutter Unit, press the <b>Cut</b> but- ton.	per Details > (Various Types of Paper) > Cutting Mode	Eject		Yes
Manual (when using media that cannot be cut with the Cutter Unit )	Choose this setting when using media that cannot be cut using the Cutter Unit. Cut each page from the roll using scissors. For con- tinuous printing (if you will cut each page later), se- lect Automatic Cutting > Yes or select Print Cut Guideline. (See "Cutting Roll Paper After Printing.") →P.152	mode	Manual	_	No, Yes, Print Cut Guideline
Paper cut- ting (to have the roll cut at your specified position)	Choose this option if you want to cut pages by press- ing Cutter Unit buttons for manual cutting after print- ing when Automatic Cutting > No is selected or <b>Print Cut Guideline</b> is selected in the printer driver. Otherwise choose this option if you want to cut the roll edge after loading a roll.	Cut button pressed	Yes	_	No, Print Cut Guideline

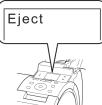
• Automatic and Eject are valid only when you have selected **Automatic Cutting > Yes** in the printer driver.

Note • With Eject, printing does not resume after a series of jobs have been printed continuously until the roll is cut.

• Eject is the preset selection in Cutting Mode for some types of paper. For this paper, we recommend keeping the preset cutting mode.

Cut rolls manually in the following cases:





Select Eject

Print



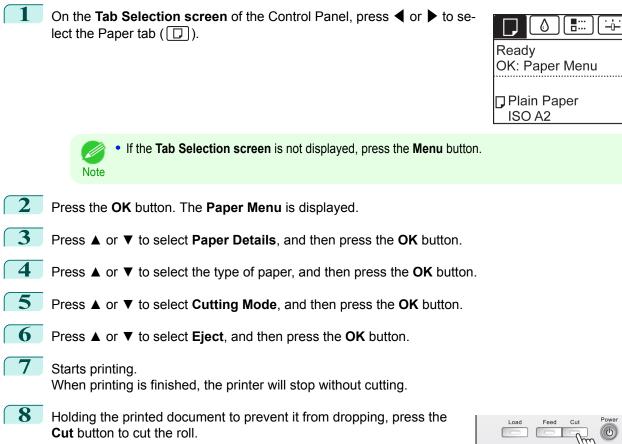
Stopped automatically at the cut position



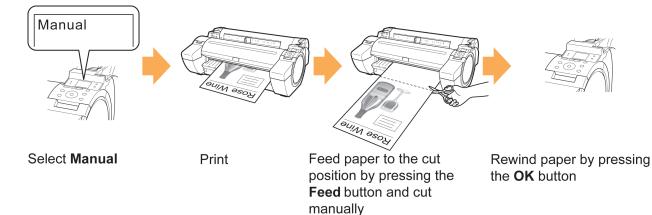
As you support the document to prevent it from dropping, cut by pressing the **Cut** button

U Important

- When cutting wide printed documents after ejection, have two people support the documents. If the paper drops, printed documents may be damaged.
- Do not lift the paper when holding printed documents before cutting. If the paper rises, it may affect the printing quality or cause rough cut edges.



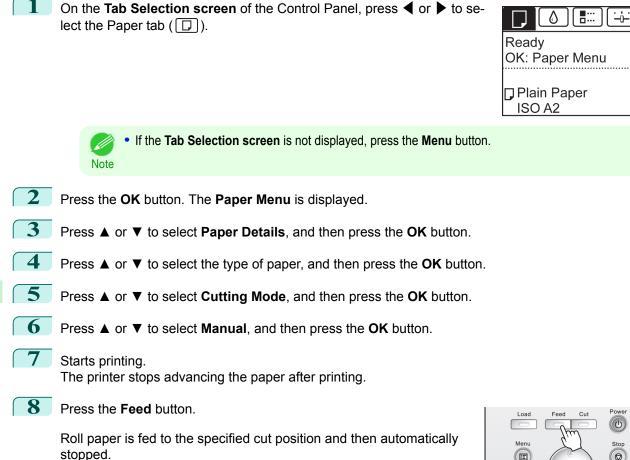
### Manual (when using media that cannot be cut with the Cutter Unit )



Handling rolls

Menu

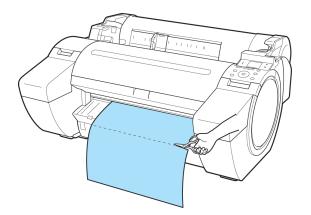
Back

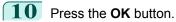






9 Cut the roll paper manually with scissors or the like.

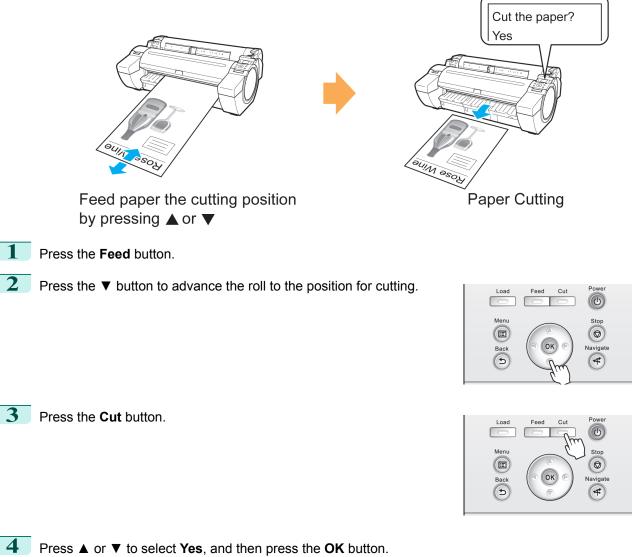




After the roll is rewound, it stops automatically.



# Paper cutting (to have the roll cut at your specified position)



After the roll paper is cut, it is rewound automatically.

• If paper would be short when cut at a particular position, the roll may automatically be advanced in some cases before cutting.

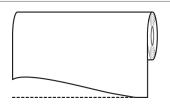
# Cutting the Leading Edge of Roll Paper Automatically

If the leading edge of the paper is cut crooked or is not cut straight when roll paper is loaded, it will not print correctly. If this happens, you can cut the leading edge of the paper straight when loading a paper roll by using **Trim Edge First** in the Control Panel menu.

Trim Edge First offers the following options.

### Automatic

If the leading edge of the paper is cut crooked and is not cut straight when loading roll paper, cut the leading edge straight and eject the fragment of paper to prevent printing on the platen and soiling the printer.



### • On (Preset Len)

The amount to cut from the leading edge of the paper varies depending on the media type, and is cut to a prescribed length. For more information on the prescribed length, see the leading edge precut length in the Paper Reference Guide. (See "Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.") → P.365

### On(Input Length)

The amount to cut from the leading edge of paper is specified in the control panel. The amount to cut from the leading edge can be specified in the range of lengths displayed in the control panel. The range of lengths differs between each media type.



The amount to cut from the leading edge of paper cannot be set shorter than the length displayed in the control panel.

### Manual

The amount to cut from the leading edge of the paper can be adjusted by pressing the  $\blacktriangle$  and  $\checkmark$  buttons. After making the adjustment, you can cut the paper by pressing the Paper Cutting button and selecting "Cut paper".

After the paper has been cut, press "Finish paper set".



If you do not press "Finish paper set" after cutting the paper, you will not be able to print again.

### • Off

The edge is not cut and scraps are not removed.

Follow these steps to change the **Trim Edge First** setting.



392

Δ

On the Tab Selection screen of the Control Panel, press 4 or b to select the Paper tab  $(\Box)$ .



Ready OK: Paper Menu Plain Paper ISO A2

• If the Tab Selection screen is not displayed, press the Menu button.

2 Press the **OK** button.

Note

The Paper Menu is displayed.

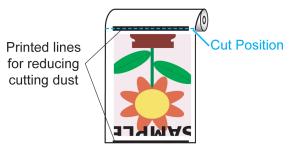
- 3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the **OK** button.
  - Press  $\blacktriangle$  or  $\checkmark$  to select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button.
  - Press ▲ or ▼ to select Trim Edge First, and then press the OK button.

Handling rolls

6 Press ▲ or ▼ to select the desired setting option, and then press the **OK** button. This setting takes effect the next time you load a roll.

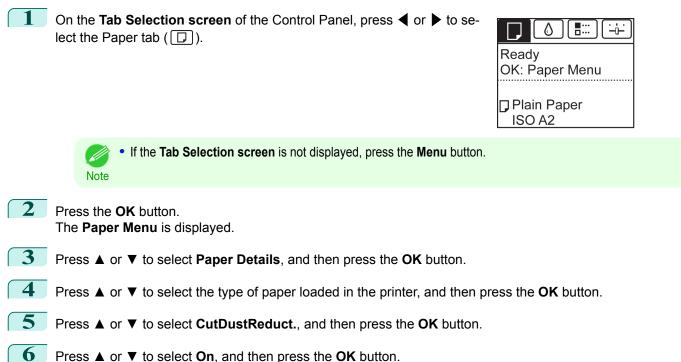
# **Reducing Dust from Cutting Rolls**

For media such as Backlit Film that are more likely to generate debris when cut, select **CutDustReduct**. > **On** in the **Paper Menu** of the Control Panel. This option reduces debris from cutting by printing black lines at the leading and trailing edges of documents. It may help prevent Printhead damage. You can specify for **CutDustReduct**. to be activated for particular types of paper.



- Do not set **CutDustReduct.** to **On** for paper that wrinkles easily, such as Plain Paper or lightweight paper. This may impair cutting and cause paper jams.
  - Borderless printing is not available when CutDustReduct. is set to On. To use borderless printing, select CutDustReduct. > Off.

Set CutDustReduct. to On as follows.



# Handling sheets

Loading Sheets in the Printer	394
Changing the Type of Paper Printing From a Desired Starting Point	
Removing Sheets	399
<ul> <li>→ Clearing a Jammed Sheet</li> <li>→ Clearing Jammed Paper (Paper Feed Slot)</li> </ul>	632 635

# Loading Sheets in the Printer

Follow these steps to load sheets in the printer.



• One sheet of paper can be loaded in the Paper Feed Slot at a time. Do not load more than one sheet at a time. This may cause paper jams.

- Before feeding paper or printing, make sure the sheet is flat against the Roll Cover. The sheet may jam if it curls before feeding or printing and the trailing edge drops toward the front.
- Paper that is wrinkled or warped may jam. If necessary, straighten the paper and reload it.
- Load the paper straight. Loading paper askew will cause an error. (See "Paper is crooked..") → P.665
- Store unused paper in the original package, away from high temperature, humidity, and direct sunlight. Note

Select sheets as the paper source.

- If a print job was received
   Sheets are automatically selected, and the media type and size specified by the print job are shown on the Display Screen. Go to the next step.
- If no print job was received
  - 1. Press the Load button.

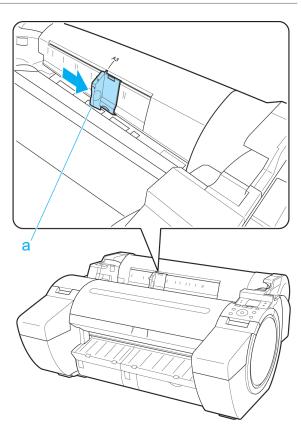


2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select "Load Cut Sheet", and then press the OK button.



If any paper has been advanced that will not be used, a message is shown requesting you to remove it.
 Press ▲ or ▼ to select Yes, and then press the OK button. Remove the paper and go to the next step.

2 Slide the Width Guide (a) to align it with the mark for the size of paper you will load.



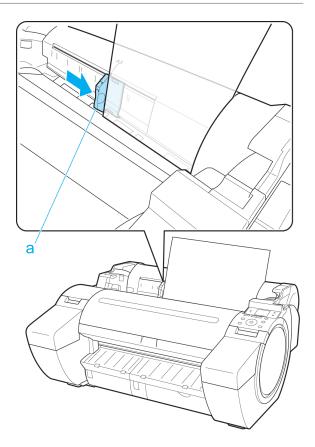
Handling sheets

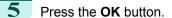
3 Load a single sheet printing-side up in the Paper Feed Slot, with the right edge aligned with the Paper Alignment Guide (a) to the right of the Roll Cover. Insert the paper until the leading edge makes contact and you hear a tone.

Pis Buijuind

4 Move the Width Guide (a) carefully to match the size of paper loaded.

Set the Width Guide against the edge of the paper to prevent the paper from becoming crooked or wrinkled.





• If a print job was received

The printer now starts printing the print job.

• If no print job was received

A menu for selection of the type of paper is automatically shown on the Display Screen. Press  $\blacktriangle$  or  $\triangledown$  to select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button. The printer now starts feeding the paper.



• Refer to Paper Reference Guide for details on type of paper to select. (See "Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.") → P365

# **Printing From a Desired Starting Point**

When printing inside boundaries or in other situations when you want to specify a particular position to start printing from, set **Width Detection** to **Off** in the printer menu for the type of paper used.

### Set Width Detection to Off

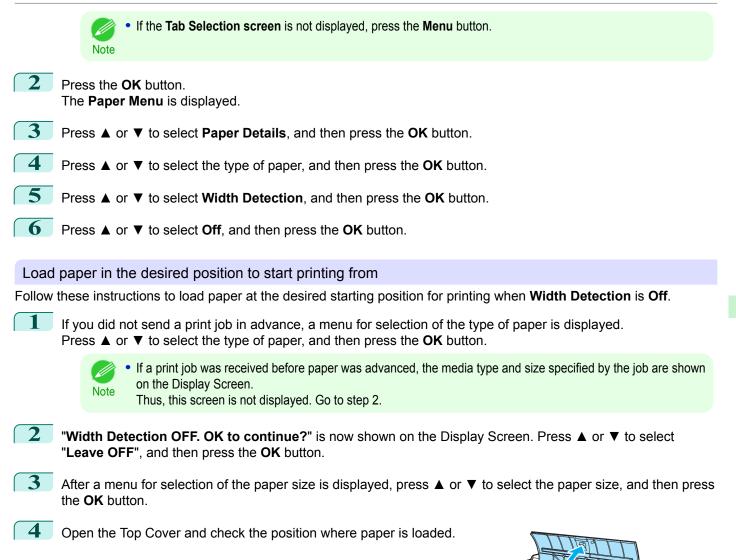
1 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab (□).



Ready OK: Paper Menu

⊚Plain Paper ISO A2 Roll

Handling sheets

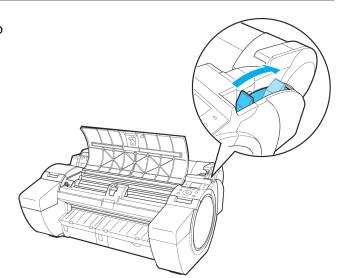


Handling and Use of Paper

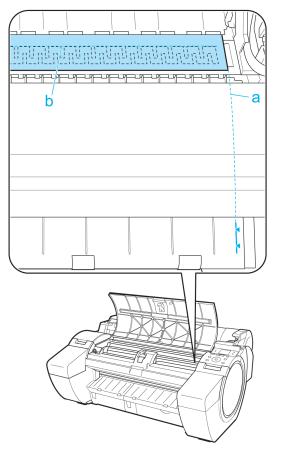
Handling sheets

To start printing from the current position, close the Top Cover.

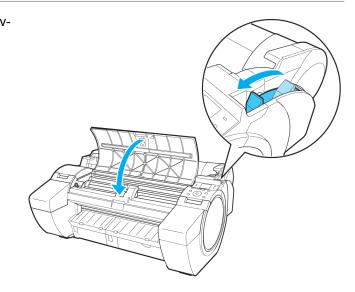
To reposition the paper, push the Release Lever back.



**5** Keeping the right edge of the paper aligned with the extended line of the Paper Alignment Line (a) to the right of the ejection guide and the leading edge aligned with the groove (b) at the far end of the Platen, load the paper at the position from which to start printing.



6	Pull the Release Lever forward and close the Top Cov
	er.



-<u>ò</u>-

# Handling and Use of Paper

# Handling sheets

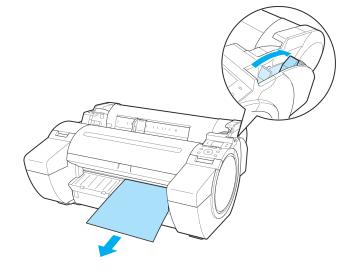
# **Removing Sheets**

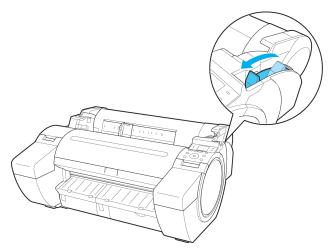
Remove sheets from the printer as follows.

1	On the <b>Tab Selection screen</b> of the Control Panel, press $\blacktriangleleft$ or $\blacktriangleright$ to select the Paper tab ( $\Box$ ).	
		Ready OK: Paper Menu
		☐ Plain Paper ISO A2
	• If the <b>Tab Selection screen</b> is not displayed, press the <b>Menu</b> button. Note	

- **2** Press the **OK** button. The Paper Menu is displayed.
- **3** Press  $\blacktriangle$  or  $\blacktriangledown$  to select **Eject Paper**, and then press the **OK** button.
- 4 Press  $\blacktriangle$  or  $\triangledown$  to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button. The paper is ejected from the front of the printer.

# **5** Holding the paper, push the Release Lever back and remove the sheet.





Handling and Use of Paper

# **Output Stacker**

# **Using the Output Stacker**

This section describes how to use the Output Stacker.



- The Stand that can be used with this printer is Printer Stand ST-27 and Printer Stand ST-26.
- The Stand is described in the illustration of Printer Stand ST-27. Note that the illustrations may look different from the appearance of your printer in some cases.

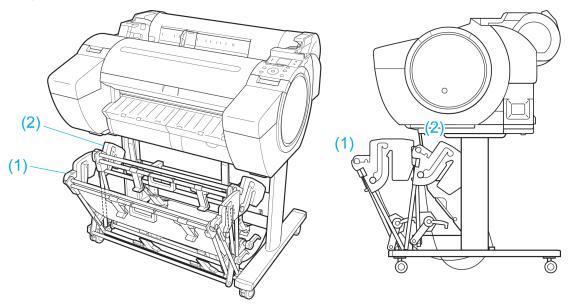
#### • When storing printed documents on the Output Stacker

Use position (1). For details on how to use the Extended position which is a useful function for retrieving printed matter, refer to the note regarding the Extended position. (See "Note regarding the Extended position.")  $\rightarrow$  P401

When the Output Stacker is not used, when loading paper, or when moving the printer

Use position (2).

When moving the printer, always lift the Support Rod to Extended position A before putting it in position (2), otherwise the Basket Cloth may touch the floor and be soiled or damaged. (See "Switching to Extended position A.") → P.402



- When storing printed documents on the Output Stacker, always use it in position (1). If you do not, printed documents may not be dropped into the Output Stacker, and the printed surface may become soiled.
  - The Output Stacker can hold one sheet. When printing multiple pages, remove each sheet after it is printed.
  - The Output Stacker can hold printed documents from paper up to 36 inches (915 mm) long.

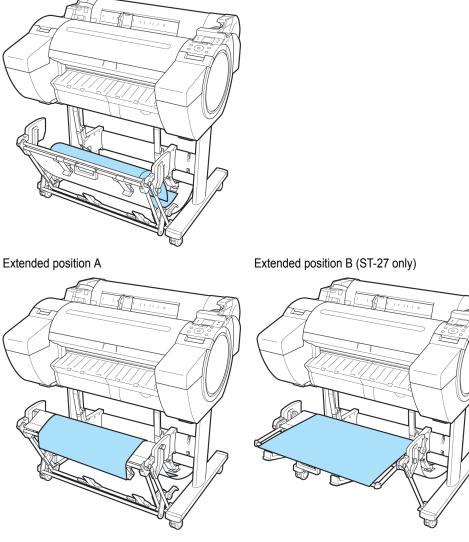
#### Note regarding the Extended position

The Output Stacker has a regular position and a position for easy removal of printed documents. Use the best position for the paper size and orientation that you are using.

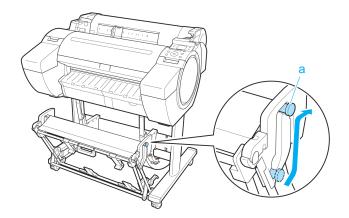
For information on the types and sizes of paper that the Extended position supports, refer to the following.

- Printer Stand ST-27: Output stacker operation guide (Included with the Printer Stand ST-27)
- Printer Stand ST-26: Paper Reference Guide (See "Types of Paper.") → P.362

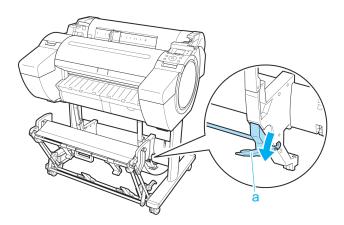
Regular position



- Switching to Extended position A Switch the stacker to Extended position A as follows.
- **1** Lift the Support Rod to the position shown (a) and switch the stacker to Extended position A.

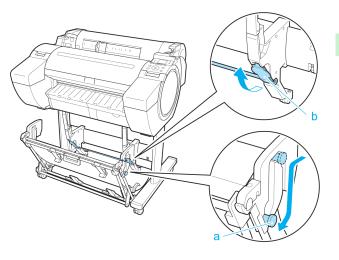


2 When using 24-inch or A1 (portrait) rolls, pull out the Adjustable Stopper (a). This completes the procedure for switching to Extended position A.

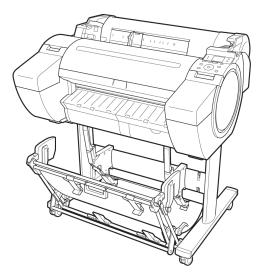


Once the printing has finished, use the following procedure to return to the regular position.

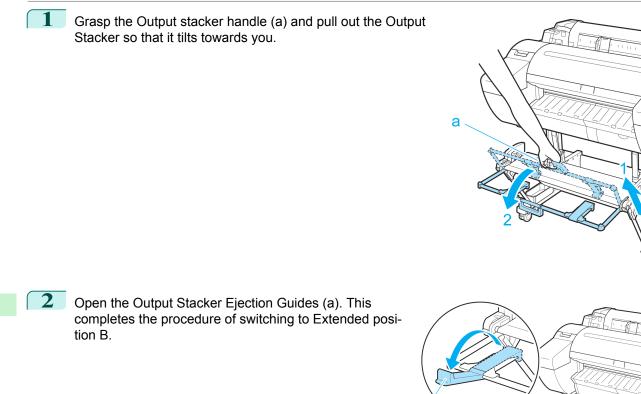
Lower the Support Rod to the position shown (a) to return to the regular position. If the Adjustable Stopper (b) is extended, retract it.



**2** Return to the regular position.

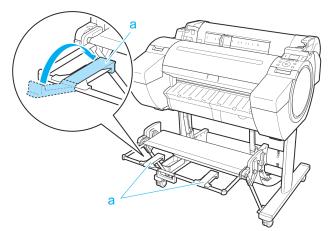


• Switching to Extended position B (ST-27 only) Switch the stacker to Extended position B as follows.



Once the printing has finished, use the following procedure to return to the regular position.

1 Push the Output Stacker Ejection Guides (a) closed until it clicks into place.



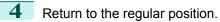
а

Handling and Use of Paper

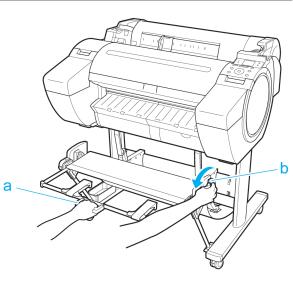
2

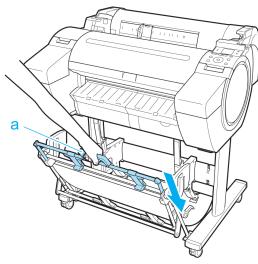
While continuing to hold the Output stacker handle (a), slowly lower the Output Stacker.

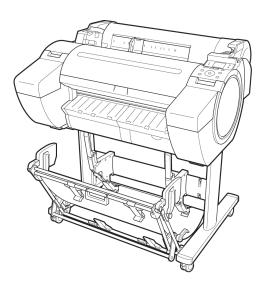
Hold onto the Output stacker handle (a) and pull the Output stacker release lever (b) towards you.











# Media Configuration Tool (Windows)

The Features of Media Configuration Tool Installation Procedures Starting Method	406
Media Configuration Tool Main Window	409
Editing Media Type Information for Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper Adding Media Types Changing Media Names Deleting Media Types You Have Added	
Switching Media Types Display Show/Hide Changing the Display Order of Media Types	
Checking the update	

# The Features of Media Configuration Tool

In imagePROGRAF, the best printer settings for each paper are collected together in media information files in order to give the highest quality printing results. Settings for Canon genuine paper and Canon feed confirmed paper are provided by Canon in these media information files.



Canon genuine paper and Canon feed confirmed paper are detailed in the Paper Reference Guide.

The Media Configuration Tool allows you to perform the following tasks.

- When supported paper has been newly added to the printer, you can add that media type to the printer control panel and printer driver by using the media information file provided by Canon.
- You can rearrange lists of the types of paper on the printer control panel and in printer driver dialog boxes and rename them, in addition to other functions.



• Normally, the Media Configuration Tool is installed and the media information is configured when you install the printer driver from the User Software CD-ROM. Use this software if you want to add new media information or edit existing media information.

 Administration of paper information using the Media Configuration Tool should be performed by the printer administrator.

#### Drivers Applicable with Media Configuration Tool

• imagePROGRAF Printer Driver

# Installation Procedures

The Media Configuration Tool installation screen appears when you start the installation of a new version of the Media Configuration Tool. The installation procedure started from this screen is described below.



406

• When you install the printer driver from the User Software CD-ROM, the Media Configuration Tool is also installed and the media information is also configured. The following procedure is therefore not normally needed. Perform the following procedure if you are installing the Media Configuration Tool without using the User Software CD-ROM, such as by downloading the latest version of the Media Configuration Tool from the Canon website.

• You must be logged in as Administrator when installing software in Windows.

×



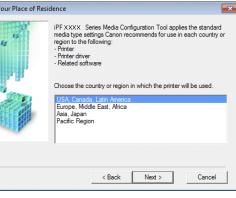
1

2

Start the Media Configuration Tool installer. Click the Next button.

where the printer is used.

elcome	
4	Welcome to the iPFXXXX Series Media Configuration Tool setup program. This program will install iPFXXXX Series Media Configuration Tool on your computer.
	Exit all Windows program before running this setup program.
and a second	Click [Cancel] to exit the setup program. Then exit all programs that are running.
	WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties.
	Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this program, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under law.
Language	Next > Cancel
lect Your Place of Re	sidence 🗾
	IPF XXXX Series Media Configuration Tool applies the standard media type settings Canon recommends for use in each country or region to the following: - Printer - Printer driver - Related software
	Choose the country or region in which the printer will be used.



The L	i
lf you	а

cense Agreement is displayed. accept the agreement, click Yes.

ense Agreement	2
Before installing the software programs, carefully read the license agreement below.	
	_
CANON SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT	
IMPORTANT-READ THIS AGREEMENT BEFORE INSTALLING THE SOFTWARE!	
This legal document is a license agreement between you and Canon Inc. ("Canon") governing your use of the software and the online or electric manual (collectively, the "SOFTWARE"). BY INSTALLING THE SOFTWARE, YOU ARE DEEMED TO HAVE AGREED TO BE BOUND BY THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT, PROMPTLY CLOSE THIS INSTALLATION PROGRAM AND DO NOT INSTALL THE SOFTWARE.	
In consideration of the right to use the SOFTWARE, you agree to abide by the terms and conditions of this Agreement.	-
If you accept the agreement, click [Yes]. If you click [No], the installation of iPF XXXX Series Media Configuration Tool will be canceled.	
< Back Yes No	1

Lie

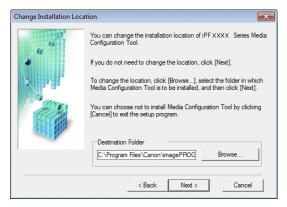


3

The Change Installation Location screen appears. Select the destination folder then click the Next button.

The next screen presents selections for the country or area

Select a country or territory then click the **Next** button.





#### The Installation Complete screen appears. Click the Finish button.

This completes the installation of Media Configuration Tool.

Installation Complete	Installation of iPF XXXX Series Media Configuration Tool completed successfully. To use the program, you must restart your system.      Restart the system now (recommended)     Restart the system later  Click [Complete] to exit the setup program.
	Complete

# **Starting Method**

Follow the procedure below to start Media Configuration Tool.

From the start menu go to All Programs > iPFxxxx Media Configuration Tool > iPFxxxx Media Configuration Tool.

Media Configuration Tool main window is displayed.

🚽 iPFxxx Serie	es Media Configuration Tool	×
	Add Genuine Paper: Add new media types in the printer control panel and printer driver or edit existing media types, needed.	as
	Link to Support Information: Allows you to find the latest printer information, check for software updates, and browse other information.	
	Link to User Manual: Displays the printer user's manual.	
	About	
	Exit	

• If you only start the Media Configuration Tool, the media information on the printer control panel and in the printer driver is not updated. If this screen is displayed, select Add Genuine Paper in the main window, and click the Update button Note in the Edit Media Types screen to update the media information.

Informa	tion	-
1	The media information has not been updated yet. Select Add Genuine Paper in the main screen and then click the Update butto Media Types screen to update.	on in the Edit
📃 In	the future, do not show me this dialog box	OK

## Media Configuration Tool Main Window

The explanation below is on the Media Configuration Tool main window.

🚽 iPFxxx Serie	s Media Configuration Tool	
	Add Genuine Paper: Add new media types in the printer control panel and printer driver or edit needed.	existing media types, as
	Link to Support Information: Alows you to find the latest printer information, check for software update information.	es, and browse other
	Link to User Manual: Displays the printer user's manual.	
		About
		Exit

• For the step to open the Media Configuration Tool main window, see "Starting Method." →P.408

#### • Add Genuine Paper button

Note

When this button is clicked, the **Edit Media Types** dialog box is displayed, which allows you to add media information files released by Canon to the printer control panel and printer driver. You can also change names, toggle between displaying and hiding, and delete added media types.

You can also change the display order of the paper types.

Refer to "Editing Media Type Information for Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper" →P.409) for details on Add Genuine Paper.

#### • Link to Support Information button

You can check information such as the latest information for the product and software version upgrade information.

#### • Link to User Manual Button

Displays the printer user's manual

## Editing Media Type Information for Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper

To add genuine paper and feed confirmed paper to the printer control panel and printer driver and edit the media type information, click the **Add Genuine Paper** button in the Media Configuration Tool main window. Confirm the printer, where media type information is to be updated, to be displayed in **Printer** in the **Select Printer** dialog box, and then click the **Next** button.

🚽 iPF	xxxx Series Select F	Printer	- 0 💌
Select	t the printer and dick	the Next button.	
	Printer:		
	Canon iPFxxxx		•
	Driver Details:	Canon iPExxxx	
	Connect to:	XXX, XXX, XXX, XXX	
		Specify a printer that is not installed	
			Next > Cancel

Communication with the printer begins.

• Do not attempt to print or turn the printer off while the program is communicating with the printer.

#### The Edit Media Types dialog box is displayed.

```
• In the following screens, you cannot change the printer where media type information is to be updated.
```

edia Type:				AN CO
Paper Category	Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel	*
Plain Paper		Plain Paper	Plain Paper	=
Coated Paper Photo Paper Proofing Paper Sign/CAD Paper Special All		Universal Bond Paper Canon Premium Plain Paper 80 Canon PremPlainPpr80(Brdriss Plain Paper (High Grade) All Plain Paper Conserve MBK Canon Matte Coated Paper 9 Canon Coated Paper Canon Hi Resolution Coated B Canon Charles With Paper 1.	Prem80forBrdrlss Plain Paper HG PlainP_ConsMBK Matte Costed 90 Coated Paper Hi ResCtd Bond Opaque Paper 120	- ID

• Paper that is displayed grayed out does not appear in the printer driver or printer panel.

#### Add Button

Note

To add genuine paper or feed confirmed paper to the printer control panel and printer driver, click this button. For details on the procedure for adding media types, see "Adding Media Types." (>P.411)



• To add media types, download the media information file (.amf file) in advance from the Canon website.

#### • Rename Button

To change the name on the printer control panel and the name in the printer driver for genuine paper and feed confirmed paper, select the paper to change and click this button.

For details on the procedure for changing paper display names, see "Changing Media Names." (>P.413)

#### • Delete Button

To delete added genuine paper and feed confirmed paper from the printer control panel and printer driver, select the paper to delete and click this button.

For details on the procedure for deleting added media types, see "Deleting Media Types You Have Added." →P.415

#### Show/Hide Button

To change whether or not genuine paper or feed confirmed paper is displayed in the printer control panel and printer driver, select the paper to change and click this button.

For details on the procedure for changing whether or not to display media types, see "Switching Media Types Display Show/Hide." →P.416

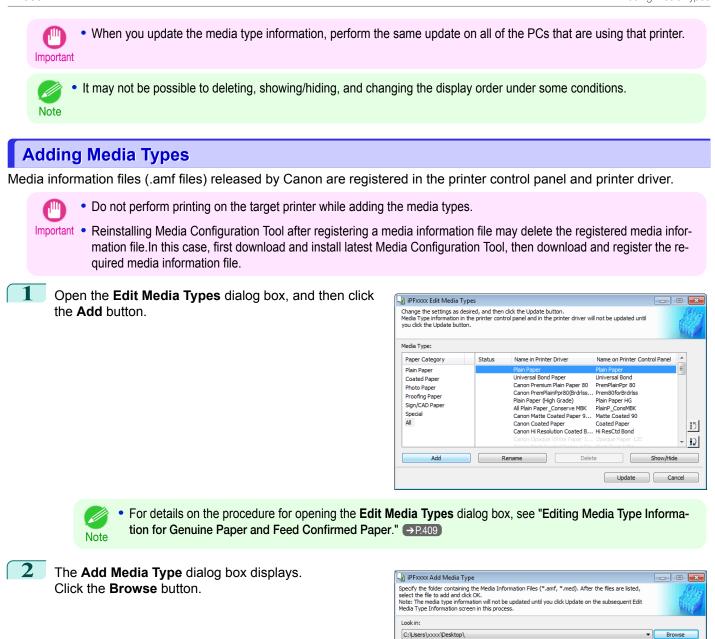
# Change Display Order button ( 🗾 or 🔃 )

To change the display order of a media type in the printer control panel and printer driver, select the paper to change and click this button.

For details on the procedure for changing the display order of media types, see "Changing the Display Order of Media Types." 
P.418

Handling and Use of Paper

Media Configuration Tool (Windows)



Media Information File File

Number of Files: 0 Number of Files Selected: 0 Date Updated

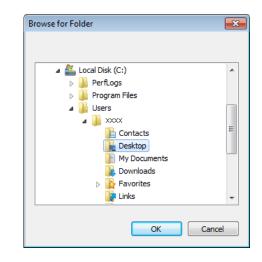
Type

OK

Cancel

3

Open the folder that contains the media information files (.amf files).



4	The names of the media information files contained in the selected folder are displayed in <b>Media Information File</b> in the <b>Add Media Type</b> dialog box. Select the
	check box for the paper you want to add and click the <b>OK</b> button.

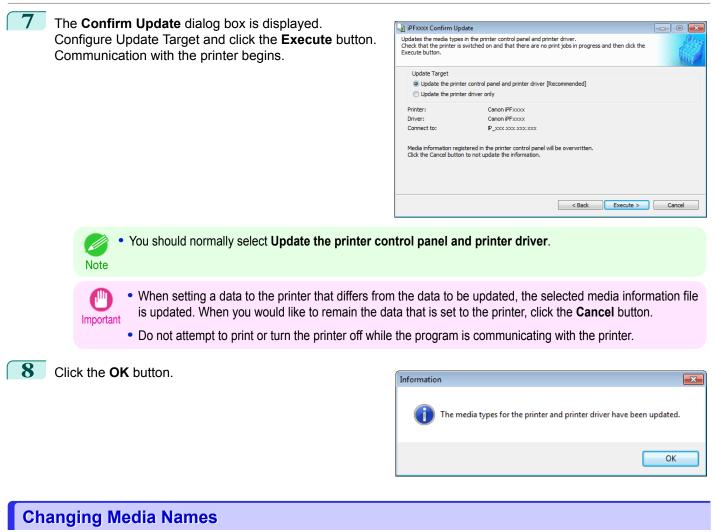
🖢 iPFx	xxx Add Media Type			
select th Note: Th	the folder containing the Media I le file to add and dick OK. le media type information will no ype Information screen in this pro	t be updated until you click U		e.
Look in:				
C:\Use	ers\xxxx\Desktop\		•	Browse
Media I	information File:			
	File	Date Updated	Туре	
✓	xxxxxxxxxx.amf	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx	xxxx Media Information File	2
Number	of Files: 1			
	r of Files Selected: 1			
			OK	Cancel

• If **Master Media Information File** is displayed as the **Type** of the **Media Information File**, the media type display order and media type display/non-display settings are initialized. Reconfigure these after added the master media information file.

- **5** Click **OK** when the confirmation message is displayed.
- **6** In the **Edit Media Types** dialog box, click the **Update** button.

ledia Type information ou click the Update bu		click the Update button. trol panel and in the printer driver wi	ll not be updated until	
ledia Type: Paper Category	Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel	*
Plain Paper	Add	xxxxxxxxxxxx	XXXXXXXX	Ξ
Coated Paper Photo Paper Proofing Paper Sign/CAD Paper Special All		Plain Paper Universal Bond Paper Canon Premium Plain Paper 80 Canon PremPlainPpr90(Brdfss. All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK Canon Matte Coated Paper 9 Canon Coated Paper Plain Paper (High Grade) Canon Hi Resolution Coated B	PlainP_ConsMBK Matte Coated 90 Coated Paper Plain Paper HG	Ŧ
Add		Rename Delet	te Show/Hid	e

Handling and Use of Paper



Open the Edit Media Types dialog box.

ledia Type:				
Paper Category	Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel	^
Plain Paper		Plain Paper	Plain Paper	Ξ
Coated Paper Photo Paper Proofing Paper Sign/CAD Paper Special Al		Universal Bond Paper Canon PremPlainPpr80(Brdhs Plain Paper (High Grade) All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK Canon Matte Coated Paper Canon Matte Coated Paper Canon H Resolution Coated B Canon Coated Paper	Plain Paper HG PlainP_ConsMBK Matte Coated 90 Coated Paper Hi ResCtd Bond Opaque Paper 120	+



For details on the procedure for opening the Edit Media Types dialog box, see "Editing Media Type Information for Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper." (>P.409)

iPF685

- • ×

Ξ

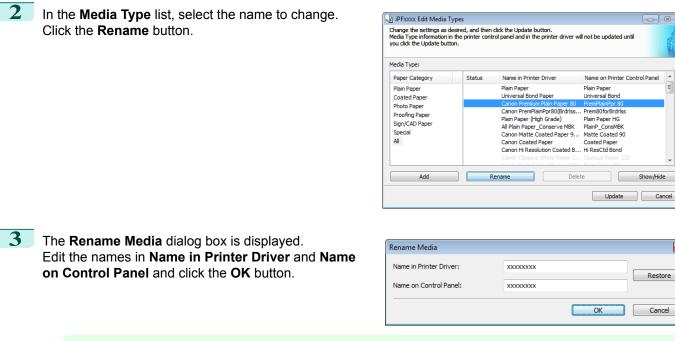
5

•2

Show/Hide

Restore

Cancel



- To restore the original names, click the **Restore** button.
- The characters that can be entered for Name in Printer Driver and Name on Control Panel are stated be-Note • low.

alphanumeric, space, "-", ".", "_", "(", ")", "+", "%", ",", "/"

 For Name in Printer Driver up to 32 one Byte characters can be entered, and for Name on Control Panel up to 16 one Byte characters can be entered.

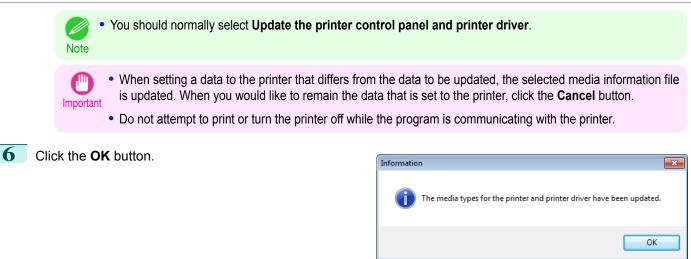
In the Edit Media Types dialog box, click the Update button.

ledia Type:				A.M.
Paper Category	Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel	*
Plain Paper Coated Paper Photo Paper Proofing Paper Sign/CAD Paper Special All		Plain Paper Universal Bond Paper	Plain Paper Universal Bond	E
		Canon PremPlainPpr80(Brdrss., All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK Canon Matte Coated Paper 9 Canon Coated Paper Plain Paper (High Grade) Canon Hi Resolution Coated B Canon Coated B Canon Coated Paper	PlainP_ConsMBK . Matte Coated 90 Coated Paper Plain Paper HG . Hi ResCtd Bond . Opaque Paper 120	Ŧ

5 The Confirm Update dialog box is displayed. Configure Update Target and click the **Execute** button. Communication with the printer begins.

	s in the printer control panel and printer driver. switched on and that there are no print jobs in progress and then click the	
Update Target Update the print     Update the print	er control panel and printer driver [Recommended] er driver only	
Printer:	Canon iPExxxx	
Driver:	Canon IPExxxx	
Connect to:	IP_xxx.xxxx.xxxx.xxx	
	istered in the printer control panel will be overwritten. n to not update the information.	

414



# **Deleting Media Types You Have Added**



Open the  ${\bf Edit} \ {\bf Media} \ {\bf Types}$  dialog box.

ledia Type:				
Paper Category	Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel	*
Plain Paper Coated Paper Photo Paper Proofing Paper Sign/CAD Paper Special All	Add	Vaconomic Plain Paper Universal Bond Paper Canon Premilum Plain Paper 80 Canon Premilum Plain Paper Conserve MBK Canon Matte Coated Paper 9 Canon Coated Paper Plain Paper (High Grade) Canon Hi Resolution Coated B	Prem80forBrdrlss PlainP_ConsMBK . Matte Coated 90 Coated Paper Plain Paper HG	-

 For details on the procedure for opening the Edit Media Types dialog box, see "Editing Media Type Information for Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper." 

 P.409

2 In the **Media Type** list, select the name of the media to delete.

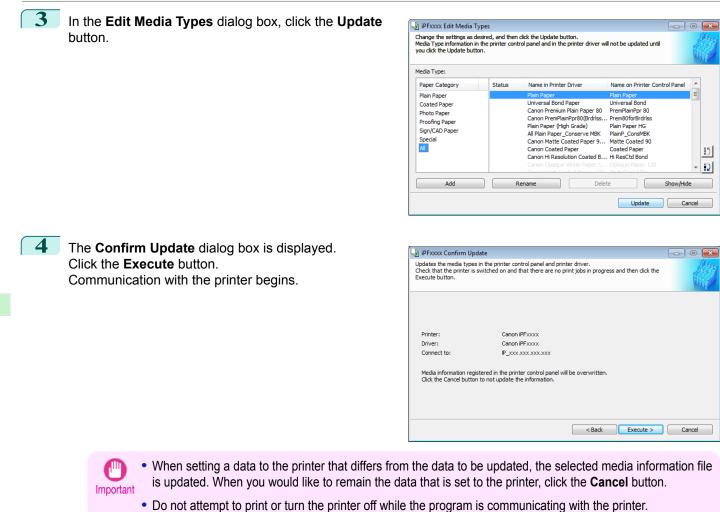
Click the **Delete** button.

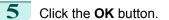
Note

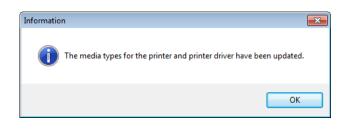
edia Type:				ALL O
Paper Category	Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel	*
Plain Paper Coated Paper Photo Paper Proofing Paper Sign/CAD Paper Special All	Add	VINCONSTRUCT Plain Paper Universal Bond Paper Canon Premilain'pr80(Brd/iss All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK Canon Matte Coated Paper Plain Paper (High Grade) Canon Coated Paper Plain Paper (High Grade) Canon Hi Resolution Coated B	PlainP_ConsMBK Matte Coated 90 Coated Paper Plain Paper HG	-



Only paper for which Status in the Media Type is Add can be deleted.







# Switching Media Types Display Show/Hide

Open the Edit Media Types dialog box.

ledia Type:				
Paper Category	Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel	*
Coated Paper Photo Paper Proofing Paper Sign/CAD Paper Special All		Universal Bond Paper Canon Premium Plain Paper 80 Canon PremiPlainPpr80(Brdfss Plain Paper (High Grade) All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK Canon Matte Coated Paper 9 Canon Coated Paper Canon Hitseolution Coated B Canon Coated Paper 1.	. Prem80forBrdrlss Plain Paper HG PlainP_ConsMBK Matte Coated 90 Coated Paper . Hi ResCtd Bond Opaque Paper 120	



• For details on the procedure for opening the Edit Media Types dialog box, see "Editing Media Type Information for Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper." (>P.409)

2 In the **Media Type** list, select the name of the media to switch off or on for display. Click the **Show/Hide** button.

The selected paper is alternately shown or hidden.

ou click the Update but				a.
ledia <u>T</u> ype: Paper Category	Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel	*
Plain Paper Coated Paper Photo Paper Proofing Paper Sign/CAD Paper Special All		Plain Paper Universal Bond Paper Canon Premium Plain Paper 80 Canon PremPlainPpr80(Brdriss Plain Paper (High Grade) All Plain Paper _Conserve MBK Canon Matte Coated Paper 9	. Prem80forBrdrlss Plain Paper HG PlainP_ConsMBK	m
		Canon Coated Paper Canon Hi Resolution Coated B Canon Opaque White Paper 1	. Opaque Paper 120	Ŧ
Add		Rename Dele	te Show/Hic	le

• You can select multiple paper.

Note • The names of media switched for non-display appear grayed out in the Media Type list.

You should normally select Update the printer control panel and printer driver.

• Each time you click the **Show/Hide** button, the display mode cycles from showing both the printer driver and printer panel, to hiding both the printer driver and printer panel, and then to showing only the printer panel.

3	In the Edit Media Types dialog box, click the Update
	button.

	n the printer cont	click the Update button. trol panel and in the printer driver wi	ll not be updated until	
Media <u>T</u> ype: Paper Category	Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel	
Plain Paper Coated Paper Photo Paper Proofing Paper Sign/CAD Paper Special		Plain Paper Universal Bond Paper Canon Premium Plain Paper 80 Canon PremPlainPpr80(Brdriss Plain Paper (High Grade) All Plain Paper _Conserve MBK Canon Matte Coated Paper 9	Prem80forBrdrlss Plain Paper HG PlainP_ConsMBK	E
All		Canon Coated Paper Canon Hi Resolution Coated B Canon Opaque White Paper 1	Opaque Paper 120	
Add		Sename Delet		le

4 The **Confirm Update** dialog box is displayed. Configure Update Target and click the **Execute** button. Communication with the printer begins.

	s in the printer control panel and printer driver. switched on and that there are no print jobs in progress and then dick the	d
Update Target		
Opdate the print	er control panel and printer driver [Recommended]	
Oupdate the print	er driver only	
Printer:	Canon iPFxxxx	
Driver:	Canon iPExxxx	
Connect to:	IP_xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx	
	stered in the printer control panel will be overwritten. n to not update the information.	
	< Back Execute >	Cancel

Note



 When setting a data to the printer that differs from the data to be updated, the selected media information file is updated. When you would like to remain the data that is set to the printer, click the Cancel button.

• Do not attempt to print or turn the printer off while the program is communicating with the printer.



Click the **OK** button.

Informatio	n	x
i	The media types for the printer and printer driver have been updated.	
	ОК	

# Changing the Display Order of Media Types

1	Open the Edit Media Types dialog bo	X.
-	open the <b>Luit media Types</b> dialog be	~.

ledia Type:				
Paper Category	Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel	*
Plain Paper Coated Paper Photo Paper Proofing Paper Sign/CAD Paper Special All		All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK Canon Matte Coated Paper 9	Prem80forBrdrlss Plain Paper HG PlainP_ConsMBK Matte Coated 90 Coated Paper Hi ResCtd Bond Opaque Paper 120	

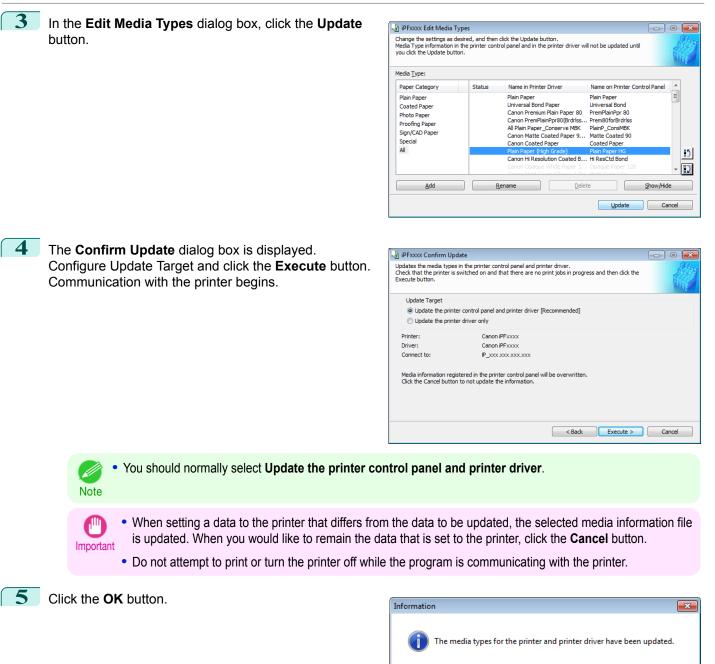
2 Select the paper in the **Media Type** list for which to change the display order, and then click the buttons to

move the item ( 🚺 or 🔃 ).

Note

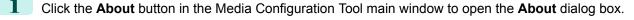
The selected item moves one line up or down for every button click.

ledia <u>T</u> ype:				
Paper Category	Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Printer Control Panel	*
Plain Paper Coated Paper Photo Paper Phoofing Paper Sign/CAD Paper Special All		Plain Paper Universal Bond Paper Canon Premium Plain Paper 80 Canon PremPlainPpr80(Brdrlss	Plain Paper Universal Bond PremPlainPpr 80 . Prem80forBrdrlss	Ξ
		Plain Paper (High Grade) All Plain Paper_Conserve MBK Canon Matte Coated Paper 9. Canon Coated Paper Canon Hi Resolution Coated B Canon Opaque White Paper 1.	PlainP_ConsMBK Matte Coated 90 Coated Paper . Hi ResCtd Bond . Opaque Paper 120	- -



# Checking the update

After updating the media information using the Media Configuration Tool, you can check whether the update has been applied to the printer in the control panel of the printer.



- 2 Check the value xx.xx (xxxx) of MIT DB Version.
- 3 Check the value xx.xx (xxxx) of MIT in Set./Adj. Menu > Printer Info > System Info in the printer control panel.

If the values in Steps 2 and 3 are the same, the update has been applied to the printer.

OK

# Media Configuration Tool (Mac OS)

The Features of Media Configuration Tool Procedures for Installing Starting Method	
Media Configuration Tool Main Window	
Editing Media Type Information for Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper Adding Media Types Changing Media Names Deleting Media Types You Have Added Switching Media Types Display Show/Hide Changing the Display Order of Media Types	
Checking the update	

# The Features of Media Configuration Tool

In imagePROGRAF, the best printer settings for each paper are collected together in media information files in order to give the highest quality printing results. Settings for Canon genuine paper and Canon feed confirmed paper are provided by Canon in these media information files.



• Canon genuine paper and Canon feed confirmed paper are detailed in the Paper Reference Guide.

The Media Configuration Tool allows you to perform the following tasks.

- When supported paper has been newly added to the printer, you can add that media type to the printer control panel and printer driver by using the media information file provided by Canon.
- You can rearrange lists of the types of paper on the printer control panel and in printer driver dialog boxes and rename them, in addition to other functions.



 Normally, the Media Configuration Tool is installed and the media information is configured when you install the printer driver from the User Software CD-ROM. Use this software if you want to add new media information or edit existing media information.

• Administration of paper information using the Media Configuration Tool should be performed by the printer administrator.

Drivers Applicable with Media Configuration Tool

• imagePROGRAF Printer Driver

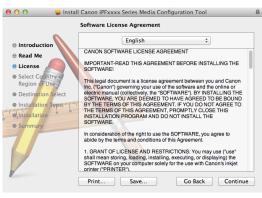
# **Procedures for Installing**

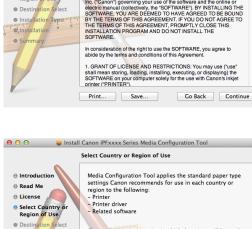
Start the installer in the new version of Media Configuration Tool, and follow procedures below to install the Media Configuration Tool.



 When you install the printer driver from the User Software CD-ROM, the Media Configuration Tool is also installed and the media information is also configured. The following procedure is therefore not normally needed. Perform the following procedure if you are installing the Media Configuration Tool without using the User Software CD-ROM, such as by downloading the latest version of the Media Configuration Tool from the Canon website. 1







Japan North or South America

OEU Asia Oceania

Inst O, Insta Choose the country or region in which the printer will be used.

Go Back Continue



Double-click Canon iPFxxxx Series Media Configuration

Tool.pkg to start the Media Configuration Tool installer.

3 The next screen presents selections for the country or area where the printer is used. Select a country or territory then click the **Continue** button.



Click the **Install** button.

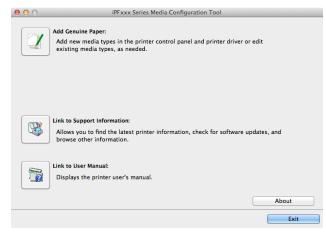


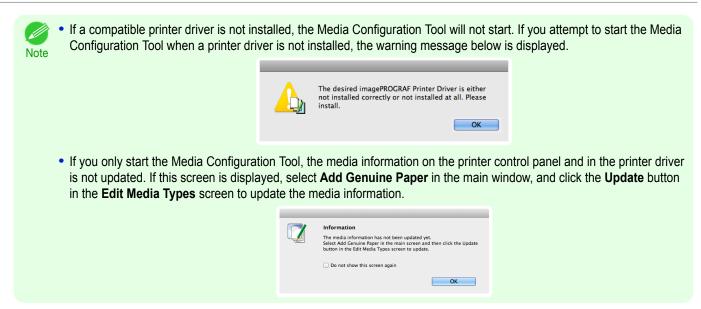
421

5	Enter an administrator name/password and click the In- stall Software button.	Installer is trying to install new software. Type your password to allow this.       Name:      Password:      Cancel
6	Click the <b>Close</b> button. The installation of Media Configuration Tool is complete.	<ul> <li>Install Caroni IPExxex Series Media Configuration Tool</li> <li>Installation was completed successfully.</li> <li>Installation was completed successfully.</li> <li>Installation Type</li> <li>Installation Type</li> <li>Installation was installed.</li> <li>Installatinsthetawas installed.</li> <li>Installation was installed.&lt;</li></ul>
	<ul> <li>When the installation is completed properly, the Me er.</li> <li>Applications &gt; Canon Utilities &gt; iPFxxxx Media</li> <li>The iPFxxxx in the folder above will be the printer</li> </ul>	-

#### Starting Method

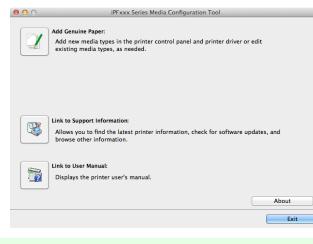
Follow the procedure below to start the Media Configuration Tool. From the **Applications** menu > **Canon Utilities** >**iPFxxxx Media Configuration Tool** > **MCTxxxx.app**. Media Configuration Tool main window is displayed.





# Media Configuration Tool Main Window

The explanation below is on the Media Configuration Tool main window.



• For the step to open the Media Configuration Tool main window, see "Starting Method." →P.422

#### Add Genuine Paper button

Note

When this button is clicked, the **Edit Media Types** dialog box is displayed, which allows you to add media information files released by Canon to the printer control panel and printer driver. You can also change names, toggle between displaying and hiding, and delete added media types.

You can also change the display order of the paper types.

Refer to "Editing Media Type Information for Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper" →P.424) for details on Add Genuine Paper.

#### • Link to Support Information button

You can check information such as the latest information for the product and software version upgrade information.

#### • Link to User Manual Button

Displays the printer user's manual

To add genuine paper and feed confirmed paper to the printer control panel and printer driver and edit the media type information, click the Add Genuine Paper button in the Media Configuration Tool main window. Confirm the printer, where media type information is to be updated, to be displayed in **Printer** in the **Select Printer** dialog box, and then click the Next button.

0	iPFXXXX Select Printer	
he printer and click the N	ext button.	
Printer:		
Canon iPFxxxx	\$	
Driver Details:	Canon iPFxxxx	
Connect to:	IP_xxx.xxx.xxx	
		Cancel Next >

Communication with the printer begins.

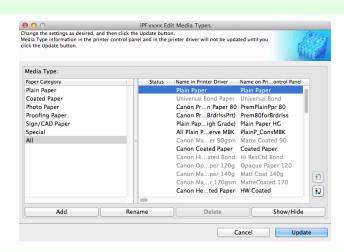


Do not attempt to print or turn the printer off while the program is communicating with the printer.

The Edit Media Types dialog box is displayed.



In the following screens, you cannot change the printer where media type information is to be updated.



 Paper that is displayed grayed out does not appear in the printer driver or printer panel. Note

#### Add Button

To add genuine paper or feed confirmed paper to the printer control panel and printer driver, click this button. For details on the procedure for adding media types, see "Adding Media Types." 
- P.425



• To add media types, download the media information file (.amf file) in advance from the Canon website.

#### • Rename Button

To change the name on the printer control panel and the name in the printer driver for genuine paper and feed confirmed paper, select the paper to change and click this button.

For details on the procedure for changing paper display names, see "Changing Media Names." (>P.428)

#### • Delete Button

To delete added genuine paper and feed confirmed paper from the printer control panel and printer driver, select the paper to delete and click this button.

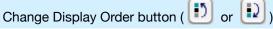
For details on the procedure for deleting added media types, see "Deleting Media Types You Have Added." →P.430

#### • Show/Hide Button

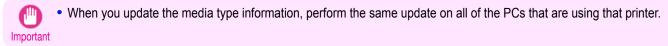
To change whether or not genuine paper or feed confirmed paper is displayed in the printer control panel and printer driver, select the paper to change and click this button.

For details on the procedure for changing whether or not to display media types, see "Switching Media Types Display Show/Hide." → P.431





To change the display order of a media type in the printer control panel and printer driver, select the paper to change and click this button.



It may not be possible to deleting, showing/hiding, and changing the display order under some conditions.

# Adding Media Types

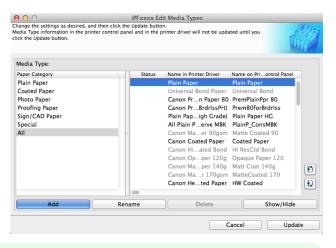
Media information files (.amf files) released by Canon are registered in the printer control panel and printer driver.



Do not perform printing on the target printer while adding the media types.

Important • Reinstalling Media Configuration Tool after registering a media information file may delete the registered media information file. In this case, first download and install latest Media Configuration Tool, then download and register the required media information file.

#### 1 Open the Edit Media Types dialog box, and then click the Add button.



Handling and Use of Paper

For details on the procedure for opening the Edit Media Types dialog box, see "Editing Media Type Informa-• tion for Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper." →P.424 Note

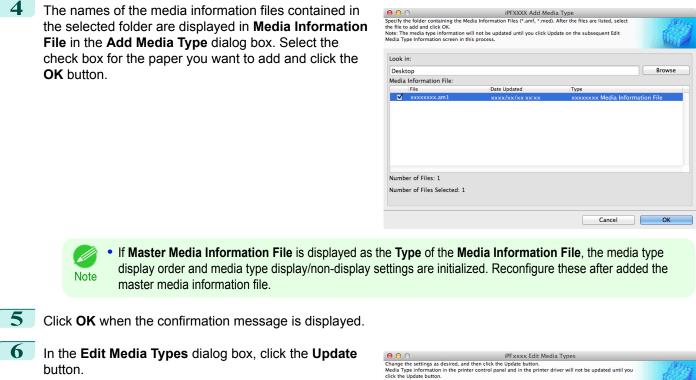
2 The Add Media Type dialog box displays. Click the Browse button.

000	iPFXXXX Add M	ledia Type	
the file to add and click OK.	ne Media Information Files (*.amf, *.m ion will not be updated until you click in this process.		
Look in:			
Desktop			Browse
Media Information File:			
File	Date Updated	Type	
Number of Files: 0 Number of Files Selected	: 0		
		Cancel	ОК

Open the folder that contains the media information files (.amf files).

000				iPFXXXX Ad	dd Media Type		
Specify the the file to a Note: The r		= 0		🖩 🔻 🛅 D	esktop	÷ Q	
Look in: Deskto Media Ir			A A A A	1 xxxx	4	Desktop     Documents     Downloads     Movies     Movies     Pictures     Public	> > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > >
Number		<b></b>					Open
Number	of Files Selec	ted: 0					
						Cancel	ОК

Media Configuration Tool (Mac OS)



- Media Type: Paper Category Name in Printer Driver Name on Pri Plain Paper Coated Paper Plain Paper Plain Paper Bond Paper Photo Paper Canon Pr...n Paper 80 PremPlainPpr 80 Proofing Paper Canon Pr...BrdrlssPrt) Prem80forBrdrlss Sign/CAD Paper Plain Pap...igh Grade) Plain Paper HG Special All All Plain P...erve MBK PlainP ConsMBK on Ma…er 90 Canon Coated Paper Coated Paper Canon Hi...ated Bond Hi ResCtd Bond Canon Op...per 120g Opaque Paper 120 Ð Canon Ma...per 140g Matt Coat 140g Canon Ma...r 170gsm MatteCoated 170 •2 Add Rename Delete Show/Hide Cancel IIn
- Media Configuration Tool (Mac OS)

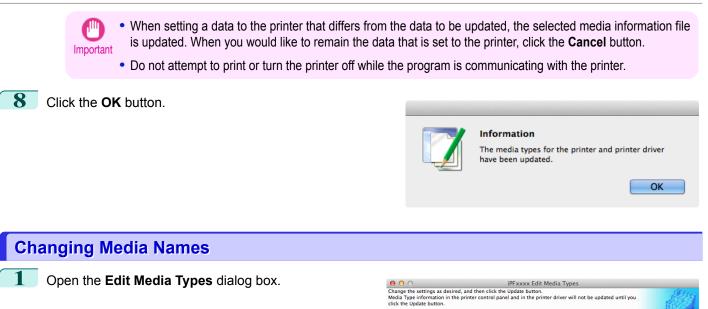
Handling and Use of Paper

7 The Confirm Update dialog box is displayed. Configure Update Target and click the **Execute** button. Communication with the printer begins.



You should normally select Update the printer control panel and printer driver.

Note



For details on the procedure for opening the Edit Media Types dialog box, see "Editing Media Type Information for Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper." (>P.424) Note

Media Type: Paper Categor Plain Paper

Coated Paper

Photo Paper Proofing Paper

Special All

Sign/CAD Paper

Add

In the Media Type list, select the name to change. Click the Rename button.

Media Type:				
Paper Category	Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Priontrol Panel	
Plain Paper Coated Paper		Plain Paper	Plain Paper	
Photo Paper		Universal Bond Paper Universal Bond Canon Prn Paper 80 PremPlainPpr 80		- 11
Proofing Paper		Canon PrBrdrlssPrt)		
Sign/CAD Paper Special			de) Plain Paper HG	
		All Plain Perve MBK		
All	0	Canon Mper 90gsm		
		Canon Coated Paper		
		Canon Hiated Bond	Hi ResCtd Bond	
		Canon Opper 120g	Opaque Paper 120	
		Canon Maper 140g	Matt Coat 140g	
		Canon Mer 170gsm	MatteCoated 170	
		Canon Heted Paper	HW Coated	
Add	Rename	Delete	Show/Hid	e

Statu

Rename

Name in Printer Driver Plain Paper

Universal Bond Paper

Canon Hi...ated Bo

Canon Pr., n Paper 80 PremPlainPor 80

Plain Pap...igh Grade) Plain Paper HG

All Plain P...erve MBK PlainP_ConsMBK Canon Ma...er 90gsm Matte Coated 90 Canon Coated Paper Coated Paper

Canon Op...per 120g Opaque Paper 120 Canon Ma...per 140g Matt Coat 140g Canon Ma...r 170gsm MatteCoated 17

Cancel

Canon He...ted Paper HW Coated

Delete

Canon Pr...BrdrlssPrt) Prem80forBrdrlss

Name on Pri...ontrol Pa Plain Paper

Universal Bond

Hi ResCtd Bond

MatteCoated 170

Show/Hide

15

The Rename Media dialog box is displayed. Edit the names in Name in Printer Driver and Name on Control Panel and click the OK button.

	Rename Media	
Name in Printer Driver:	xxxxxx	Restore
Name on Control Panel:	xxxxxx	Restore
	Cancel OK	



3

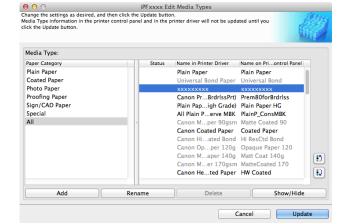
4

- To restore the original names, click the Restore button.
- Note The characters that can be entered for **Name in Printer Driver** and **Name on Control Panel** are stated below.

```
alphanumeric, space, "-", ".", "_", "(", ")", "+", "%", ",", "/"
```

• For **Name in Printer Driver** up to 32 one Byte characters can be entered, and for **Name on Control Panel** up to 16 one Byte characters can be entered.

In the **Edit Media Types** dialog box, click the **Update** button.



5 The **Confirm Update** dialog box is displayed. Configure Update Target and click the **Execute** button. Communication with the printer begins.

dates the media types in the eck that the printer is switch ecute button.	iPFXXXX Confirm Update orinter control panel and printer driver. d on and that there are no print jobs in progress and 1	hen click the	
Update Target			
• Update the printer Update the printer	control panel and printer driver [Recommend driver only	ed]	
Printer:	Canon iPFxxxx		
Driver:	Canon iPFxxxx		
Driver Details:	Canon iPFxxxx		
Connect to:	IP_xxx.xxx.xxx		
	tered in the printer control panel will be overw to not update the information.	ritten.	
	< Back	Cancel	Execute >

• You should normally select Update the printer control panel and printer driver.

- When setting a data to the printer that differs from the data to be updated, the selected media information file is updated. When you would like to remain the data that is set to the printer, click the **Cancel** button.
  - Do not attempt to print or turn the printer off while the program is communicating with the printer.

**6** Click the **OK** button.

Note



#### Information

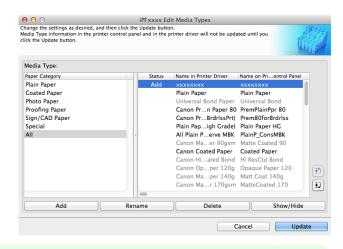
The media types for the printer and printer driver have been updated.

429

OK

# **Deleting Media Types You Have Added**





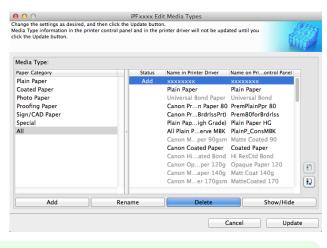
 For details on the procedure for opening the Edit Media Types dialog box, see "Editing Media Type Information for Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper." →P.424 Note

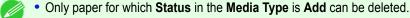
2 In the Media Type list, select the name of the media to delete.

Click the Delete button.

Note

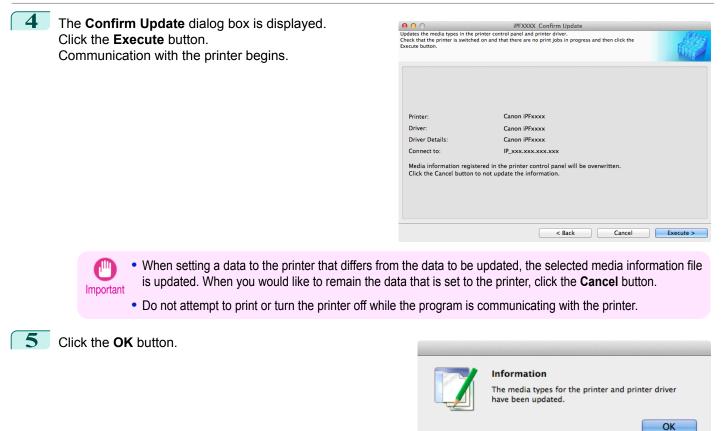
3





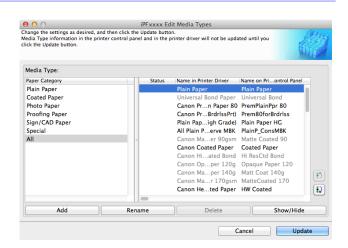
In the Edit Media Types dialog box, click the Update button.

			MALLS.
Media Type:			
Paper Category	Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Priontrol Panel
Plain Paper		Plain Paper	Plain Paper
Coated Paper		Universal Bond Paper	Universal Bond
Photo Paper		Canon Prn Paper 80	PremPlainPpr 80
Proofing Paper		Canon PrBrdrlssPrt)	Prem80forBrdrlss
Sign/CAD Paper		Plain Papigh Grade)	Plain Paper HG
Special		All Plain Perve MBK	PlainP_ConsMBK
All		Canon Maer 90gsm	Matte Coated 90
		Canon Coated Paper	Coated Paper
		Canon Hiated Bond	Hi ResCtd Bond
		Canon Opper 120g	Opaque Paper 120
		Canon Maper 140g	Matt Coat 140g
		Canon Mar 170gsm	MatteCoated 170
		Canon Heted Paper	HW Coated



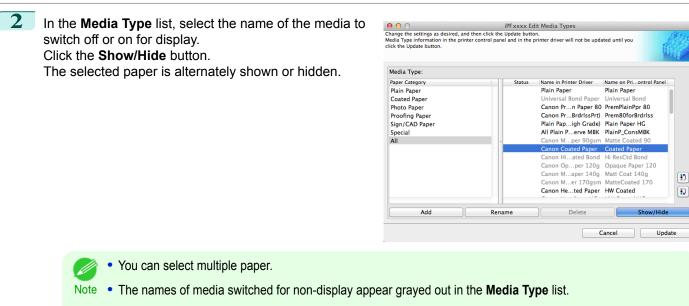
# Switching Media Types Display Show/Hide

1	
Open the Edit Media Types dialog box.	





For details on the procedure for opening the **Edit Media Types** dialog box, see "Editing Media Type Information for Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper." P.424



- Each time you click the **Show/Hide** button, the display mode cycles from showing both the printer driver and printer panel, to hiding both the printer driver and printer panel, and then to showing only the printer panel.
- In the **Edit Media Types** dialog box, click the **Update** button.

ck the Update button.			
Media Type: Paper Category	Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Priontrol Panel
Plain Paper Coated Paper Photo Paper Proofing Paper Sign/CAD Paper		Plain Paper Universal Bond Paper Canon Prn Paper 80 Canon PrBrdrlssPrt) Plain Papigh Grade)	Plain Paper Universal Bond PremPlainPpr 80 Prem80forBrdrlss Plain Paper HG
Special All	•	All Plain Perve MBK Canon Mper 90gsm Canon Coated Paper	Matte Coated 90
		Canon Hiated Bond Canon Opper 120g Canon Maper 140g Canon Mer 170gsm Canon Heted Paper	Hi ResCtd Bond Opaque Paper 120 Matt Coat 140g MatteCoated 170
Add	Rename	Delete	Show/Hide

4 The **Confirm Update** dialog box is displayed. Configure Update Target and click the **Execute** button. Communication with the printer begins.

	printer control panel and printer driver. ed on and that there are no print jobs in progress and then click the	
Update Target		
• Update the printer Update the printer	r control panel and printer driver [Recommended] r driver only	
Printer:	Canon iPFxxxx	
Driver:	Canon iPFxxxx	
Driver Details:	Canon iPFxxxx	
Connect to:	IP_xxx.xxx.xxx	
	tered in the printer control panel will be overwritten. to not update the information.	



• You should normally select Update the printer control panel and printer driver.

432

- When setting a data to the printer that differs from the data to be updated, the selected media information file is updated. When you would like to remain the data that is set to the printer, click the **Cancel** button.
  - Do not attempt to print or turn the printer off while the program is communicating with the printer.



Click the **OK** button.



#### Information

The media types for the printer and printer driver have been updated.



# **Changing the Display Order of Media Types**

Open the Edit Media Types dialog box.

Media Type:			
Paper Category	Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Priontrol Panel
Plain Paper		Plain Paper	Plain Paper
Coated Paper		Universal Bond Paper	
Photo Paper		Canon Prn Paper 80	
Proofing Paper		Canon PrBrdrlssPrt)	
Sign/CAD Paper		Plain Papigh Grade)	
Special	_ 11	All Plain Perve MBK	
All	•	Canon Maer 90gsm	
		Canon Coated Paper	
		Canon Hiated Bond	in nessea sona
		Canon Opper 120g	
		Canon Maper 140g	
		Canon Mar 170gsm	MatteCoated 170
		Canon Heted Paper	LIM Contod

• For details on the procedure for opening the Edit Media Types dialog box, see "Editing Media Type Information for Genuine Paper and Feed Confirmed Paper." (SP.424)

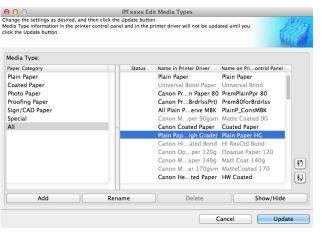
2 Select the paper in the **Media Type** list for which to change the display order, and then click the buttons to

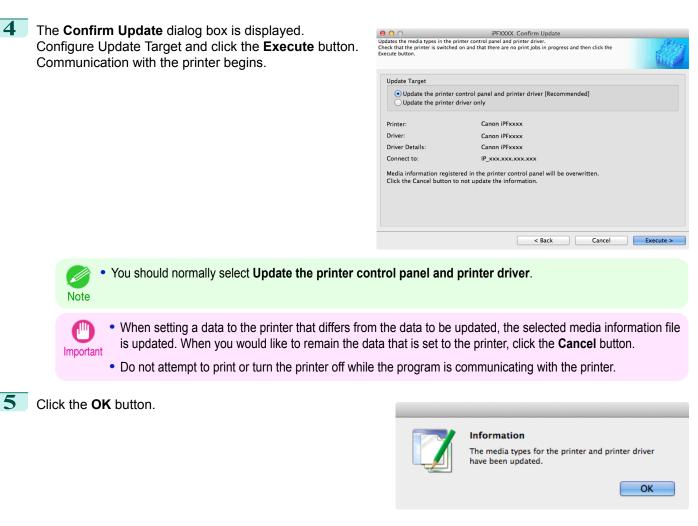
move the item ( ) or ). The selected item moves one line up or dow

The selected item moves one line up or down for every button click.

Media Type:				
Paper Category	Status	Name in Printer Driver	Name on Priontrol Panel	
Plain Paper		Plain Paper	Plain Paper	
Coated Paper		Universal Bond Paper	Universal Bond	
Photo Paper		Canon Prn Paper 80	PremPlainPpr 80	
Proofing Paper		Canon PrBrdrlssPrt)	Prem80forBrdrlss	•
Sign/CAD Paper		Plain Papigh Grade)	Plain Paper HG	
Special		All Plain Perve MBK	PlainP_ConsMBK	
All	•	Canon Mper 90gsm	Matte Coated 90	
		Canon Coated Paper	Coated Paper	
		Canon Hiated Bond	Hi ResCtd Bond	
		Canon Opper 120g	Opaque Paper 120	
		Canon Maper 140g	Matt Coat 140g	ſ
		Canon Mer 170gsm	MatteCoated 170	
		Canon Heted Paper	HW Coated	
Add	Rename	Delete	Show/Hide	

#### 3 In the Edit Media Types dialog box, click the Update button.





#### Checking the update

After updating the media information using the Media Configuration Tool, you can check whether the update has been applied to the printer in the control panel of the printer.



5

Click the **About** button in the Media Configuration Tool main window to open the **About** dialog box.

Check the value xx.xx (xxxx) of MIT DB Version.

Check the value xx.xx (xxxx) of MIT in Set./Adj. Menu > Printer Info > System Info in the printer control panel.

If the values in Steps 2 and 3 are the same, the update has been applied to the printer.

# Memo

# iPF685

User's Guide

Basic Printing Workflow	15
Enhanced Printing Options	31
Windows Software	157
Mac OS Software	277
Handling and Use of Paper	361

# **Control Panel**

Operations and Display Screen 43	38
Printer Menu 44	18

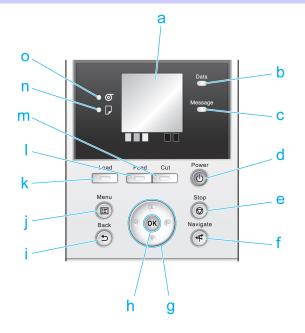
Printer Parts	477
Network Setting	491
Print Job Management	511
Adjustments for Better Print Quality	573
Maintenance and Consumables	589
Troubleshooting	627
Error Message	657
Specifications	681
Appendix	685

Control Panel

imagePROGRAF

# **Operations and Display Screen**

# **Control Panel**



#### a Display Screen

Shows printer menus, as well as the printer status and messages.

#### **b** Data Lamp (green)

#### Flashing

During printing, the Data lamp flashes when the printer is receiving or processing print jobs. Otherwise, this lamp flashes when the print job is paused or the printer is updating the firmware.

• Off

There are no active print jobs when the Data lamp is off.

#### **c** Message Lamp (orange)

#### • On

A warning message is displayed.

#### Flashing

An error message is displayed.

#### • Off

The printer is off or is operating normally.

#### **d Power** button (green)

Turns the printer on and off. (See "Turning the Printer On and Off.") →P.17 The **Power** button is lit when the printer is on or in Sleep mode.

# Control Panel

## e Stop button

Cancels print jobs in progress and ends the ink drying period.

#### f Navigate button

Enables you to check instructions for loading and removing paper or replacing ink tanks or printheads, as well as other operations. (See "How to View Instructions with Navigate.")  $\rightarrow$  P.445

#### g Arrow buttons

#### Instant Instant

Press this button on the **Tab Selection screen** to move to another tab. In menu items requiring numerical input, press this button to move to another digit.

#### ▲ button

Press this button in the menu to move to another item.

In menu items requiring numerical input, press this button to increment the number.

#### button

Press this button on the **Tab Selection screen** to move to another tab. In menu items requiring numerical input, press this button to move to another digit.

#### • ▼ button

Press this button in the menu to move to another item.

In menu items requiring numerical input, press this button to decrement the number.

#### h OK button

Press this button on the **Tab Selection screen** to display the menu of the tab shown. Pressing this button in menu items of each tab for which 💽 is displayed at left will move to the lower level of the menu item, enabling you to execute menu commands or set menu values.

Also press this button if the Display Screen indicates to press the **OK** button.

#### i Back button

Displays the screen before the current screen.

#### j Menu button

Displays the Tab Selection screen. (See "Menu Settings.") → P.459

#### k Load button

Press this button when loading or replacing paper.

(See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P.375

(See "Loading Sheets in the Printer.") →P.394

#### I Feed button

Pressing this button when rolls are loaded enables you to reposition the paper. (See "Feeding Roll Paper Manually.") **PR384** 

#### m Cut button

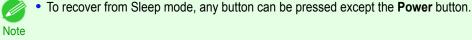
Pressing this button when rolls are loaded cuts the paper, if you have specified **Automatic** or **Eject** in **Cutting Mode** in the Control Panel menu. (See "Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls.")  $\rightarrow$  P.388

#### n Cut Sheet lamp (green)

Lit when sheets are selected as the paper source.

#### • Roll Media lamp (green)

Lit when rolls are selected as the paper source.



# **Control Panel Display**

After the printer starts up, the **Tab Selection screen** is displayed.

Each of the four tabs presents status, menus, and error information related to the particular tab.

## Types of tabs

The **Tab Selection screen** presents four tabs. Each tab is represented by an icon in the top row. Press the ◀ or ▶ button to access other tabs.

Paper tab	<ul> <li>A tab indicating status and showing menus related to paper. Pressing the OK button when this tab is highlighted will display the Paper Menu.</li> <li>Top line displayed The paper icon is highlighted.</li> <li>Middle line displayed Indicates the printer status and shows menu names.</li> <li>Bottom line displayed The first and second lines display the paper type and size.</li> </ul>
Ink tab Ready OK: Ink Menu	<ul> <li>A tab indicating status and showing menus related to ink. Pressing the OK button when this tab is highlighted will display the Ink Menu.</li> <li>Top line displayed The ink icon is highlighted.</li> <li>Middle line displayed Indicates the printer status and shows menu names.</li> <li>Bottom line displayed Here, the remaining ink level is indicated. (See "Checking Ink Tank Levels.") →P596</li> </ul>
Job tab	<ul> <li>A tab indicating status and showing menus related to print jobs. Pressing the OK button when this tab is highlighted will display the Job Menu menu.</li> <li>Top line displayed The job icon is highlighted.</li> <li>Middle line displayed Indicates the printer status and shows menu names.</li> </ul>
Settings/Adj. tab Printing OK:Setting/Adj. Menu Maint.C Remain.:100% Tot.Print Area(m2): 678.0	<ul> <li>A tab indicating status and showing menus related to settings and adjustment. Pressing the OK button when this tab is highlighted will display the Set./Adj. Menu.</li> <li>Top line displayed The settings/adjustment icon is highlighted.</li> <li>Middle line displayed Indicates the printer status and shows menu names.</li> <li>Bottom line displayed The remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity is shown on the first line and Tot.Print Area on the second. The display unit for Tot.Print Area can be specified in the Length Unit menu. (See "Menu Settings.") → P459</li> </ul>

## Printer status and modes

## The printer has the following status.

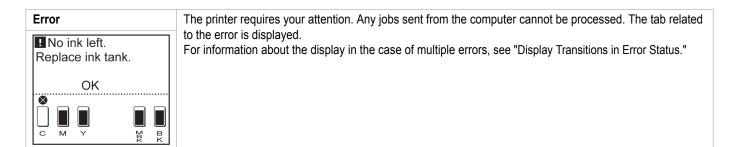
Standby	The printer is ready to receive jobs sent from the computer. Jobs sent from the computer are printed im-
Ready	mediately.
OK: Paper Menu	
⊚Plain Paper ISO A2 Roll	

Printing Paused	Printing is paused on the printer. Any jobs sent from the computer are held without being printed.
Offline	
OK: Job Menu	

Printing	Printing is in progress on the printer. Jobs sent from the computer are printed after the current job. The
	time left until printing is finished is indicated in the upper-right corner of the screen. (Values exceeding 10 hours are not shown.)
Printing 9:59:59 OK: Job Menu	
X X X X X X X X X X Plain Paper ISO A2	

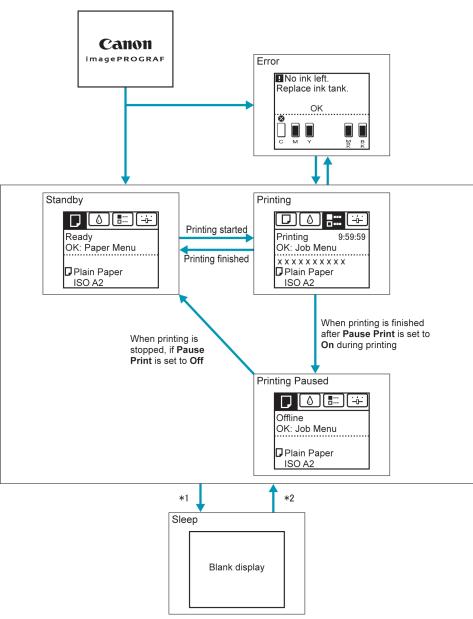
Sleep	The printer is in power-saving mode. The printer automatically enters Sleep mode to conserve power
Blank display	when idle for a specific period (by default, five minutes), that is, if no print jobs are received or buttons are pressed while all covers are closed. You can specify the period before the printer enters <b>Sleep</b> mode in the <b>Sleep Timer</b> menu. (See "Menu Settings.") → R459 After entering <b>Sleep</b> mode from <b>Standby</b> mode, the printer automatically recovers if print jobs are received, and the jobs are printed.

Off	The printer is not on. If no operations are performed on the printer for the duration of the time set in <b>Shut Down Timer</b> after entering Sleep mode, the printer automatically turns off. (See "Menu Settings.") <b>PR459</b>
Blank display	



#### **Display Transitions in Normal Status**

The display transitions while the printer is in the normal status (the status where no errors have occurred) are shown below.

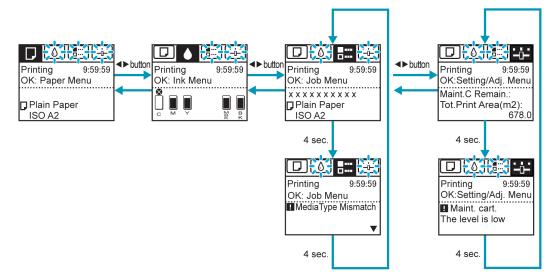


- *1: The printer automatically enters **Sleep** mode when idle for a specific period (by default, five minutes), that is, if no print jobs are received or buttons are pressed while all covers are closed. However, it does not enter **Sleep** mode while error messages are displayed or when a roll can be manually advanced by pressing the **Feed** button.
- *2: When the printer is in **Sleep** mode, you can press any button except the **Power** button to recover from **Sleep** mode. **Sleep** mode is also terminated if a print job is received or a command is issued from RemoteUI.

#### **Display Transitions in Error Status**

The display transitions while an error has occurred on the printer are shown below.

If multiple errors have occurred, the tabs for errors that have occurred other than the currently displayed error are displayed flashing. You can move between the tabs to check the errors by pressing the  $\blacktriangleleft$  and  $\blacktriangleright$  keys. If multiple errors have occurred in the Job tab and Settings/Adj. tab, the error message switches every four seconds within each tab.



# How to View Instructions with Navigate

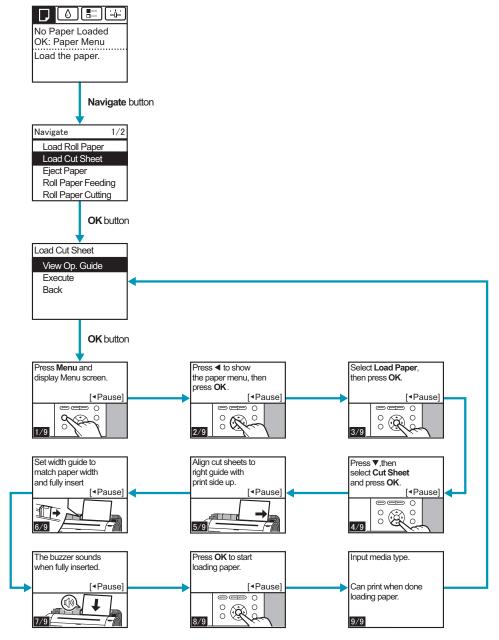
You can refer to instructions for loading paper, replacing ink tanks, and performing other operations on the printer control panel.



Press the Navigate button.

- 2 Press ▲ or
  - Press  $\blacktriangle$  or  $\blacktriangledown$  to select the desired navigation menu.
- **3** Press  $\blacktriangle$  or  $\blacktriangledown$  to select **View Op. Guide**, and then press the **OK** button. Instructions are now displayed.

Example: Loading sheets



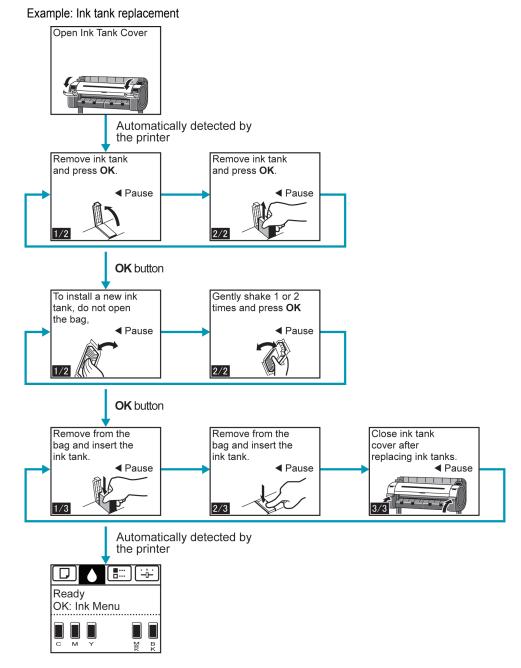
You can refer to instructions on the printer control panel when loading paper, replacing ink tanks, or performing other operations.

#### How to view instructions

Once you complete an action described in the instructions, the printer detects the action and switches to the next instruction screen.

In the case of actions the printer cannot detect, instruction screens are switched every four seconds, and the sequence of operations is shown repeatedly.

When all actions in the sequence are finished, the instruction screen for the next step is displayed.





 During a continuous display of instructions, you can press the button to pause the instructions on the current screen. Press the or button to display the previous or next screens. If you do not press the or button within 30 seconds, continuous display is resumed.

Press the  $\mathbf{OK}$  button to display the instruction screen for the next step.

# **Printer Menu**

Printer Menu Operations	48
Aenu Operations	
Aenu Structure	
Status Print	
Printing Interface Setting Reports	

# **Printer Menu Operations**

The printer menu is classified into regular menu items available when no print job is in progress and menu during printing items only available while printing is in progress.

- Regular menu operations →P.448
- Menu operations during printing →P.448

#### Regular menu operations

To view available menus organized on tabs, select a tab on the **Tab Selection screen** and press the **OK** button.



• If the Tab Selection screen is not displayed, pressing OK will not display menus.

Menus can be selected after you resolve the problem.

The following operations are available from the menu.

- Paper Menu
   Paper menu settings
- Ink Menu Ink menu operations
- Job Menu
   Menu operations to manage print jobs
- Set./Adj. Menu

Menu operations for printer adjustment and maintenance

For a description of specific menu items available, see "Menu Settings." →P.459 For instructions on selecting menu items, see "Menu Operations." →P.449



By default, menu settings apply to all print jobs. However, for settings that are also available in the printer driver, the values specified in the printer driver take priority.

#### Menu operations during printing

During printing, only a limited set of menu items are displayed. Menu items that are not displayed during printing should be operated after printing has finished.

To display menus during printing, select a tab on the **Tab Selection screen** on the Control Panel, and then press the **OK** button.



 If the Tab Selection screen is not displayed, pressing OK will not display menus. Menus can be selected after you resolve the problem.

The following operations are available from the menu during printing.

Ink Menu

Control Panel

Ink menu operations

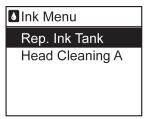
- Job Menu Menu operations to manage print jobs
- Set./Adj. Menu
   Fine-tuning paper feeding
   Display of printer-related information

For a description of specific menu items available, see "Menu Settings." →P.459 For instructions on selecting menu items during printing, see "Menu Operations." →P.449

# **Menu Operations**

To view available menus organized on tabs, select a tab on the **Tab Selection screen** and press the **OK** button. For details, see "Menu Settings." (>P.459)

• When the Ink tab is selected and the OK button is pressed



Note

 If the Tab Selection screen is not displayed, pressing OK will not display menus. Menus can be selected after you resolve the problem.

Simply press buttons on the Control Panel to access menus on various tabs from the **Tab Selection screen** and set or execute **Menu** items.

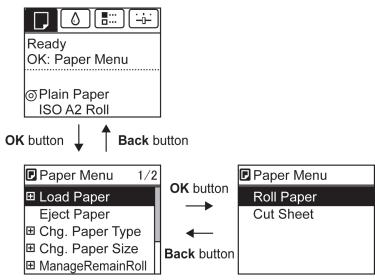
The following section describes menu operations and how they are presented in this User Manual.

- Accessing menus →P.449
- Specifying menu items → P.451
- Specifying numerical values →P.451
- Executing menu commands → P.451

Accessing menus

Printer menus are grouped by function.

Menus are displayed with the upper line selected. You can use the buttons on the Control Panel to access each menu.

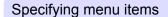


- Press **Back** button to access a higher menu in the menu list, and press **OK** button to access a lower one.
- Press ▲ to access a higher menu in the menu list, and press ▼ to access a lower one. If items of the menu list are more than the lines of the screen, press ▲ and ▼ to scroll the menu. Items you select are highlighted. The scroll bar at right indicates the current position in the overall menu.



• Lower menus are available if 
 is displayed at left next to the second and subsequent rows. To access the lower menus, select the menu and press the OK button.

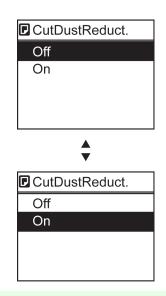




Menu items can be set as follows.

Press ▲ or ▼ to select the desired setting, and then press the **OK** button.

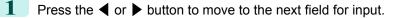
After two seconds, the display reverts to the upper level menu.

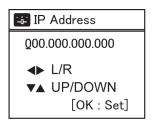


- If a confirmation message is displayed regarding the setting you entered, follow the on-screen instructions.
- Note If you have changed the **Interface Setup** menu settings, a message confirming whether to register the settings is displayed if you press **Back** button or **Menu** button. Follow the instructions shown on the screen.

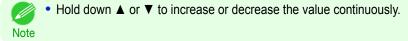
Specifying numerical values

Follow these steps to enter numbers. In this example, network settings items are entered.





**2** Press the  $\blacktriangle$  or  $\blacktriangledown$  button to enter the value.



**3** Repeat steps 1 and 2 to complete the settings, and then press the **OK** button.

- If a confirmation message is displayed regarding the setting you entered, follow the on-screen instructions.
- If you have changed the **Interface Setup** menu settings, a message confirming whether to register the settings is displayed if you press **Back** button or **Menu** button. Follow the instructions shown on the screen.

#### Executing menu commands

Menu commands can be executed as follows.

Press ▲ or ▼ to select the action to execute, and then press the **OK** button. The menu command is now executed.

# Menu Structure

The menu structure is shown categorized by tab. The * on the right side of an item indicates the default value. The printer menu is classified into regular menu items available when no print job is in progress and menu during printing items only available while printing is in progress. see "Printer Menu Operations." () P.448

Regular menu	Menu during printing
🕞 Paper Menu	Not displayed
\delta Ink Menu	The same <b>O</b> Ink Menu as normal is displayed.
Job Menu	The same <b>I Job Menu</b> as normal is displayed.
👾 Set./Adj. Menu	A limited Set./Adj. Menu containing the following items is displayed.
	• Adj. Fine Feed(*1)
	Printer Info

*1: Only displayed in the menu during printing. Not displayed in the regular menu.

For instructions on menu operations, see "Menu Operations." →P.449 For details on menu items, see "Menu Settings." →P.459

#### **D** Paper Menu

The **Paper Menu** is not displayed during printing.

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
Load Paper	Roll Paper   Cut Sheet			
Eject Paper		(The nemeric disc	eved have ) (td)	
Chg. Paper Type(*1)	Roll Paper	(The paper type is displ	• • • • •	
	Cut Sheet	(The paper type is displ		
··(Chg. Paper Size	)(Sheet Size	(The size of paper is dis	,	
		CustomPaperSize	(Set the length and width)	
	Roll Length(*3)	(Set the length)	J	
	In Roll Width(*4)	(Set the width)	)	
ManageRemainRoll	)(Off*   On			
··(Paper Details	(The paper type is displayed here.) (*1)	Head Height	Automatic*   Highest   High est   Super Low	n   Standard   Low   Low-
		Skew Check Lv.	High Accuracy   Standard*	Loose   Off
		Cutting Mode(*6)	Automatic   Eject   Manual	
		Cut Speed	····· Fast   Standard   Slow	
		Trim Edge First	····· Automatic   Off   On (Prese Length)   Manual	et Len)   On(Input
		CutDustReduct.	····· Off   On	
		VacuumStrngth	····· Automatic*   Strongest   St Weakest	rong   Standard   Weak
		Scan Wait Time	Dry time	Off*   1 sec.   3 sec.   5 sec.   7 sec.   9 sec.
			Area(*5)	Entire area*   Leading edge
		Roll DryingTime	Off   30 sec.   1 min.   3 mi min.   60 min.	n.   5 min.   10 min.   30
		NearEnd RollMrgn	)(3mm   20mm	
		NearEnd Sht Mrgn		
		BordlessOversize	Standard*   Little	

**Ink Menu** 

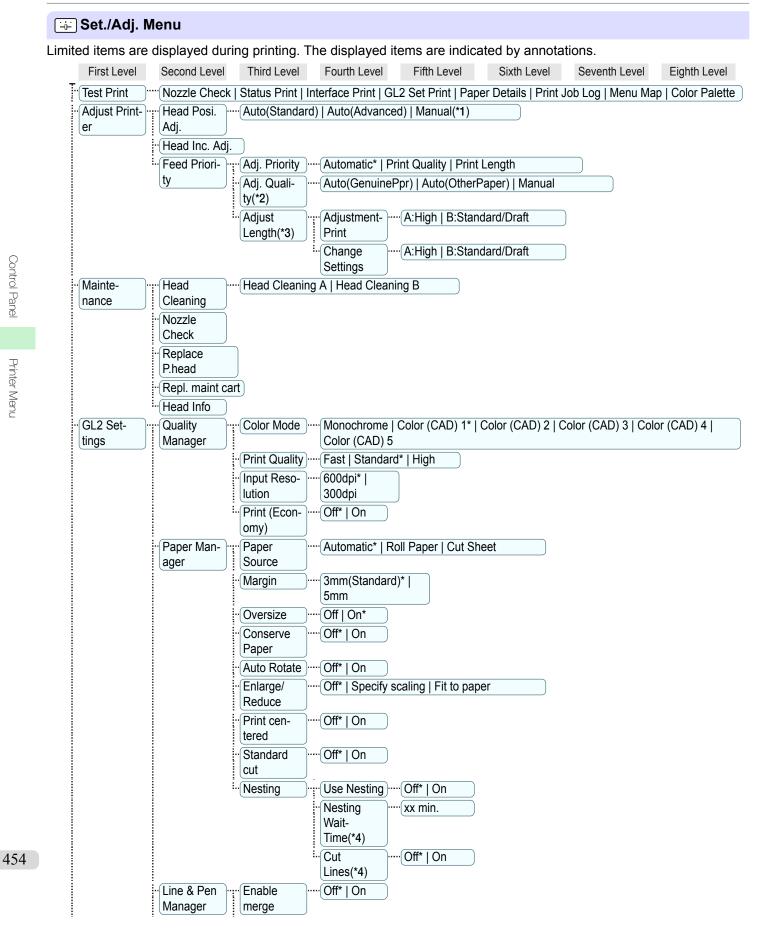
	First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
			Width Detection	Off   On*	
			E. Return Defaults		
Pa	aper Details				
Ke	eep Paper Type	·····Off*   On			

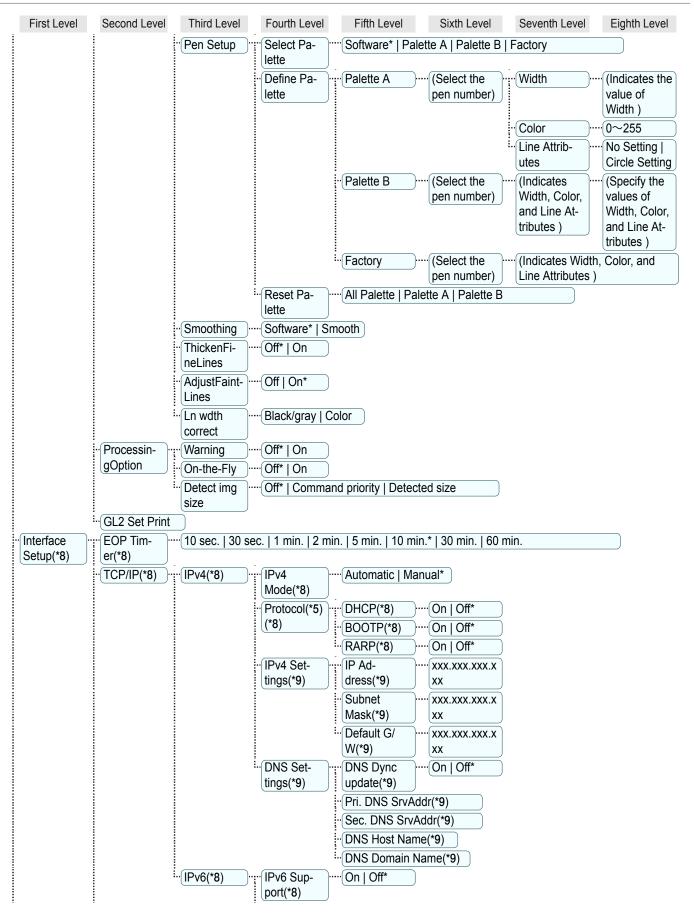
- *1: For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide**.") → P365 Types of paper in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel ) are updated when you install the printer driver from the User Software CD-ROM or if you update paper information with the Media Configuration Tool. (See "Updating paper information.") → P368
- *2: For information on the sizes of paper the printer supports, see "Paper Sizes." (>P.362)
- *3: Available only if ManageRemainRoll is On.
- *4: Available only if Width Detection is Off.
- *5: Leading edge is not available as a setting option in the Paper Detailed Settings dialog box of the printer driver.
- *6: see "Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls." →P.388

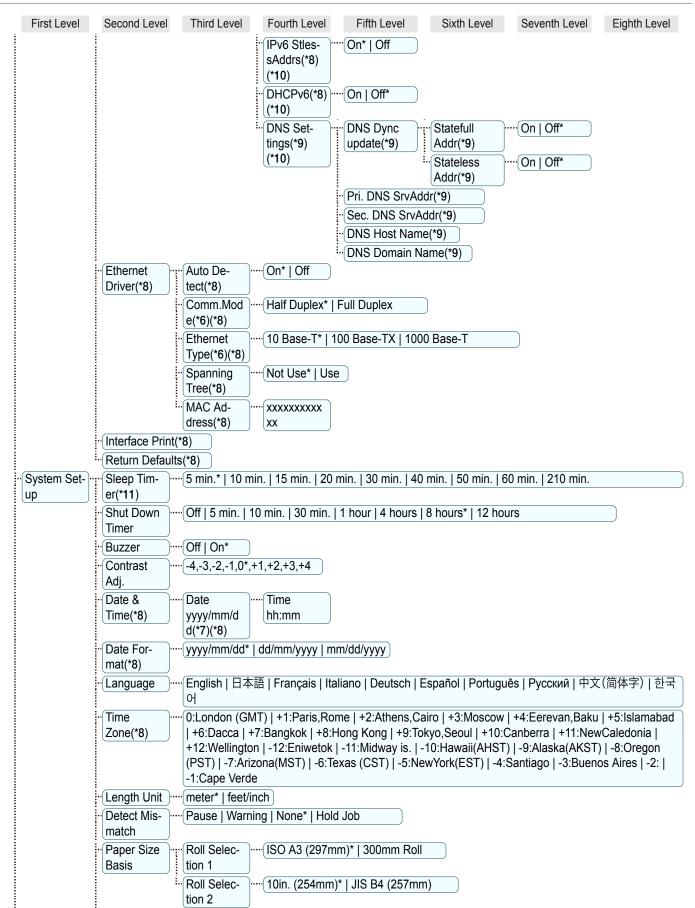
Fir	st Level			
Rep. Ink Tank				
Head Cleaning A				
🚛 Job Menu				
First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
Print Job	Job List	(Choose a print job.)	Delete   Preempt Jobs(*1	)
··Stored Job	·····(Mailbox List	(Enter a password if	Job List	···Print   Delete
		one has been set.)	Print Job List	
··Job Log(*2)	(Choose from information	Document Name		
	about the latest three print jobs.)	··User Name		
		Page Count		
		·· Job Status	OK   CANCELED	
		Print Start Time	yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm:ss	
		Print End Time	yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm:ss	
		· Print Time	(xxxsec.	
		··Print Size	(xxxxxxsq.mm	
		·· Media Type		
		· Interface	USB   Network   HDD	
		(Ink Consumed	Tot.Ink Consumed	···(xxx.xxx ml
			In (The ink color is dis-	···(xxx.xxx ml
		··Print settings	played here.)	
		·· Head Height		
		Temp./Humidity		
Print Job Log		(Adjustment req.		
Print Job Log	····· Off*   On	)		
HDD Information	Total capacity   Box free			
The pending job is sele	ected, <b>Print Anyway</b> is di	spiayed.		

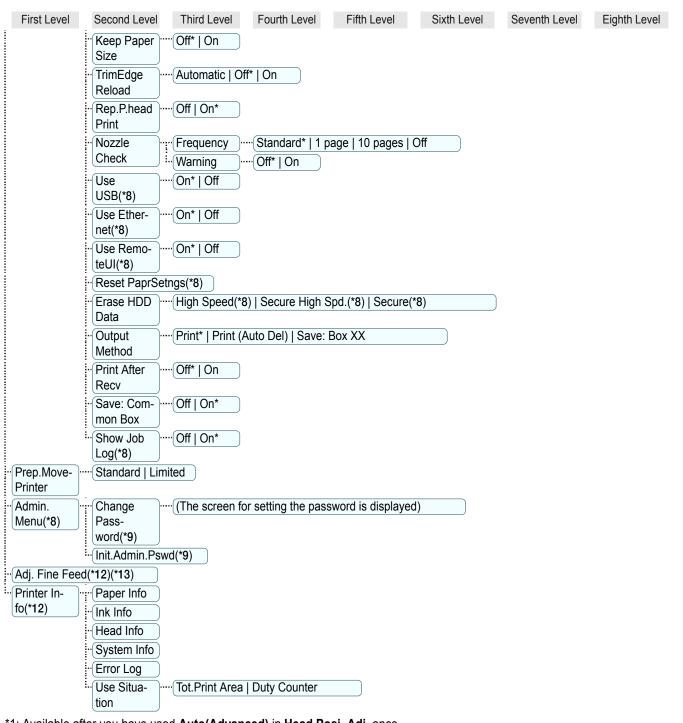
*2: Restrictions apply if a password is configured using **Change Password** in the **Admin. Menu**. Viewing is possible for administrators only.

User's Guide









- *1: Available after you have used Auto(Advanced) in Head Posi. Adj. once.
- *2: Available if Adj. Priority is Automatic or Print Quality.
- *3: Available if Adj. Priority is Automatic or Print Length.
- *4: Available only if Use Nesting is On.
- *5: Not displayed if IPv4 Mode is Manual.
- *6: Not displayed if Auto Detect is On.
- *7: Follows the setting in Date Format.
- *8: Restrictions apply if a password is configured using **Change Password** in the **Admin. Menu**. Viewing and configuration is possible for administrators, and only viewing for other users.
- *9: Restrictions apply if a password is configured using **Change Password** in the **Admin. Menu**. Viewing and configuration is possible for administrators only.

- *10: Not displayed if IPv6 Support is Off.
- *11: Default setting for the time to enter the power save mode/Sleep mode is recommended.
- *12: Displayed as the menu during printing while printing is in progress.
- *13: Not displayed in the regular menu.

# Menu Settings

#### Menu items are as follows.

The printer menu is classified into regular menu items available when no print job is in progress and menu during printing items only available while printing is in progress. see "Printer Menu Operations." (>P.448)

Regular menu	Menu during printing			
Paper Menu	Not displayed			
Ink Menu	The same Ink Menu as normal is displayed.			
Job Menu	The same Job Menu as normal is displayed.			
Set./Adj. Menu	A limited Set./Adj. Menu containing the following items is displayed.			
	Adj. Fine Feed (*1)			
	Printer Info			

*1: Only displayed in the menu during printing. Not displayed in the regular menu.

For instructions on selecting menu items, see "Menu Operations." →P.449 For details on the displayed menu hierarchy, see "Menu Structure." →P.452

### Paper Menu

The Paper Menu is not displayed during printing.

	Setting Item		Description, Instructions
Load Paper			Select either sheets or rolls and load the paper.
Eject Paper			Choose this item before removing loaded paper.
Chg. Paper Type	(*1)		Change the type of paper loaded. (See "Changing the Type of Paper.") →P.378
Chg. Paper Size			Change the size of paper loaded. (See "Specifying the Paper Length.") →P.380 (See "Paper Sizes.") →P.362
ManageRemainRoll			Choose <b>On</b> to print a barcode at the end of a roll before you remove it. The printed barcode can be used in managing the amount of roll paper left. Choose <b>Off</b> if you prefer not to print the barcode. (See "Keeping Track of the Amount of Roll Paper Left.") →P.385
Paper Details	(The type of paper is displayed here.)	Head Height	Adjust the Printhead height. (See "Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images.") →P.579
(*1)	(*1)	Skew Check Lv.	If you print on Japanese paper (washi) or other handmade paper that has an irregular width, choose <b>Loose</b> for a higher skew detec- tion threshold, or choose <b>Off</b> to disable skew detection. However, if paper is loaded askew when detection is <b>Off</b> , note that paper jams or Platen soiling may occur.
		Cutting Mode	Specify whether or not to cut with the standard round-bladed cutter. If you choose <b>Automatic</b> , the roll will be cut automatically using the Cutter Unit, depending on the printer driver settings. Select <b>Eject</b> to prevent printed documents from falling immediately after printing such as when you wait for the ink to dry, etc. <b>Manual</b> prints lines at the cut position instead of cutting after printing. (See "Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls.") →P388
		Cut Speed	Choose the cutting speed. The preset selection represents the opti- mal cutting speed for the type of paper. We recommend keeping the preset cutting speed. If you use adhesive paper, choosing <b>Slow</b> helps prevent adhesive from sticking to the cutter and keeps the cutter sharp.
		Trim Edge First	Selects whether or not to automatically cut the leading edge of the roll paper when roll paper is loaded.

	Setting Item Description, Instructions						
Paper Details	(The type of paper is displayed here.)	Trim Edge First	(See "Cutting the Leading Edge of Roll Paper Automatical- ly.") →P391				
(*1)	(*1)	CutDustReduct.	If you choose <b>On</b> , a line will be printed at the cut position when pa- per cutting is selected. This option reduces the amount of debris giv- en off after cutting. It also helps prevent adhesive from sticking to the cutter and keeps the cutter sharp if you use adhesive paper. (See "Reducing Dust from Cutting Rolls.") $\rightarrow$ R393				
		VacuumStrngth	Specify the level of suction that holds paper against the Platen. (See "Adjusting the Vacuum Strength.") →P.587				
		Scan Wait Time	Specify the time to wait for the ink to dry between each scan (after the printhead finishes moving in one direction), in consideration of how quickly the ink dries. Also specify the applicable area for the ink drying time. Select <b>Entire area</b> to apply the ink drying time after each scan until the document is fully printed. Select <b>Leading edge</b> to apply the ink drying time after each scan only in the area 110–140 mm from the leading edge. (The applicable length varies depending on the <b>Print Quality</b> setting.) Note that printing will take longer if you specify the <b>Scan Wait Time</b> setting. In particular, when <b>Lead- ing edge</b> is selected, colors may be uneven in the boundary be- tween the areas with and without a drying time.				
		Roll DryingTime	Specify the time to wait for the ink to dry for each sheet.				
		NearEnd RollMrgn	Specify the minimum margin at the leading edge of roll paper to en- sure better printing quality at the leading edge. Note that if you choose <b>3mm</b> , it may lower the printing quality at the leading edge and affect feeding accuracy. The printed surface may be scratched, and ink may adhere to the leading edge. It may also cause the Platen to become soiled.				
		NearEnd Sht Mrgn	Specify a margin at the leading edge of sheets to ensure better printing quality at the leading edge. Note that if you choose <b>3mm</b> , it may lower the printing quality at the leading edge and affect feeding accuracy. The printed surface may be scratched, and ink may adhere to the leading edge.				
		BordlessOver- size	Select the amount of oversize extension of the original during bor- derless printing. Normally, we recommend that you set this to <b>Standard</b> . If it is set to <b>Little</b> , although it will reduce soiling on the back sur- face, white patches may remain on the printed surface.				
		Width Detection	Specify this option to print inside boundaries or in other cases when specifying a particular starting position for printing. Paper width and skew are not detected if you select <b>Off</b> . If paper is loaded askew, paper jams or Platen soiling may occur.				
		Return Defaults	Choose <b>OK</b> to restore <b>Paper Details</b> to the default values.				
Paper Details			Print the paper settings as specified in <b>Paper Details</b> .				
Keep Paper Type			Select <b>On</b> when printing on a particular type of paper regularly. (See "Changing the Type of Paper.") →P378				

*1: For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide**.") → P.365 Types of paper in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel ) are updated when you install the printer driver from the User Software CD-ROM or if you update paper information with the Media Configuration Tool. (See "Updating paper information.") → P.368

# Ink Menu

Setting Item	Description, Instructions
Rep. Ink Tank	Replace the lnk Tank at this point. Follow the instructions displayed to complete the required procedure. (See "Replacing Ink Tanks.") →P.590
Head Cleaning A	Printhead cleaning options. (See "Cleaning the Print- head.") <b>PROD</b> Execute <b>Head Cleaning A</b> if printing is faint, oddly colored, or contains foreign substances.

# Job Menu

		Setting Item			Description, Instructions
Print Job Job List		(Choose a print job)	Delete Preempt Jobs		Delete the current job or queued jobs. (See "Managing the Job Queue (Deleting or Preempting Other Jobs).") →P.536
					Print the job first after the current print job is finished. (See "Man aging the Job Queue (Deleting or Preempting Other Jobs).")  P.536
Stored	Mailbox	(Enter a	Job List	Print	Print the saved job.
Job	List	password if one has		Delete	Delete the saved job.
		been set.)	Print Job L	ist	Print a list of saved print jobs.
Job Log	(Choose	Document	Name		Indicates the document name of the selected print job.
	from infor- mation	User Name			Indicates the name of the user who sent the print job.
	about the	Page Coun	t		Indicates the number of pages in the job.
	last three	Job Status	atus		Indicates the printing results.
	print jobs.)	Print Start Time			Indicates when the print job was started.
		Print End T	Print End Time		Indicates when the print job was finished.
		Print Time			Indicates the time required to print the job.
		Print Size			Indicates the paper size in the print job.
		Media Type	)		Indicates the type of paper in the print job.
		Interface			Indicates the interface used for the print job.
		Ink Consur	ned		Indicates a rough estimate of how much ink was consumed per job.(*1)
		Print settin	ıgs		A counter for maintenance purposes. Indicates job print settings
		Head Heigh	ł Height		A counter for maintenance purposes. Indicates the head height when jobs wereprinted.
		Temp./Hum	)./Humidity		A counter for maintenance purposes. Indicates the temperature and humiditywhen jobs were printed.
		Adjustmen	t req.		A counter for maintenance purposes. Indicates adjustment cond tions appliedto jobs.
Print Job Log			Print a record of print jobs, including the paper type and size, amount of ink consumed, and so on. Ink consumption indicates a rough estimate of the amount of ink consumed per print job.(*1)		
Pause Prin	t				Choose <b>On</b> to stop printing.
HDD Information					Indicates the total hard disk capacity and the mail box free space

*1: A rough estimate of the amount of ink consumed per print job is displayed. Actual ink consumption may be different. The average margin of error for estimates calculated according to Canon measurement conditions for ink costs is ±15%. Canon does not guarantee the accuracy of these estimates. Estimates may vary depending on conditions of use. Calculation of these estimates does not include ink consumed when cleaning printheads by forceful ejection of ink.

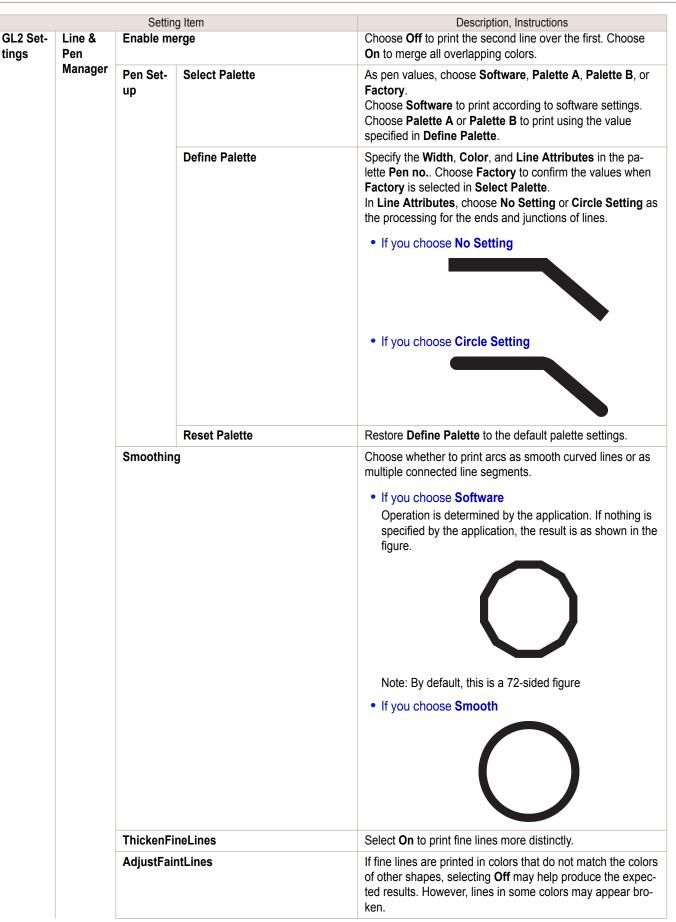
#### Set./Adj. Menu

Limited items are displayed during printing. The displayed items are indicated by annotations.

		Settir	ng Item	Description, Instructions		
Test	Nozzle Check			Print a test pattern to check the nozzles.		
Print	int Status Print			Print information about the setting values and condition of the printer.		
	Interface	Print		Print interface settings information.		
	GL2 Set F	Print		Print the settings as specified in GL2 Settings.		
	Paper De	tails		Print the paper settings as specified in <b>Paper Details</b> .		
	Print Job	Log		Print a record of print jobs, including the paper type and size, amount of ink consumed, and so on. Ink consumption indicates a rough estimate of the amount of ink consumed per print job.(*1)		
	Menu Ma	р		Print the menu structure.		
	Color Pal	ette		Print the GL2 color palette.		
Adjust Head Printer Posi. Adj.	Posi.	Posi.		The printer prints and reads a test pattern for automatic ad- justment of Printhead alignment relative to the printing di- rection. (See "Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors.")		
		Auto(Advanced)		The printer prints and reads a test pattern for automatic ad- justment of Printhead alignment relative to the printing di- rection and spacing between nozzles and colors. (See "Au- tomatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Col- ors.") →P.574		
		Manual		Print a test pattern for adjustment of Printhead alignment relative to the printing direction. Enter the adjustment value manually based on the resulting pattern. (See "Manual Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors.") →P575		
	Head Inc.	Adj.		Print a test pattern for adjustment of the Printhead orienta- tion. (See "Adjusting Line Misalignment.")  P.577		
	Feed	Adj. Pri-	Automatic	Specify exact paper feeding, if desired. Normally, select Au		
	Priority	riority ority	Print Quality	tomatic. Choose Print Quality for attractive printing. Choosing Print Quality also makes banding less noticea-		
			Print Length	ble. Choose <b>Print Length</b> if you prefer to feed the paper ar exact amount.		
		Adj. Quality	Auto(GenuinePpr)	Specify this mode with paper identified in the <b>Paper Refer- ence Guide</b> . (See "Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.") →P.365 The printer prints and reads a test pattern for automatic ad- justment of the feed amount. (See "Automatic Banding Ad justment.") →P.582		
			Auto(OtherPaper)	Specify this mode with paper not in the <b>Paper Reference</b> <b>Guide</b> . (See "Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.")		

		Setti	ng Item		Description, Instructions
Adjust Printer	Feed Adj. A Priority Quality		Auto(Othe	erPaper)	The printer prints and reads a test pattern for automatic ad- justment of the feed amount. Note that this function takes more time and consumes more ink than <b>Auto(Genu-</b> <b>inePpr)</b> . (See "Automatic Banding Adjustment.") →P582
		Manual			Use this mode with highly transparent media or other paper for which <b>Auto(GenuinePpr)</b> or <b>Auto(OtherPaper)</b> cannot be used. Print a test pattern for adjustment of the feed amount based on the type of paper. (See "Manual Banding Adjust- ment.") <b>P.584</b>
		Adjust	Adjust-	A:High	Print a test pattern for particular types of paper to compen-
		Length	ment- Print	B:Standard/Draft	sate for paper stretching or shrinkage, after which you enter the amount of adjustment. (See "Adjusting Line Length.") → P.586
			Change	A:High	Displayed when you have selected Feed Priority > Adj.
	Se	Settings	B:Standard/Draft	Priority > Print Length. Adjustment relative to the amount of stretching or shrinkage of the current paper. Enter either the adjustment results from AdjustmentPrint or the discrepancy that you measured (as a percentage). For paper that tends to stretch, increase the feed amount b choosing a higher adjustment value. For paper that tends to shrink, decrease the feed amount by choosing a lower ad- justment value. (See "Adjusting Line Length.") →P.586	
Mainte- nance	5				Clean the Printhead. (See "Cleaning the Print- head.") → P.600 Choose Head Cleaning A if printing is faint, oddly colored, or contains foreign substances. Choose Head Cleaning B if no ink is printed at all, or if printing is not improved by Head Cleaning A.
	Nozzle Ch	eck			Print a test pattern to check the nozzles.
	Replace P.head				Execute when replacing the Printhead. Follow the instruc- tions displayed to complete the required procedure. (See "Replacing the Printhead.") Not displayed during a warning message that the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity is low.
	Repl. maiı	nt cart			Execute when replacing the Maintenance Cartridge. Follow the instructions displayed to complete the required proce- dure. (See "Replacing the Maintenance Car- tridge.") (>P608)
	Head Info				Indicates information about the printhead.
GL2 Set-	Quality	Color	Monochro	ome	Print in monochrome.
ings	Manager	Mode	Color (CA	D) 1	Print in standard colors.
			Color (CA	D) 2	Print with approximate colors emulating Canon iPF750, iPF755, iPF650, iPF655, iPF760, iPF765.(*2)
			Color (CAD) 3 Color (CAD) 4		Print with approximate colors emulating Canon iPF500, iPF600, iPF700, iPF510, iPF610, iPF710, iPF605, iPF720, iPF810, iPF820, iPF815, iPF825.(*2)
					Print emulating the HP Designjet 500/800, in colors resem- bling colors produced by these printers.(*2)
			Color (CAD) 5		Print emulating the HP Designjet T1100, in colors resem-

		Settir	ig Item	Description, Instructions
GL2 Set- ings	Quality	Print Qua	lity	Choose the print quality.
	Manager	Input Res	olution	Choose the printer input resolution, 600dpi or 300dpi.
		Print (Ecc	nomy)	When <b>On</b> is selected, print using less ink. However, the quality is lower than regular printing. Select <b>On</b> to conserve ink such as the layout confirmation. Note that although <b>Print (Economy)</b> is only available when <b>Fast</b> is selected in <b>Print Quality</b> , it might not be available depending on the paper type.
	Paper	Paper So	Irce	Choose the source of paper for HP-GL/2 printing.
	Manager	Margin		Specify the margin around paper. The margin for the trailing edge of sheets is 23 mm (0.9 in). However, if you have specified the leading margin in <b>Paper Details</b> , the larger of the setting values has priority.
		Oversize		Set the position of the margin relative to the image range. Choose <b>Off</b> to set the margin inside the image range. The image may be missing depending on the layout. Choose <b>On</b> to set the margin outside the image range. Although the image will not be missing, you should print on paper larger than the size of the image range plus the mar- gins.
		Conserve	Paper	Conserves paper when printing.
		Auto Rotate		If the long side of an original is shorter than the roll width, the original is automatically rotated 90 degrees to conserve paper. Similarly, if the long side of an original in landscape orientation is longer than the roll width and the short side is shorter than the roll width, the original is repositioned to fit on the paper. HP RTL print jobs are not rotated. Because HP RTL images are not rotated even if the paper is rotated 90 degrees, im- ages may be cut off or the blank paper may be ejected. In this case, set <b>Auto Rotate</b> to <b>Off</b> .
		Enlarge/Reduce		<ul> <li>Enlarge or reduce the image.</li> <li>Choose Specify scaling to print based on the specified scaling value.</li> <li>The specified range is 25 to 400 %.</li> <li>Choose Fit to paper to print by resizing to fit the paper loaded in the printer.</li> <li>If Standard cut is On, the printing is resized to fit the standard paper size.</li> </ul>
		Print cent	ered	Print in the center of the paper.
		Standard cut		Automatically selects the best standard paper size from the width of the loaded roll paper and the image size and cuts the roll paper.
		Nesting	Use Nesting	Selecting <b>On</b> will store print jobs until multiple documents can be arranged to fill up the roll width, instead of printing each print job as it is received.
			Nesting WaitTime	Specify a time to wait until printing, as desired.
			Cut Lines	Select <b>On</b> to print cut lines between each document on the roll.
	Line & Pen Manager	Enable merge		Specify whether to merge or print over colors where lines overlap.



Printer Menu

		Setti	ing Item			Description, Instructions
GL2 Set- tings	Line & Pen Manager	Ln wdth correct				Corrects by using a correction value that specifies the pen width. You can configure <b>Black/gray</b> and <b>Color</b> for each group. The specified range is -20 to +20.
	Proces-	Warning				Select <b>On</b> to have any GL2-related warnings displayed.
	singOp- tion	On-the-Fly				Selecting <b>On</b> will start printing jobs sooner if you are printing only HP RTL print jobs and printing would not start until lat- er. However, images may be incomplete in some cases, so be sure to check the printing results.
		Detect img size				Sets the method of deciding the region to output in order to print efficiently while avoiding missing images. If <b>Off</b> is selected and the data contains image range infor- mation, the image range information is followed. If <b>Off</b> is selected and the data does not contain image range information, a size with the maximum roll paper width of the printer for the width and 1.5 times the maximum roll paper width for the length is used. If <b>Command priority</b> is selected and the data contains im- age range information, the image range information is fol- lowed. If <b>Command priority</b> is selected and the data does not cont tain image range information, the detected minimum image area is used. If <b>Detected size</b> is selected, the detected minimum image area is used.
	GL2 Set Print					Print GL2 settings information.
Interface Setup	EOP Timer					Specify the timeout period before cancellation of print jobs that cannot be received by the printer.
	TCP/IP	IPv4	IPv4 Mode			Choose whether the printer IP address is configured auto- matically or a static IP address is entered manually.
			Protocol	DHCP		Specify the protocol used to configure the IP address auto- matically.
				BOOTP		
				RARP		
			IPv4 Settings	IP Address		Specify the printer network information when using a static IP address. Enter the IP address assigned to the printer, as well as the
				Subnet Mask		
				Default G	W	network subnet mask and default gateway. The value that was automatically configured is displayed if you have set <b>IPv4 Mode</b> to <b>Automatic</b> .
			DNS Settings	DNS Dync update		Specify whether DNS server registration is updated auto- matically.
				Pri. DNS SrvAddr		Specify the DNS server address.
				Sec. DNS SrvAddr		
				DNS Host Name		Specify the DNS host name.
				DNS Domain Name		Specify the DNS domain name.
		IPv6	IPv6 Support			Specify whether to connect via IPv6.
			IPv6 StlessAddrs			Specify whether a IPv6 stateless address is used.
			DHCPv6		1	Specify whether DHCPv6 settings are used.
			DNS Settings	DNS Dync update	Statefull Addr	Specify whether DNS server registration is updated auto- matically.

		Settin	g Item			Description, Instructions				
Interface Setup	TCP/IP	IPv6	DNS Settings	DNS Dync update	State- less Addr	Specify whether DNS server registration is updated auto- matically.				
				Pri. DNS SrvAddr		Specify the DNS server address.				
				Sec. DNS SrvAddr						
				DNS Host Name		Specify the DNS host name.				
				DNS Dom	nain Name	Specify the DNS domain name.				
	Ethernet Driver	Auto Detect				Specify the communication method. To apply your changes, choose <b>Register Setting</b> . Choose <b>On</b> for automatic configuration of the LAN communication protocol. Choose <b>Off</b> to use settings values of <b>Comm.Mode</b> and <b>Ethernet Type</b> .				
		Comm.Mode				Choose the LAN communication method.				
		Ethernet Type				Choose the LAN transfer rate.				
		Spanning Tree				Choose whether spanning-tree packets are supported over the LAN.				
		MAC Address				Indicates the MAC address.				
	Interface Print					Print interface settings information.				
	Return Defaults					Choose <b>OK</b> to restore <b>Interface Setup</b> settings to the default values.				
System	Sleep Timer					Specify the period before the printer enters sleep mode.				
Setup	Shut Down Timer					Sets the time until the printer turns off automatically. If no operations are performed on the printer for the duration of the time set in <b>Shut Down Timer</b> after entering Sleep mode, the printer automatically turns off.				
	Buzzer					Choose <b>On</b> for the buzzer to sound once for warnings and three times for errors.				
	Contrast Adj.					Adjust the Display Screen contrast level.				
	Date &	Date				Set the current date.				
	Time	Time				Set the current time. Available only if the <b>Date</b> setting is specified.				
	Date Format					Specify the date format.				
	Language					Specify the language used on the Display Screen.				
	Time Zone					Specify the time zone. Time zone options indicate a main city in this time zone and the difference from Greenwich Mean Time.				
	Length Unit					Choose the display unit for length. Change the unit displayed for the remaining amount of roll paper, <b>Tot.Print Area</b> , and so on.				
	Detect Mismatch					Detect Mismatch				

		Setting Item	Description, Instructions
System Setup	Paper Size Ba- sis	Roll Selection 1	If roll size detection is activated, choose whether <b>ISO A3</b> (297mm) or 300mm Roll is applied when a roll of an intermediate width is detected.
		Roll Selection 2	If roll size detection is activated, choose whether <b>10in</b> . (254mm) or JIS B4 (257mm) is applied when a roll of an intermediate width is detected.
	Кеер Рар	er Size	Choose <b>On</b> to use the paper size setting as the basis for printing instead of other settings. The margin setting of the printer menu will be used instead of the margin setting of the printer driver if the latter is smaller, which may prevent text or images in the margin from being printed. Some <b>Off</b> to give priority to margin settings. The larger value is used if the margin specified in the printer driver does not match the margin in the printer menu.
	TrimEdge	Reload	Specify whether to trim the leading edge of the currently re- tracted roll when the roll is advanced. Cut the edge if you are concerned about any marks left on the roll when the rol is left in the retracted position. Specify <b>On</b> to have rolls cut when printing begins after Sleep mode or when the power is restored. Selecting <b>Auto</b> <b>matic</b> will trim the edge when the roll has been in the re- tracted position for two days or more.
	Rep.P.hea	d Print	Choose <b>On</b> to have the printer automatically execute the <b>Advanced Adj.</b> operations after you replace the Printhead. (See "Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors.") → P.574
	Nozzle Ch	leck	In <b>Frequency</b> , specify the timing for automatic checks of nozzle clogging. Choose <b>Standard</b> to have the printer ad- just the timing for checks based on the frequency of nozzle use. Choose <b>1 page</b> to check once per page. Choose <b>10</b> <b>pages</b> to check once per 10 pages. Choose <b>Off</b> to not exe- cute check. If <b>On</b> is selected in <b>Warning</b> , a warning may be displayed on the Control Panel depending on the result of the nozzle check.
	Use USB		When <b>Off</b> is selected, the device can no longer be accessed via USB.
	Use Ether		When <b>Off</b> is selected, the device can no longer be accessed via Ethernet.
	Use Remo	oteUI	Choosing <b>Off</b> prohibits access from RemoteUI. Settings ca only be configured from the control panel.

		Setting Item	Description, Instructions
System Setup	Reset PaprSetngs		Restores settings that you have changed with Media Con- figuration Tool to the default values.
	Erase HDD Da- ta	High Speed	Erases file management data for print job data stored on the printer's hard disk. (See "Erasing Data on the Printer's Hard Disk.") →P.486
		Secure High Spd.	Overwrites the entire hard disk with random data. (See "Erasing Data on the Printer's Hard Disk.") $\rightarrow$ P.486
		Secure	Overwrites the entire hard disk with 00, FF, and random da ta (one time each). Verification is performed to check if the data was correctly written. (See "Erasing Data on the Print er's Hard Disk.")  P.486
	Output	Print	Select the printing method for jobs received from software
	Method	Print (Auto Del)	other than the printer driver. When using the printer driver,
		Save: Box XX	configure settings on the printer. To print as usual, select <b>Print</b> . Selecting <b>Print (Auto Del)</b> will print the job and then delete the data from the printer's hard disk. Selecting <b>Save: Box 01</b> will only save the print job in the box, without printing it.
	Print After Recv		A setting for jobs received from software other than the printer driver. When using the printer driver, configure settings on the printer. Select <b>On</b> to print the job after it has been saved.
	Save: Common Box		Select Off to print without saving jobs in the common box.
	Show Job Log		Selecting <b>Off</b> prevents display of the log in <b>Job Menu</b> > <b>Job Log</b> . Additionally, the log is not printed if you choose <b>Job Menu</b> > <b>Print Job Log</b> . Note that because job logs ar not collected, the Status Monitor accounting functions will not work correctly.
Prep.Mov	ePrinter		When transferring the printer to another location, choose the level of transfer and follow the instructions on the screen. (See "Preparing to Transfer the Printer.") →P618 Not displayed during a warning message that the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity is low.
Admin. Menu	Change P	assword	The password that can be entered is a number from 0 to 99999999. The restriction states and main items are shown below. For more specific information on restricted items, see "Menu Structure." → P.452
			<ul> <li>Viewing and configuration by administrators only Change Password Init.Admin.Pswd Etc.</li> </ul>
			<ul> <li>Viewing and configuration by administrators, and only viewing by other users</li> <li>Date &amp; Time</li> <li>Time Zone</li> </ul>
			Time Zone Use RemoteUI
			Etc.
	Init.Admir	n.Pswd	Choose <b>OK</b> to restore the <b>Admin. Menu</b> password to the default values.

Printer Menu

	Setting Item	Description, Instructions
Adj. Fine Feed (*2) (*3)		Displayed when you have selected <b>Feed Priority &gt; Adj.</b> <b>Priority &gt; Automatic</b> or <b>Print Quality</b> . Fine-tune the feed amount manually.
Printer Info (*2)	Paper Info	Indicates the current paper size, type, and related printer settings.
	Ink Info	Indicates ink levels and maintenance cartridge capacity.
	Head Info	Indicates information about the printhead.
	System Info	Indicates the firmware version, serial number, and interface information.
	Error Log	Indicates the most recent error messages (up to five).
	Use Situation	A counter for maintenance purposes. Displays printer usage related information.

*1: A rough estimate of how much ink was consumed per job is displayed. Actual ink consumption may be different. The average margin of error for estimates calculated according to Canon measurement conditions for ink costs is ±15%. Canon does not guarantee the accuracy of these estimates. Estimates may vary depending on conditions of use. Calculation of these estimates does not include ink consumed when cleaning printheads by forceful ejection of ink.

- *2: Displayed as the menu during printing while printing is in progress.
- *3: Not displayed in the regular menu.

### **Status Print**

You can print a Status Print report indicating the current status of the printer.

With Status Print, information is printed regarding the printer firmware version, various settings, and the status of consumables.

### Printing Status Print reports

Load paper.

If using cut sheets, load paper A4/Letter-sized, you will need three sheets.

2

1

On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press **4** or **b** to select Settings/Adj. tab ( :).



Readv OK:Setting/Adj. Menu Maint.C Remain.: 80% Tot.Print Area(m2): 678.0

If the Tab Selection screen is not displayed, press the Menu button. Note

**3** Press the **OK** button. The Set./Adj. Menu is displayed.

- **4** Press  $\blacktriangle$  or  $\blacktriangledown$  to select **Test Print**, and then press the **OK** button.
- 5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select Status Print, and then press the OK button.

iPF685

### Checking the information in Status Print reports

### The following information is included in Status Print reports.

Canon imagePROGRAF iPFxxxx Status Print	Printer model
Firm	Firmware version
Boot	Boot ROM version
MIT(DBF)	MIT database format version
MIT(DB)	MIT database version
S/N	Printer serial number
Date	Indicates when the status print report was printed.

Paper Menu		Information on the loaded paper.
	Roll Media Type	
Cut Sheet Type ManageRemainRoll	Cut Sheet Type	
	ManageRemainRoll	
	Keep Paper Type	

Job Menu			Job-related information.	
	Job Log		A counter for maintenance purposes. Various information about previous jobs.	
	HDD Information		Indicates the total hard disk capacity and the mail box free	
		Total capacity	space.	
	Box free space		-	

Set./Adj. Menu				Settings and adjustment informa- tion.	
	System Setup			Printer system settings, as well as settings regarding warnings and	
	Sleep Timer				
		Shut Down Timer		errors.	
		Buzzer			
		Contrast Adj.			
		Date Format			
		Language			
		Time Zone			
		Length Unit			
		Detect Mismatch			
		Paper Size Basis		Paper-related settings.	
			Roll Selection 1		
			Roll Selection 2		
		Keep Paper Size			
		TrimEdge Reload			
		Rep.P.head Print		Settings after a test pattern was printed following head replace- ment.	
		Nozzle Check		Nozzle-check settings.	

Control Panel Printer Menu

		Frequency	Nozzle-check settings.
		Warning	
	Use USB		Use USB settings values.
	Use Ethernet		Use Ethernet settings values.
	Use RemoteUI		Settings used by RemoteUI.
	Show Job Log		Print job settings.
	Output Method		Print job settings.
	Print After Recv		
	Save: Common Bo	хс	Save: Common Box settings values.
Adjust Printer			Adjustment settings.
	Head Posi. Adj.		A counter for maintenance purpo-
		Adjust Log	ses. Head position adjustment values for previous jobs.
Printer Info			Ink information, RAM usage, and a record of errors.
	Ink Info		Ink-related information.
		MC	Maintenance Cartridge capacity (%)
		(The ink color is displayed here.)	Ink levels. The remaining ink is displayed in a five-level scale.
	System Info		Indicates the total amount of
		RAM	RAM.
	Error Log		The past five error codes.

HEAD LC	)T NUMBER/ DA	ATE OF INSTALLATION	The printhead lot number and date and time when the Printhead
	HEAD INFxx		was installed.
PARTS S	TATUS		Utilization status of replacement parts that require servicing.
	COUNTER		
COUNTE	R		Utilization status of the cutter, media, and other items (indicating
	CUTTER		how much they have been used).
	MEDIA		
		LIFE TTL	
		LIFE ROLL	
		LIFE CUTSHEET	
	MEDIA 1-7,	OTHER	
		NAME	
		TTL	
		ROLL	
		CUTSHEET	
	AFTER INS	TALLATION	

DUTY		Counters for maintenance purposes. Needed when service is
UNIT:m2		requested.
	UNIT:sq.f	
	UNIT:A4 Sheet	
	UNIT:Letter Sheet	
Printing	g Interface Setting Reports	3
u can prin	t an Interface Print report indicating	g the current interface settings values of the printer.
rinting In	terface Print reports	
1 1000	the paper.	
		ed, you will need at least three sheets.
	he Tab Selection screen of the Cor	
	the Settings/Adj. tab ( ⊣⊢).	Ready OK:Setting/Adj. Menu Maint.C Remain.: 80% Tot.Print Area(m2): 678.0
	• If the Tab Selection screen is r Note	not displayed, press the <b>Menu</b> button.
	s the <b>OK</b> button. <b>Set./Adj. Menu</b> is displayed.	
4 Pres	s ▲ or ▼ to select <b>Test Print</b> , and t	hen press the <b>OK</b> button
_		
5 Pres	s $\blacktriangle$ or $\triangledown$ to select Interface Print,	and then press the <b>OK</b> button.
<b>.</b>	- Inforda - Deleti i f	
	g Interface Print information	
	g information is included in the Inter	
Canon ima	agePROGRAF iPFxxxx Interface Print	Printer model
		Firmware Version
Firm		
Firm Boot		Boot ROM Version
Firm Boot MIT(DBF)		Boot ROM Version MIT Database Format Version

S/N

Date

User's Guide

		printed.
EOP Timer		Specify the timeout period before cancellation of print jobs that cannot be received by the printer.
TCP/IPv4	Frame Type	IPv4 settings values.
	Use DHCP	

Printer serial number

The date when the interface setup print report was

		IDv4 pottings values
TCP/IPv4	Use BOOTP	IPv4 settings values.
	Use RARP	
	Enable DNS Dynamic Update	
	Use Zeroconf Function	
	IP Address	
	Subnet Mask	
	Gateway Address	
	LPD Printing	
	IPP Printing	
	IPP Printer URI	
	RAW Printing	
	Raw Mode Bi-direction	
	FTP Printing	
	WSD Printing	
	Use Discovery	
	Scope	
	Primary DNS Server Address	
	Secondary DNS Server Address	
	DNS Host Name	
	DNS Domain Name	
	MulticastDNS ServiceName	
	SNMPv1	
	SNMPv3	
	1	1

TCP/IPv6 Use IPv6 IPv6 settings values. Use DHCPv6 Stateful Address Prefix Length Primary DNS Server Address Secondary DNS Server Address Use a stateless address Stateless Address 1 Prefix Length 1 Stateless Address 2 Prefix Length 2 Stateless Address 3 Prefix Length 3 Stateless Address 4 Prefix Length 4 Stateless Address 5 Prefix Length 5 Stateless Address 6 Prefix Length 6

Link-Local Address

Use a link-local Address

Control Panel

Printer Menu

TCP/IPv6	Use a link-local Address	Desfin Langth	IPv6 settings values.
		Prefix Length	
	Use a manual address	IP Address	
		Prefix Length	
		Default Router Address	
		Prefix Length	
		Primary DNS Server Address	
		Secondary DNS Server Address	
	Use the same host name and do- main name as IPv4	DNS Host Name	
		DNS Domain Name	
	Perform dynamic updating of stateful a		
	Dynamically update the stateless addr		
	Dynamically update the manual address	SS	

Network Interface	Physical Interface	Network interface settings values.
	Transmission Rate	
	MAC Address	
	Auto Detect	
	Communication	
	Ethernet Type	
	Spanning Tree	
	Use the Jumbo Frame Function	

# Memo

# iPF685

User's Guide

Basic Printing Workflow	15
Enhanced Printing Options	31
Windows Software	157
Mac OS Software	277
Handling and Use of Paper	361
Control Panel	437

# **Printer Parts**

Printer parts	478
Hard Disk	484
Optional accessories	488

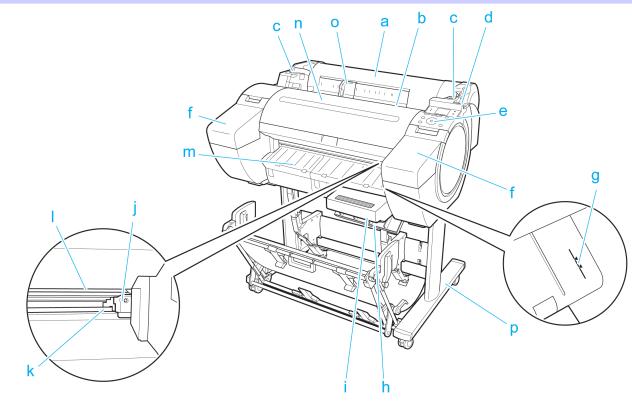
Network Setting	491
Print Job Management	511
Adjustments for Better Print Quality	573
Maintenance and Consumables	589
Troubleshooting	627
Troubleshooting Error Message	627 657
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~	

477

imagePROGRAF

Front Side	
Top Cover (Inside) Roll Cover (Inside) Carriage Ink Tank Cover (Inside)	
Control Panel	

Front



a Roll Cover

Open this cover to load rolls. (See "Roll Cover (Inside).") →P.482

b Paper Feed Slot

When loading paper, insert it here.

c Roll Ledge

When loading rolls, rest the Roll Holder here before loading it in the Roll Holder Slot.

d Release Lever

When releasing the Paper Retainer, push this lever back.

e Control Panel

Use this panel to operate the printer and check the printer status. (See "Control Panel.") **>**P.438

f Ink Tank Cover

Open this cover to replace an Ink Tank. (See "Ink Tank Cover (Inside).") →P.483

Printer Parts

g Paper Alignment Line

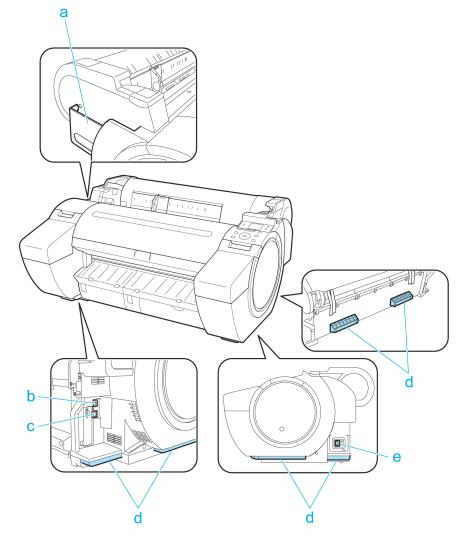
An orange line for alignment of paper.

h	Maintenance Cartridge Cover
	Open this cover to replace the Maintenance Cartridge.
i	Maintenance Cartridge
	Absorbs ink used for maintenance purposes such as head cleaning. (Replace the cartridge when it is full.)
j	Cutter Unit
	A round-bladed cutter for automatic roll cutting.
k	Cutter Rail
	The Cutter Unit passes over this rail to cut paper.
Ι	Output Tray
	All printed documents are ejected from this slot.
m	Ejection Guide
	Supports output paper.
n	Top Cover
	Open this cover to install the Printhead and remove any jammed paper from inside the printer, as needed. (See "Top Cover (Inside).") P.481
ο	Width Guide
	When loading the sheets, move the guide to match the paper size.
р	Stand (Optional)
	A stand that holds the printer. Equipped with casters to facilitate moving it. (See "Stand.") →P.489
	• The Stand is normally offered as an optional accessory, but it may be provided as a standard accessory in some sales



The Stand is normally offered as an optional accessory, but it may be provided as a standard accessory in some sales regions.

Side



a Manual Pocket

Store printer manuals in this pocket.

b Ethernet Port

Connect an Ethernet cable to this port.

c USB Port

Connect a USB cable to this port. The printer is compatible with Hi-Speed USB connections.

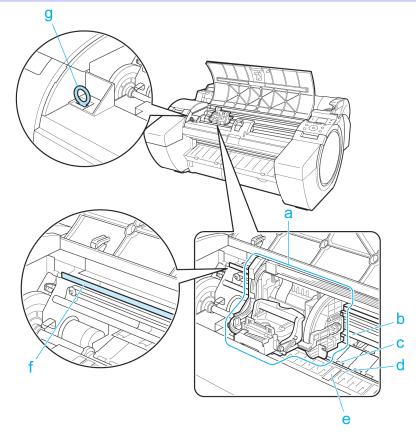
d Carrying Handles

When carrying the printer, have three people hold it by these handles on the back at both ends. Grasp these parts on the left and right sides also when moving the printer with the stand attached.

e Power Supply Connector

Connect the power cord to this connector.

Top Cover (Inside)



a Carriage

Moves the Printhead. The carriage serves a key role in printing. (See "Carriage.") → P.482

b Carriage Shaft

The Carriage slides along this shaft.

c Paper Retainer

Important in supplying the paper. This retainer holds paper as it is fed.

d Platen

The Printhead moves across the platen to print. Vacuum holes on the platen hold paper in place.

e Borderless Printing Ink Grooves

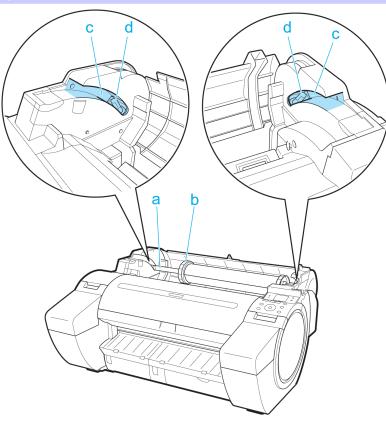
For catching ink outside the edges of paper during borderless printing.

f Linear Scale

The linear scale serves a key role in detecting the Carriage position. Be careful not to touch this part when cleaning inside the Top Cover or clearing paper jams.

g Cleaning Brush

When cleaning inside the printer under the Top Cover, use this brush to sweep away paper dust on the Platen.



a Roll Holder

Load the roll on this holder.

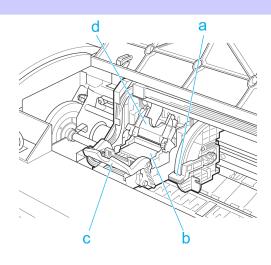
b Holder Stopper

Secure rolls on the Roll Holder with this part.

- c Roll Loading Slots Slide the Roll Holder along these slots.
- d Roll Holder Slot

Load the Roll Holder into this holder slot.

Carriage



Printer parts

a Angle Adjustment Lever

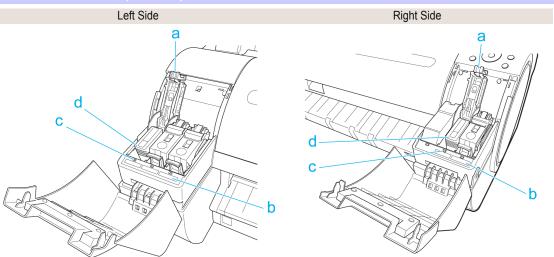
Use this lever to fine-tune the printer to correct misalignment of printed lines.

b Printhead

The printhead is equipped with ink nozzles. The carriage serves a key role in printing.

- c Printhead Fixer Lever Locks the Printhead Fixer Cover.
- d Printhead Fixer Cover Holds the Printhead in place.

Ink Tank Cover (Inside)



a Ink Tank Lock Lever

A lever that locks the Ink Tank in place and protects it. Lift and press down the lever when replacing an Ink Tank.

b Ink Color Label

Load an Ink Tank that matches the color and name on this label.

c Ink Lamp (Red)

Indicates the state of the Ink Tank as follows when the Ink Tank Cover is opened.

• On

The Ink Tank is installed correctly.

• Off

No Ink Tank is installed, or the ink level detection function has been released.

- Flashing Slowly Not much ink is left.
- Flashing Rapidly There is no ink left.
- d Ink Tank

Cartridges of ink in various colors.

Hard Disk

Printer Hard Disk Operations	484
Checking the Free Hard Disk Space Erasing Data on the Printer's Hard Disk	

Printer Hard Disk Operations

Printer hard disk operations are available from the following programs and interfaces.

- Printer driver
- Free Layout
- Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy
- Preview
- imagePROGRAF Status Monitor
- imagePROGRAF Printmonitor
- RemoteUI
- Control Panel

The hard disk operations available through each interface are as follows.

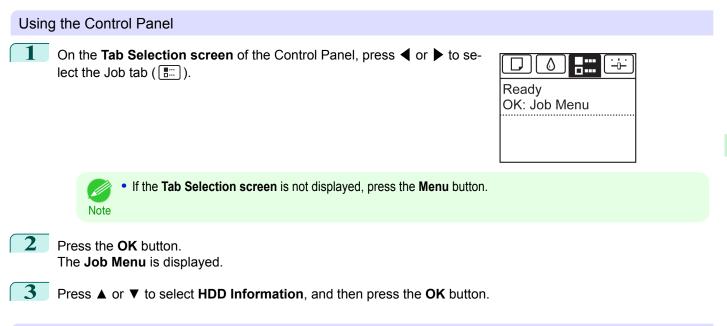
Oper	ration	 Printer driver Free Layout Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Preview 	 imagePROGRAF Sta- tus Monitor imagePROGRAF Print- monitor 	RemoteUI	Control Pan- el
Saving print jobs	Save in mail box	Yes	No	No	No
	Do Not Save Print Jobs No No in the Common Box No No	No	No	Yes	
	Save print jobs sent from sources other than the printer driver	No	No	No	Yes
Operations with saved	Print saved jobs	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
jobs	Delete saved jobs	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Job queue management	Display job queue	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Delete	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Preempt Jobs	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Operations with held jobs	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Mail box management	Move saved jobs	No	Yes	Yes	No
	Modify saved jobs	No	Yes	Yes	No
	Modify mail boxes	No	Yes	YesYesYesYesYesNo	
	Print a list of saved jobs	No	No	No	Yes
	Display a list of saved jobs	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Other operations	Display free hard disk space	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Initialize hard disk	No	No	No	Yes
	Display the time of print- ing	No	Yes	Yes	Yes

Operation	 Printer driver Free Layout Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Preview 	 imagePROGRAF Sta- tus Monitor imagePROGRAF Print- monitor 	RemoteUI	Control Pan- el
Display error messages	No	Yes	Yes	Yes

Checking the Free Hard Disk Space

Check the space available on the printer's hard disk as follows.

This operation is available from the Control Panel, in RemoteUI, imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, and imagePROG-RAF Printmonitor.



Using RemoteUI

To view the box list, select **Stored Job** in Job Management. On the **Stored Job** page, the free hard disk space is shown in the upper-right corner when boxes are listed.

<mark>2</mark> Remote UI	🤧 iPFxxxx			
English language	Stored Job		Last Update	d :xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx 💈 ?
End-User Mode Log Out	Inbox List			Hard Disk Free Space : xx.xGB
	Inbox No.	Inbox Name		Document Count
▶Device Manager	00 🖻	Common mail box		69
▼Job Manager	 01	Box 1		5
Print Job	01	2011		-
Stored Job	02	Box 2		0
Print Log	0 3	Box 3		0
Device Selection		2013		·
	04	Box 4		0
Support Links	05	Box 5		0

For details, refer to the RemoteUI help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor

The Hard Disk sheet shows the free hard disk space.

ption Accounting He Printer Status 📊 Job	Accounting 🕄 Hard Disk 🗊 Information	Maintenance 🖓 Support
Mail Boxes :		
Inbox No.	Inbox name	
殿 00	Common Box	
61		
<u></u> 02		
<u>-</u> 03		
<u>50</u> 04		
<u>50</u> 05		E
<u></u> 06		
5 07		
<u></u>		
<u></u>		
<u>- 10</u>		
5 11 5 12		
5 12 5 13		
5 13 5 14		
5 15		
5 16		
5 17		
18		
- 19		-
		2
Hard disk Information		Ope <u>n</u>
Hard disk Information		
Status :	Usable	

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor

The Hard Disk pane shows the free hard disk space.

Printer Ready.		K.XXX.XXX		
	Ready.			
	Driver Hard Disk	Utility Suppor	t	
	Hard disk info			
# 2	Status : Usab	le	Move	Set
	Free space : xx.x:	K GB	Move	Set
Inbox No./Name	Document	User	Source	Pa
🕨 0 👝 Common B	Box			
v 1 👝				
	sample5.jpg	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample4.jpg	XXXXXXXX	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample3.jpg	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample2.jpg	XXXXXXXX	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample1.jpg	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
▶ 2 <u>-</u>	Sample 1.jpg		.ton ruper	
► 3 <u>~</u>				

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

Erasing Data on the Printer's Hard Disk

When erasing all data on the hard disk, choose from the following three options. This operation is only available from the Control Panel.

Erasure Method	Details
High Speed	Erases file management data for print job data stored on the printer's hard disk. Choose this method for relatively fast erasure. Because only the file management data is erased, the print job data itself is not erased. Note that it may be possible to read this data using commercial data recovery software.

Hard Disk

685		Erasing Data on the Printer's Hard L	
Erasure Method	Deta	ails	
Secure High Spd.	Overwrites the entire hard disk with random data. No verification is performed to check if the data was correctly written. Choose this method to erase highly confidential data. Note that it may be possible to read the overwritten data using specialized data recovery tools.		
Secure	Overwrites the entire hard disk with 00, FF, and randor check if the data was correctly written. Choose this me ally impossible to recover the overwritten data. Conforr partment of Defense.	ethod to erase especially confidential data. It is virtu-	
Important disk. In this • Erase HDI	e secure method of preventing data recovery, we recome s case, the hard disk can no longer be used. D Data is not available if there is a job queue. y, print jobs are not processed during execution of Eras		
	ection screen of the Control Panel, press ◀ or s/Adj. tab ().	▶ to se- Ready OK:Setting/Adj. Menu Maint.C Remain.: 80% Tot.Print Area(m2): 678.0	
Note • If th	ne Tab Selection screen is not displayed, press the Me	enu button.	
Press the OK b The Set./Adj. N	utton. lenu is displayed.		
B Press ▲ or ▼ t	o select System Setup, and then press the OK I	button.	
Press ▲ or ▼ t	o select Erase HDD Data , and then press the OI	K button.	
5 Press ▲ or ▼ t the confirmation	o select High Speed , Secure High Spd. , or Sec า screen.	cure , and then press the OK button to display	
Note wor • As	password has been set on the printer, the Admin.Pswo rd and press the OK button to go to the next step. for the time required for deletion, confirm it on the Contrastinishes in several seconds.		

6 Press \blacktriangle or \lor to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button to start erasure. After the printer hard disk is erased, the printer automatically restarts.

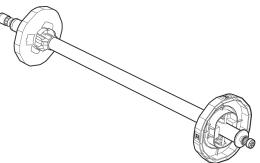
Optional accessories

Roll Holder Set	488
Stand	489

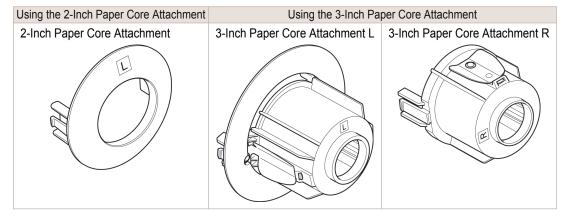
Roll Holder Set

Load a roll on the roll holder and then load the holder in the printer. The Roll Holder in the Roll Holder Set RH2-33 is for use with both 2-inch and 3-inch paper cores. Use the correct attachment for the particular paper core. (See "Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls.") \rightarrow P.372

- Roll Holder Set RH2-33
 - Roll Holder (for 2- and 3-inch paper cores)



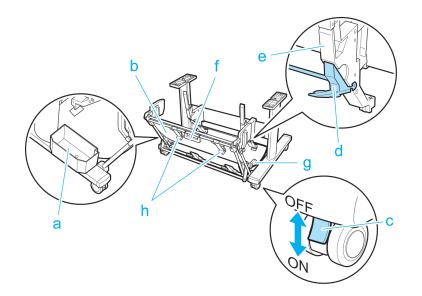
Attachments



Stand

When using an optional Stand, you can store and stack documents printed on rolls.

Printer Stand ST-27



- a Accessory Pocket Stores printer accessories.
- **b** Output Stacker

Printed documents are ejected into the output tray.

c Locking Caster

Lock to immobilize the caster.

Before moving the printer, always unlock all four casters. Moving the printer while casters are locked may scratch the casters or the floor.

d Adjustable Stopper

Pull out depending on the paper size when using the output stacker in the Extended position A. For details on the extended position, see "Using the Output Stacker." (>P.401)

e Paper Guide

Guides printed documents into the output stacker.

f Output stacker handle

This handle is grasped and supports the sliding output stacker when putting the output stacker into Extended position B and returning it to the regular position.

For details on the extended position, see "Using the Output Stacker." (>P.401)

g Output stacker release lever

Pull this lever towards you to release Extended position B. For details on the extended position, see "Using the Output Stacker." →P.401

h Output Stacker Ejection Guides

This guide supports the paper that is output when using the output stacker in Extended position B.

- The Stand that can be used with this printer is Printer Stand ST-27 and Printer Stand ST-26.
- The Stand is normally offered as an optional accessory, but either one or the other of the Stand may be included as a standard accessory in some sales regions and periods.
 - The output stacker of the Printer Stand ST-26 has a regular position and an Extended position A. For details on the extended position, see "Using the Output Stacker." →P401
 - The Stand is described in the illustration of Printer Stand ST-27. Note that the illustrations may look different from the appearance of your printer in some cases.

iPF685

User's Guide

Basic Printing Workflow	15
Enhanced Printing Options	31
Windows Software	157
Mac OS Software	277
Handling and Use of Paper	361
Control Panel	437
Printer Parts	477

Network Setting

Network Environment	492
Using RemoteUI	494
Initial Settings	496
Mac OS Settings	504
Other Settings	505
Device Setup Utility (Windows)	508

Print Job Management	511
Adjustments for Better Print Quality	573
Maintenance and Consumables	589
Troubleshooting	627
Error Message	657
Specifications	681
Appendix	685

Network Environment

Network Environment

System requirements

The system requirements, which vary depending on your network, are as follows.

• Printing over a TCP/IP network (when using IPv4)

- · Compatible operating systems
 - Windows XP
 - Windows Server 2003
 - Windows Vista
 - Windows Server 2008
 - Windows 7
 - Windows 8
 - Windows Server 2003 x64
 - Windows Vista x64
 - Windows Server 2008 x64
 - Windows Server 2012 x64
 - Windows 7 x64
 - Windows 8 x64
 - OS X v10.6.8 or later
 - Unix (Solaris 9)
 - Unix (Red Hat 9)

Printing over a TCP/IP network (when using IPv6)

- Compatible operating systems
 - Windows Vista
 - Windows Server 2008
 - Windows 7
 - Windows 8
 - Windows Vista x64
 - Windows Server 2008 x64
 - Windows Server 2012 x64
 - Windows 7 x64
 - Windows 8 x64
 - OS X v10.6.8 or later

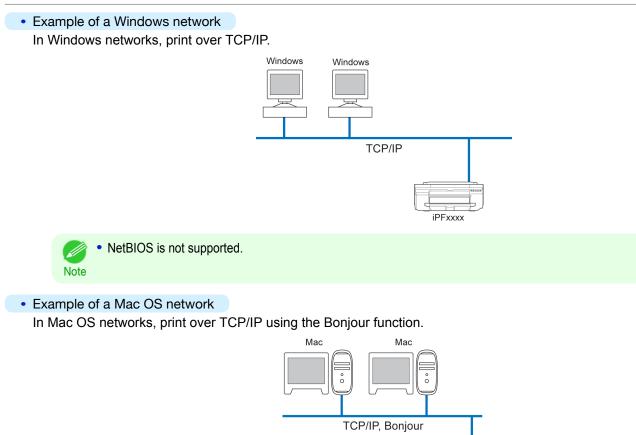


 When using IPv6, you must specify IPv6 on the Control Panel or in RemoteUI. For instructions, "Configuring TCP/ IPv6 Network Settings" → P.499 or see "Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings With RemoteUI." → P.500

• The imagePROGRAF printer driver is not compatible with Unix.

Network Environment

After confirming what type of network environment you will connect the printer to, set up the printer and computers as needed. For the specifications of the network interface, see "Specifications."
P.682



iPFxxxx

Using RemoteUI

Using RemoteUI

RemoteUI is software with which you can access the printer via the network from your Web browser to confirm the printer status, operate jobs, and configure the settings. Since the software (Web server) for using RemoteUI is built in the printer, preparing software other than a Web browser is unnecessary. You can use RemoteUI if an imagePROG-RAF printer on a network is connected to your computer. If you start your Web browser and specify the IP address of the printer, the RemoteUI screen is displayed, and you can use RemoteUI.



• To use RemoteUI, an IP address must be set on the printer in advance. For the method of setting an IP address, see "Configuring the IP Address on the Printer." (>P.496)

What You Can Do With RemoteUI

With RemoteUI, you can access the printer via a network, configure network settings, and display the current status of the printer, various types of information, the processing status of jobs, etc.

Using RemoteU

Starting RemoteUI

Start RemoteUI by the following operations.

- Start your Web browser.
- 2 Enter the following URL in Address or Location. http://printer IP address or name/ Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx/
- 3 The RemoteUI screen is displayed.

긴 Remote UI	🤗 iPFxxxx					
	Status				Last Updated :00000	a'na na na na 🖉 🥈
Administrator Mode						
Log Out	Ready to print	t.				
Device Manager						Error Information
Status Information Features Network		Copy	on xx.xx right CANON IN ights Reserved	С. хэхх		
Job Manager Device Selection			r Name : iP	Fxxxx		
Support Links						
	Paper Information Manual feed tray Roll 1		Ĵ	Unknown Unknown 36x48 Glossy Paper		
	Ink Levels					
	Left	_		Right		_
	(C) 80%	(M) 100%	(Y) 80%	(MBK) 100%	(MBK) 100%	(BK) 100%
	Maintenance cartri	ige free space 60% i		,		
	Utility Devic	e Control				



Configuring the Network With RemoteUI

Note

For details on configuring printer settings for networks, refer to the following topics.

- Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings With RemoteUI → P.500
- Specifying Printer-Related Information → P.505



Note

• For the Web browser, use Netscape Navigator 6.0 or later, Internet Explorer 5.01 or later, or Firefox 1.5 or later. For Mac OS X, Safari 1.32 or later or 2.03 or later also is supported.

- This cannot be used connected via a proxy server. In environments where a proxy server is used, add the printer's IP address to **Exceptions** (addresses accessed without a proxy server) in the web browser proxy server settings. (Settings may vary depending on the network environment.)
- Enable JavaScript and cookies in the web browser.
- If you access RemoteUI with the printer name instead of its IP address, make sure the DNS settings are correctly configured.
- Depending on the network environment, you may not be able to start RemoteUI.
- Confirm whether System Setup > Use RemoteUI is set to On on the Control Panel of the printer.
- RemoteUI also offers many other features. You can display the ink levels, check error messages and other status information, and cancel print jobs.
- By factory default, the English screen is displayed. To change the display language, select the desired language under **Language** before logging on in administrator mode.
- If you login in Administrator Mode, you can configure to use the Jumbo Frame function in the **Network** page. However, this function might not be able to be used depending on the network environment.

Initial Settings

Configuring the IP Address on the Printer Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel Configuring the IP Address Using ARP and PING Commands	. 508 . 496
Configuring TCP/IPv6 Network Settings	. 499
Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Windows) Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Mac OS)	
Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings With RemoteUI	. 500

Configuring the IP Address on the Printer

You must configure the printer's IP address before using the printer in a TCP/IP network.

The printer's IP address is configured automatically when you install the printer driver following the instructions in the Setup Guide.

Configure the IP address by using **imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility**, the printer Control Panel, or ARP or PING commands, if the IP address is changed, or if you change the printer connection mode to a network connection. For details on configuring the IP address, refer to the following topics.

- Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility →P508 (Windows)
- Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel → P.496
- Configuring the IP Address Using ARP and PING Commands →P.497



If you use a DHCP server for automatic assignment of the printer's IP address, printing may no longer be possible
after the printer is turned off and on. This is because an IP address different from before has been assigned. Thus,
when using DHCP server functions, consult your network administrator and configure the settings in one of the following ways.

· Configure the setting for dynamic DNS updating

In the printer menu, either set **DNS Dync update** to **On**, or activate the setting **Enable DNS Dynamic Update** in RemoteUI.

(See "Menu Settings.") →P.459

(See "Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings With RemoteUI.") →P.500

. Configure the setting for assignment of the same IP address each time the printer starts up

 We recommend configuring the printer's IP address even if you will use the printer in networks other than TCP/IP networks. Configuring the printer's IP address enables you to use RemoteUI to configure the network settings and manage the printer with a web browser.

For details on RemoteUI, see "Using RemoteUI." →P.494

Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel

This topic describes how to configure the printer's IP address on the Control Panel.

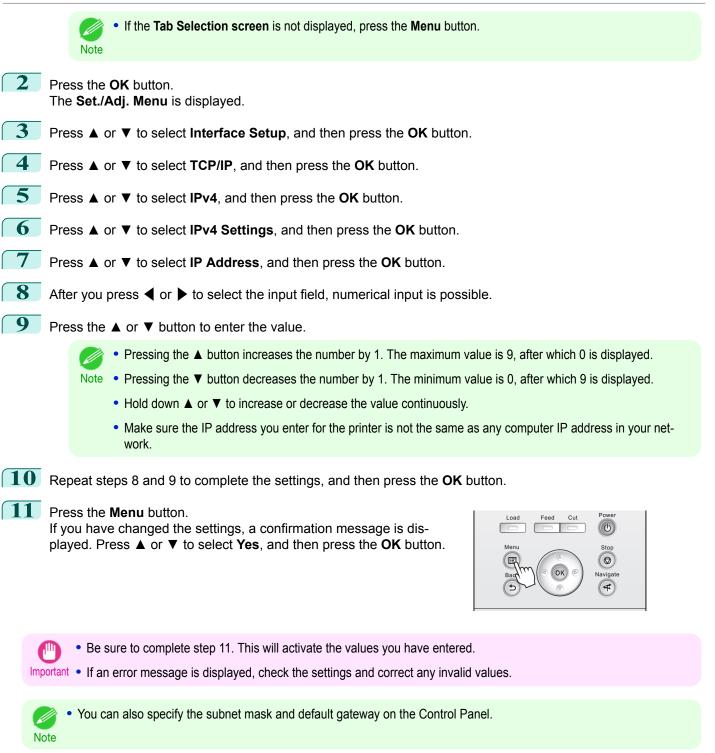


496

On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab (:).



Ready OK:Setting/Adj. Menu Maint.C Remain.: 80% Tot.Print Area(m2): 678.0



Configuring the IP Address Using ARP and PING Commands

This topic describes how to configure the IP address using ARP and PING commands.

0

....

678.0

To use the ARP and PING commands, you will need to know the printer's MAC address. You can confirm the MAC address on the Control Panel.



Check the printer's MAC address. You can confirm the MAC address on the Control Panel as follows: 1. On the Tab Selection screen of the Control Panel, press 4 or 🕨 to select the Settings/Adj. tab (---). Ready OK:Setting/Adj. Menu Maint.C Remain.: 80% Tot.Print Area(m2): Press the OK button. The Set./Adj. Menu is displayed. 3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select Interface Setup, and then press the OK button. **4.** Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Ethernet Driver**, and then press the **OK** button. 5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select MAC Address, and then press the OK button. If the Tab Selection screen is not displayed, press the Menu button. Note • You can investigate the MAC address by printing an interface setting report. (See "Printing Interface Setting Reports.") →P.473 In Windows, open a command prompt, or in Mac OS, start Terminal.

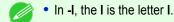
3 Execute the following command to add entries to the ARP table for managing IP addresses and corresponding MAC addresses.

arp -s [IP address] [the printer's MAC address you have verified] Example: arp -s xxx.xxx.xxx 00-1E-8F-xx-xx-xx



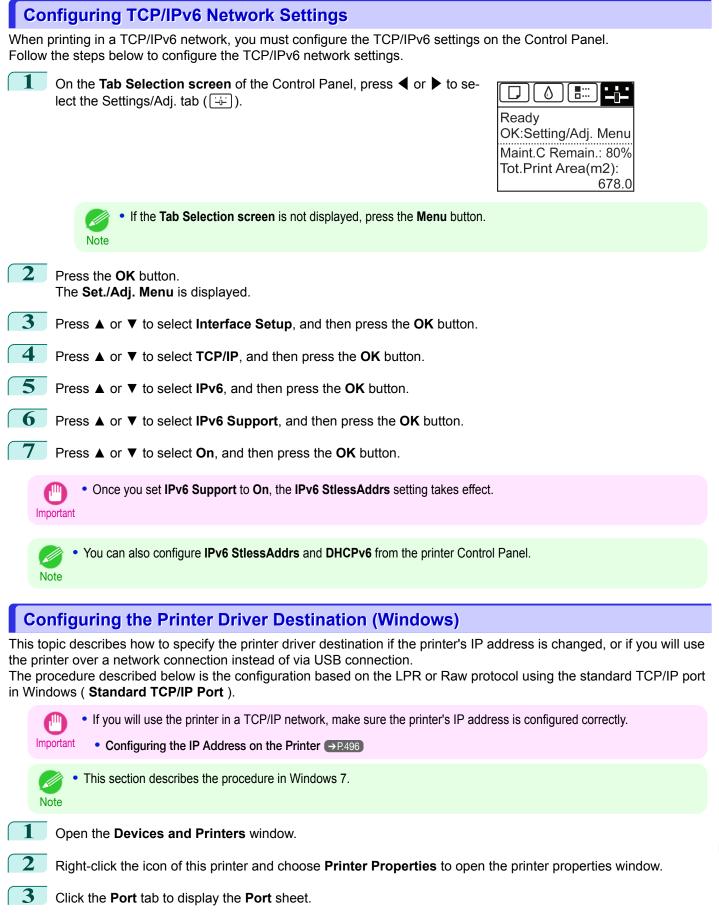
 In Mac OS when using Terminal, enter the arp command in the format arp -s xxx.xxx.xxx 00:1E: 8F:xx:xx:xx. For details, refer to the help file for the command line.

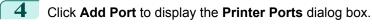
4 Execute the following command to send the IP address to the printer and configure it. ping [IP address as specified in the ARP command] -I 479 Example: ping xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx -I 479



- In Mac OS when using Terminal, enter the ping command in the format ping -s 479 xxx.xxx.xxx. For de-Note tails, refer to the help file for the command line.
- The subnet mask and default gateway are set to 0.0.0.0. Use RemoteUI to change the subnet mask and default gateway to match your network settings. Note For details on RemoteUI, see "Using RemoteUI." →P.494)







- 5 In the Available Port list, select Standard TCP/IP Port.
- 6 Click New Port.

After the wizard starts, a window is displayed for the Welcome to the Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard.

- 7 Click Next.
- 8 In **Printer Name or IP Address**, enter the printer's IP address. If the DNS is configured, you can also enter the DNS Domain Name.
- 9 Follow the instructions on the screen to add a printer port.
- $oxed{10}$ Click Close to close the Printer Ports dialog box.
- 11 Make sure the printer port you added is displayed under **Ports**, and that the port is selected.
- **12** Click **Close** to close the printer properties window.

Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Mac OS)

Specify the printer driver destination as follows if the printer's IP address is changed, or if you will use the printer over a network connection instead of via USB connection.

- If you switch to printing in a TCP/IP network, or if the printer's IP address is changed, see "Configuring the Destination in TCP/IP Networks ." → P.504
- If you switch to printing in a Bonjour network, see "Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network ." (→P.504)

Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings With RemoteUI

Follow the steps below to configure the TCP/IP network settings.

When using an IPv4 IP address

Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.

http://printer IP address or name/

Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx/

2 Select Administrator Mode and click Logon.

• If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.

- 3 Click Network in the Device Manager menu at left to display the Network page.
- Click Edit in the upper-right corner of the TCP/IPv4 group to display the Edit TCP/IP Protocol Settings page.

5 Refer to the TCP/IP Settings Items table to complete the settings.

TCP/IP Settings Items

Note

Item	Details	Default Setting
Use DHCP	Activate this setting to use DHCP for configuring the IP address.	Off
Use BOOTP	Activate this setting to use BOOTP for configuring the IP address.	Off

Item	Details	Default Setting
Use RARP	Activate this setting to use RARP for configuring the IP address.	Off
Enable DNS Dynamic Update	Activate this setting to perform DNS server registration automatically.	Off
Use Zeroconf Func- tion	Activate this setting to use Bonjour.	On
IP Address	Specify the printer's IP address.	0.0.0.0
Subnet Mask	Specify the printer's subnet mask.	0.0.0.0
Gateway Address	Specify the printer's default gateway.	0.0.0.0
LPD Printing	Activate this setting to use LDP Printing.	On
IPP Printing	Activate this setting to use IPP Printing.	On
IPP Printer URI	Specify the URI of the printer used for IPP printing using up to 252 characters.	printer
RAW Printing	Activate this setting to use Raw Printing.	On
RAW Mode Bi-direc- tion	Activate this setting to use Raw mode bidirectional communication.	Off
FTP Printing	Activate this setting to use FTP Printing.	On
Use Discovery	Activate this setting to use SLP Discovery function.	On
Scope	Enter the SLP search range.	default
SMTP Server Address	Specify the SMTP server's IP address. You can also specify the SMTP server domain name, if desired.	0.0.0.0
Primary DNS Server Address	Specify the IP address of the primary DNS server.	0.0.0.0
Secondary DNS Serv- er Address	Specify the IP address of the secondary DNS server.	0.0.0.0
DNS Host Name	Specify the printer host name, up to 63 characters (1–63 characters). Use sin- gle-byte letters, numbers, and - (hyphens). Do not use numbers or - for the first character or - for the last character.	NB-18GBipxxxxx
DNS Domain Name	Specify the printer domain name, up to 63 characters. Use single-byte letters, numbers, - (hyphens), and . (periods). Do not use numbers, -, or . for the first character, or - or . for the last character.	blank
Multicast DNS Serv- ice Name	Specify the printer's Multicast DNS service name. (1–63 characters) This name will be displayed when Bonjour functions are used.	Canon iPFxxxx (xxxxxx)

6 Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.

- If you specify to configure the IP address using DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP, there must be a server that supports such protocol running in the network.
- If you specify to configure the IP address using DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP, the IP address obtained by this method is used first. If you cannot obtain the IP address, the address specified in **IP Address** is used.
- It takes up to two minutes to determine whether DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP are available. We recommend clearing check boxes of options you will not use.
- If you are using a DNS server, select Enable DNS Dynamic Update and enter the IP Address for DNS servers and DNS domain name in Primary DNS Server Address, Secondary DNS Server Address and DNS Domain Name, respectively.

Note

1

Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.

http://printer IP address or name/

Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/

2 Select Administrator Mode and click Logon.



• If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.

- 3 Click Network in the Device Manager menu at left to display the Network page.
- 4 Click Edit in the upper-right corner of the TCP/IPv6 group to display the Edit TCP/IPv6 Protocol Settings page.
- **5** Refer to the TCP/IPv6 Settings Items table to complete the settings.

TCP/IPv6 Settings Items

Item		Details	Default Setting
Use IPv6		Activate to enable IPv6.	Off
Use DHCPv6		Activate when using a DHCPv6 server to acquire the IP address.	Off
Use a stateles	ss address	Activate when using an IPv6-compatible router to acquire the IP address.	On
Use a manual	address	Activate when configuring the IP address manually.	Off
	IP Address	Enter the printer's IP address.	::
	Prefix Length	Enter the IP address prefix length.	
	Default Router Ad- dress	Enter the default router address.	::
	Prefix Length	Enter the prefix length of the default router address.	
Primary DNS	Server Address	Specify the IP address of the primary DNS server.	::
Secondary DI	NS Server Address	Specify the IP address of the secondary DNS server.	::
Use the same host name and domain name as IPv4		Activate when using the same DNS host and domain names as for IPv4.	Off
	DNS Host Name	Specify the printer host name, up to 63 characters (1–63 charac- ters). Use single-byte letters, numbers, and - (hyphens). Do not use numbers or - for the first character or - for the last character.	NB-18GBip6xxxxx
	DNS Domain Name	Specify the printer domain name, up to 63 characters. Use sin- gle-byte letters, numbers, - (hyphens), and . (periods). Do not use numbers, -, or . for the first character, or - or . for the last character.	blank
Perform dynamic updating of stateful addresses		Activate this setting to automatically register the stateful address with the DNS server.	Off
Dynamically update the stateless ad- dress		Activate this setting to automatically register the stateless ad- dress with the DNS server.	Off
Dynamically update the manual ad- dress		Activate this setting to automatically register the manual address with the DNS server.	Off
			Off

6 Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.



If you are using a DNS server, select **Enable DNS Dynamic Update** and enter the IP Address for DNS servers and DNS domain name in **Primary DNS Server Address**, **Secondary DNS Server Address** and **DNS Domain Name**, respectively.

Mac OS Settings

Configuring the Destination in TCP/IP Networks	
Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network	504

Configuring the Destination in TCP/IP Networks

If you use the printer in a TCP/IP network, register the printer in **Print & Scan** (This is identified as **Printers & Scanners** or **Print & Fax** in other versions of Mac OS.) in the Mac OS **System Preferences**.



• For details on how to register a printer using a TCP/IP network, see the OS User Manual.



 If you use the printer in a TCP/IP network, make sure the printer's IP address is configured correctly. (See "Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel.")

 PP.496

Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network

If you use the printer in a network that uses the Bonjour function, register the printer in **Print & Scan** (This is identified as **Printers & Scanners** or **Print & Fax** in other versions of Mac OS.) in the Mac OS **System Preferences**.



• For details on how to register a printer using Bonjour, see the OS User Manual.



 Bonjour and IP Print (Auto) do not support printing to a printer on other network groups that require a router for connection. Make sure the computer and printer are on the same network. For information about network settings, ask your network administrator.

• By default, Bonjour is activated on the printer. You can activate or deactivate the Bonjour function or change the printer name by using RemoteUI. For instructions on changing it, see "Using RemoteUI." →P.494

504

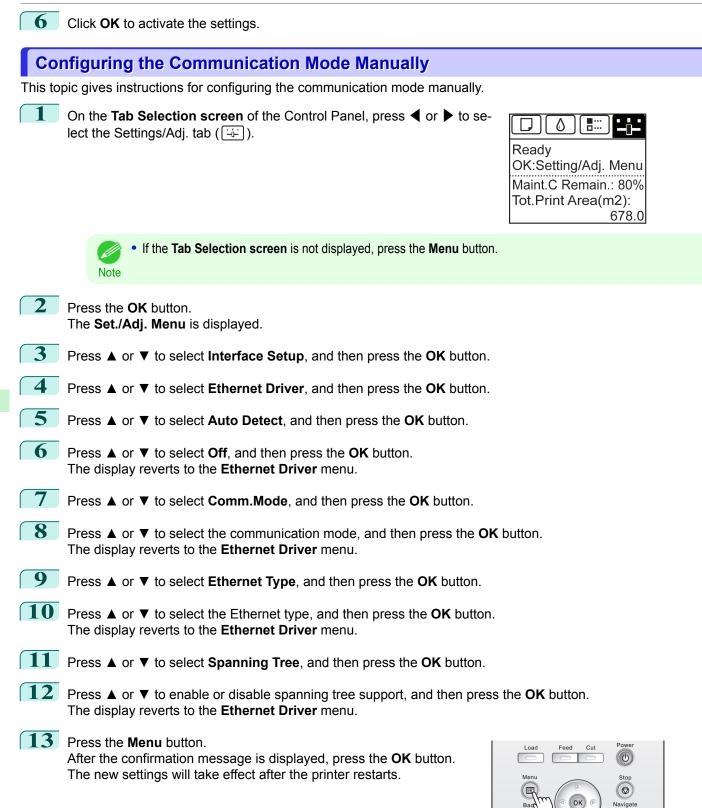
iPF685

177000			Specifying Printer-Related Information
0	ther Settings		
Cc En	onfiguring the Communication Mod nail Notification When Printing is Fir	n le Manually nished or Errors Occur	
Spe	ecifying Printer-Related	Information	
Follow	the steps below to specify device	information and security settings.	
1	Start the web browser and enter page. http://printer IP address or name Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx/	the following URL in the Location (or Address)) box to display the RemoteUI
2	Select Administrator Mode and	l click Logon .	
	• If a password has been Note	n set on the printer, enter the password.	
3	Click Information in the Device	Manager menu at left to display the Information	n page.
4	depending on what information y	bage, click Edit in the upper-right corner of Devic you want to specify. sword, click the Change Password button in the	-
5		device information and security as you complete yed when you click the Change Password button	
	Device Information Settings		
	Item Device Name	Details Enter a device name. (0–32 characters)	Default Setting blank
	Location	Enter the location where the device is installed. (0–32 characters)	blank
	Administrator	Enter the administrator's name. (0–32 characters)	blank
	Phone	Enter the administrator's contact information. (0–32 characters)	blank
	Comments(E-mail)	Enter any comments regarding the administrator.	blank

Security Settings

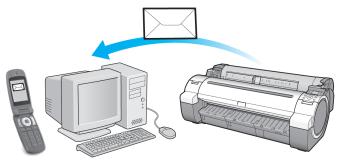
Item	Details	Default Setting
New Password	Enter the new password. (0-9999999)	blank
Confirm	Enter the new password again to confirm it. (0-9999999)	blank

*1:On the **Security** settings screen, besides entering a password, you can specify other security-related information, such as IP address-based SNMP or TCP usage restrictions, MAC address-based access restrictions, or IPP and FTP authentication 505 settings.



Email Notification When Printing is Finished or Errors Occur

The printer can notify you of the printer status by email. Even when you are away from the printer, you can know when printing is finished or if errors occur. Receive notification via email on your mobile phone or at your computer.



Use the **imagePROGRAF Status Monitor** (Windows) function to set up email recipients and message timing. Besides being informed of finished print jobs or errors, you can also complete settings for email notification when service is needed or it's time to replace consumables. For detailed instructions, see "Specifying Printer-Related Information." (>P.505)



- For details on email notification using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (in Windows), refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help.
- Mail server authentication is only supported with imagePROGRAF Status Monitor.

Initializing the Network Settings

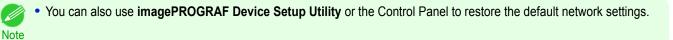
Note

Use RemoteUI to restore the network settings to the default values as follows.

- Initializing the network settings will also restore the default value of the printer's IP address. As a result, the RemoteUI page cannot be displayed in the web browser after this procedure.
 For instructions on reconfiguring the IP address, see "Configuring the IP Address on the Printer." (PR496)
 - For details on RemoteUI, see "Using RemoteUI." → P.494
- Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the Location (or Address) box to display the RemoteUI page. http://printer IP address or name/ Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx/
 Select Administrator Mode and click Logon.

If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.

- **3** Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.
- 4 Click Reset to Default settings in the lower-right corner of the Network Interface group.
- 5 After confirming the message, click **OK** to restore the network settings to the default values.



Device Setup Utility (Windows)

imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility	
Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility	508
Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility	508

imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility is a utility to establish communication between the printer and your computer by completing relevant settings. After the printer is installed, for example, you can use **imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility** to complete the network settings initially.



- Starting imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility will show a list of printers found on the network. In this list, select
 the printer (specifically, the printer's MAC address) that you want to set up, and then configure the basic settings
 from your computer, such as the printer's IP address and the network frame type.
- You can see which printers are online in the network by checking the printer list. Communication between your computer and these printers is possible.



• We recommend that your network or printer administrator complete the setup work using **imagePROGRAF Device** Setup Utility.

• For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility help.

Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

Install imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility from the User Software CD-ROM provided with the printer as follows:

- **1** Insert the User Software CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.
- 2 On the Setup Menu window, click Install Individual Software.
- 3 Click Install in imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.
- Follow the instructions on the screen to proceed with the installation.

Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

On a computer running Windows, you can use **imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility** provided with the printer to configure the printer's IP address. This topic describes how to configure the IP address using **imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility**.



• To configure network settings, you must be logged in with administrative rights such as **Administrator** account. We recommend that your network administrator configure the network settings.



• For instructions on installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility, see "Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility." → P508

When specifying an IPv4 IP address

1 Start imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility from the start menu.

l imagePROG	RAF Device Setup l	Jtility						Þ
rinter Yew Op	ction Help							
Printer	Device Name	Status	Product Name	Location	IP Address	Setting IP Address	MAC Address	
🗐 IPv4 🗐 IPv6	iPExpox	Usable				Manual		
到 IPv6								
	1							
bject(s)								

2 In the **Device Name** list displayed, select the printer to configure.

- 3 Choose Protocol Settings from the Printer menu.
- 4 Select the **IPv4** tab.

Protocol Settings	
Set the protocol information	on for the network interface board, then click Set.
Device Name: xxxxx Location: xxxxx	
IPv4 IPv6	
Frame Type:	ETHERNET II
Setting IP Address:	Manual
	E RARP E BOOTP E DHCP
I <u>P</u> Address:	XXX . XXX . XXX . XXX
Subnet <u>M</u> ask:	XXX . XXX . XXX . XXX
<u>G</u> ateway Address:	XXX . XXX . XXX . XXX
	Set Cancel <u>H</u> elp

Network Setting

5	In the Setting IP Address list, choose Manual.
6	Enter the IP address assigned to the printer and click the Set button.
7	Click OK after the Confirmation message is displayed.

- **8** Exit imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.
 - To configure the IP address automatically, choose Auto in the Setting IP Address list and select DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP.
 - You can also specify the subnet mask and default gateway.

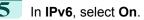
When specifying an IPv6 IP address

1 Start imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility from the start menu.

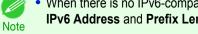
yinter Ylew	Option Help							
Printer	Device Name	Status	Product Name	Location	IP Address	Setting IP Address	MAC Address	
IPv4	iPExpox	Usable	iPExxxx			Manual		
IPv6								

- **2** In the **Device Name** list displayed, select the printer to configure.
- 3 Choose Protocol Settings from the Printer menu.
- Select the IPv6 tab.

Protocol Settings		
Set the protocol information	on for the networ	ik interface board, then click Set.
Device Name: xxxxx Location: xxxxx		
IPv4 IPv6		
IPv6:	🔿 On	• Off
Stateless <u>A</u> ddress:	⊙ On	C Off
<u>M</u> anual:	🔿 On	© Off
I <u>P</u> v6 Address:		
Prefix Length:	64	
D <u>e</u> fault Router Address:		
Pre <u>f</u> ix Length:	64	
DHCP <u>v</u> 6:	O On	© Off
Stateful Address:		
Link-Local Address:		
	<u>S</u> et	Cancel <u>H</u> elp



When there is an IPv6-compatible router in the network environment, select On in Stateless Address. Additionally, when there is an DHCPv6-compatible server in the network environment, select On in DHCPv6.



When there is no IPv6-compatible router or DHCPv6-compatible server, select On in Manual and enter the IPv6 Address and Prefix Length.

- 7 Click Set.
- 8 Click OK after the Confirmation message is displayed.
 - 9 Exit imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

iPF685

User's Guide

Basic Printing Workflow	15
Enhanced Printing Options	31
Windows Software	157
Mac OS Software	277
Handling and Use of Paper	361
Control Panel	437
Printer Parts	477
Network Setting	491

Print Job Management

Status Monitor (Windows)	512
Printmonitor (Mac OS)	515
Accounting (Windows)	517
Basic Print Job Operations	531
Advanced Print Job Operations	553
Accounting (Windows) Basic Print Job Operations	517 531

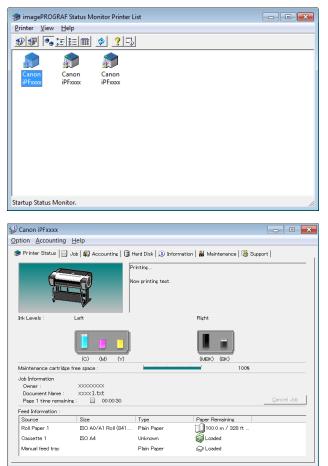
Adjustments for Better Print Quality	573
Maintenance and Consumables	589
Troubleshooting	627
Error Message	657
Specifications	681
Appendix	685

Status Monitor (Windows)

The Features of imagePROGRAF Status Monitor5	512
Job Management Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor5	

The Features of imagePROGRAF Status Monitor

imagePROGRAF Status Monitor is a utility for checking the printer status and managing print jobs. Two screens are available in imagePROGRAF Status Monitor : **Printer List** shows a list of printers, and **Status Monitor** shows details for each printer.



- You can view a list of the printers for which printer drivers have been installed on your computer, printers connected to your computer, and printers found on the network.
- If a printer error occurs, you can investigate the corrective action immediately.
- Printer status can be checked in real time on a computer monitor.
- Displays the ink level of every color in the printer. An icon and warning message will notify you when ink levels are low.
- The type of paper loaded in each media source is identified. You can also check to see if paper has run out.
- This way, the utility enables you to check printer information and take care of printer maintenance for optimal printing results.
- You can also set up automatic email notification of any printer problems or errors to email addresses you designate in advance.
- You can check the status of the hard disk and the documents saved on the hard disk.

512

User's Guide

Note

 You can use the Accounting Manager to collect the print job logs for the printers and check information such as the printing costs.

For details of the Accounting Manager, see "Accounting Manager." (→P.517)

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help.

Job Management Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor

You can use the **Job** sheet in imagePROGRAF Status Monitor for operations such as pausing and canceling print jobs.

Printer Statue	Jah 🎜 Accoun	tine 🛛 🕄 Hard Disk 🕽 🗊 Inf	ormation 🗍 🔐 Maintenanc	e 🎯 Sunnort	
				e @p ooppor c	_
Document Name	Status Printing	Owner	Size		_
	, in an 13	30000000			
tatus of selected job :	Printing				

Preempting Other Jobs

If you select a print job and click the **Preempt Other Jobs** button, the selected job is printed ahead of the job that currently precedes it in the print queue.

Pausing/Resuming Print Jobs

Selecting a print job and clicking the **Pause** button pauses printing of the selected job. To resume printing of a paused print job, select the print job and click the **Resume** button.

• Once all the print data for a print job has been sent to the printer, the job can no longer be paused/resumed. Note

Canceling Print Jobs

Selecting a print job and clicking the **Cancel Job** button cancels printing of the selected job.



You cannot cancel other users' print jobs.

Printing Held Jobs

Printing of the job with a **Status** of **Holding** is paused because the paper specified by the driver does not match the paper currently loaded in the printer.

Use the procedure below to print the held job.

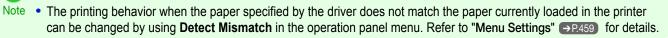


Select the held job and click the **Replace Paper** button.



Replace the paper in the printer with the correct paper.

• To continue printing without changing the paper in the printer, select the held job and click Continue to print button.

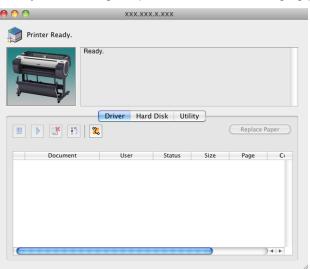


Printmonitor (Mac OS)

The Features of imagePROGRAF Printmonitor	515
Job Management Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor	

The Features of imagePROGRAF Printmonitor

imagePROGRAF Printmonitor is a utility for checking the printer status and managing print jobs.



- Printer status can be checked in real time on a computer monitor.
- You can check the status of print jobs, cancel jobs, and manage them as needed.
- If a printer error occurs, you can investigate the corrective action immediately.
- You can also set up automatic email notification of any printer problems or errors to email addresses you designate in advance.
- You can check the status of the hard disk and the documents saved on the hard disk.

• If the status of the desired printer is not shown in imagePROGRAF Printmonitor, select the printer again as follows.

- 1. Make sure the printer is on and connected to the network or to a local port.
 - 2. In the **Printer** menu, select the name of the desired printer. After the printer is detected, the printer status is shown.
 - 3. If information about the printer is not shown in step 2, choose **Search Printer** in the **Printer** menu. Printer names listed in the **Printer** menu are updated with the printers that are now detected.
 - 4. In the **Printer** menu, select the name of the desired printer. After the printer is detected, the printer status is shown.

Note

Job Management Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor

You can use the **Driver** Panel in imagePROGRAF Printmonitor for operations such as pausing and canceling print jobs.

O O XXX.XXX.XXXX
Printer Ready. Priver Hard Disk Utility Priver Hard Disk Utility Replace Paper Document User Status Size Page C Document User Status Size Page C
Pausing/Resuming Print Jobs
Selecting a print job and clicking the 🔳 button pauses printing of the selected job.
To resume printing of a paused print job, select the print job and click the ▶ button.
• Once all the print data for a print job has been sent to the printer, the job can no longer be paused/resumed. Note
Canceling Print Jobs
Selecting a print job and clicking the 墜 button cancels printing of the selected job.
• You cannot cancel other users' print jobs. Note
Preempting Other Jobs
If you select a print job and click the 🗾 button, the selected job is printed ahead of the job that currently pre- cedes it in the print queue.
 Printing Held Jobs Printing of the job with a Status of Holding is paused because the paper specified by the driver does not match the paper currently loaded in the printer. Use the procedure below to print the held job.
Select the held job and click the Replace Paper button.
2 Replace the paper in the printer with the correct paper.
• To continue printing without changing the paper in the printer, select the held job and click Continue to print button.

Accounting (Windows)

Accounting Manager Launching the Accounting Manager Accounting Manager Main Window Job List Area	. 517 . 517 . 518 520
Accounting Manager Basic Procedures Configuring Unit Costs in Accounting Manager Setting the Unit Cost for Ink Setting the Unit Cost for Paper Setting the Unit Cost for Items Other Than Ink and Paper	522 523 524
Configuring Units and Display Settings in Accounting Manager Automatically Acquiring Print Job Logs at Regular Intervals	. 526
Canceling Regular Print Job Log Acquisition Switching Between Displaying Jobs on Printer and Regularly Acquired Jobs	. 527
Exporting Print Job Data as a CSV File Displaying Job Properties or Period Properties Showing, Saving and Loading Selected Unit Cost Data Showing the Total Amount of Ink and Paper Consumed	. 528 . 529

Accounting Manager

The Accounting Manager stores the printer's print job logs so that you can use the information for checking printing costs, etc.

The benefits of using the Accounting Manager are outlined below.

- Print Job Log Collection
 This allows you to check which documents were printed from each printer, who printed them and when.
- Calculation of the Total Pages Used and the Total Cost This allows you to use the collected print job logs to calculate totals for items such as the number of pages printed, the amount of paper used and the printing costs incurred.
- Regular Data Acquisition for Print Jobs Job logs can be automatically collected periodically.
- Exporting Print Job Data This allows you to export collected print job data as a CSV file.



 The Accounting Manager in Status Monitor displays approximate estimates of the amount of paper consumed and the ink consumed per job. Canon cannot guarantee the accuracy of these estimates. These estimates will also vary depending on the conditions of printer use.

- Print job log collection is not performed when Set./Adj. Menu -> System Setup -> Show Job Log of the control
 panel is Off. However,
 - even if Show Job Log is set to Off, regularly acquired jobs that already have been retrieved at that time are displayed.
 - When Show Job Log has been set to On again, all jobs within the printer at that time are displayed.

Launching the Accounting Manager

The procedure for launching the Accounting Manager is shown below.



2 Select Accounting in the Accounting menu. Or, open the Accounting sheet and click the Accounting button.

S Cano	n iPFxxxx					
Option	Accounting	Help				
🎓 Prir	ter Status	Job 🕼 Acc	ounting 🔒 Har	d Disk 🛛 🧿 Informat	tion 🛛 👪 Maintenance 🕅	🚳 Support
N	Estimates	bs and calculate	consumption are	shown. Note that the	actual amounts may be diff	erent. For details,

Print Job Management

Accounting (Windows

If Show Job Log is set to off and an administrator password is configured in the printer, the administrator password needs to be entered on startup.

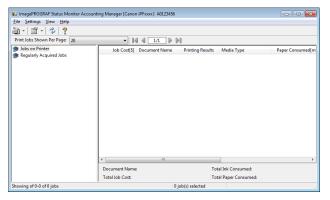
If the password is correct, you are logged on as administrator and Accounting starts. Furthermore, when you exit from Accounting, you can choose to log off as administrator.

- If you log off as administrator, you need to enter the password again the next time it starts.
- The administrator password can be set or cleared using Chg.Admin.Pswd/Init.Admin.Pswd in the Admin. Menu in the Set./Adj. Menu in the printer.

The administrator menu can only be displayed and configured by the administrator.

Accounting Manager Main Window

The Accounting Manager main window consists of a title bar, menu bar, toolbars, listed job selection area, job list area, totals area and status bar.



Title Bar

This displays the printer model, its serial number and the port number it is using.

🕼 imagePROGRAF Status Monitor Accounting Manager [Canon iPFxxxx] A0123456

• Menu Bar

Allows you to select the menu options required for operation.

<u>File</u> <u>Settings</u> <u>View</u> <u>H</u>elp

Toolbars

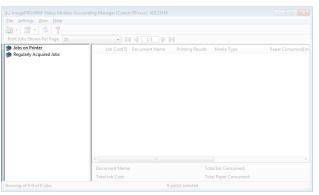
Provide tool buttons and pull-down menus for the main operations.



Listed Job Selection Area

You can use this area to select which job log is displayed.

If you are using regular data acquisition, this area allows you to view the collective job logs for each specified period.



For more information on how to select the job logs displayed, see "Switching Between Displaying Jobs on Printer and Regularly Acquired Jobs." (>P.527)

Job List Area

Note

This area lists the details of acquired jobs.

Displays a list of the jobs in the printers or periodically acquired jobs. (See "Job List Area.") →P.520

1 = 🖆 = 🌮 ?					
Print Jobs Shown Per Page: 20		1/25 🕨 🌬]		
Jobs on Printer	Job Cost[\$]	Document Name	Printing Results	Media Type	Output Image Size
Regularly Acquired Jobs	****	STS Job500 "detail	ок	Unknown	DIN C4
	****	STS Job499 "detail	ОК	Canon Heavyweight C	ISO A0
	****	STS Job498 "detail	ОК	Unknown	DIN C0
	****	STS Job497 "detail	Cancel	Unknown	27"x37"(ARCH E3)
	****	STS Job496 "detail	ОК	Unknown	20"x24"
	****	STS Job495 "detail	OK	Unknown	Legal(8.5"x14")
	****	STS Job494 "detail	OK	Unknown	JIS B3
	****	STS Job493 "detail	Cancel	Special 4	ISO A2+
	****	STS Job492 "detail	OK	Unknown	Letter(8.5"x11")
	****	STS Job491 "detail	Cancel	Unknown	ISO B4
		STS Job490 "detail	OK	Unknown	DIN C3
		STS Job489 "detail	OK	Unknown	12"x16"
		STS Job488 "detail	Cancel	Canon Heavyweight C	JIS B2
		STS Job487 "detail	Cancel	Unknown	12"x16"
	*	STS Job486 "detail	OK	Unknown	30"x42"(ARCH F1)
	Document Name		To	tal Ink Consumed: 7564.867	[ml]
	Total Job Cost:				

 You can change the items that are displayed and the display order using the Advanced Display Settings dialog box. The Advanced Display Settings dialog box can be displayed by selecting Advanced Display Settings from the Show menu.

Totals Area

Displays the total costs for the selected job and the amounts of paper and ink consumed.

File Settings View Help					
🔄 - 🛯 - 🗇 🦿					
Print Jobs Shown Per Page: 20		1/25 🕨 🌔			
Jobs on Printer	Job Cost[\$]	Document Name	Printing Results	Media Type	Output Image Size
Regularly Acquired Jobs	****	STS Job500 "detail	OK	Unknown	DIN C4
	8888	STS Job499 "detail	OK	Canon Heavyweight C	ISO A0
	****	STS Job498 "detail	OK	Unknown	DIN CO
	****	STS Job497 "detail	Cancel	Unknown	27"x37"(ARCH E3)
	****	STS Job496 "detail	OK	Unknown	20"x24"
	****	STS Job495 "detail	OK	Unknown	Legal(8.5"x14")
	****	STS Job494 "detail	OK	Unknown	JIS B3
	****	STS Job493 "detail	Cancel	Special 4	ISO A2+
	****	STS Job492 "detail	OK	Unknown	Letter(8.5'x11')
	****	STS Job491 "detail	Cancel	Unknown	ISO B4
	****	STS Job490 "detail	OK	Unknown	DIN C3
	****	STS Job489 "detail	OK	Unknown	12"x16"
	****	STS Job488 "detail	Cancel	Canon Heavyweight C	JIS B2
	****	STS Job487 "detail	Cancel	Unknown	12"x16"
		STS Job486 "detail	ОК	Unknown	30"x42"(ARCH F1)
	Document Name		Tot	tal Ink Consumed: 7564.867	[ml]
	Total Job Cost:		Tot	tal Paper Consumed: 19.476	7 [m²]



 If you are viewing regularly acquired print jobs, selecting a period on the left side of the window displays the total costs for that period and the amounts of paper and ink consumed.

Status Bar

Displays messages and other information.

🗟 + 🖆 + 🔣 🤶					
Print Jobs Shown Per Page: 20		1/25 🕨 🚺			
Jobs on Printer	Job Cost[\$]	Document Name	Printing Results	Media Type	Output Image Size
Regularly Acquired Jobs	****	STS Job500 "detail	OK	Unknown	DIN C4
	****	STS Job499 "detail	OK	Canon Heavyweight C	ISO A0
	****	STS Job498 "detail	ОК	Unknown	DIN CO
	****	STS Job497 "detail	Cancel	Unknown	27"x37"(ARCH E3)
	****	STS Job496 "detail	OK	Unknown	20"x24"
	****	STS Job495 "detail	OK	Unknown	Legal(8.5"x14")
	****	STS Job494 "detail	OK	Unknown	JIS B3
	****	STS Job493 "detail	Cancel	Special 4	ISO A2+
	****	STS Job492 "detail	OK	Unknown	Letter(8.5"x11")
	****	STS Job491 "detail	Cancel	Unknown	ISO B4
	****	STS Job490 "detail	OK	Unknown	DIN C3
	****	STS Job489 "detail	OK	Unknown	12"x16"
	****	STS Job488 "detail	Cancel	Canon Heavyweight C	JIS B2
	****	STS Job487 "detail	Cancel	Unknown	12"x16"
		STS Job486 "detail	OK	Unknown	30"x42"(ARCH F1)
	Document Name		То	tal Ink Consumed: 7564.867	

Job List Area

The job items and details that can be displayed in the job list area are as follows.

• No.

The job serial number.

Job Cost

The cost of printing.



If the ink and paper unit costs are not set, **** is displayed.

Document Name

This is the name of the printed document.

• Printing Results

OK is displayed when the print process was executed, and Cancel is displayed if the print process was not executed.

• Media Type

This is the type of paper used in printing.

Output Image Size

The size of the image used for printing.



If the job has multiple pages, the size of the last page is displayed.

Paper Consumed

The area of paper used for printing.



• The Paper Consumed may differ from the product of Paper Width and Paper Length.

• Paper Width

The width of paper used for printing.



• If the job has multiple pages, the width of the last page is displayed.

• Paper Length

The length of paper used for printing.

Ink Consumed

The amount of ink used for printing.

Owner

The sender of the job.

Print Job Start Time/Print Time
 The time when printing started and the time taken to print.

• Number of Pages The number of pages printed.

- The number of pages printed.
- Roll Paper Width
 The width of roll paper used for printing.
- Paper Cost

The cost of paper used for printing.



• If the paper unit cost is not set, **** is displayed.

```
Note
```

Total Ink Cost

The total value of the cost of ink used for printing.



• If the ink unit cost is not set, **** is displayed.

• Total of Other Costs

The total value of costs other than paper and ink.

Ink Cost Details

The cost of each ink color.

Ink Consumption Details

The amount of each color of ink used.

Accounting Manager Basic Procedures

The first time you use the Accounting Manager, use the following procedures to configure the settings.

- Configure unit costs, including the costs of ink and paper. For details of the unit cost settings, see "Configuring Unit Costs in Accounting Manager." →P.522
- 2 Set options such as the units displayed. For details of the unit settings, see "Configuring Units and Display Settings in Accounting Manager." (→P.526)
- 3 If you are using Regular Data Acquisition, configure the Regular Data Acquisition settings. For details of the Regular Data Acquisition settings, see "Automatically Acquiring Print Job Logs at Regular Intervals." → P.527
- 4 Specify the jobs to be listed.

For details of how to select the job logs displayed, see "Switching Between Displaying Jobs on Printer and Regularly Acquired Jobs." (>P.527)

This displays the required print job logs and lists the details.

Configuring Unit Costs in Accounting Manager

Select **Unit Costs** in the **Settings** menu to open the **Unit Costs** dialog box. Configure the unit cost settings in this dialog box.



 When you select a job and then open the Unit Costs dialog box, items with unit costs that have not yet been configured for that job are shown highlighted.

- Setting the Unit Cost for Ink →P.523
- Setting the Unit Cost for Paper →P.524
- Setting the Unit Cost for Items Other Than Ink and Paper → P.525

Setting the Unit Cost for Ink

Open the Ink sheet. Set the unit cost for ink in this sheet.

nit Costs			
Ink Paper Other			
Use same price for all ink			
Tank Capacity:	330 ml	Price:	Not Specifie \$
Price List:			
Ink Color	Т	ank Capacity[ml]	Price[\$]
PC (Photo Cyan)		330	Not Specified
🖬 C (Cyan)		330	Not Specified
MBK (Matte Black)		330	Not Specified
Y (Yellow)		330	
M (Magenta)		330	Not Specified
PM (Photo Magenta)		330	Not Specified
R (Red)		330	
G (Green)		330	
B (Blue)		330 330	
PGY (Photo Gray) GY (Gray)		330	
BK (Black)		330	Not Specified
Ink Unit Cost Setting: PC (F	Photo Cyan)		
Tank Capacity:	330 ml	Price:	st Specified \$
			Overwrite
		K Car	ncel Help

To set the same unit cost for all the inks Select the Use same price for all ink checkbox. 2 Enter the Tank Capacity and corresponding Price. 3 Click the **OK** button. • Your settings are not applied until you click the **OK** button. Important To set different unit costs for each ink color Select the ink color to be costed. 2 Enter the Tank Capacity and corresponding Price. 3 Click the **Overwrite** button. 4 Repeat steps 1 to 3 for all the inks. 5 Click the **OK** button.

• Your settings are not applied until you click the **OK** button.

Important

Setting the Unit Cost for Paper

Opens the **Paper** sheet. This sheet is used to configure the unit cost of paper.

	Unit Costs	
	Ink Paper Other	
	Price List:	
	Media Type Roll Paper Width[mm] Length[m]	
	Delete	
	Paper Unit Cost Settings	
	Media Type: Plain Paper	
	Width: mm Roll Paper Width Settings	
	Length: m	
	Price: \$	
	Add Qverwrite	
	OK Cancel Help	
Setting Standard Prices		
Select the media type in M	edia Type.	
2 Enter the Width and Leng	h of the paper, as well as the Price for the area o	f the configured width x height.
Click the Add button. To ch write button.	ange the unit cost of a media type that has alread	ly been configured, click the Over-
Click the OK button.		
	plied until you click the OK button.	
Important		
Specifying Price by Roll Paper		



Print Job Management

Accounting (Windows)

2	Click the Roll Paper Width Settings button to display the Roll
	Paper Width Settings dialog box.

Roll Paper Width Settings					
Media Type:	Plain Paper				
<u>R</u> oll Paper Width:	24-in. Roll (609.6mm) 🔹				
<u>W</u> idth:	609.6 mm				
Length:	m				
<u>P</u> rice:	\$				
	erwrite Cancel <u>H</u> elp				

- **3** Enter the **Roll Paper Width** and **Length** of the paper, as well as the **Price** for the configured length.
- 4 Click the Add button to return to the Paper sheet.
- 5 To change the unit cost of a media type that has already been configured, click the **Overwrite** button.
- 6 Click the **OK** button.

HIII

- If you do not set the standard prices, you cannot set the price for each roll paper.
- Important
 If the Roll Paper Width is set to the same value as the Width of the paper configured in the standard prices, the cost is calculated using the price configured in the Roll Paper Width Settings dialog box.
 - The settings are not applied until you click the **OK** button.

Setting the Unit Cost for Items Other Than Ink and Paper

Open the **Other** sheet. Use this sheet to set any price for items other than inks and paper.

Unit Costs				×
Ink Paper Other				
Price List:				
Name		Unit Cost[\$]	Allocated	
- Unit Costs			Delete	
Name:				- III
				- 11
Unit Cost:	\$			
Allocated:	Yes 🔻			
				\leq
		Add	Overwri	e
	0	K Can	cel Hel	p

Accounting (Windows)

- **1** Enter any name in the **Name** field.
- 2 Enter a value in **Unit Cost**.
- **3** Use **Allocated** to specify whether the costs are allocated as being incurred by the print job.
- 4 Click the **Add** button. To change the unit cost for a media type you have already set, click the **Overwrite** button.
- 5 Click the **OK** button.



Note

• Your settings are not applied until you click the **OK** button.

• You can set unit costs for up to 5 items.

Configuring Units and Display Settings in Accounting Manager

Select **Units and Display** in the **Settings** menu to open the **Units and Display** dialog box. Use this dialog box to configure the display settings.

Units and Display	×
Date Display Format:	YYYY/MM/DD 🔹
Currency Unit:	\$ (Three characters or less)
1000 Separator:	None
Decimal Symbol:	. (Period)
Ink level:	ml
Paper Width:	mm
Paper Length:	m •
Area Display Format:	m² 💌
	OK Cancel Help

Date Display Format

Use this option to select the display format for dates. "YYYY" indicates the year, "MM" the month and "DD" the day.

Currency Unit

Enter the currency unit. Enter a text string up to 3 characters long.

1000 Separator

Use this option to select the symbol used as a separator in numbers. The symbol is inserted every 3 digits.

Decimal Symbol

Use this option to select the symbol used as a decimal point.

Ink Consumed

Use this option to select the unit used for ink consumption.

Paper Width

Use this to select the unit used for paper width.

Paper Length

Use this to select the unit used for paper length.

Area Display Format

Use this to select the unit used for paper area.

Automatically Acquiring Print Job Logs at Regular Intervals

This feature collects print job logs from the printer at regular intervals and saves the logs on your computer.

Select Regular Data Acquisition in the Settings menu.

2 Select Acquire print job logs regularly.

Click the OK button to close the dialog box.



Note

Print job log collection is not performed when Set./Adj. Menu -> System Setup -> Show Job Log of the control
panel is Off. However, even if Show Job Log is set to Off, regularly acquired jobs that already have been retrieved at
that time are displayed.

- Immediately after you configure Regular Data Acquisition, no print jobs are displayed. Wait a few moments and then select **Refresh** in the **View** menu to display the print jobs.
- A maximum of 10,000 records are saved in a print job log. If this number is exceeded, jobs are deleted from the log starting from the oldest record. To save old data, it is recommended that you export the data as a CSV file. For details of how to export print job logs as CSV files, see "Exporting Print Job Data as a CSV File." →P.528

Canceling Regular Print Job Log Acquisition

You can use this procedure to cancel the regular acquisition of print job logs from printers.

Select **Regular Data Acquisition** in the **Settings** menu.

Uncheck the **Acquire print job logs regularly** option.

Click the **OK** button to close the dialog box.

Switching Between Displaying Jobs on Printer and Regularly Acquired Jobs

The print job logs displayed by the Status Monitor Accounting Manager contain two types of job: Jobs on Printer and Regularly Acquired Jobs.

You can select whether to display Jobs on Printer or Regularly Acquired Jobs in the Listed Job Selection Area on the left side of the window.

Jobs on Printer

This shows a list of the print jobs currently held on printers.

You can change the number of jobs displayed per page using the **Print Jobs Shown Per Page** setting in the **View** menu or the toolbar.

You can skip to a particular page using the Go to option in the View menu or the toolbar.



- For printers with built-in hard disks, you can view up to 500 print jobs per printer.
- For printers without built-in hard disks, you can view up to 32 print jobs per printer. However, only 10 jobs can be displayed if the printer is switched off.

Regularly Acquired Jobs

This shows a list of regularly acquired print jobs.

To view all the jobs in a set period, specify the period using Calculate Total for Period and then Starting Date (or Starting Day of Week or Starting Month) in the View menu or the toolbar.

For example, to view monthly job logs starting on the 1st of each month, set Calculate Total for Period to Monthly and set Starting Date to 1.



Up to 10,000 regularly acquired jobs are displayed for each printer.

Note

Exporting Print Job Data as a CSV File

You can export the collected print job data in the form of a CSV file by selecting Export Job Cost Data in the File menu.



You can also select Export Job Cost Data using the icon in the toolbar.

Selected Jobs

Exports the data for the selected print jobs in the job list as a CSV file.



You can select multiple jobs by holding down the Shift key or Ctrl key as you click the job names.

Listed Jobs

Exports the data for the print jobs currently displayed in the list as a CSV file.

Displaying Job Properties or Period Properties

You can display the Job properties dialog box or Period Properties dialog box to check detailed cost information and other items.

The **Job properties** dialog box displays detailed information about the selected job.

The **Period Properties** dialog box displays detailed information within the **Regularly Acquired Jobs** period.

• Displaying the **Job properties** Dialog Box

Select a job from the job list, and then select Show Job Properties from Job properties in the File menu. You can also select multiple jobs at once.



 You can also display the dialog box by selecting a job, right-clicking it, and then selecting Show Job Properties. or by using the icon in the toolbar.

Displaying the Period Properties Dialog Box

Select a period from the Regularly Acquired Jobs list, and then select Show Period Properties from Job properties in the File menu. You can also select multiple periods at once.



You can also display the dialog box by selecting and right-clicking a period and then selecting Show Period Properties, or by using the icon in the toolbar.

Components of the Job properties Dialog Box/Period Properties Dialog Box

			_
STS Job500 "detail name by acqu	iire records 2" Pro	perties	×
Job Owner			
Printing Results: OK			•
-			
Owner: STS			
Print Job Start Time: 2009/06/27	7 17:00:33		
Print Time: 00:01:02			
Number of Pages: 1			
Output Image Size: DIN C4			
Total Job Cost: **** [\$]			
Total Paper Cost: **** [\$]			
Total Ink Cost: **** [\$]			
Total of Other Costs: 0.000 [\$]			
Total Ink Consumed: 294.206 [m	1]		
Total Paper Consumed: 0.0525 [m²]		
Paper Width: 0.0 [mm]			
Paper Length: 0.0 [mm]			
Job Cost and Consumption Detai	ls:		
ltem	Amount Consumed	Job Cost[\$]	*
Unknown[m²]	0.0525		
PC (Photo Cyan)[ml]	49.858		
C (Cyan)[ml]	24.544		Ψ.
Copy		OK <u>H</u> e	lp

Job tab

Displays detailed information about the selected job. You can display detailed information about each job by selecting the corresponding **Document Name**.

• Owner tab

You can display detailed information about each owner by selecting the corresponding **Owner**.

• Copy button

Click this button to copy the displayed text information to the clipboard.

Showing, Saving and Loading Selected Unit Cost Data

Show Unit Cost Data

Select **Show Unit Cost Data** in the **File** menu to open the **Unit Cost Data** dialog box. This lists the unit costs for items such as the selected ink and paper.

You can copy text-based information in this dialog box to the clipboard by clicking the Copy button.

Save Unit Cost Data

Select a destination folder using **Save Unit Cost Data** in the **File** menu. The unit cost data for items such as the selected ink and paper is saved as a file.

Load Unit Cost Data

Selecting Load Unit Cost Data in the File menu loads saved unit cost data.

Showing the Total Amount of Ink and Paper Consumed

Select **Show Ink and Paper Consumed** in the **File** menu to open the **Show Ink and Paper Consumed** dialog box. This lists the total amounts of ink and paper consumed by the printer so far. You can copy text-based information in this dialog box to the clipboard by clicking the **Copy** button.



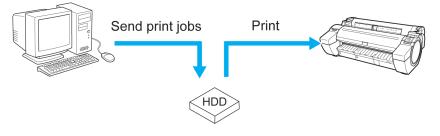
• Up to 7 types of media are listed in order of the amount consumed. The total consumption for other media types is shown as **Other**.

Basic Print Job Operations

Using the Printer Hard Disk	531
Saving Print Jobs on the Printer Hard Disk Managing the Job Queue (Deleting or Preempting Other Jobs)	536
Managing Pending Jobs (Printing or Deleting Jobs on Hold) Printing Saved Jobs	
Deleting Saved Jobs Moving Saved Jobs	

Using the Printer Hard Disk

The printer can save print jobs on the built-in hard disk. Using print jobs stored on the printer enables you to print the jobs again as needed without using a computer.



Save print jobs

Saving print jobs offers the following benefits.

• Save the time spent using a computer

When you send a print job to the printer, you can save it on the printer after printing or simply save it on the printer without printing it yet. Saved print jobs can be printed in the required quantity later without the need to use a computer again.

• Simplify reprinting, if any errors occur

If errors occur in the middle of printing (as when paper runs out), you can resume printing after clearing the error without resending the print job from a computer.

Streamline printing work

Without using a computer, you can select print jobs and print in the desired quantity. You can also select multiple print jobs to print during the same period. This enables unattended operation at night, for example.

Output Method

To save print jobs on the printer's hard disk, configure the printer driver. In Windows, this is set using the **Output Method** dialog box. In Mac OS, this is set using the **Additional Settings** pane.

Print

Save print jobs on the printer's hard disk after printing.

Save in mail box

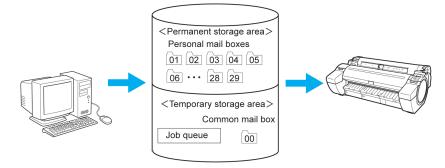
Save print jobs on the printer's hard disk.

Print after reception is complete

This option is available in combination with **Print**. You can prevent degradation of print quality that occurs when receiving a print job is interrupted and printing is aborted in the middle.

Storage destination

The storage area on the printer's hard disk is divided into a temporary storage area and a permanent storage area. The temporary storage area stores print jobs in the job queue or shared mailbox. The permanent storage area stores jobs in personal boxes.



Job queue

The job queue refers to print jobs that are being processed by the printer (saved, received, prepared for processing, printed, deleted, or held). Up to 64 jobs can be stored in the temporary storage area.

When the job queue is full, additional jobs sent from a computer are treated as "standby" jobs, to be processed when possible.

However, if all queued jobs are simply being held, the oldest job is deleted and the print job sent from the computer is processed.

Shared mailbox

Jobs for which you have specified **Print** in **Output Method** (in Windows) or **Send job to** (in Mac OS) are saved in the shared mailbox and classified as saved jobs.

There is one shared mailbox, numbered **00**. A password cannot be set for the shared mailbox.

Up to 100 print jobs can be saved here, but they will be deleted one after another starting with the oldest job in the following situations.

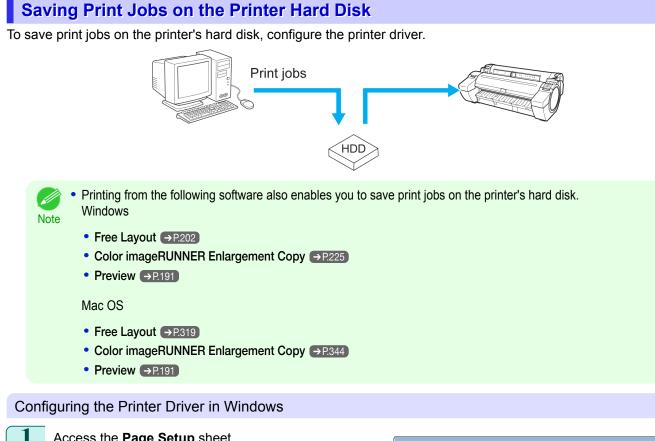
- If there are more than 100 jobs queued and saved in the shared mailbox combined
- If no more temporary storage space is available when jobs for which you have selected **Print** in **Output Method** (in Windows) or **Send job to** (in Mac OS) are received
- If there is not enough space in the temporary or permanent storage area when jobs for which you have selected **Save in mail box** in **Output Method** (in Windows) or **Send job to** (in Mac OS) are received

Personal boxes

Jobs are classified as saved jobs and saved in personal boxes in the following situations.

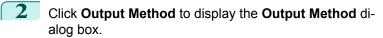
- · When a saved job stored in the shared mailbox is moved to a personal box
- When you have selected Save in mail box as the option in Output Method (in Windows) or Send job to (in Mac OS)

There are 29 personal boxes, numbered **01** to **29**. You can specify a name and password for each personal box. Up to 100 print jobs can be saved in all personal boxes combined.



Access the Page Setup sheet.





output Method		- ×
-Output Method		
🔘 Print	•	
💿 Save	e in mail box	
	after reception is complete	
Name of data to		
	file name	
~	r name	
	ame :	
13		
Mail box :		
Inbox no. :	Inbox name :	
01		E
02		
03		
04		
05		
06		-
•	III	•
	Acquire Mail Box	Name
	K Cancel Defaults	

Print Job Management

Basic Print Job Operations

3

Make your selection in **Output Method**.

Print

Save print jobs on the printer's hard disk after printing.

Save in mail box

Save print jobs on the printer's hard disk.

If you choose Save in mail box, also specify the destination personal box in the Mail box list.

Print after reception is complete

This option is available in combination with **Print**. You can prevent degradation of print quality that occurs when receiving a print job is interrupted and printing is aborted in the middle.



 Click Acquire Mail Box Name to display personal box names in the Mail box list, as acquired from the printer.

4 In Name of data to be saved, specify how to name saved print jobs.

- To use the file name, choose Use file name.
- Otherwise choose Enter name and enter a name in Name.

5 Click **OK** to close the **Output Method** dialog box.

Configuring the printer driver in Mac OS	
1 Access the Additional Settings pane.	Additional Settings Send job to : Print Save in mail box Print after reception is complete
	Cancel Print



2 Make your selection in Send job to.

• Print

Save print jobs on the printer's hard disk after printing.

Save in mail box

Save print jobs on the printer's hard disk.

The Destination dialog box is displayed if you select Save in mail box. Here, specify the name and personal box number for saved print jobs.

Destination	
Document title :	sample5
Mail box :	
Inbox No.	
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	
8	
9	
10	
11	
	Cancel

1. In Document title, enter a name to identify saved print jobs.

 If printed from Free Layout or Preview, the Document title is saved under the name imagePROG-RAF. Note

- 2. Select the personal box number in the Mail box list.
- 3. Click OK to close the Destination dialog box.

Print after reception is complete

This option is available in combination with **Print**. You can prevent degradation of print quality that occurs when receiving a print job is interrupted and printing is aborted in the middle.

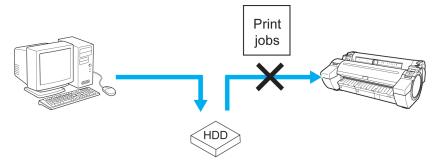
Managing the Job Queue (Deleting or Preempting Other Jobs)

Print jobs being processed by the printer are collectively called the job queue. You can delete or preempt jobs in the job queue as needed.

These operations are available from the Control Panel, in RemoteUI, imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, and image-PROGRAF Printmonitor.

Delete

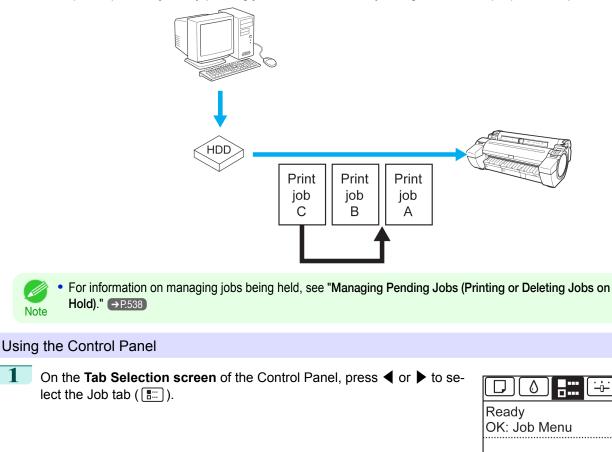
Note that only jobs that are not currently being deleted can be deleted from the job queue.



· Preempting other jobs

Note

You can preempt other jobs by printing jobs that are currently being received or prepared for processing first.



• If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2 Press the **OK** button. The **Job Menu** is displayed.

3 Manage the job queue as needed.

- Deleting jobs
 - 1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print Job**, and then press the **OK** button.
 - 2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the print job to delete, and then press the OK button.
 - **3.** Press \blacktriangle or \blacksquare to select **Delete**, and then press the **OK** button.

Preempting other jobs

- 1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print Job**, and then press the **OK** button.
- **2.** Press \blacktriangle or \blacksquare to select the job to print first, and then press the **OK** button.
- **3.** Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Preempt Jobs**, and then press the **OK** button.

Using RemoteUI

Manage jobs as needed on the Print Job page. For details, refer to the RemoteUI help file.

꾆 Remote UI	9	PFxxxx				
English language	Print	Job			Updated :xxxx/xx/xx	xx:xx:xx 🜮 ?
End-User Mode	×	T				
Log Out						
	Select	Document Name	Status	Owner	Number of Total Pages	Started At
▶Device Manager		📑 🕈 sample1.jp	g Printing	xxxxxxx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
▼Job Manager		sample2.jp	g Printing	xxxxxxx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
Print Job						
Stored Job		sample3.jp	g Printing	xxxxxxx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
Print Log		sample4.jp	g Processing	xxxxxxx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
▶Device Selection		sample5.jp	g Preprocessing	xxxxxxx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
Support Links						

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

Manage jobs as needed on the Job sheet. For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

Second PExxxx Option Accounting Help			- 8 🔀
Printer Status 🗊 Job 🎉	🕯 Accounting 🛛 🕄 Hard Disk	🗊 Information 🛛 👪 Mainte	nance 🎯 Support
Document Name () sample1.jpg () sample2.jpg () sample3.jpg () sample4.jpg	Status Printing Preprocessing Preprocessing Preprocessing	Owner xxxxxxxxx xxxxxxxxx xxxxxxxx xxxxxxxx xxxxxxxx	Size
(♥)sample5.jpg	Preprocessing	XOXXOXXX	
Replace	Paper Preempt Other Job	is <u>P</u> ause <u>B</u>	esume Cancel Job

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)

Manage jobs as needed on the **Driver** sheet. For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

0 ()	XXX	xxx.xxx.xxx			
	Printer Ready.					
		Ready.				
		Driver Hard Dis	k Utility	Support]	
00	D 🕐 🕫	2			Replac	e Paper
			Pages	1 Time rem	aining :xxMin	vySec 🗏
			-			
	Document	User	Status	Size	Page	C
	Document sample1.jpg	User XXXXXXX	Status Printing	Size xxxxK		
					Page	
_	sample1.jpg	xxxxxxxx	Printing	ххххК	Page 2/2	
Ē	sample1.jpg sample2.jpg	xxxxxxx xxxxxxx	Printing Waiting	xxxxK xxxxK	Page 2/2 2/2	
	sample1.jpg sample2.jpg sample3.jpg	xxxxxxxx xxxxxxxx xxxxxxxx	Printing Waiting Waiting	xxxxK xxxxK xxxxK	Page 2/2 2/2 2/2 2/2	

Print Job Management

Basic Print Job Operations

Managing Pending Jobs (Printing or Deleting Jobs on Hold)

If the type or size of paper loaded does not match the settings in the print job received when you have set Detect Mismatch to Hold Job in the Control Panel menu, the print job is held on the printer as a pending job in the job queue. Manage held jobs such as these as follows.

These operations are available from the Control Panel or in RemoteUI, imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, and image-PROGRAF Printmonitor.

 As long as you do not manage held jobs from the Control Panel, imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, or imagePROGRAF Printmonitor, they will remain in the job queue. In this case, the printer processes the next job in the queue without Note pausing.

iobs.

Ready

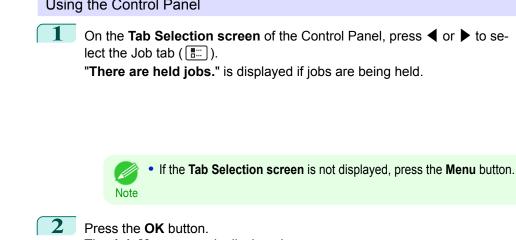
0

OK: Job Menu There are held

(Paper mismatch)

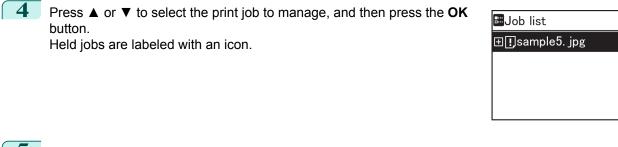
• To print held jobs, replace the loaded paper with the paper specified in the print job. (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P375 (See "Loading Sheets in the Printer.") → P.394

Using the Control Panel



The Job Menu menu is displayed.

Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print Job**, and then press the **OK** button.



5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print Anyway** or **Delete**, and then press the **OK** button.

- If you choose Print Anyway
 Press ▲ or ▼ to select Yes or No, and then press the OK button.
- If you choose Delete
 Press ▲ or ▼ to select Yes or No, and then press the OK button.

Using RemoteUI

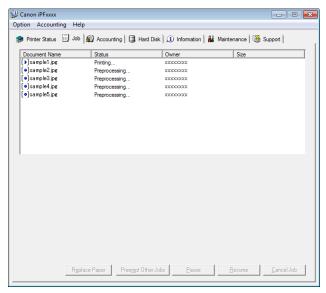
iPF685

Manage jobs as needed on the Print Job page. For details, refer to the RemoteUI help file.

<mark>ឌ</mark> Remote UI	🦻 iPFxx	xx				
English language	Print Job				Updated :xxxx/xx/xx :	x x x x 🌮 ?
End-User Mode	×Ŧ			_		
Log Out		<u> </u>				
	Select Docu	ment Name	Status	Owner	Number of Total Pages	Started At
▶Device Manager	■• 💕	sample1.jpg	Printing	xxxxxxx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
▼Job Manager	🗆 📑	sample2.jpg	Printing	xxxxxxx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
Print Job						
Stored Job	- B.	sample3.jpg	Printing	XXXXXXX	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
Print Log	• •	sample4.jpg	Processing	xxxxxxx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
Device Selection		sample5.jpg	Preprocessing	xxxxxxx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
Support Links						

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor

Manage jobs as needed on the **Job** sheet. For details, see "**Job Management Using imagePROGRAF Status Moni-**tor." (>P.513)



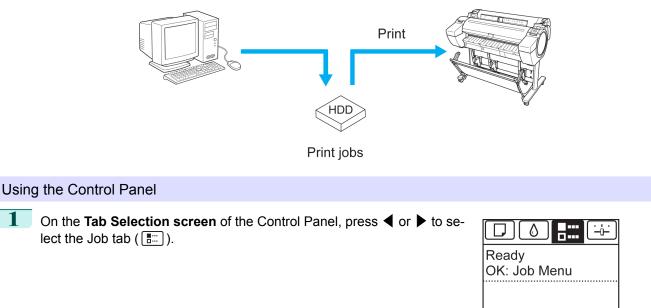
Manage jobs as needed on the Driver sheet. For details, see "Job Management Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor." → P.516

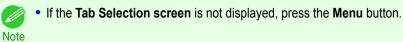
	Ready.				
	Driver Hard Di	sk Utility	Support]	
	2			Repla	ce Paper
		Pages	1 Time rem	aining :xxMi	in.xxSec.
	User	Status	Size	Page	C
Document					
Document sample1.jpg	xxxxxxxx	Printing	xxxxK	2/2	-
	******** *******	Printing Waiting		2/2 2/2	2
📑 sample1.jpg			xxxxK	2/2	-
sample1.jpg sample2.jpg	xxxxxxxx	Waiting	xxxxK xxxxK	2/2 2/2	- - -
 sample1.jpg sample2.jpg sample3.jpg 	xxxxxxxx xxxxxxxx	Waiting Waiting	xxxxK xxxxK xxxxK	2/2 2/2	- - -

Basic Print Job Operations

Printing Saved Jobs

Print saved print jobs stored on the printer's hard disk as follows. These operations are available from the Control Panel or in RemoteUI, imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, and image-**PROGRAF** Printmonitor.

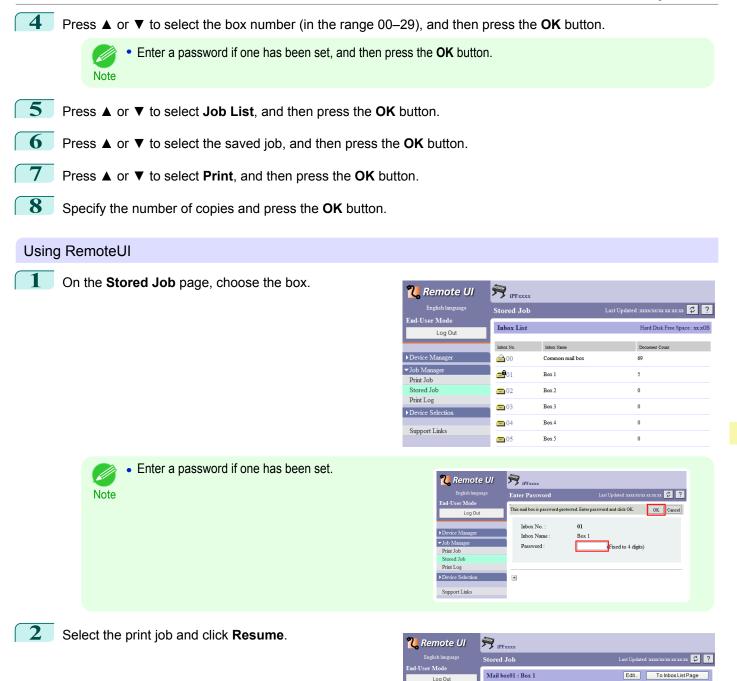




2 Press the **OK** button. 540

1

The Job Menu menu is displayed.



× • • • Select D

📃 sample5.jpg

🗐 sample4.jpg

🗐 sample1.jpg

mple3.jpg

🗐 sample2.jpg

▼Job Mana

Print Job

Print Log

Support Links

ent Name

Owner Print Time

xx:xx:xx

xx:xx:xx

xx:xx:xx

xx:xx:xx

XXXXXXX XX:XX:XX Date Saved

xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:x3

xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx

xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:x3

xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:x3

xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:x3

Print Job Management

Basic Print Job Operations



On the **Print Saved Document** page, enter the quantity to print in **Copies** and click **OK**.

꾆 Remote UI	🦻 iPFxxxx				
English language	Print Saved Docur	ment	Last Updated :xxxx/x		\$?
End-User Mode	1				
Log Out	Printing will resume with t	he following settings	: Check the details.	OK	Cancel
	Document Name :	sample4.jpg			
▶Device Manager	Media Size :	A4			
▼Job Manager	Paper Type :	Plain Paper			
Print Job	Copies :	1 (1-999	2)		
Stored Job		r.			
Print Log	_				
Device Selection					
Support Links					

For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor		
1 On the Hard Disk sheet, select a box and click Open.	non iPFscox in Accounting Help Printer Status Job Age Accounting Herd Dirk Information Maintenance Maint	Support)
• Enter a password if one has been set. Note	Enter Password Image: Second	

2 In the **Documents** dialog box, select the print job and click **Print**.

Documents					×
Inbox No. : Inbox name :	01				Settings
Documents :					
Document Name	Owner	Source	Media Type	Paper Size	File Size
sample5.jpg	XXXX0000X	Roll Paper 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample4.jpg	XXXXXXXXXX	Roll Paper 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample3.jpg	XXXXXXXXXX	Roll Paper 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample2.jpg	XXXXXXXX	Roll Paper 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.× MB
sample1.jpg	XXXXXXXX	Roll Paper 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
•	m				Þ
		<u>P</u> rint	Delete	<u>M</u> ove	Properties
				<u>C</u> lose	Help

3 In the **Print** dialog box, enter the quantity to print in **Copies** and click **OK**.

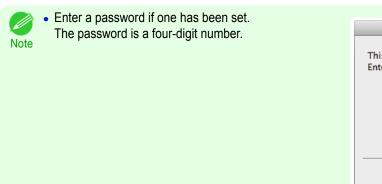
document? Dopies :	1		
Dopies :	1		
<u> </u>	'	(1-999)	
sample5.jpg			
Roll Paper 1			
Plain Paper			
ISO A4			
xx:xx:xx			
	Roll Paper 1 Plain Paper ISO A4	Roll Paper 1 Plain Paper ISO A4	Roll Paper 1 Plain Paper ISO A4

- The printing time initially indicates how long it took to finish printing one copy during the previous print job. If you change the value in **Copies**, the printing time indicates the time it took to print one copy during the previous print job multiplied by the number of copies.
- For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

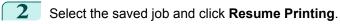
Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor

On the Hard Disk pane, click by Inbox No./Name.

		x.xxx.xxx		
Printer Ready.				
	Ready.			
	Driver Hard Disk	Utility Support	t	
) 🕅 🕱	Hard disk info Status : Usab Free space : xx.x		Move	Set
Inbox No./Name	Document	User	Source	Pi
🕨 0 👝 Common E	lox			
▼ 1 <u>∞</u>				- 1
	sample5.jpg	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample4.jpg	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample3.jpg	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample2.jpg	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample1.jpg	XXXXXXXX	Roll Paper	Plai
▶ 2 <u>-</u>				



Enter the password an	ord-protected.	
Enter the password an	a click OK.	
Inbox no. :	1	
Inbox name :		
Password :		
la de la companya de		_



00	xxx.xx	x.xxx.xxx		
Printer Ready.				
	Ready.			
	Driver Hard Disk	Utility Suppor	t	
	Hard disk info			
2	Status : Usab Free space : xx.x:		Move	Set
Inbox No./Name	Document	User	Source	Pi
🕨 0 👝 Common	Box			
V 1 👝				
	sample5.jpg	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample4.jpg	XXXXXXXX	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample3.jpg	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample2.jpg	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample1.jpg	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
▶ 2 <u></u>				
▶ 3 <u>~</u>				

In the Resume Printing dialog box, enter the quantity	
to print and click OK .	

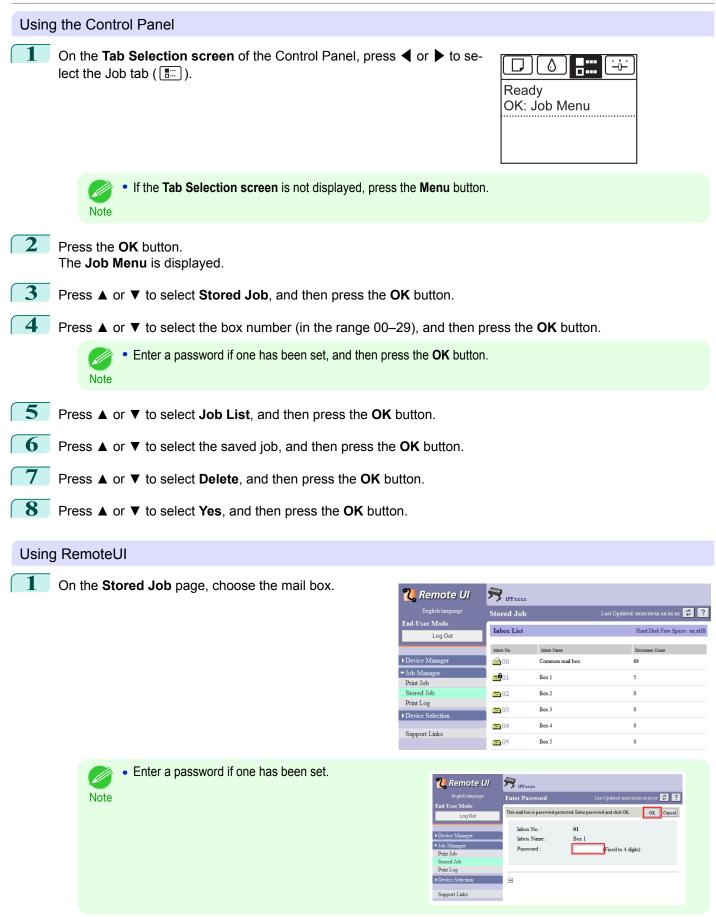
Print the selected docu Copies : 1	Resume Printing
Document title :	sample5
Source :	Roll Paper
Paper Type :	Plain Paper
Paper Size :	ISO A4
Print Time :	xx:xx:xx
	Cancel OK

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

Deleting Saved Jobs

Delete saved print jobs stored on the printer's hard disk as follows.

This operation is available from the Control Panel, in RemoteUI, imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, and imagePROG-RAF Printmonitor.



545

Print Job Management

2 Select the print job and click **Delete**.

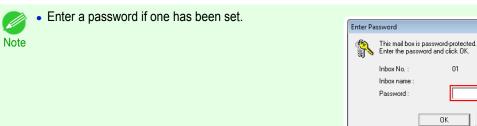
긴 Remote UI	7 3	Fxxxx				
	Store	l Job				xxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx 😰
End-User Mode Log Out	Mail	box01 : Box 1			Edit	To Inbox List Page
Device Manager Job Manager Print Job	Select	Document Name	Owner XXXXXXX	Print Time	Number of Total Pages	Date Saved
Stored Job Print Log	•	🗒 sample4.jpg	XXXXXXX	XX:XX:XX	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
Device Selection		sample3.jpg	XXXXXXX	XX:XX:XX	1	XXXX/XX/XX XX:XX:XX
Support Links		sample1.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx xx xx

For details, refer to the RemoteUI help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor

1 On the Hard Disk sheet, select a box and click Open.

🗩 Printer Status 🛛 🔟 Job	🕼 Accounting 🕄 Hard Disk 🧊 Information 🕌 Main	tenance 📓 Support
Mail Boxes		
Inbox No.	Inbox name	
and 00	Common Box	
0 1	Common Box	
3 02		
5 03		
3 04		
<u></u> 05		-
<u></u> 06		
<u>50</u> 07		
<u>50</u> 08		
<u>50</u> 09		
<u>s</u> 10		
2 11		
<u>s</u> 12		
 13 14 		
14 15		
<u>5</u> 15		
1 0		
5 18		
5 19		
		Ope <u>n</u>
Hard disk Information		
Status :	Usable	
Free Space :	XX X GB	



546

×

(4-digit number)

Cancel



1

Name.

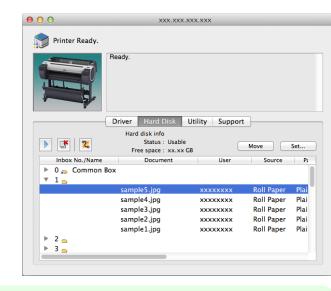
2 In the **Documents** dialog box, select the print job and click **Delete**.

Inbox No. : Inbox name :	01				
					Settings
ocuments :					
Document Name	Owner	Source	Media Type	Paper Size	File Size
sample5.jpg	XXXXXXXXXX	Roll Paper 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample4.jpg	XXXXXXXXX	Roll Paper 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample3.jpg	XXXXXXXXX	Roll Paper 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample2.jpg	XXXXXXXXX	Roll Paper 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.× MB
sample1.jpg	XXXXXXXXXX	Roll Paper 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
•	m				
		Print	Delete	<u>M</u> ove	Properties

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

In the Hard Disk pane, click here to Inbox No./

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor





 Enter a password if one has been set. The password is a four-digit number.

This mail box is pass	word-protected.
Enter the password a	
Inbox no.	: 1
Inbox name	:
Password	:
	Cancel OK

2 Select the print job and click the **Delete** button.

0 0	XXX.XXX.	xxx.xxx		
Printer Ready.				
	Ready.			
	Driver Hard Disk	Utility Support	:]	
	Hard disk info Status : Usable Free space : xx.xx (св	Move	Set
Inbox No./Name	Document	User	Source	Pa
🕨 0 👝 Common I	Box			
🔻 1 👝				
	sample5.jpg	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample4.jpg	XXXXXXXX	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample3.jpg	XXXXXXXX	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample2.jpg	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample1.jpg	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
b 2				
P 2 🔨				
▶ 2 <u></u> ▶ 3 <u></u>				

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

Moving Saved Jobs Print jobs stored on the printer's hard disk (saved jobs) can be moved from the current box to another box as follows. However, jobs saved in personal boxes cannot be moved to the shared mailbox. This expection is explicible in Remetal II, image RECORDAE Status Manifer, and image RECORDAE Drintmonitor.

This operation is available in RemoteUI, imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.

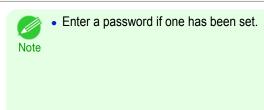


• Jobs stored in the shared mailbox may be automatically deleted under some conditions. To prevent jobs from being deleted, move them from the shared mailbox to personal boxes. (See "Using the Printer Hard Disk.") (>P.531)

Using RemoteUI

On the **Stored Job** page, choose the box.

꾆 Remote UI	🦻 iPFxxxx			
English language	Stored Job		Last Update	d :xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx 🜮 ?
End-User Mode Log Out	Inbox List			Hard Disk Free Space : xx xGE
	Inbox No.	Inbox Name		Document Count
Device Manager	00 🖻	Common mail box		69
✓ Job Manager Print Job	=1 01	Box 1		5
Stored Job	0 2	Box 2		0
Print Log Device Selection	— 03	Box 3		0
	0 4	Box 4		0
Support Links	0 5	Box 5		0



	Enter Password	Last Updated :xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx	₽ ?
End-User Mode	r		_
Log Out	This mail box is password-p	otected. Enter password and click OK. OK	Cancel
	Inbox No. :	01	
Device Manager	Inbox Name :	Box 1	
Job Manager	Password ·	(Fixed to 4 digits)	
Print Job	Tassword .	rited to 4 digits)	
Stored Job			
Print Log			
Device Selection			



2 Select the print job and click **Move Document**.

<mark>꾆</mark> Remote UI	🤧 _{iPF}	XXXX					
English language	Stored	Job				dated :xxx	ax/xx/xx xx xx xx 🕫 🤶
End-User Mode Log Out	Mail bo	ox01 : Box 1			Edit		To Inbox List Page
▶Device Manager ▼Job Manager Print Job		ocument Name	Owner XXXXXXX	Print Time	Number of Total	Pages	Date Saved
Stored Job	■► [sample4.jpg	XXXXXXX	XX:XX:XX	1		xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
Print Log Device Selection		sample3.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1		xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
		sample2.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1		xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
Support Links		sample1.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1		xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx

3 On the Move Document page, select the name or number of the destination personal box in the Destination mail box list and click OK.

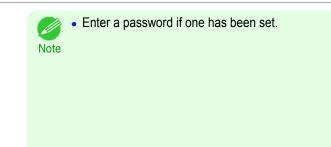
<mark>꾆</mark> Remote UI	🔊 iPFxxxx	
English language	Move Document	Last Updated :xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx 💈 ?
End-User Mode	for the second second second	
Log Out	Specify the destination mail box and click OK.	OK Cancel
	Document to move : sample4.jpg	
▶Device Manager	Destination mail box : 02 Box 2 💌	
▼Job Manager		
Print Job		
Stored Job	-	
Print Log		
▶Device Selection		
Support Links		

For details, refer to the RemoteUI help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

1 On the Hard Disk sheet, select a box and click Open.

tion Accounting Help		
Printer Status 🔟 Job	Accounting 🕄 Hard Disk 🔂 Information 🖬	Maintenance 🖓 Support
Mail Boxes :		
Inbox No.	Inbox name	
😂 00	Common Box	_
an 01		
<u>50</u> 02		
<u></u> 03		
<u></u> 04		
<u>5</u> 05		E
<u></u> 06		
<u>- 07</u>		
50 08		
<u></u> 10		
<u></u> 10 11		
12		
5 13		
10 5 14		
15		
<u></u> 16		
<u> </u>		
<u></u> 18		
🦡 19		-
		Open
Hard disk Information		
Status :	Usable	
Free Space :	xx.xGB	
	AA.A UD	



9	This mail box is password-protected. Enter the password and click OK.	
	Inbox No. : 01 Inbox name : Password : [4-digit num	iber)
	OK Cancel	

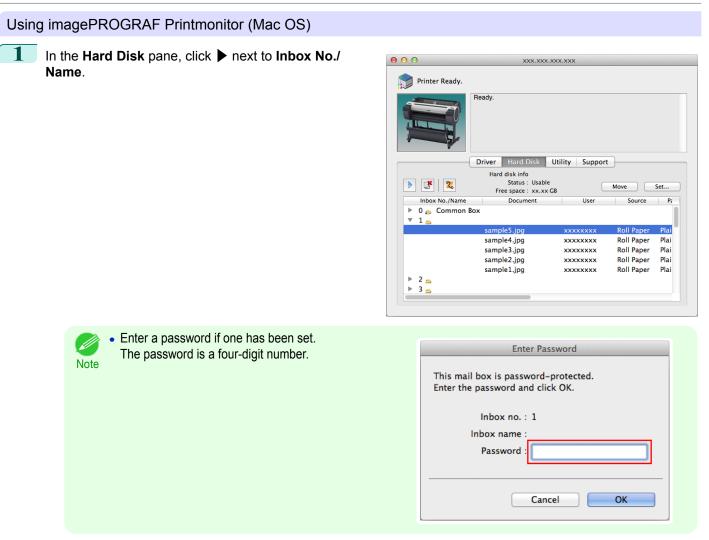
In the **Documents** dialog box, select the print job and click **Move**.

ocuments					E
Inbox No. : Inbox name :	01				<u>S</u> ettings
D <u>o</u> cuments :					
Document Name	Owner	Source	Media Type	Paper Size	File Size
sample5.jpg	XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	Roll Paper 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample4.jpg	XXXXXXXXXX	Roll Paper 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample3.jpg	XXXXXXXXX	Roll Paper 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.× MB
sample2.jpg	XXXXXXXX	Roll Paper 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.× MB
sample1.jpg	XXXXXXXXXX	Roll Paper 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
•	m				
		<u>P</u> rint	Delete	Move	Properties
				<u>C</u> lose	<u>H</u> elp

In the **Move** dialog box, select the destination personal box and click **OK**.

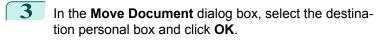
Move		×
Choose the destina	tion mail box.	
Mail Boxes :		
Inbox No.	Inbox name	<u>^</u>
殿 00	Common Box	
<u>50</u> 01		=
📾 02		
<u>50</u> 03		
<u>5</u> 05		
<u>50</u> 06		
<u>5</u> 07		
<u>50</u> 08		-
	OK Cancel	

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.



2 Select the print job and click **Move**.

00	XXX.XXX	.xxx.xxx		
Printer Ready.				
	Ready.			
	Driver Hard Disk	Utility Suppor	t	
	Hard disk info			
	Status : Usable	-	Move	Set
	Free space : xx.xx			
Inbox No./Name	Document	User	Source	Pa
🕨 🕨 👝 Common I	Box			
▼ 1 <u>∽</u>				
	sample5.jpg	XXXXXXXX	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample4.jpg	XXXXXXXX	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample3.jpg	XXXXXXXX	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample2.jpg	XXXXXXXX	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample1.jpg	XXXXXXXX	Roll Paper	Plai
▶ 2 <u>-</u>				
▶ 3 <u>∽</u>				



Move Document	
Choose the destination mail box.	
1	\$
Cancel	ОК

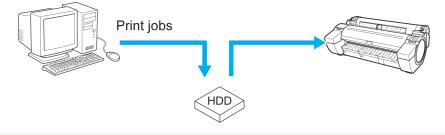
For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

Advanced Print Job Operations

Saving Print Jobs Sent from Sources Other than the Printer Driver Printing Without Saving Jobs in the Common Box	
Setting Passwords for Personal Boxes Naming Personal Boxes	
Displaying a List of Saved Jobs Printing a List of Saved Jobs Displaying Details of Saved Jobs Renaming Saved Jobs	564 565
 → Printer Hard Disk Operations → Checking the Free Hard Disk Space 	

Saving Print Jobs Sent from Sources Other than the Printer Driver

To save print jobs sent from software or systems other than the printer driver or applications provided with the printer, complete the **Output Method** and **Print After Recv** settings in the Control Panel menu.



• Contact the software or system developer for information about support for this printer function.

Specifying Output Method

In Output Method, specify how to manage jobs, regarding printing and saving them.

• Print

Note

Save print jobs automatically at the same time they are printed. (This is the default format.)

- **Print (Auto Del)** Save print jobs temporarily at the same time they are printed and delete them after printing.
- Save: Box 01 (Here, the number represents a box number) Save print jobs on the printer.
- On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab (🖃).

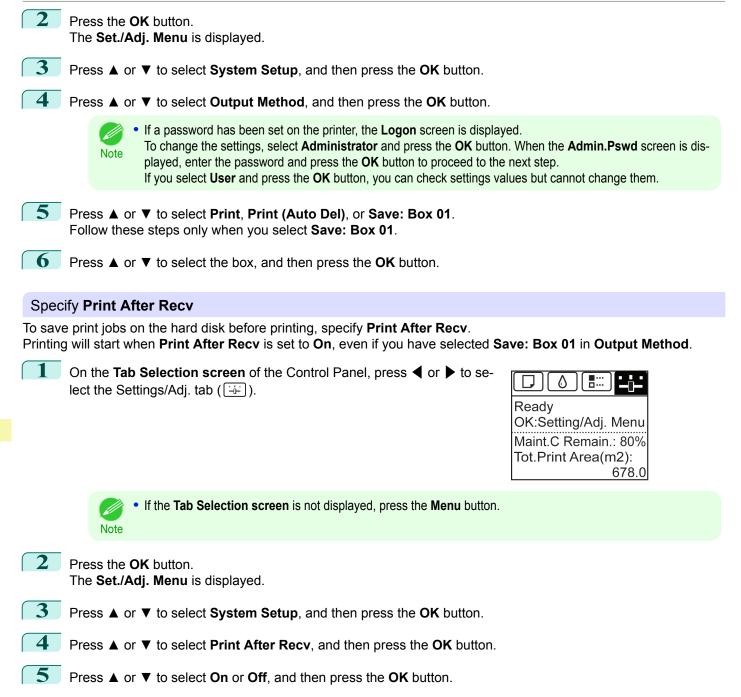


Ready OK:Setting/Adj. Menu Maint.C Remain.: 80% Tot.Print Area(m2): 678.0



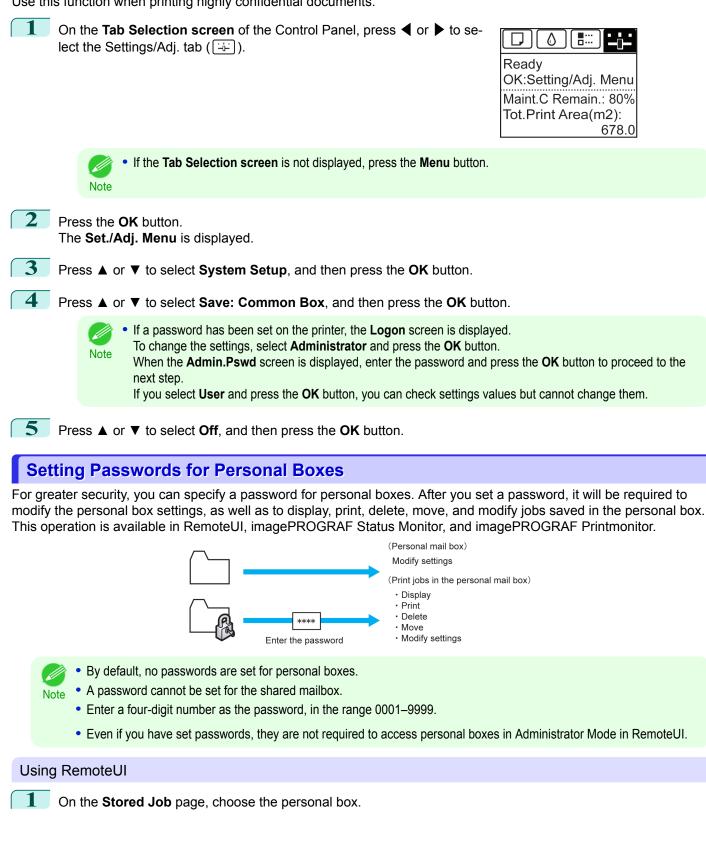
If the Tab Selection screen is not displayed, press the Menu button.

User's Guide



Printing Without Saving Jobs in the Common Box

Jobs sent from a computer for which you have selected **Print** in **Output Method** (in Windows) or **Send job to** (in Mac OS) in the printer driver are saved in the shared mailbox. (See "Using the Printer Hard Disk.") When **Save: Common Box** is **Off** in the Control Panel menu, print jobs for which you have selected **Print** in the **Output Method** dialog box of the printer driver are deleted from the shared mailbox after printing. Use this function when printing highly confidential documents.



2 Click Edit.

况 Remote UI	7 ,	PFxxxx				
	Store	d Job			Last Updated :	xxxx/xx/xx xx xx xx 😰
End-User Mode Log Out		box01 : Box 1			Edit	To Inbox List Page
Device Manager	Select	Document Name	Owner	Print Time	Number of Total Pages	Date Saved
Job Manager Print Job		🗒 sample5.jpg	XXXXXXX	XX:XX:XX	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
Stored Job		🗒 sample4.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
Print Log Device Selection		🗒 sample3.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
		🗒 sample2.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
Support Links		🗐 sample1.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx

3 In the **Set/Register User's Inbox** dialog box, specify the password and click **OK**.

- Set Password Select the check box.
- Password
 - Enter the password. (This field is limited to four digits in the range 0001–9999.)
- Confirmation Number Re-enter the password to confirm it.

<mark>ឌ</mark> Remote UI	🔊 iPFxxxx		
English language	Set/Register User's Int	ox	Last Updated :xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx 💈 ?
End-User Mode Log Out	Change the following settings.		OK Cancel
Logour	Inbox No. :	01	
▶Device Manager	Inbox Name :	Box 1	
▼Job Manager	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		
Print Job	Set Password		
Stored Job	Password :		(Fixed to 4 digits)
Print Log			
Device Selection	Confirmation Number :	••••	(Fixed to 4 digits)
Support Links			

For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select the personal box and click **Open**.

👂 Printer Status 🛛 🔟 Job 🗎	Accounting 🕄 Hard Disk 👔	Information 🛛 👪 Maintenance 🗍	🚳 Support
Mail Boxes :			
Inbox No.	Inbox name		
🚙 00	Common Box		
6 01			
<u></u> 02			
<u>-</u> 03			
<u>-</u> 04			
<u>5</u> 05			:
<u>50</u> 06			
<u>50</u> 07			
<u></u> 08			
<u></u> 09			
<u>-</u> 10			
<u>on</u> 11			
<u>5</u> 12			
<u>5</u> 13			
<u>5</u> 14			
<u>s</u> 15			
<u>5</u> 16			
17			
18 5 19			
I 🔤 19			_
			Open
Hard disk Information			
Status :	Usable		
Free Space :	XX X GB		

557

2 In the **Documents** dialog box, click **Settings**.

ocuments					
Inbox No. : Inbox name :	01				Settings
D <u>o</u> cuments :					
Document Name	Owner	Source	Media Type	Paper Size	File Size
sample5.jpg sample4.jpg sample3.jpg sample2.jpg sample1.jpg	XXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXX	Roll Paper 1 Roll Paper 1 Roll Paper 1 Roll Paper 1 Roll Paper 1	Plain Paper Plain Paper Plain Paper Plain Paper Plain Paper	ISO A4 ISO A4 ISO A4 ISO A4 ISO A4	x x MB x x MB x x MB x x MB x x MB x x MB
•	m				
		<u>Print</u>	<u>D</u> elete	Move	Properties
				Close	<u>H</u> elp

3 In the **Settings** dialog box, specify the password and click **OK**.

Set password

Select the check box.

Password

Enter the password. (This field is limited to four digits in the range 0001–9999.)

• **Re-enter to confirm** Re-enter the password to confirm it.

Settings	
Inbox No. : Inbox name :	01
Set password	
Password : Re-enter to confirm :	Image: second
	OK Cancel Help

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)

1 On the **Hard Disk** pane, click ► by **Inbox No./Name**. Select a saved job in the list and click **Set**.

0 0	XXX.XXX	xxx.xxx		
Printer Ready.				
	Ready.			
	Driver Hard Disk	Utility Suppor	t	
) 🕐 🕱	Hard disk info Status : Usabl		Move	Set
Inbox No./Name	Free space : xx.xx Document	User	Source	Pa
0 Common		- Ober	Source	
v 1 <u>s</u>				
	sample5.jpg	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample4.jpg	XXXXXXXX	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample3.jpg	XXXXXXXX	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample2.jpg	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample1.jpg	XXXXXXXX	Roll Paper	Plai
▶ 2 <u></u>				
► 3 <u>-</u>				

2 In the Settings dialog box, specify the password and click OK.

- Set password Select the check box.
- Password

Enter the password. (This field is limited to four digits in the range 0001–9999.)

- Verify
 - Re-enter the password to confirm it.

	Settings
Mail box	
Rename int	oox
	Inbox no. : 1
	Inbox name :
	indox name :
🗹 Set pass	word
	Password : •••• (4-digit number)
	Verificial
	Verify : ••••
Rename docur	nent
	De sum ent title : es male F
	Document title : sample5
	Cancel OK

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

Naming Personal Boxes

For easier identification, you can assign names to personal boxes. This operation is available in RemoteUI, imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.

Using RemoteUI

N

On the **Stored Job** page, choose the personal box.

꾆 Remote UI	🦻 iPFx	xxx				
English language	Stored J	ob				ated :xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx 💋 ?
End-User Mode Log Out		:01 : Box 1			Edit	To Inbox List Page
▶Device Manager		ument Name	Owner	Print Time	Number of Total P	azes Date Saved
✓ Job Manager Print Job		sample5.jpg	XXXXXXX	xx:xx:xx	1	
Stored Job		sample4.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
Print Log Device Selection		sample3.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
Support Links		sample2.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
Support Laiks		sample1.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx

Enter a password if one has been set for the personal box.	Remote UI English language End-User Mode Log Out	Enter Password This null box is password protected. Enter password and click OK. OK Cunctl Inbox No.: 01
	Device Manager Job Manager Print Job	Inbox Name : Box 1 Password : Fixed to 4 digits)
	Stored Job Print Log Device Selection	

Support Links

558

(1

2 Click Edit.

iPF685

1

꾆 Remote UI	?	PFxxxx				
	Store	l Job			Last Updated :	xxxx/xx/xx xx xx xx 🕫 🥤
End-User Mode Log Out		box01 : Box 1			Edit	To Inbox List Page
Device Manager	Select	Document Name	Owner	Print Time	Number of Total Pages	Date Saved
 Job Manager Print Job 		sample5.jpg	XXXXXXX	XXXXXXX	1	XXXX/XX/XX XX:XX
Stored Job		🗐 sample4.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
Print Log Device Selection		🗐 sample3.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
Support Links		📃 sample2.jpg	XXXXXXX	XX:XX:XX	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
Support Luiks		📃 sample1.jpg	XXXXXXX	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx

3 In the Set/Register User's Inbox dialog box, enter the name in Inbox Name and click OK.

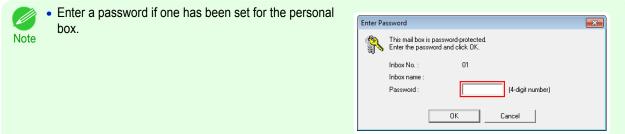
For details, refer to the RemoteUI help file.

꾆 Remote UI	🦻 iPFxxxx		
English language	Set/Register User's Inl	oox	Last Updated :xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx 💈 ?
End-User Mode	r	_	
Log Out	Change the following settings.		OK Cancel
	Inbox No. :	01	
▶Device Manager	Inbox Name :	Box 1	
▼Job Manager			
Print Job	Set Password		
Stored Job	Password :		(Fixed to 4 digits)
Print Log			(Fixed to 4 digits)
Device Selection	Confirmation Number :	••••	(Fixed to 4 digits)
Support Links			

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select the personal box and click **Open**.

Printer Status 🔟 Job	Accounting	🕄 Hard Di	isk 🚺 Ir	formation	Maintenanc	e 🚳 Suppo	t
Mail Boxes :	L						
Inbox No.	Inbox name						
🚙 00	Common Box						
6 01							
🔁 02							
<u>🥶 03</u>							
🗂 04							
<u>50</u> 05							
<u>50</u> 06							
<u>50</u> 07							
<u>50</u> 08							
<u></u> 09							
<u></u> 10							
<u>50</u> 11							
<u>5</u> 12							
<u>a</u> 13							
14							
🔁 15 🧙 16							
10 17							
17 18							
							Ope <u>n</u>
Hard disk Information							
Status :	Us	able					
Free Space :		×GB					



2 In the **Documents** dialog box, click **Settings**.

Inbox No. :	01				U
INDOX name :					Settings
Documents :					
Document Name	Owner	Source	Media Type	Paper Size	File Size
sample5.jpg sample4.jpg	XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	Roll Paper 1 Roll Paper 1	Plain Paper Plain Paper	ISO A4 ISO A4	x.× MB × × MB
sample3.jpg	XXXXXXXXXXX	Roll Paper 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample2.jpg sample1.jpg	XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	Roll Paper 1 Roll Paper 1	Plain Paper Plain Paper	ISO A4 ISO A4	x.× MB x.× MB
			·		
•	m	1			
		Print	Delete	Move	Properties
				Close	Help

In the Settings dialog box, enter the name and click OK.

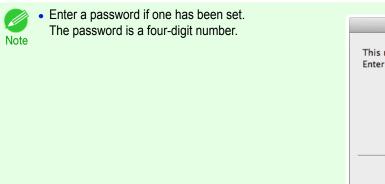
Settings	
Inbox No. : Inbox <u>n</u> ame :	01 Box 1
Set password	
Password :	(4-digit number)
<u>R</u> e-enter to confirm :	(4-digit number)
	OK Cancel Help

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)

1 In the Hard Disk pane, click ▶ next to Inbox No./ Name. Select a saved job in the list and click Set.

0 0	xxx.xx	x.xxx.xxx		
Printer Ready.				
	Ready.			
	Driver Hard Disk	Utility Suppor	t	
	Hard disk info			
Image: Second	Status : Usab Free space : xx.x		Move	Set
Inbox No./Name	Document	User	Source	Pi
🕨 0 👝 Common	Box			
🔻 1 👝				
	sample5.jpg	XXXXXXXX	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample4.jpg	XXXXXXXX	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample3.jpg	XXXXXXXX	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample2.jpg	XXXXXXXX	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample1.jpg	XXXXXXXX	Roll Paper	Plai
▶ 2 <u>-</u>				
🕨 3 👝				



E	Inter Password
This mail box is pa Enter the password	
Inbox na Inbox nam Passwor	le :
(Cancel OK

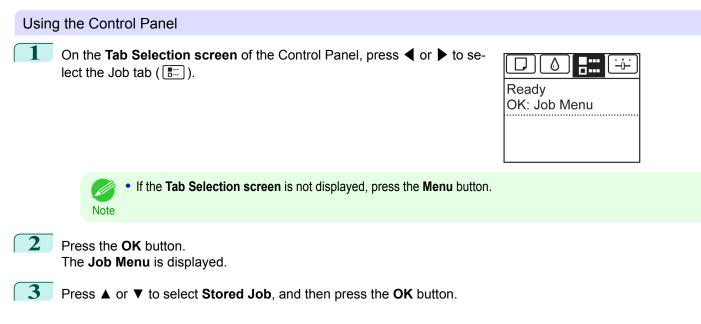
2 In the Settings dialog box, enter the name and click OK.

Mail box			
Rename in	ıbox		
	Inbox no. : 1		
	Inbox name : B	ox1	
Set pas	sword		
	Password :		(4-digit number)
	Verify :		
Rename doc	ument		
	Document title : sa	ample5	
			ncel OK

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

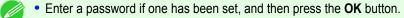
Displaying a List of Saved Jobs

Print jobs stored on the printer's hard disk (saved jobs) can be listed by box as follows. These operations are available from the Control Panel or in RemoteUI, imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, and image-PROGRAF Printmonitor.



Note

4



5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Job List**, and then press the **OK** button.

Using RemoteUI

On the Stored Job page, choose the box.

• Enter a password if one has been set.

꾆 Remote UI	🦻 iPFxxxx			
English language	Stored Job		Last Update	d :xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx 💈 ?
End-User Mode Log Out	Inbox List			Hard Disk Free Space : xx.xGB
	Inbox No.	Inbox Name		Document Count
 Device Manager 	00 🖻	Common mail box		69
✓ Job Manager Print Job	E 01	Box 1		5
Stored Job	02	Box 2		0
Print Log Device Selection	03	Box 3		0
	04	Box 4		0
Support Links	05	Box 5		0

Note

꾆 Remote UI	🔗 iPFxxxx	
	Enter Password	Last Updated :xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx 😕 💡
End-User Mode		
Log Out	This mail box is password-pro	etected. Enter password and click OK. OK Cancel
▶Device Manager	Inbox No. : Inbox Name :	01 Box 1
▼Job Manager	Password ·	(Fixed to 4 digits)
Print Job	Tassword .	(Fixed to 4 digits)
Stored Job		
Print Log		
▶Device Selection		
Support Links		

Jobs saved in the box are listed.

<mark>꾆</mark> Remote UI	77 i	PFxxxx				
English language	Store	d Job			Last Updated	********
End-User Mode Log Out		box01 : Box 1			Edit	To Inbox List Page
▶Device Manager	Select	Document Name	Owner	Print Time	Number of Total Pages	Date Saved
✓ Job Manager Print Job		🗐 sample5.jpg	XXXXXXX	XX:XX:XX	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
Stored Job		🗐 sample4.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
Print Log Device Selection		🗐 sample3.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
		📄 sample2.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
Support Links		🛒 sample1.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx

For details, refer to the RemoteUI help.

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

On the Hard Disk sheet, select a box and click Open.

Service and a se	anon iPFxxxx	
Opti	on Accounting Help	
	Printer Status 🗐 Job 🎲 Accounting 🗍 Hard Disk 🗊 Information 👪 Maintenance 🎇 Support	
Ma	ail Boxes :	
	nbox No. Inbox name	
	00 Common Box	
	01 2 02	
	<u>n</u> 03	
	<u>n</u> 04	
	n 05 ⊨ n 06	
	<u>a</u> 07	
	2 08 2 09	
	n 10	
	<u>n</u> 11	
	a 12 a 13	
	<u>a</u> 14	
	<u>n</u> 15	
	_ 16 _ 17	
	n 18	
1.	n 19	
	<u>Open</u>	
	Hard disk Information	
	Status : Usable Free Space : XXXGB	
Enter a password if one has a password if	as been set	
Note	Enter Password	
	This mail box is password-protected. Enter the password and click DK.	
	Inbox No. : 01	
	Inbox name :	
	Password : (4-digit number)	
	OK Cancel	

Jobs saved in that box are displayed in the **Documents** dialog box.

Inbox No. :	01				<u>.</u>
				(Settings
Documents : Document Name	Owner	Source	Media Type	Paper Size	File Size
sample5.jpg sample4.jpg sample3.jpg sample2.jpg sample1.jpg	XXXXXXXX XXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXX XXXX	Roll Paper 1 Roll Paper 1 Roll Paper 1 Roll Paper 1 Roll Paper 1	Plain Paper Plain Paper Plain Paper Plain Paper Plain Paper	ISO A4 ISO A4 ISO A4 ISO A4 ISO A4 ISO A4	x.x MB x.x MB x.x MB x.x MB x.x MB
4					,
		Print	Delete	Move	Properties
				Close	Help

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)

On the **Hard Disk** pane, click by **Inbox No./Name**.

Printer Ready.				
	Ready.			
	Driver Hard Disk	Utility Support	:]	
	Hard disk info			
	Status : Usabl Free space : xx.xx		Move	Set
Inbox No./Name	Document	User	Source	Pa
🕨 0 👝 Common I	Box			
🔻 1 👝				
	sample5.jpg	XXXXXXXX	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample4.jpg	XXXXXXXX	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample3.jpg	XXXXXXXX	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample2.jpg	XXXXXXXX	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample1.jpg	XXXXXXXX	Roll Paper	Plai

Print Job Management

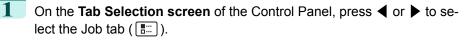
Advanced Print Job Operations

• Enter a password if one has been se The password is a four-digit number.		
	Enter Password	
	This mail box is password-protected. Enter the password and click OK.	
	Inbox no. : 1	
	Inbox name :	
	Password :	
	Cancel OK	

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

Printing a List of Saved Jobs

The list of print jobs stored on the printer's hard disk (saved jobs) can be printed by box as follows.



Ready
OK: Job Menu

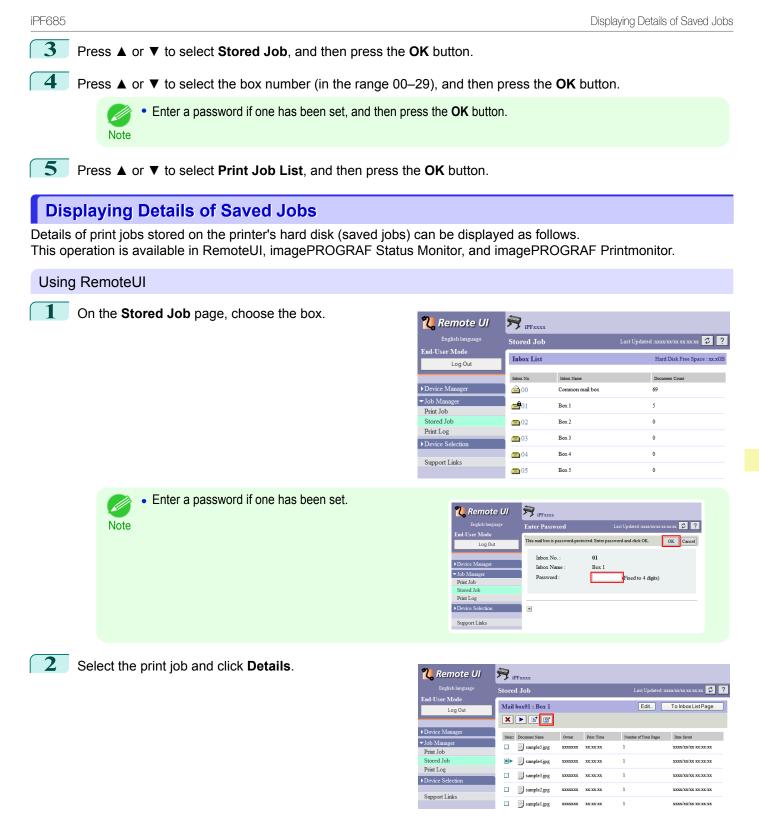


• If the Tab Selection screen is not displayed, press the Menu button.

564

2

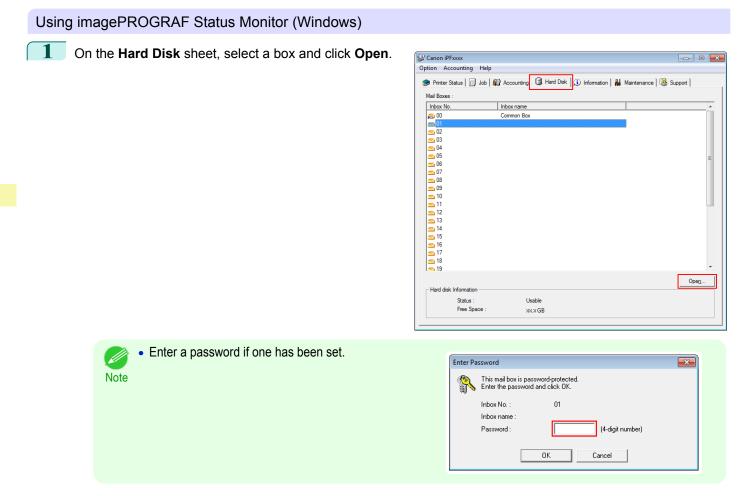
Press the **OK** button. The Job Menu is displayed.



The **Details of the saved document** page is displayed.

꾆 Remote UI	🔊 iPFxxxx	
English language	Details of the save	ed document 🛛 Last Updated :xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx 😰 ?
End-User Mode Log Out	Details of the saved document	Change Document To Saved Job Page
▶Device Manager	Document Name : Media Size :	sample4.jpg A4
▼Job Manager	Paper Type :	Plain Paper
Print Job	Owner :	XXXXXX
Stored Job Print Log	Date Saved :	xx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
Device Selection	Size :	xxxxKB
Device Selection	Paper Information :	Roll 1
Support Links	Copies :	1Copies

For details, refer to the RemoteUI help file.



2 In the **Documents** dialog box, select the print job and click **Properties**.

ocuments					_
Inbox No. : Inbox name :	01				
					<u>S</u> ettings
) <u>o</u> cuments :					
Document Name	Owner	Source	Media Type	Paper Size	File Size
sample5.jpg	XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	Roll Paper 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample4.jpg sample3.jpg	XXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXX	Roll Paper 1 Roll Paper 1	Plain Paper Plain Paper	ISO A4 ISO A4	x.× MB x.× MB
sample2.jpg sample1.jpg	XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	Roll Paper 1 Roll Paper 1	Plain Paper Plain Paper	ISO A4 ISO A4	x.x MB x.x MB
•	III				
		Print	Delete	Move	Properties
				Close	Help

The Properties dialog box is displayed.

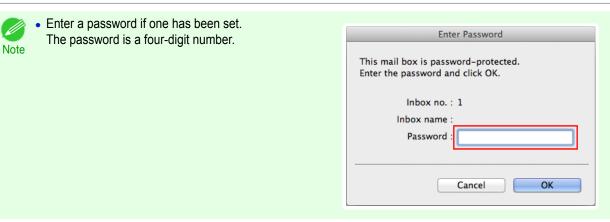
Properti	ies		x
	Document <u>N</u> ame :	sample5.jpg	
	Owner :	жжжжж	
	Source :	Roll Paper 1	
	Media Type :	Plain Paper	
	Paper Size :	ISO A4	
	File Size :	x.x MB	
	Pages :	1	
	Date Saved :	xx/xx/xxxx xxxx	
	Print Time :	xx:xx:xx	
		OK Cancel	

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)

1 In the Hard Disk pane, click ▶ next to Inbox No./ Name.

Printer Ready.				
Printer Ready.				
	Ready.			
	Driver Hard Disk	Utility Suppor	t]	
	Hard disk info			
Image: Market	Status : Usab Free space : xx.x		Move	Set
Inbox No./Name	Document	User	Source	Pi
🕨 0 🐢 Common	Box			
🔻 1 👝				
	sample5.jpg	XXXXXXXX	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample4.jpg	XXXXXXXX	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample3.jpg	XXXXXXXX	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample2.jpg	XXXXXXXX	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample1.jpg	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
▶ 2 <u></u>				



For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

Renaming Saved Jobs

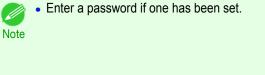
Print jobs stored on the printer's hard disk (saved jobs) can be renamed as follows. This operation is available in RemoteUI, imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.

Using RemoteUI

On the Stored Job page, choose the box.

꾆 Remote UI	🦻 iPFxxxx		
English language	Stored Job		Last Updated :xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx 😕 ?
End-User Mode			
Log Out	Inbox List		Hard Disk Free Space : xx.xGB
	Inbox No.	Inbox Name	Document Count
▶Device Manager	00 📤 💼	Common mail box	69
▼Job Manager	-0 1	Box 1	5
Print Job	01	DUXI	
Stored Job	02	Box 2	0
Print Log	— 03	Box 3	0
Device Selection	- 03	BOX 3	0
	04	Box 4	0
Support Links			
	0 5	Box 5	0

Print Job Management





2 Select the print job and click **Details**.

꾆 Remote UI	?	PFxxxx				
	Store	d Job				1 xxxx/xx/xx xx xx xx 🕫 ?
End-User Mode	Mail	hox01 : Box 1			Edit	To Inbox List Page
Log Out					Edit	To indox List Page
	×	Image: A state of the state				
▶Device Manager	Select	Document Name	Owner	Print Time	Number of Total Pages	Date Saved
▼Job Manager		sample5.jpg	XXXXXXX	XX-XX-XX	1	XXXX/XX/XX XX:XX
Print Job		J sample).jpg	*****	AA.AA.AA	1	****
Stored Job	••	sample4.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
Print Log		🗐 sample3.jpg	****	xx xx xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx xx xx
▶Device Selection		J compressions			-	
		📃 sample2.jpg	XXXXXXX	XX:XX:XX	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
Support Links		🗐 sample1.jpg	xxxxxxx	xx:xx:xx	1	xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx



3 On the Details of the saved document page, click Change Document.

<mark>१ R</mark> emote UI	🔊 iPFxxxx	
English language	Details of the save	d document 🛛 Last Updated :xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx 💈 ?
End-User Mode	Details of the	
Log Out	saved document	Change Document To Saved Job Page
	Document Name :	sample4.jpg
Device Manager	Media Size :	A4
▼Job Manager	Paper Type :	Plain Paper
Print Job	Owner :	*****
Stored Job	Date Saved :	xx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx
Print Log	Size :	6701KB
Device Selection	Paper Information :	Roll 1
Support Links	-	
	Copies :	1Copies



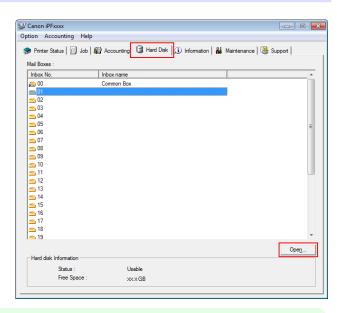
In the **Rename Saved Document** dialog box, enter the name and click **OK**.

<mark>꾆</mark> Remote UI	켜 iPFxxxx		
English language	Rename Saved Doc	ument	Last Updated :xxxx/xx/xx xx:xx:xx 💈 ?
End-User Mode Log Out	Change the following settin	ıgs.	OK Cancel
	Document Name :	sample4.jpg	
▶Device Manager			
▼Job Manager			
Print Job			
Stored Job			
Print Log			
▶Device Selection			
Support Links			

For details, refer to the RemoteUI help file.

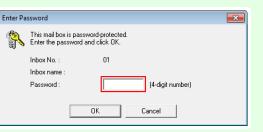
Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

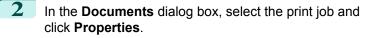
1 On the **Hard Disk** sheet, select a box and click **Open**.





Enter a password if one has been set.





ocuments					
Inbox No. : Inbox name :	01				
					Settings
D <u>o</u> cuments :					
Document Name	Owner	Source	Media Type	Paper Size	File Size
sample5.jpg	XXXX0000X	Roll Paper 1	Plain Paper	ISO A4	x.x MB
sample4.jpg sample3.jpg sample2.jpg sample1.jpg	XXXXXXXX XXXXXXXX XXXXXXXX XXXXXXXX	Roll Paper 1 Roll Paper 1 Roll Paper 1 Roll Paper 1	Plain Paper Plain Paper Plain Paper Plain Paper	ISO A4 ISO A4 ISO A4 ISO A4	x.× MB x.× MB x.× MB x.× MB
•	III				
		Print	Delete	Move	Properties
				<u>C</u> lose	Help

In the **Properties** dialog box, enter the new name and click **OK**.

Properti	ies	
	Document <u>N</u> ame :	sample5.jpg
	Owner :	XXXXXXXXX
	Source :	Roll Paper 1
	Media Type :	Plain Paper
	Paper Size :	ISO A4
	File Size :	x.x MB
	Pages :	1
	Date Saved :	
	Print Time :	xxixxixx
		OK Cancel

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help file.

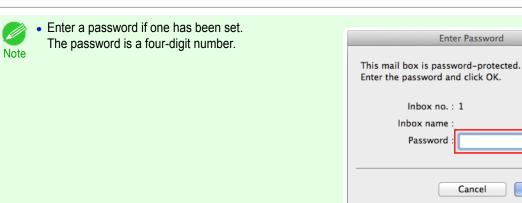
Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Mac OS)

1 In the Hard Disk pane, click ▶ next to Inbox No./ Name.

0 0	XXX.XX	x.xxx.xxx		
Printer Ready.				
	Ready.			
	Driver Hard Disk	Utility Suppor	t	
	Hard disk info			
	Status : Usab	le	Move	Set
	Free space : xx.x	x GB	MOVE	Set
Inbox No./Name	Document	User	Source	Pa
🕨 0 👝 Common	Box			
▼ 1 <u>∞</u>				
	sample5.jpg	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample4.jpg	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample3.jpg	xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample2.jpg	XXXXXXXX	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample1.jpg	XXXXXXXX	Roll Paper	Plai
▶ 2 <u>-</u>	54.1.p.c 1.0pg			
▶ 3				
r 3 👝				

Print Job Management

OK





Select the print job and click **Set**.

	XXX.XXX	xxx.xxx		
Printer Ready.				
	Ready.			
	Driver Hard Disk	Utility Support	:	
	Hard disk info			
Image: Market Ma Market Market Ma Market Market Mar Market Market Market Market Market Market Market Mar	Status : Usabl Free space : xx.xx	-	Move	Set
Inbox No./Name	Document	User	Source	Pi
0 o Common Bo	x			
▼ 1 <u>⇔</u>				
	sample5.jpg	****	Roll Paper	Plai
		xxxxxxxx xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper Roll Paper	Plai Plai
	sample5.jpg			
	sample5.jpg sample4.jpg	*****	Roll Paper	Plai
	sample5.jpg sample4.jpg sample3.jpg	xxxxxxxx xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper Roll Paper	Plai Plai
	sample5.jpg sample4.jpg sample3.jpg sample2.jpg	xxxxxxxx xxxxxxxx xxxxxxxx	Roll Paper Roll Paper Roll Paper	Plai Plai Plai

3 In the Settings dialog box, enter the new name and click OK.

Rename inbox	
Inbox no. :	: 1
Inbox name :	:
Set password	
Password :	: (4-digit number)
Verify	:
Rename document	
Document title :	sample5

For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help file.

Memo

iPF685

User's Guide

Basic Printing Workflow	15
Enhanced Printing Options	31
Windows Software	157
Mac OS Software	277
Handling and Use of Paper	361
Control Panel	437
Printer Parts	477
Network Setting	491
Print Job Management	511

Adjustments for Better Print Quality

Adjusting the Printhead	574
Adjusting the feed amount	581

Maintenance and Consumables	589
Troubleshooting	627
Error Message	657
Specifications	681
Appendix	685

Adjusting the Printhead

Adjusting the Printhead Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors Manual Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors	574
Adjusting Line Misalignment	577
Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images	579

Adjusting the Printhead

If printed documents are affected by the following problems, try adjusting the printhead.

- Printing is faint or affected by banding in different colors Execute Nozzle Check to check for printhead nozzle clogging.
 For instructions, see "Checking for Nozzle Clogging." (>P.599)
- Printed vertical lines are warped or colors are out of alignment Execute Head Posi. Adj. to adjust the printhead position. Normally, execute Auto(Standard) or Auto(Advanced). However, when using special paper or if printing is not improved after executing Auto(Advanced), try Manual. (See "Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors.") →P574 (See "Manual Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors.") →P575
- Printed lines are misaligned Execute Head Inc. Adj. to adjust the angle of inclination of the printhead. Even slight misalignment can be corrected. (See "Adjusting Line Misalignment.") →P.577
- Paper rubs against the printhead, or image edges are blurred Executing Head Height to adjust the printhead height may improve printing results. (See "Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images.") →P.579

Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors

If printed vertical lines are warped or colors are out of alignment, execute **Head Posi. Adj.** to adjust the Printhead alignment.

There are two modes for automatic Printhead adjustment: Auto(Standard) and Auto(Advanced).

Auto(Standard) will fix most slight image distortion or color misalignment, but if not, try Auto(Advanced). Use Auto(Standard) or Auto(Advanced) to have the printer print and read a test pattern for automatic adjustment of the Printhead.





• This function is not available with Tracing Paper, Translucent Matte Film, or Clear Film.

 If adjustment is not possible as expected using special media, try another type of paper, or try Manual adjustment. (See "Manual Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors.") →P.575



- Note
- Because the results of adjustment vary depending on the type of paper used for adjustment, use the same type of
 paper as you will use for printing.
- Use Auto(Standard) if you have switched to another type of paper or if you want the boundaries between colors to appear as clear as possible.
- Use Auto(Advanced) to fine-tune the space between nozzles or colors if you have switched the printhead or if clearer printing is required. We recommend Auto(Advanced) for printing at the highest level of quality.

Paper to Prepare

When Using Rolls	An unused roll at least 10 inches wide
When Using Sheets	Auto(Standard) : One sheet of unused paper of at least A4/Letter size Auto(Advanced): Six sheets of unused paper of at least A4/Letter size (or one sheet when using A2 or larger)

Perform adjustment as follows.

- Load the paper.
 - Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls →P.372
 - Loading Rolls in the Printer → P.375
 - Loading Sheets in the Printer →P.394



• Always make sure the loaded paper matches the type of paper specified on the printer. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the loaded paper matches the settings.

2 On the Tab Selection screen of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab (----).

Ready	
OK:Setting/Adj. Me	
Maint.C Remain.: 80 Tot.Print Area(m2)	אכ
678	5.UJ

Adjustments for Better Print Quality

3 Press the **OK** button.

The Set./Adj. Menu is displayed.

- Press ▲ or ▼ to select Adjust Printer, and then press the OK button.
 - Press ▲ or ▼ to select Head Posi. Adj., and then press the OK button.
- 6 Press ▲ or ▼ to select Auto(Standard) or Auto(Advanced), and then press the OK button. A test pattern is printed for adjustment. Adjustment is now finished if you have printed on a roll or a sheet of A2 size or larger.

If the Tab Selection screen is not displayed, press the Menu button.

If you are printing on sheets smaller than A2 size for **Auto(Advanced)**, a confirmation message is displayed requesting you to continue printing. Press the **OK** button and follow the instructions displayed.

Manual Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors

If printed vertical lines are warped or colors are out of alignment, execute **Head Posi. Adj.** to adjust the Printhead alignment.

Normally, execute Standard.

(See "Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors.") →P.574

However, when printing on special paper, or if printing is not improved after **Standard**, try **Manual**. **Manual** adjustment requires you to examine the printed test pattern and enter an adjustment value.



	• We recommend using the type of paper you use most often for adjustment.
Note	

Items to Prepare

When Using Rolls	An unused roll at least 254.0 mm (10.00 in) wide
When Using Sheets	Two sheets of unused paper, A4/Letter size (or one sheet when using A2)

Perform adjustment as follows.

- Load paper.
 - Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls →P.372
 - Loading Rolls in the Printer → P.375
 - Loading Sheets in the Printer → P.394
 - Always make sure the loaded paper matches the type of paper specified on the printer. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the loaded paper matches the settings.
- 2 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab (::=).



678.0

• If the Tab Selection screen is not displayed, press the Menu button.

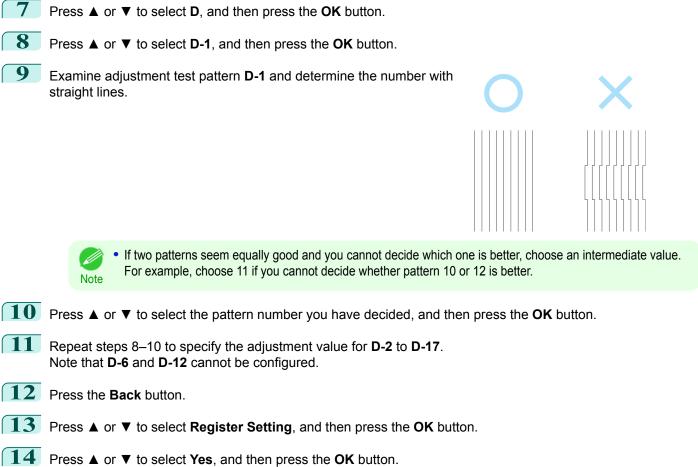
3 Press the OK button. The Set./Adj. Menu is displayed.

Note

- 4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select Adjust Printer, and then press the OK button.
- Press ▲ or ▼ to select Head Posi. Adj., and then press the OK button.
 - Press \blacktriangle or \triangledown to select **Manual**, and then press the **OK** button. A test pattern is printed for adjustment.



- **Manual** may be unavailable in some cases, even if it is displayed in the menu. If so, execute **Standard** once.
- (See "Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors.") →P.574
- If you printed on cut sheets, follow the instructions on the Display Screen and use another sheet of the same type of paper.



The adjustment value is now registered, and adjustment is complete.

Adjusting Line Misalignment

If printed lines are misaligned, execute **Head Inc. Adj.** to adjust the angle of inclination of the Printhead. Executing **Head Inc. Adj.** requires you to examine a printed test pattern and enter an adjustment value.

Paper to Prepare

Rolls	An unused roll at least 10 inches wide
Sheets	One sheet of unused paper of at least A4/Letter size

Perform adjustment as follows.



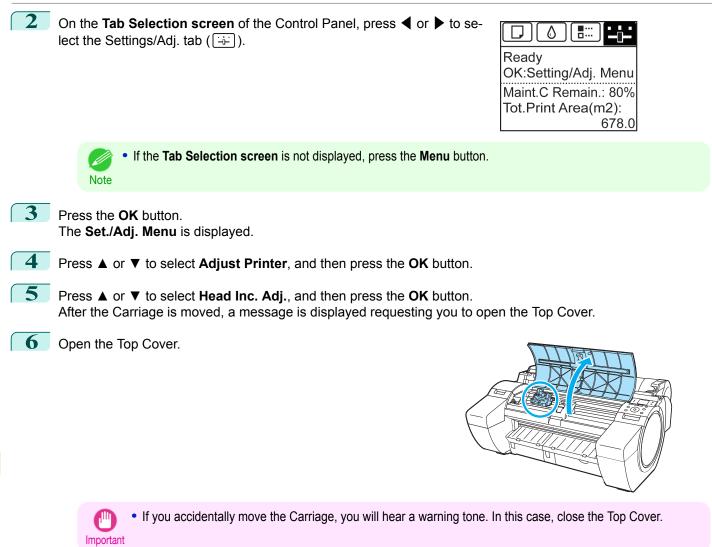
Load the paper.

- Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls →P.372
- Loading Rolls in the Printer →P.375
- Loading Sheets in the Printer →P.394

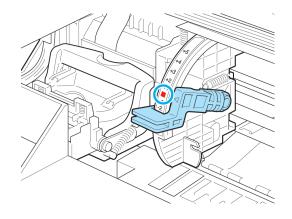


When loading paper, specify the type of paper correctly. Using paper that you have not specified on the printer
may cause feeding problems and affect the printing quality.

• We recommend loading a type of paper that you use often.

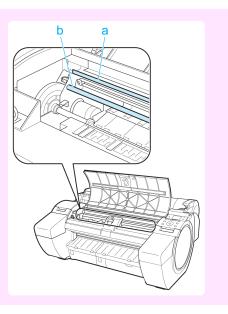


Align the Angle Adjustment Lever with the red square and close the Top Cover.

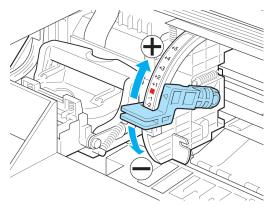


A test pattern is printed for adjustment.

 Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b). Touching these parts may damage them. Important



- 8 Examine the test pattern for adjustment. Determine the straightest set of lines.
- 9 Open the Top Cover and move the Angle Adjustment Lever to match the number (or the square) of the straightest set of lines. If no single set of lines is perfectly straight, move the Angle Adjustment Lever to a position between the numbers (or between the number and the square) of the two sets of lines that are least misaligned.



-2

-4

-6

iPF685

10 Close the Top Cover. The Printhead is now straight, and adjustment is complete.

Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images

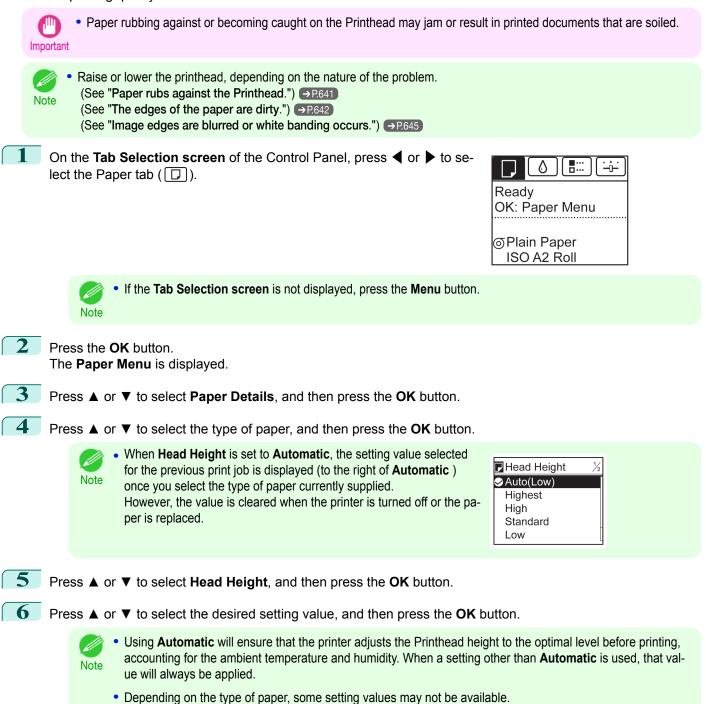
The Printhead height setting affects printing quality. Specifying a low Printhead height makes images clearer and enhances printing quality but may cause paper to rub against the Printhead.

+6

+4

+2

On the other hand, specifying a high Printhead height will prevent paper from rubbing against the Printhead but may reduce the printing quality.



Adjusting the feed amount

Adjusting the Feed Amount	. 581
Selecting a Feed Amount Adjustment Method	. 581
Automatic Banding Adjustment	. 582
Manual Banding Adjustment	
Fine-Tuning the Paper Feed Amount	. 585
Adjusting Line Length	
Adjusting the Vacuum Strength	. 587

Adjusting the Feed Amount

If printed documents are affected by the following problems, try adjusting the feed amount.

- Banding in different colors
- · Line length is not accurate in the direction paper is fed

To adjust the feed amount, do the following, in this order.

- Depending on the issue, adjust **Adj. Priority** to suit the particular type of paper. (See "Selecting a Feed Amount Adjustment Method.") →P.581
- 2 Execute Adj. Quality or Adjust Length, depending on the selection in Adj. Priority. (See "Automatic Banding Adjustment.") →P582 (See "Manual Banding Adjustment.") →P584 (See "Adjusting Line Length.") →P586
- 3 After executing Adj. Quality, execute Adj. Fine Feed for further adjustment as needed. (See "Fine-Tuning the Paper Feed Amount.") →P.585

Selecting a Feed Amount Adjustment Method

Methods of adjusting the amount paper is fed are set in **Adj. Priority**. Adjust **Adj. Priority** to suit your particular printing application.

- Print Quality: Adjusts the feed amount to reduce banding across the sheet in printed documents.
 Adj. Quality settings are applied. When Adj. Fine Feed is executed, the Adj. Fine Feed settings are applied in addition to the Adj. Quality settings.
- **Print Length**: Adjusts the feed amount for better accuracy of lines in printed documents. The settings of **A:High** or **B:Standard/Draft** in **Adjust Length** are applied.
- Automatic: Print Quality or Print Length is selected, depending on Print Priority as selected in the printer driver at the time of printing.

Image or Office Document: Print Quality is selected. Line Drawing/Text: Print Length is selected.



- Either A:High or B:Standard/Draft in the Adjust Length menu is applied, depending on printer driver settings at the time of printing.
- If you have selected Easy Settings in the printer driver, follow these steps to confirm the Print Priority setting.
 - Windows: Click View Settings on the Main tab to display the View Settings dialog box.
 - Mac OS: Click View set. on the Main pane to display the View set. dialog box.

1 Load the paper.

- Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls →P.372)
- Loading Rolls in the Printer →P.375
- Loading Sheets in the Printer →P.394

2 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press **◄** or **▶** to select the Settings/Adj. tab (→).



Ready OK:Setting/Adj. Menu Maint.C Remain.: 80% Tot.Print Area(m2): 678.0

If the Tab Selection screen is not displayed, press the Menu button.

3 Press the **OK** button. The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

Note

- **4** Press \blacktriangle or \triangledown to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the **OK** button.
 - Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Feed Priority**, and then press the **OK** button.
- 6 Press ▲ or ▼ to select Adj. Priority, and then press the OK button.
- 7 Press ▲ or ▼ to select Automatic, Print Quality, or Print Length, and then press the OK button.

Automatic Banding Adjustment

If printed images are affected by banding in different colors across the sheet, execute **Adj. Quality** for automatic adjustment of the paper feed amount.

There are two modes of automatic adjustment to correct banding: **Auto(GenuinePpr)** and **Auto(OtherPaper)**. In either mode, the printer prints and reads a test pattern for automatic adjustment of the feed amount.

Auto(GenuinePpr)

Use this mode with paper identified in the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "Types of Paper.") → P.362

Auto(OtherPaper)

Use this mode with paper not in the **Paper Reference Guide**, or if **Auto(GenuinePpr)** does not eliminate banding. (See "Types of Paper.") (See "Types of Paper.")



Note

- If additional fine-tuning is necessary after Auto(GenuinePpr) and Auto(OtherPaper), execute Adj. Fine Feed. (See "Fine-Tuning the Paper Feed Amount.") → P.585
- Use Adjust Length to ensure that lines in CAD drawings are printed at exactly the right length. (See "Adjusting Line Length.") → P.586
- This may take some time, depending on the type of paper.
- Use paper of the same type and size for adjustment as you will use for printing.

Items to Prepare

When Using Rolls	An unused roll at least 10 inches wide		
When Using Sheets	Auto(GenuinePpr) : One sheet of unused paper, A4/Letter size Auto(OtherPaper) : Two sheets of unused paper, A4/Letter size (or one sheet when using A2)		

Perform adjustment as follows.

- Load the paper.
 - Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls → P.372
 - Loading Rolls in the Printer →P.375
 - Loading Sheets in the Printer →P.394



• Always make sure the loaded paper matches the type of paper specified. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the loaded paper matches the settings.

```
2 On the Tab Selection screen of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab (<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>).
```



Ready OK:Setting/Adj. Menu Maint.C Remain.: 80% Tot.Print Area(m2): 678.0

Note

• If the Tab Selection screen is not displayed, press the Menu button.

- **3** Press the **OK** button. The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.
- **4** Press \blacktriangle or \blacktriangledown to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the **OK** button.
- 5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select Feed Priority, and then press the OK button.
 - Press ▲ or ▼ to select Adj. Quality, and then press the OK button.
 - Press ▲ or ▼ to select Auto(GenuinePpr) or Auto(OtherPaper), and then press the OK button. A test pattern is printed for adjustment. Adjustment is now finished if you have printed on a roll or a sheet of A2 size or larger.

8 If you are printing on sheets smaller than A2 size for Auto(OtherPaper), a confirmation message is shown on the Display Screen requesting you to continue printing.

Press the **OK** button and follow the instructions on the Display Screen.

Manual Banding Adjustment

If printed images are affected by banding in different colors, execute Adj. Quality for adjustment of the paper feed amount.

Use Manual adjustment with highly transparent media or other paper for which Auto(GenuinePpr) or Auto(OtherPaper) cannot be used.

(See "Automatic Banding Adjustment.") → P.582

Manual adjustment requires you to enter an adjustment value after a test pattern is printed.

- Use paper of the same type and size for adjustment as you will use for printing.
- Note Always check the Adj. Priority values before using Manual adjustment. (See "Selecting a Feed Amount Adjustment Method.") →P.581
 - If additional fine-tuning is necessary after Manual adjustment, use Adj. Fine Feed (See "Fine-Tuning the Paper Feed Amount.") → P.585
 - Use Adjust Length to ensure that lines in CAD drawings are printed at exactly the right length. (See "Adjusting Line Length.") → P.586

Paper to Prepare

When Using Rolls	An unused roll at least 10 inches wide
When Using Sheets	Two sheets of unused paper of at least A4/Letter size

Perform adjustment as follows.

- 1 Load the paper.
 - Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls → P.372
 - Loading Rolls in the Printer \rightarrow P.375
 - Loading Sheets in the Printer →P.394



 Always make sure the loaded paper matches the type of paper specified. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the loaded paper matches the settings.

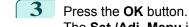
2 On the Tab Selection screen of the Control Panel, press 4 or b to select the Settings/Adj. tab (---).

Ready	
OK:Setting/Adj. N	/lenu
	000/

Maint.C Remain.: 80% Tot.Print Area(m2): 678.0



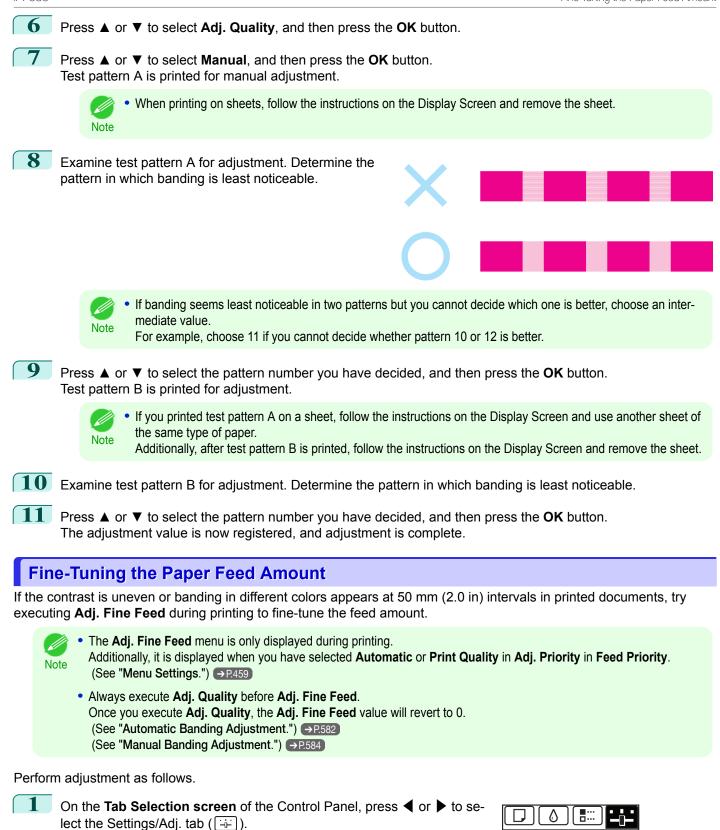
If the Tab Selection screen is not displayed, press the Menu button.



The Set./Adj. Menu is displayed.

Press ▲ or ▼ to select Adjust Printer, and then press the OK button.

Press ▲ or ▼ to select Feed Priority, and then press the OK button.



Printing OK:Setting/Adj. Menu Maint.C Remain.: 80% Tot.Print Area(m2): 678.0



- 2 Press the OK button. The Set./Adj. Menu is displayed.
 - **3** Press \blacktriangle or \checkmark to select **Adj. Fine Feed**, and then press the **OK** button.
 - Press ▲ or ▼ to select a setting value in the range -5 to 5, and then press the OK button. At this time, if banding in dark colors appears, select a setting value in the range 1 to 5, and if banding in light colors appears, select a setting value in the range -1 to -5.

Adjusting Line Length

To ensure that lines in CAD drawings are printed at exactly the right length, use **Adjust Length** to adjust the amount that paper is advanced.

There are two options in Adjust Length : AdjustmentPrint and Change Settings.

AdjustmentPrint

After a test pattern is printed, you will measure the discrepancy based on the results of printing.

Change Settings

No test pattern is printed. Instead, you will measure a document already printed to determine the discrepancy.

Additionally, two modes are available in both **AdjustmentPrint** and **Change Settings** : **A:High** or **B:Standard/Draft**. Choose the mode that suits your particular printing application.

• A:High

This setting is applied when Highest or High is selected in Print Quality in the printer driver.

• B:Standard/Draft

This setting is applied when Standard or Fast is selected in Print Quality in the printer driver.



• Always check the Adj. Priority values before using Adjust Length. (See "Selecting a Feed Amount Adjustment Method.") → P.581

• Use paper of the same type and size for adjustment as you will use for printing.

Paper to Prepare

When Using Rolls	An unused roll at least 10 inches wideHigh-precision ruler	
When Using Sheets	One sheet of unused paper of at least A4/Letter sizeHigh-precision ruler	

Perform adjustment as follows.

Load the paper.

- Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls →P.372
- Loading Rolls in the Printer →P.375
- Loading Sheets in the Printer →P.394

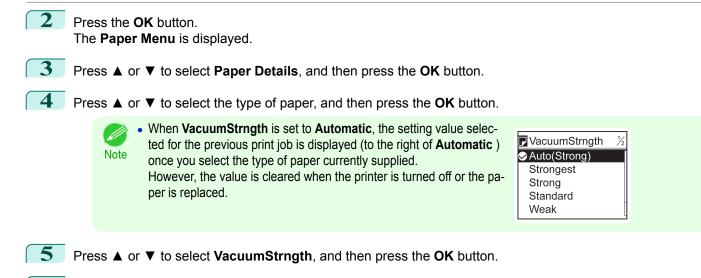


• Always make sure the loaded paper matches the type of paper specified. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the loaded paper matches the settings.

2	On the Tab Selection screen of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab (::::).	Ready OK:Setting/Adj. Menu Maint.C Remain.: 80% Tot.Print Area(m2): 678.0
	• If the Tab Selection screen is not displayed, press the Menu button. Note	
3	Press the OK button. The Set./Adj. Menu is displayed.	
4	Press ▲ or ▼ to select Adjust Printer, and then press the OK button.	
5	Press \blacktriangle or \blacksquare to select Feed Priority , and then press the OK button.	
6	Press ▲ or ▼ to select Adjust Length, and then press the OK button.	
7	Press ▲ or ▼ to select AdjustmentPrint or Change Settings, and then press the OK button. When you select AdjustmentPrint, a test pattern is printed for you to measure the scale and calculate the discrepancy. The scale bar prints Mil meter in 50 mm increments and Inch in 1-inch increments.	Millimeter Inch
	 A test pattern is printed in black when you choose A:High or in mager Note To cancel printing the test pattern for adjustment, hold down the Stop played, press ▲ or ▼ to select Yes, and then press the OK button. 	
8	Press \blacktriangle or \lor to enter the amount of discrepancy, and then press the OK If the scale is shorter than the actual size, use a positive setting value. If it The feed amount can be adjusted in 0.02% increments.	
Ad	justing the Vacuum Strength	
	printing on heavyweight paper or paper that curls or wrinkles easily, if the P level of suction against paper on the Platen may improve results.	rinthead rubs against paper, adjust-
Imp	 Paper rubbing against or becoming caught on the Printhead may jam or resul portant 	t in printed documents that are soiled.
1	On the Tab Selection screen of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab (□).	Image: Constraint of the second s

• If the Tab Selection screen is not displayed, press the Menu button.

Note



6 Press \blacktriangle or \checkmark to select the desired setting value, and then press the **OK** button.

iPF685

User's Guide

Basic Printing Workflow	15
Enhanced Printing Options	31
Windows Software	157
Mac OS Software	277
Handling and Use of Paper	361
Control Panel	437
Printer Parts	477
Network Setting	491
Print Job Management	511
Adjustments for Better Print Quality	573

Maintenance and Consumables

Ink Tanks	590
Printheads	599
Maintenance Cartridge	608
Cleaning the Printer	614
Other Maintenance	618

Troubleshooting	627
Error Message	657
Specifications	681
Appendix	685

589

Maintenance and Consumables

Ink Tanks	. 590
Replacing Ink Tanks	
Checking Ink Tank Levels	
-	
When to Replace Ink Tanks Attach the Ink Tank Cover to the printer	
	. 591

Ink Tanks

When purchasing, check the Model number.

Shape	Colors	Model number	Ink Type	Capacity
	Matte black	PFI-107MBK	Pigment ink	
	Black	PFI-107BK	-	130 ml (4.4 fl oz)
Cunut	Cyan	PFI-107C		
	Magenta	PFI-107M		
	Yellow	PFI-107Y	Dye ink	130 mil (4.4 il 02)

Shape	Colors	Model number	Ink Type	Capacity
Camou	Matte black	PFI-207MBK	Pigment ink	300 ml (10.2 fl oz)
	Black	PFI-207BK	Dye ink	
	Cyan	PFI-207C		
	Magenta	PFI-207M		
	Yellow	PFI-207Y		

• For instructions on Ink Tank replacement, see "Replacing Ink Tanks." → P.590

Replacing Ink Tanks

Compatible ink tanks

For information on the compatible ink tanks for this printer, see "Ink Tanks." →P.590 Replacement ink tanks in 130 ml (4.4 fl oz) and 300 ml (10.2 fl oz) capacities are supported.



Note

• Depending on the color, you can also use ink tanks of different capacities.

Precautions when handling ink tanks

Take the following precautions when handling ink tanks.



- For safety, keep ink tanks out of the reach of children.
- Caution If ink is accidentally ingested, contact a physician immediately.

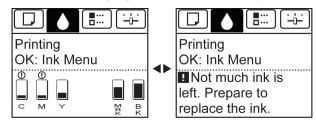


There may be ink around the ink supply section of ink tanks you removed. Handle ink tanks carefully during replacement. The ink may stain clothing.

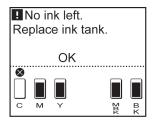
- Do not install used ink tanks in another model of printer. This will prevent correct ink level detection, which may damage the printer or cause other problems.
- We recommend using up an Ink Tank in the course of printing within six months after breaking the seal. Printing quality may be affected if you use older ink tanks.
- Do not leave the printer without ink tanks installed for extended periods (a month or more). Residual ink may become clogged inside the printer and affect printing quality.

Confirm the message

When the ink level becomes low, a message is displayed on the Display Screen. According to the message, replace the ink tank or prepare a new ink tank. (See "When to Replace Ink Tanks.") → P.596



If a message requests you to replace an Ink Tank, press the **OK** button. In this case, you can skip the step **Access the menu for ink tank replacement.** Follow the instructions in **Remove the ink tanks.**





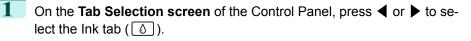
Note

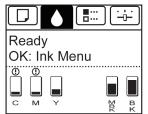
•

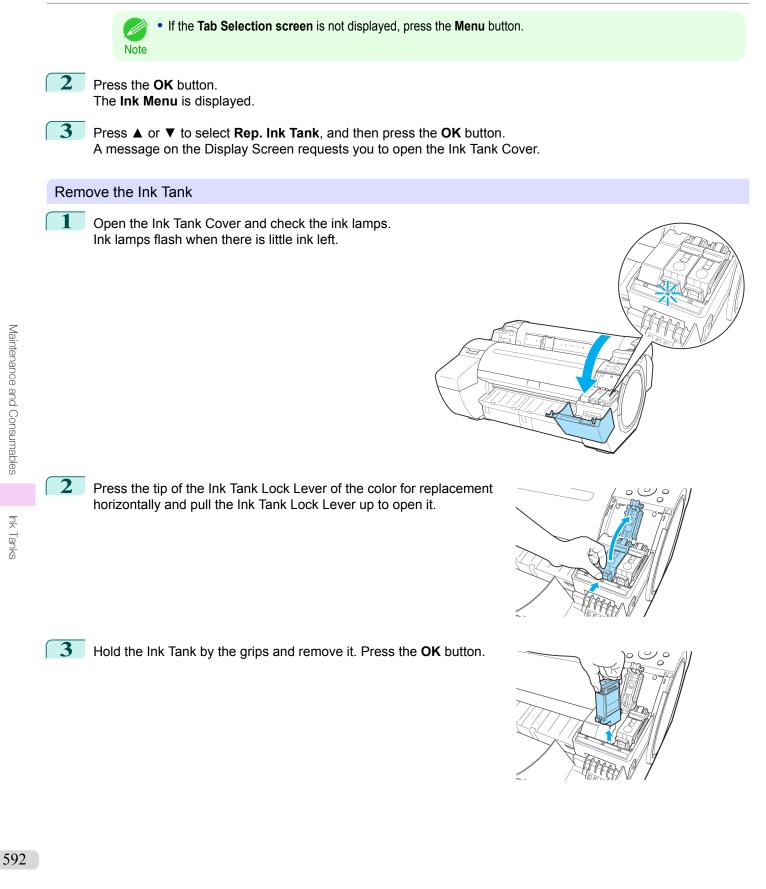
Do not remove an Ink Tank during initialization immediately after turning on the printer, or during printhead cleaning. Ink may leak out.

 Ink Tank replacement is possible even during printing, when print jobs are being canceled, or when paper is being advanced.

Access the menu for Ink Tank replacement



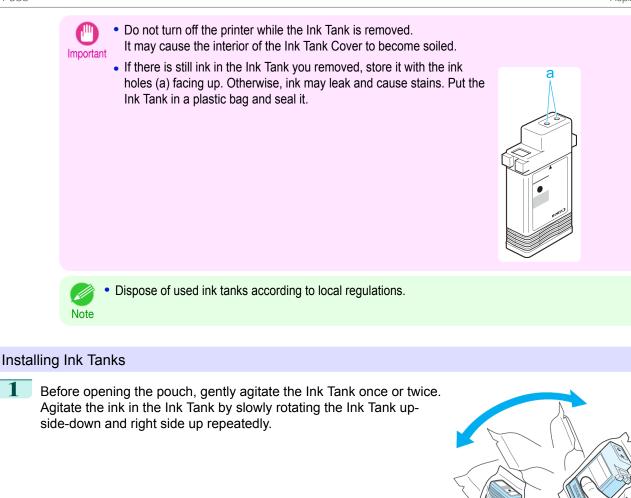




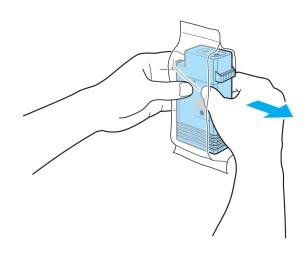
Ink Tanks

1

2

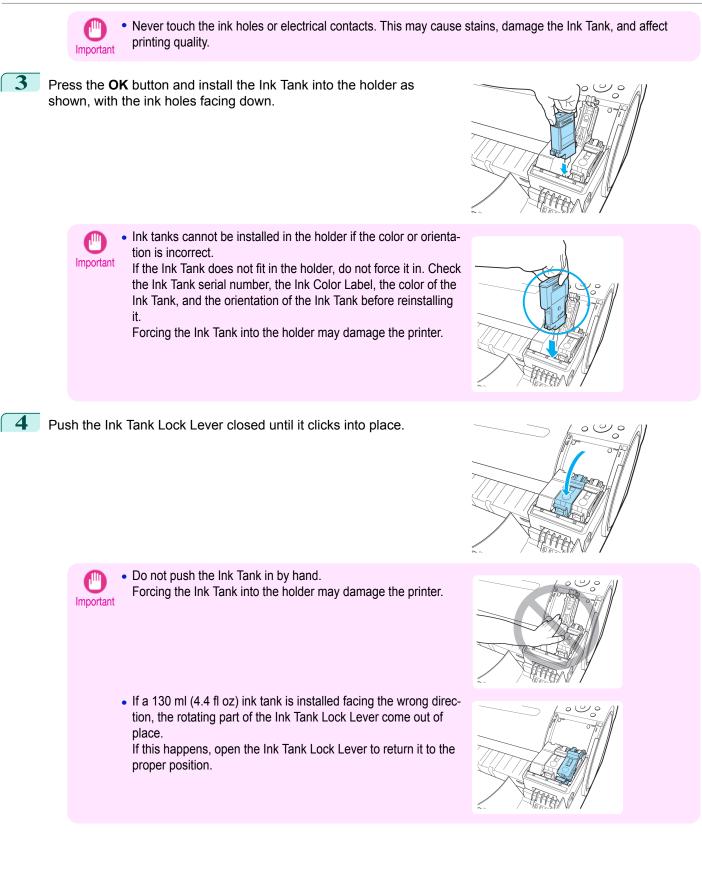


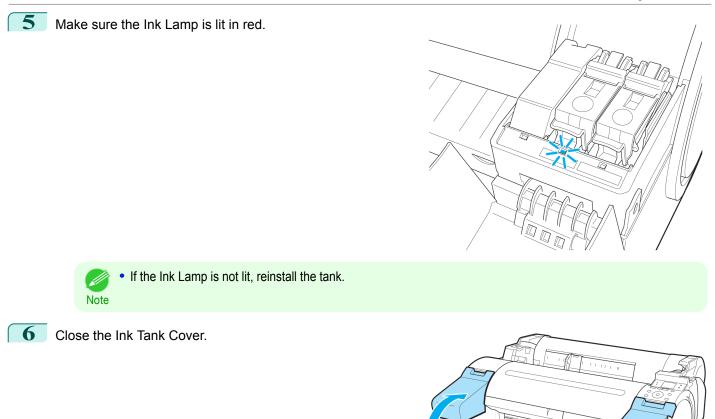
- After installing an ink tank, do not remove and shake it. Doing so may cause the ink to leak out.
- Important If you do not agitate the Ink Tank, the ink may settle, which may affect printing quality.
- Open the pouch and remove the Ink Tank.









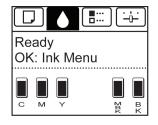


Ink Tanks

Checking Ink Tank Levels

On the Display Screen, you can check how much ink is left in the ink tanks.

To check remaining Ink Tank levels, access the **Tab Selection screen** on the Control Panel and press \blacktriangleleft or \triangleright to select the Ink tab (\bigcirc).



- If the Tab Selection screen is not displayed, press the Menu button.
- Note If an error has occurred and the Tab Selection screen cannot be displayed, display Ink Info as follows.
 - 1. Press the OK button to display Printer Info.
 - **2.** Press the \blacktriangle or \blacktriangledown button to select **Ink Info**.
 - 3. Press the OK button.

The remaining ink levels shown on the Display Screen correspond to the inks identified by the Color Label on the bottom of the Display Screen.

These symbols may be displayed above the ink level: ! if ink is low, × if no ink is left, and ? if you have deactivated ink level detection.

The remaining ink level is indicated as shown below.



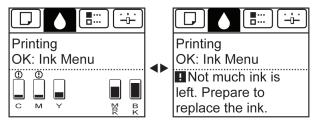
If the Display Screen indicates to replace the Ink Tank, replace the Ink Tank. If a message is displayed indicating to check the remaining ink levels, or after tasks that consume a lot of ink such as large-format printing or head cleaning, check the remaining levels and replace Ink Tank as needed. (See "Replacing Ink Tanks.") \rightarrow P.590

When to Replace Ink Tanks

Replace or prepare to replace ink tanks in the following situations.

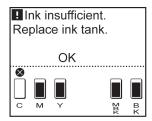
If a message for checking the ink is shown on the Display Screen

When there is little ink left, the **Message Lamp** is lit and "**Not much ink is left.**" is shown on the Display Screen. You can continue to print, but prepare to replace the Ink Tank. (See "Checking Ink Tank Levels.") → P.595



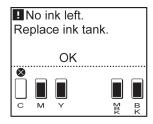
Before print jobs and maintenance that consume a lot of ink

If little ink is left, there may not be enough for large-format printing, head cleaning, and maintenance, which require a lot of ink. In this case, replace or prepare to replace the lnk Tank before maintenance.



If a message for ink replacement is shown on the Display Screen

When ink runs out, the **Message Lamp** flashes, a message regarding lnk Tank replacement is shown on the Display Screen, and printing is disabled. Replace the lnk Tank at this point.



iPF685

Attach the lnk Tank Cover to the printer

If too much force is applied to the Ink Tank Cover while it is open, Ink Tank Cover may become detached from the printer.

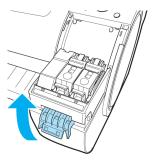
If the Ink Tank Cover has become detached from the printer, attach it using the following procedure.



1

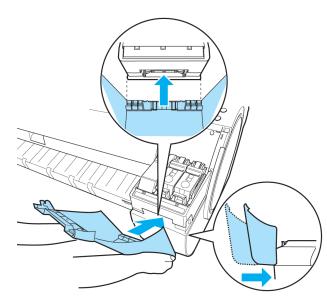
• Although the attachment procedure describes the Ink Tank Cover on the right side of the printer, the Ink Tank Cover on the left side can also be attached using the same procedure.

Rotate the Ink Tank Cover attachment part and store it in the printer.

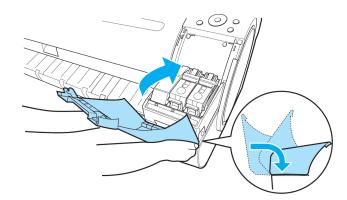


2

Move the Ink Tank Cover horizontally to align the position with the printer.

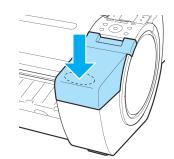


3 Rotate the lnk Tank Cover and place it on the printer.



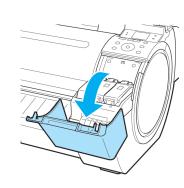
clicks.

4



5 Open the Ink Tank Cover and check that it is attached to the printer.

Push down on the near side of the Ink Tank Cover from the top until it



Printheads

Printhead	599
Checking for Nozzle Clogging	500
Cleaning the Printhead	
Replacing the Printhead	. 601

Printhead

When purchasing, check the Model number.



• For instructions on replacing the Printhead, see "Replacing the Printhead." → P.601

Checking for Nozzle Clogging

If printing is faint or affected by banding in different colors, make sure the Printhead nozzles are clear by printing a test pattern to check the nozzles.



Note

 Nozzles are periodically checked to ensure they are clear. Configure the settings on the Control Panel menu in Nozzle Check. (See "Menu Settings.") → P.459

Paper to Prepare

When Using Rolls	An unused roll at least 254.0 mm (10.00 in) wide
When Using Sheets	One sheet of unused paper of at least A4/Letter size

Load paper.

- Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls →P.372
- Loading Rolls in the Printer → P.375
- Loading Sheets in the Printer →P.394

2 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ► to select the Settings/Adj. tab (:::::).



Ready OK:Setting/Adj. Menu Maint.C Remain.: 80% Tot.Print Area(m2): 678.0

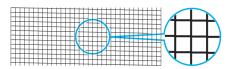


• If the Tab Selection screen is not displayed, press the Menu button.

- Press the OK button. The Set./Adj. Menu is displayed.
 - Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Test Print**, and then press the **OK** button.
- 5 Pres

4

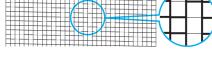
- Press \blacktriangle or \blacktriangledown to select **Nozzle Check**, and then press the **OK** button. The printer now prints a test pattern for checking the nozzles.
- 6 Check the printing results. If the horizontal lines are not faint or incomplete, the nozzles are clear.



If some sections of the horizontal lines are faint or incomplete, the nozzles for those colors are clogged.

If horizontal lines are faint or incomplete, follow the steps below and check again for nozzle clogging.

- 1. Clean the Printhead. (See "Cleaning the Printhead.") \bigcirc P.600
- 2. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles.



• If you repeat these steps several times but the horizontal lines are still faint or incomplete, the Printhead may have reached the end of its useful life. Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Maintenance and Consumables

Cleaning the Printhead

If printing is faint, cleaning the Printhead may improve results. Choose one of two Printhead cleaning modes (**Head Cleaning A** or **Head Cleaning B**), depending on the problem to resolve.

Head Cleaning A

Use this mode if printing is faint or contains foreign substances. This method of cleaning consumes the least amount of ink.

It takes about three minutes to complete.

Head Cleaning B

Use this mode if no ink is ejected at all, or if **Head Cleaning A** does not solve the problem. It takes about three and a half minutes to complete.



Note

• Do not remove the Maintenance Cartridge or ink tanks during either **Head Cleaning A** or **Head Cleaning B**. Ink may leak or an error may occur.

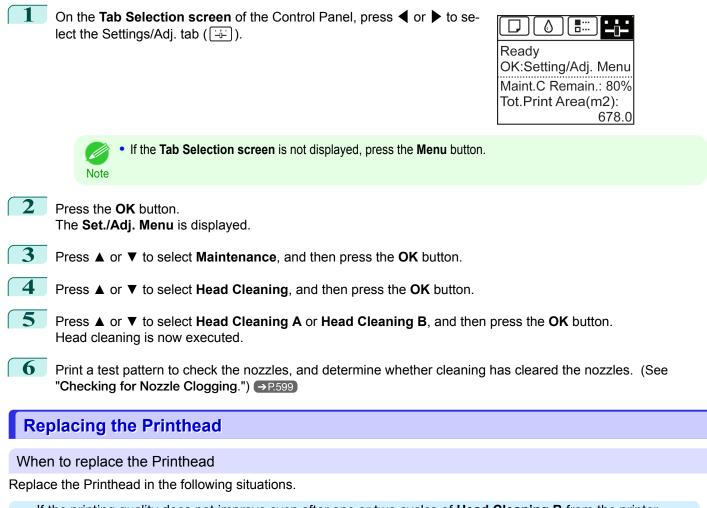
• If printing does not improve even if you execute **Head Cleaning B**, try repeating **Head Cleaning B** once or twice. If this still does not improve printing, the Printhead may have reached the end of its useful life. Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.



• By default, nozzles are checked at fixed intervals. Configure the settings on the Control Panel menu in **Nozzle Check**.

(See "Menu Settings.") →P.459

Perform cleaning as follows.



- If the printing quality does not improve even after one or two cycles of Head Cleaning B from the printer menu
- If the Display Screen indicates "Open top cover and replace the printhead."
- If your Canon dealer has advised you to replace the Printhead

Compatible printheads

For information on compatible printheads, see "Printhead." → P.599

Precautions when handling the Printhead

Take the following precautions when handling the Printhead.

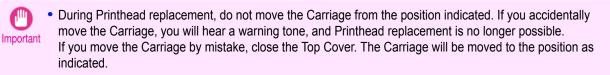


- For safety, keep the Printhead out of the reach of children.
- Caution If ink is accidentally ingested, contact a physician immediately.
 - Do not touch the Printhead immediately after printing. The Printhead becomes extremely hot, and there is a risk of burns.

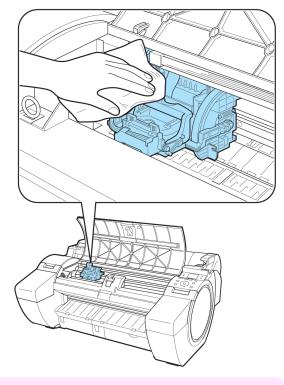


 Press the OK button: 1 the Tab Selection screen is not displayed, press the Monu button. 2 Press the OK button: 1 The Tab Selection screen is not displayed, press the Monu button. 1 Press the OK button: 1 Press the OK button: 2 Pr		
 When replacing the Printhead immediately after printing, wait a few minutes before replacing it. The metal parts of the Printhead become hot during printing, and there is a risk of burns from touching these parts. Image: a new last may become dirty during Printhead replacement. Use the gloves provided with the new Printhead for replacement. Image: a new last may become dirty during Printhead replacement. Use the gloves provided with the new Printhead for replacement. Image: a new last may become dirty during Printhead replacement. Use the gloves provided with the new Printhead for replacement. Image: a new last may become dirty during Printhead replacement. Use the gloves provided with the new Printhead for replacement. Image: a new last may become dirty during Printhead replacement. Use the gloves provided with the new Printhead for replacement. Image: a new last may become dirty during Printhead replacement. Use the gloves provided with the new Printhead for replacement. Image: a new last may become dirty during Printhead replacement. Use the gloves provided with the new Printhead for replacement. Image: a new last may become dirty during Printhead replacement. Use the gloves provided with the new Printhead for replacement. Image: a new last may become dirty during Printhead replacement. Image: a new last may become dirty during Printhead replacement. Image: a new last may become dirty during Printhead replacement. Image: a new last may become dirty during Printhead replacement. Image: a new last may become dirty during Printhead replacement. Image: a new last may become dirty during Printhead replacement. Image: a new last may become dirty during Printhead replacement. Image: a new last may become dirty during Printhead replacement. Image: a new last may become dirty during Printhead replacement. Image: a new last may become display Screen	 ment. The ink may stain clothing. Do not open the Printhead pouch until immediately before installation. After removing the Printhead from the poinstall it right away. If the Printhead is left after the pouch is opened, the nozzles may dry out, which may affect pouch is opened. 	uch,
 Printhead become hot during printing, and there is a risk of burns from touching these parts. • Your hands may become dirty during Printhead replacement. Use the gloves provided with the new Printhead for replacement. • Your hands may become dirty during Printhead replacement. Use the gloves provided with the new Printhead for replacement. • Prepare a new lnk Tank when ink levels are low. • When the remaining capacity of Maintenance cartridge is low, prepare a new Maintenance cartridge. • On the Tab Selection screen of the Control Panel, press • or • to select the Settings/Adj. tab (). • If the Tab Selection screen is not displayed, press the Menu button. • Press the OK button. The Set/Adj. Menu is displayed. • Press • or • to select Replace Phead, and then press the OK button. • Press A or • to select Replace Phead, and then press the OK button. • It set a sout two minutes to complete. Replace the Printhead • Open the Top Cover. Instructions are now shown on the Display Screen regarding Print-	Access the menu for Printhead replacement	
 Prepare a new Ink Tank when ink levels are low. Prepare a new Ink Tank when ink levels are low. When the remaining capacity of Maintenance cartridge is low, prepare a new Maintenance cartridge. On the Tab Selection screen of the Control Panel, press <pre></pre> or <pre></pre> to select the Settings/Adj. tab (<pre><pre>Setion</pre> </pre> of the Tab Selection screen is not displayed, press the Menu button. If the Tab Select Maintenance, and then press the OK button. Press A or ▼ to select Maintenance, and then press the OK button. Press A or ▼ to select Replace P.head, and then press the OK button. Press A or ▼ to select Replace P.head, and then press the OK button. It takes about two minutes to complete. Replace the Printhead Open the Top Cover: Instructions are now shown on the Display Screen regarding Print-	Printhead become hot during printing, and there is a risk of burns from touching these parts.	of the
 Note • When the remaining capacity of Maintenance cartridge is low, prepare a new Maintenance cartridge. On the Tab Selection screen of the Control Panel, press or to sere lect the Settings/Adj. tab (→). Image: Image: Im		or re-
 On the Tab Selection screen of the Control Panel, press or to select the Settings/Adj. tab (→). Ready OK:Setting/Adj. Menu Maint. C Remain.:: 80% Tot.Print Area(m2): 678.0 of the Tab Selection screen is not displayed, press the Menu button. Press the OK button. The Set/Adj. Menu is displayed. Press or to select Maintenance, and then press the OK button. Press or to select Replace P.head, and then press the OK button. Ink begins being drawn in. When it finishes, instructions are displayed on the Display Screen. It takes about two minutes to complete. Replace the Printhead Open the Top Cover. Instructions are now shown on the Display Screen regarding Print- 	 Prepare a new Ink Tank when ink levels are low. 	
 lect the Settings/Adj. tab (♣). Ready OK:Setting/Adj. Menu Maint.C Remain:: 80% Tot.Print Area(m2): 678.0 If the Tab Selection screen is not displayed, press the Menu button. Press the OK button. The Set/Adj. Menu is displayed. Press ▲ or ▼ to select Maintenance, and then press the OK button. Press ▲ or ▼ to select Replace P.head, and then press the OK button. Ink begins being drawn in. When it finishes, instructions are displayed on the Display Screen. It takes about two minutes to complete. Replace the Printhead Open the Top Cover. Instructions are now shown on the Display Screen regarding Print- 	Note • When the remaining capacity of Maintenance cartridge is low, prepare a new Maintenance cartridge.	
 Press the OK button. The Set./Adj. Menu is displayed. Press ▲ or ▼ to select Maintenance, and then press the OK button. Press ▲ or ▼ to select Replace P.head, and then press the OK button. Ink begins being drawn in. When it finishes, instructions are displayed on the Display Screen. It takes about two minutes to complete. Replace the Printhead Open the Top Cover. Instructions are now shown on the Display Screen regarding Print- 	lect the Settings/Adj. tab (). Ready OK:Setting/Adj. Menu Maint.C Remain.: 80% Tot.Print Area(m2):	
 The Set./Adj. Menu is displayed. 3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select Maintenance, and then press the OK button. 4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select Replace P.head, and then press the OK button. Ink begins being drawn in. When it finishes, instructions are displayed on the Display Screen. It takes about two minutes to complete. Replace the Printhead 1 Open the Top Cover. Instructions are now shown on the Display Screen regarding Print- 		
 Press ▲ or ▼ to select Replace P.head, and then press the OK button. Ink begins being drawn in. When it finishes, instructions are displayed on the Display Screen. It takes about two minutes to complete. Replace the Printhead Open the Top Cover. Instructions are now shown on the Display Screen regarding Print- 		
Ink begins being drawn in. When it finishes, instructions are displayed on the Display Screen. It takes about two minutes to complete. Replace the Printhead Open the Top Cover. Instructions are now shown on the Display Screen regarding Print-	3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select Maintenance , and then press the OK button.	
Open the Top Cover. Instructions are now shown on the Display Screen regarding Print-	Ink begins being drawn in. When it finishes, instructions are displayed on the Display Screen.	
Instructions are now shown on the Display Screen regarding Print-	Replace the Printhead	
	Instructions are now shown on the Display Screen regarding Print-	

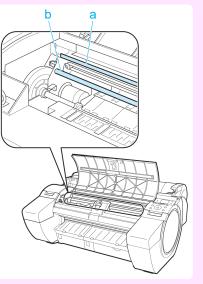


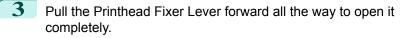


2 If the Printhead Fixer Cover or Printhead Fixer Lever is dirty, use a damp cloth that you have wrung out completely to wipe it clean.



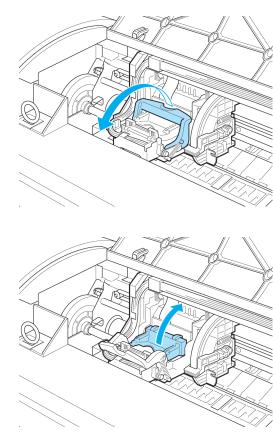
• Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b). Touching these parts may damage them.

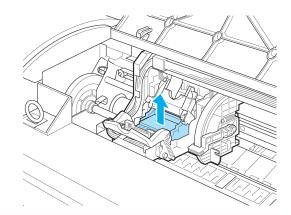




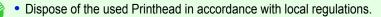
5 Remove the Printhead and press the **OK** button.

Note





• Never touch the metal contacts of the Carriage. Furthermore, do not allow any dirt or debris to become adhered to the metal contacts of the Carriage. These may damage the printer.

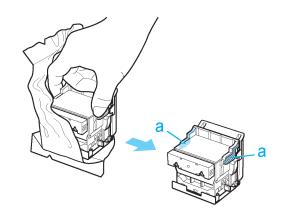


4 Pull up the Printhead Fixer Cover to open it completely.

Maintenance and Consumables

Printheads

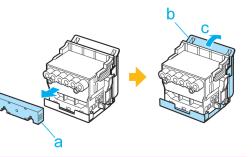
6 Holding the new Printhead by the grips (a), remove it from the pouch.



- When handling the Printhead, always hold it by the grips (a). Never touch the nozzles (b) or metal contacts (c). This may damage the Printhead and affect printing quality.
 - Never touch the ink supply section (d). This may cause printing problems.

7 While firmly holding the Printhead you have removed, use your other hand to remove the orange Protective Part (a). Squeeze the grips (c) of Protective Part (b) and pull it down to remove it.

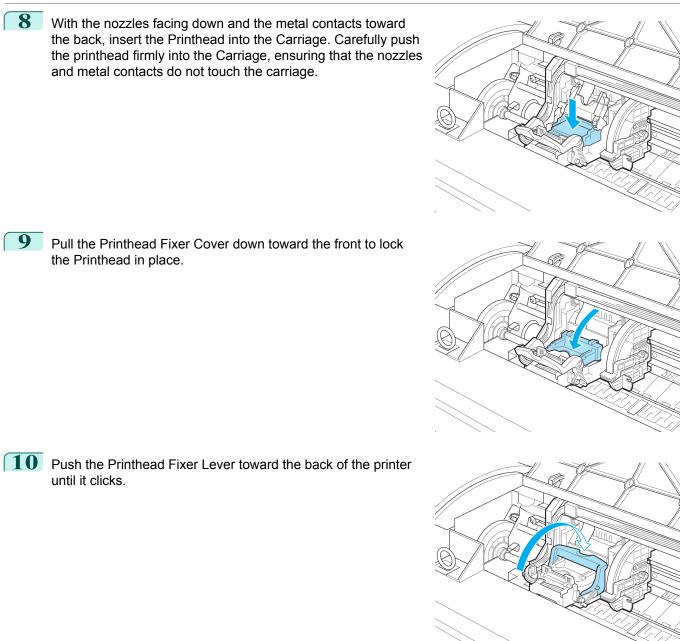
- The inside surface of the Protective Part (a) and Protective Part (b) is coated with ink to protect the nozzles. Be careful not to touch these surfaces when removing the caps.
 - The Printhead contains ink to protect the nozzles. We recommend removing Protective Part (b) as you hold it over the Printhead package or safely out of the way to avoid spilling ink and staining your clothes or the surrounding area. If ink accidentally spills, wipe off the ink with a dry cloth.
 - If you need to put a Printhead somewhere temporarily before installation, do not keep the nozzles and metal contacts facing down. If the nozzles or metal contacts are damaged, it may affect the printing quality.
 - Do not reattach the removed Protective Part. Dispose of these materials in accordance with local regulations.





8

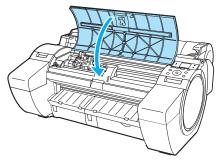
9







11 Close the Top Cover. Ink now fills the system. It takes about seven minutes to complete.





. While ink is being filled, definitely do not remove the Ink Tank or Maintenance Cartridge. Ink may leak out. Important



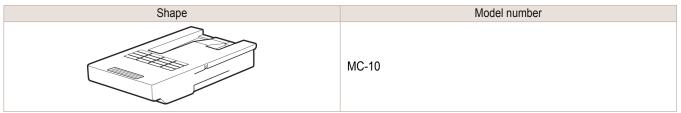
After Printhead has been replaced and filled with ink, Head Posi. Adj. (Auto(Advanced)) is performed if you have selected Rep.P.head Print > On in the Control Panel menu. (See "Menu Settings.") →P.459 In this case, follow the instructions on the Display Screen for Printhead adjustment. If Rep.P.head Print is Off, perform Head Posi. Adj. (Auto(Advanced)) yourself. (See "Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors.") →P.574

Maintenance Cartridge

Maintenance Cartridge Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge Checking the Remaining Maintenance Cartridge Capacity	608
When to Replace the Maintenance Cartridge	

Maintenance Cartridge

When purchasing, check the Model number.



For instructions on replacing the Maintenance Cartridge, see "Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge."
 PEGOB
 Note

Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge

Compatible maintenance cartridges

For information on compatible maintenance cartridges, see "Maintenance Cartridge." (>P.608)

Precautions when handling the Maintenance Cartridge

Take the following precautions when handling the Maintenance Cartridge.

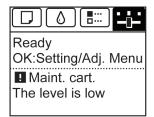
- For safety, keep the Maintenance Cartridge out of the reach of children.
- Caution If ink is accidentally ingested, contact a physician immediately.
- 0
- Do not remove the Maintenance Cartridge except to replace it. Ink may leak out.
- Important
 Do not remove an Maintenance Cartridge during initialization immediately after turning on the printer, during Printhead cleaning, while ink is being drawn out, or during initialization immediately after replacing the Maintenance Cartridge.

The Maintenance Cartridge may become damaged or ink may leak out.

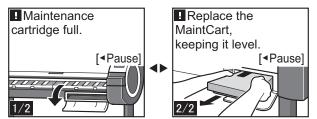
- To prevent ink from leaking from a used Maintenance Cartridge, avoid dropping the cartridge or storing it at an angle. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.
- Ink adheres to the top of the Maintenance Cartridge after it has been used. Handle the Maintenance Cartridge carefully during replacement. The ink may stain clothing.

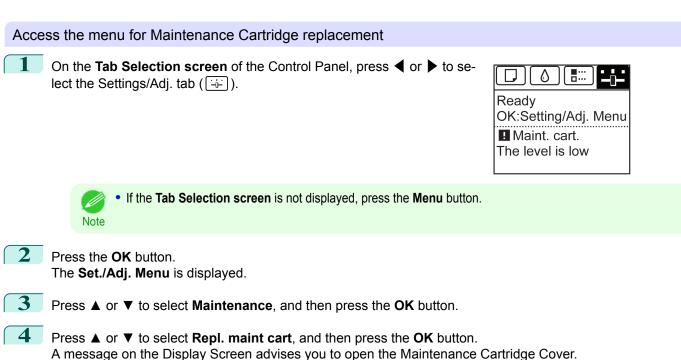
Confirm the message

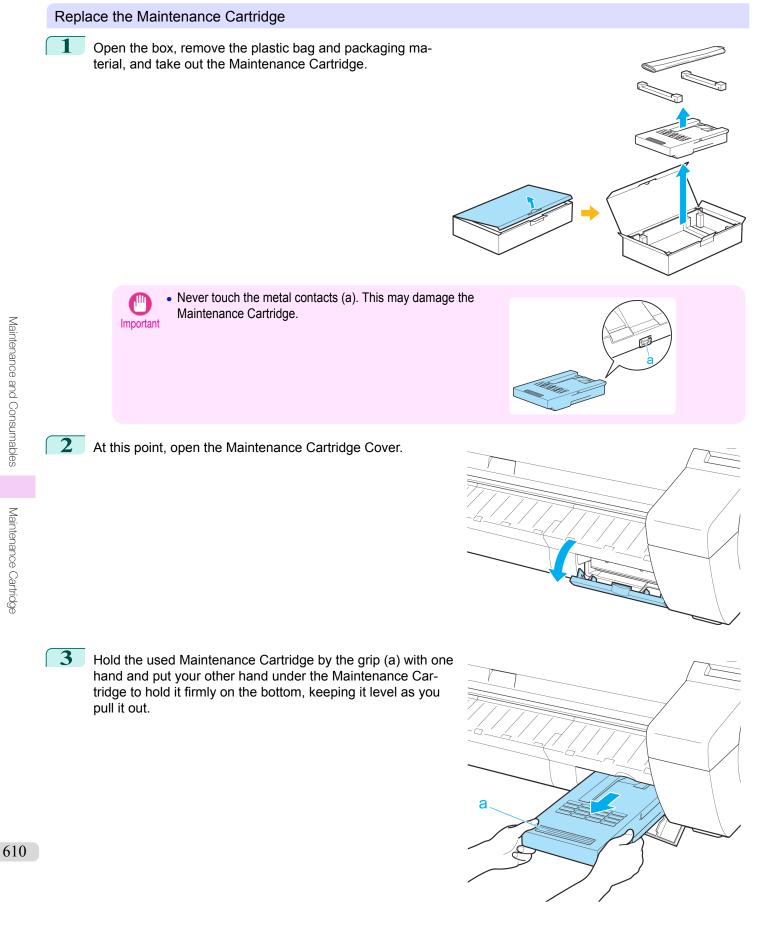
When the Maintenance Cartridge is almost empty, a message is shown on the Display Screen. According to the message, replace the Maintenance Cartridge or prepare a new Maintenance Cartridge. (See "When to Replace the Maintenance Cartridge.") → P.613



If a message is displayed requesting Maintenance Cartridge replacement, you can skip the step Access the menu for Maintenance Cartridge replacement. Follow the instructions in Replace the Maintenance Cartridge.

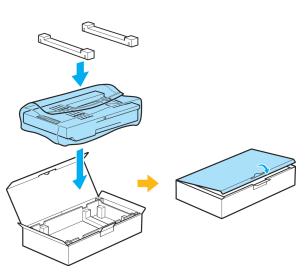






User's Guide

- Used Maintenance Cartridges are heavy. Always grasp the cartridge firmly and keep the cartridge level during removal and storage. If you drop a used Maintenance Cartridge or store it at an angle, ink may leak and cause stains.
 - The remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity is recorded on each printer. Do not install a used Maintenance Cartridge in another printer.
- 4 Keep the used Maintenance Cartridge level as you put it in the plastic bag. Expel excess air from the plastic bag and seal the zipper.
- **5** Confirm the Maintenance Cartridge is right-side up, put it in the box with the packaging material attached, and store it so that it stays level.



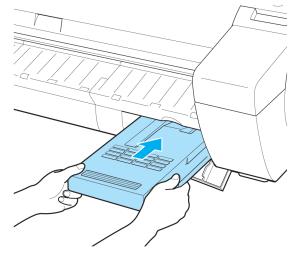
• Always put the used Maintenance Cartridge back in the box and store the box on a flat surface. Also, seal the zipper thoroughly. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.



• Put the used Maintenance Cartridge in the plastic bag of the new cartridge, and dispose of it in accordance with local regulations.

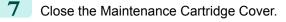
6 Keeping the new Maintenance Cartridge level, insert it all the way in.

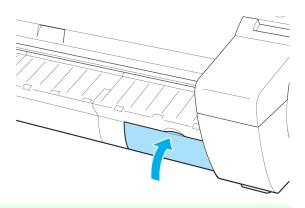
The printer now initializes the Maintenance Cartridge.





• Do not remove the Maintenance Cartridge during initialization immediately after replacing the Maintenance Cartridge. The Maintenance Cartridge may become damaged.





• If you did not perform the operation in Access the menu for Maintenance Cartridge replacement, this is the end of the procedure and you do not need to press the OK key in the next step.

8 Press the **OK** button.

Note



Checking the Remaining Maintenance Cartridge Capacity

The Maintenance Cartridge absorbs excess ink from borderless printing, printhead cleaning, and other processes. You can confirm the remaining capacity of the Maintenance Cartridge by checking the Maintenance Cartridge capacity shown on the Display Screen.

To check remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity, access the **Tab Selection screen** on the Control Panel and press \triangleleft or \triangleright to select the Settings/Adj. tab (\square).

Ready OK:Setting/Adj. Menu Maint.C Remain.: 80% Tot.Print Area(m2): 678.0

If the Tab Selection screen is not displayed, press the Menu button.

If the Display Screen indicates to replace the Maintenance Cartridge, replace the Maintenance Cartridge. If a message is displayed indicating to check the remaining capacity of the Maintenance Cartridge, or before tasks that deplete much of the capacity such as head cleaning or preparations to move the printer, check the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity and prepare a new Maintenance Cartridge as needed. (See "Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge.") \bigcirc P608

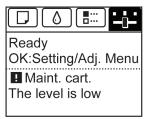
Note

When to Replace the Maintenance Cartridge

Replace or prepare to replace the Maintenance Cartridge in the following situations.

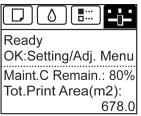
If a message for checking the Maintenance Cartridge is shown on the Display Screen

When the Maintenance Cartridge is almost full, the **Message Lamp** is lit and "**The level is low**" is shown on the Display Screen. You can continue to print, but check the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity and prepare to replace the Maintenance Cartridge with a new one. (See "Checking the Remaining Maintenance Cartridge Capacity.") **PR612**



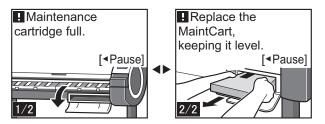
When much of the Maintenance Cartridge capacity is depleted

Printhead cleaning, Printhead replacement, and preparations to transfer the printer deplete much of the Maintenance Cartridge capacity. (In particular, preparing to move the printer depletes a lot of the capacity.) Check the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity before this maintenance and replace the Maintenance Cartridge if necessary.



If a message for the Maintenance Cartridge replacement is shown on the Display Screen

When the Maintenance Cartridge is full, the **Message Lamp** flashes and a message to replace the Maintenance Cartridge is shown on the Display Screen. Printing is disabled, and you cannot replace the Printhead or transfer the printer. Replace the Maintenance Cartridge with a new one.



Cleaning the Printer

Cleaning the Printer Exterior Cleaning Inside the Top Cover	
Cleaning the Printhead	. 600

Cleaning the Printer Exterior

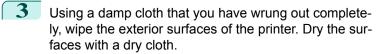
Clean the printer regularly to maintain better printing quality and help prevent problems. To ensure a comfortable working environment, clean the printer exterior about once a month.

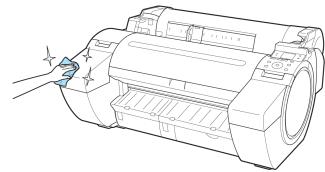
Turn the printer off. (See "Turning the Printer On and Off.") →P.17

Unplug the power cord from the outlet.



 Always turn off the printer and unplug the power cord before cleaning or maintenance. Accidentally leaving the printer on poses a risk of injury if you touch moving parts inside the printer.







Never use flammable solvents such as alcohol, benzene, or thinner. If these substances come into contact
with electrical components inside the printer, there is a risk of fire or electrical shock.



 If the Ejection Guide is dirty, it may soil the edge of the paper when the paper is cut. We recommend cleaning the Ejection Guide even if it does not appear dirty, because it may actually be covered with paper dust. (See "Cleaning Inside the Top Cover.")

4 Plug the power cord into the outlet.

Cleaning Inside the Top Cover

Clean inside the Top Cover about once a month to maintain better printing quality and help prevent problems. Also clean inside the Top Cover in the following situations to ensure optimal operation.

- If the printed surface or the underside of paper is dirty after printing
- After you have used up a roll
- After borderless printing
- After printing on small paper
- After printing on paper that generates a lot of cutting debris
- If you have replaced the roll
- After printing on paper that generates a lot of paper dust
- After printing on adhesive paper

Maintenance and Consumables

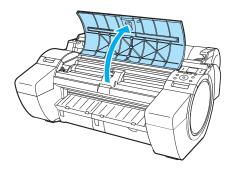
Cleaning the Printer

2

- If the Platen inside the Top Cover becomes dirty, it may soil the underside of paper. We recommend cleaning the Platen after borderless printing or printing on small paper.
 - If the Ejection Guide is dirty, it may soil the edge of the paper when the paper is cut. We recommend cleaning the Ejection Guide even if it does not appear dirty, because it may actually be covered with paper dust.
 - Printing on adhesive paper may leave adhesive on the Platen, Paper Retainer, or other parts. To prevent paper jams, we recommend cleaning inside the Top Cover after printing.

Open the Top Cover.

er, to wipe it away.



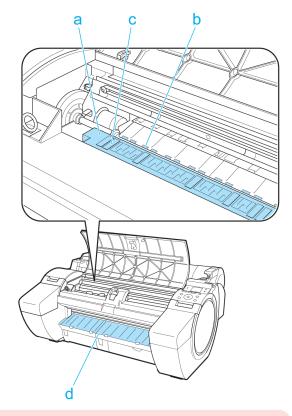


• If the Cleaning Brush is dirty, rinse it in water.

If paper dust has accumulated in the Vacuum holes (a)

on the Platen or in the Borderless Printing Ink Grooves (b), use the Cleaning Brush (c), provided with the print-

3 Using a damp cloth that you have wrung out completely, wipe inside the Top Cover to clean it. Wipe away any ink residue on the Platen as a whole (a), the Paper Retainer (b), Border-less Printing Ink Grooves (c), and Ejection Guide (d).

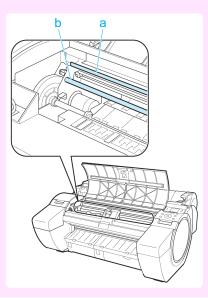


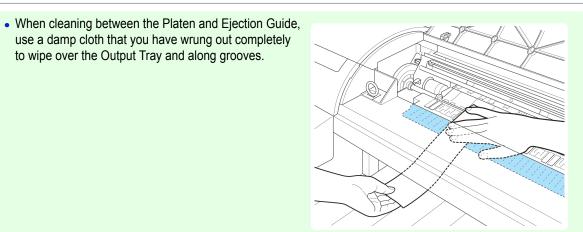


• Never use flammable solvents such as alcohol, benzene, or thinner. If these substances come into contact with electrical components inside the printer, there is a risk of fire or electrical shock.



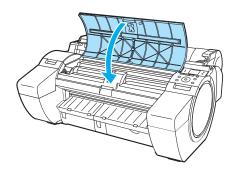
- Do not use a dry cloth to wipe inside the Top Cover. This may create a static charge, which may attract dust and affect the printing quality.
- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b). This may stain your hands and damage the printer.





4 Close the Top Cover.

Note



Other Maintenance

Preparing to Transfer the Printer Reinstalling the Printer	
Updating the Firmware	625

Preparing to Transfer the Printer

To protect the internal parts in transit, always follow these steps before transferring the printer to a new location. Refer to the Setup Guide for details on packing the printer and installing it after transfer.



Avoid tilting the printer excessively in transit. This may cause ink in the printer to leak and cause stains.

Note When you execute prepare to transfer, ink is drawn into the Maintenance Cartridge. Depending on the amount of free space in the mounted Maintenance Cartridge, you may need to replace it with a new one at this time. Note that replacement is not required if there is 80% or more free space. (See "Checking the Remaining Maintenance

Cartridge Capacity.") → P.612

 Depending on the state of the printer, part replacement may be necessary when preparing to transfer the printer (that is, when you execute the printer menu item to prepare for transfer).

Remove paper

- Remove the paper.
 - Rolls (See "Removing the Roll from the Printer.") → P.380
 - Sheets (See "Removing Sheets.") → P.399

Access the Prep.MovePrinter menu

If a message instructing you to replace the Maintenance Cartridge is displayed on the Display Screen, replace the Maintenance Cartridge.

(See "Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge.") → P.608

2 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press **4** or **b** to select the Settings/Adj. tab (---).

[]]	[∎ …]	
	<u> </u>	

Ready OK:Setting/Adj. Menu Maint.C Remain.: 80% Tot.Print Area(m2): 678.0

 If the Tab Selection screen is not displayed, press the Menu button. Note

3 Press the **OK** button. The Set./Adj. Menu is displayed.

Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Prep.MovePrinter**, and then press the **OK** button.



 If Limited is selected, do not transport in low temperature environments. The ink remaining in the printer may freeze and damage the printer.

iPF685

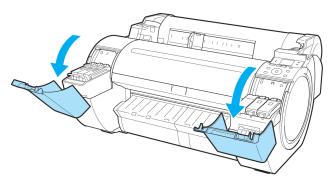
6 Press ▲ or ▼ to select Yes (or Execute if Limited is selected), and then press the OK button. Ink is now drawn into the Maintenance Cartridge. Once preparations are finished, a message on the Display Screen requests you to open the Ink Tank Cover.

 Do not remove the Maintenance Cartridge except when the message for replacing it is displayed. If you remove the Maintenance Cartridge while ink is being drawn out, the ink may leak out. Important

• If consumables must be replaced, the message "Consumables must be replaced. Call for service." is shown on the Display Screen and preparation is not possible. If this message is displayed, press the OK button and contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

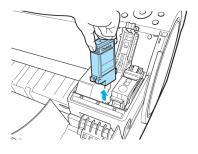
Remove the Ink Tank

Open the Ink Tank Cover.

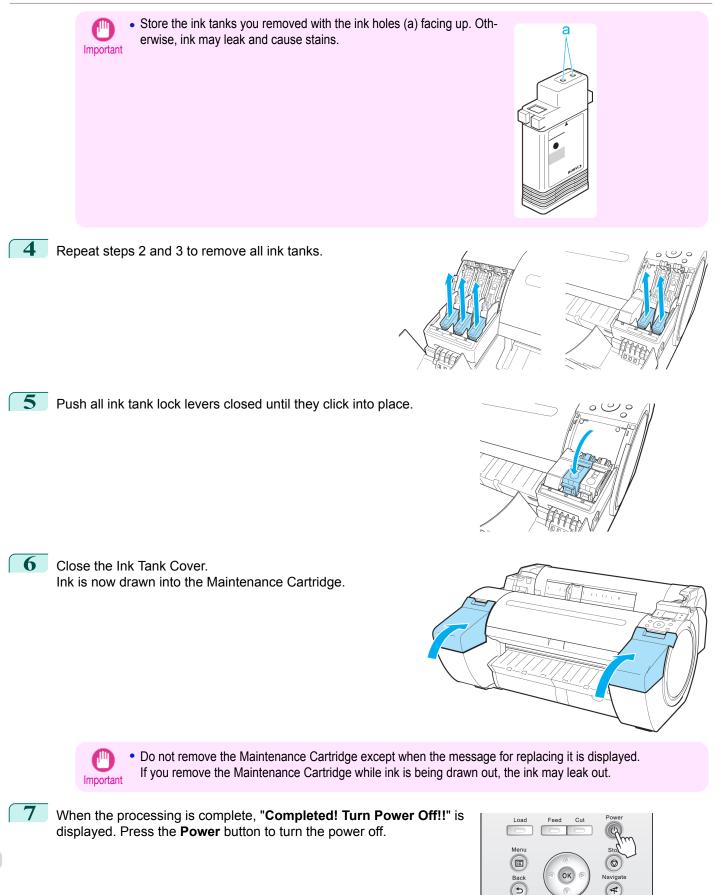


2 Pressing the tip of the Ink Tank Lock Lever horizontally, lift the Ink Tank Lock Lever to release the lock.





3 Holding the ink tanks by the grips, remove them.



User's Guide

Pack the printer

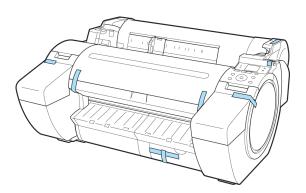
Disconnect the power cord and interface cable.



• Turn off the printer before you unplug it. It may damage the printer if you unplug it before it is off and transfer it in that state. If you accidentally unplug the printer, plug it in again, reinstall the ink tanks, and follow this procedure again.

2

Tape down printer covers to secure them, in the reverse order of tape removal during installation.



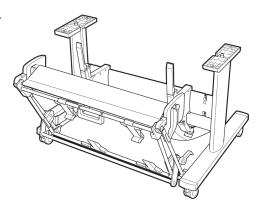
- 3 Remove the Stand by reversing the installation procedure, when it was attached to the printer.
- 4 Disassemble and repackage the Stand by following the installation procedure in reverse.
- 5 Repack the Roll Holder, Holder Stopper, and printer in shipping materials, and then package them in a shipping box.

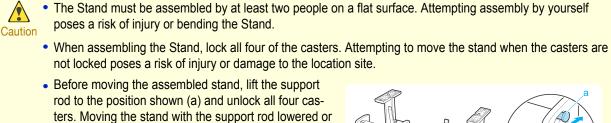
Reinstalling the Printer

The basic workflow for reinstalling the printer is as follows. For detailed instructions, see the Setup Guide.

Assemble the stand (optional)

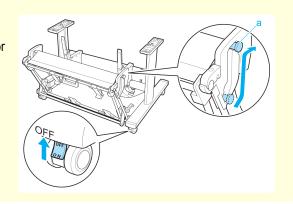
If you are using the optional Stand, assemble the Stand by referring to the Printer Stand Setup Guide included with the Stand.





the casters locked may cause injury or damage the

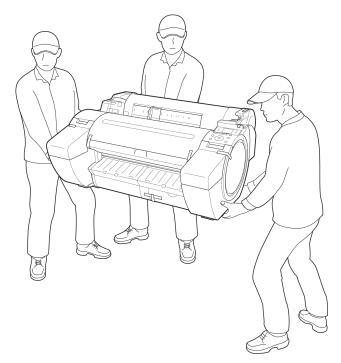
area of installation or basket cloth.

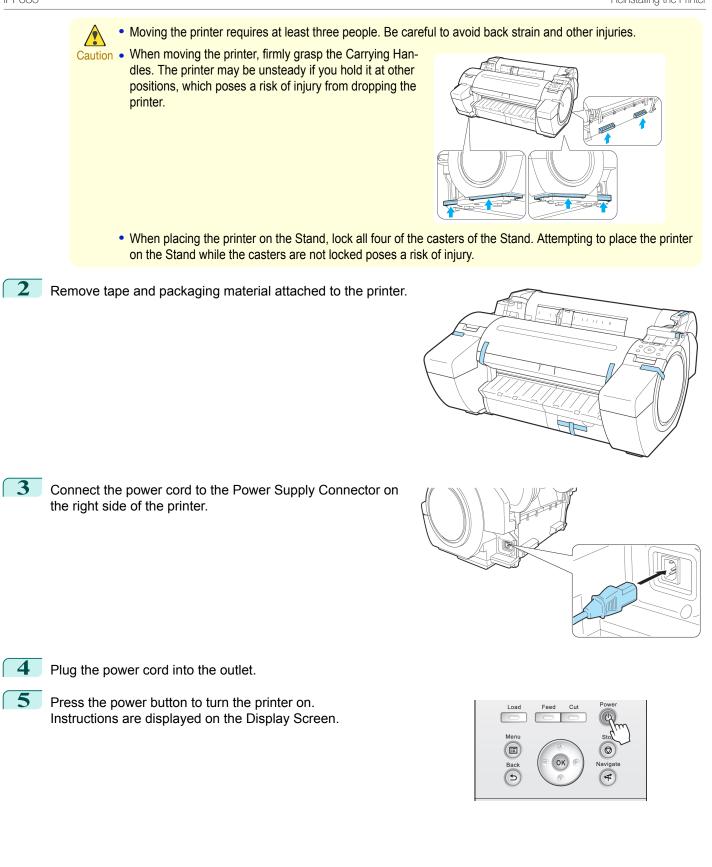


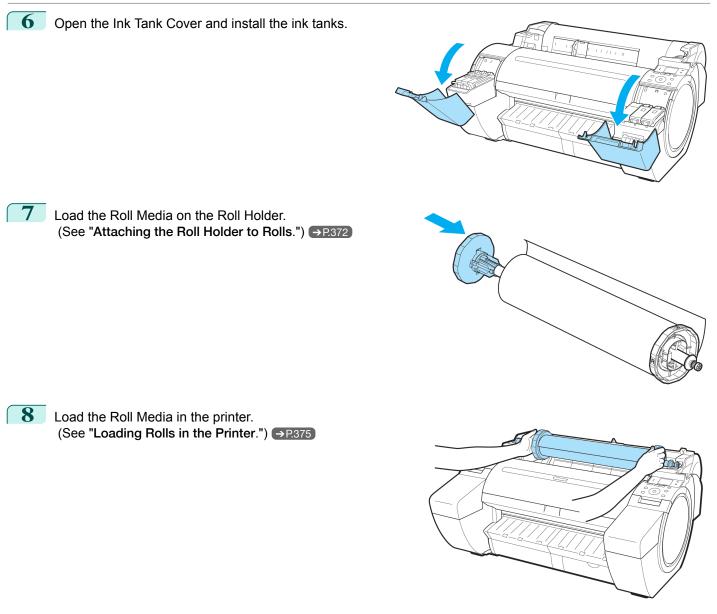
Install the printer

1

Install the printer on a table or other flat surface. If you will use the printer on an optional Stand, assemble the Stand before mounting the printer on it, and then secure it with the Main Unit Securing Bolts.







Install the software.

Note that the driver installation procedure varies depending on the type of connection.



• When the printer is connected to a network (via TCP/IP), the printer's IP address may be changed if you reinstall the printer.

In this case, be sure to reconfigure the printer's IP address.

Updating the Firmware Update the printer firmware to take advantage of new and improved printer functions. Confirming the firmware version 1 On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press **4** or **b** to se-..... 0 lect the Settings/Adj. tab (----). Ready OK:Setting/Adj. Menu Maint.C Remain.: 80% Tot.Print Area(m2): 678.0 • If the Tab Selection screen is not displayed, press the Menu button. Note 2 Press the **OK** button. The Set./Adj. Menu is displayed. 3 Press \blacktriangle or \blacktriangledown to select **Printer Info**, and then press the **OK** button. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **System Info**, and then press the **OK** button. The firmware version is displayed.

Updating the Firmware

To obtain the latest firmware, visit the Canon website. If the firmware available online is newer than the installed firmware, update the printer firmware. For details on downloading and updating the firmware, visit the Canon website.

Memo

iPF685

User's Guide

Basic Printing Workflow	15
Enhanced Printing Options	31
Windows Software	157
Mac OS Software	277
Handling and Use of Paper	361
Control Panel	437
Printer Parts	477
Network Setting	491
Print Job Management	511
Adjustments for Better Print Quality	573
Maintenance and Consumables	589

Troubleshooting

Frequently Asked Questions	628
Problems Regarding Paper	629
Printing does not start	639
The printer stops during a print job	640
Problems with the printing quality	641
Cannot print over a network	648
Installation problems	649
HP-GL/2 problems	651
Other problems	653

Error Message	657
Specifications	681
Appendix	685

Frequently Asked Questions

Frequently Asked Questions

This section presents frequently asked questions and answers. To view more detailed explanations, click the hyperlinks in the answer column.

Question	Answer
I want to easily create vertical or horizontal ban- ners.	You can print originals that are in landscape (or portrait) orientation automatically enlarged to fit the roll width. This is an easy way to create vertical or horizontal banners. (See "Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing).") →P97
Does this printer support sub-ink tank system?	This printer supports sub-ink tank system. Even if an ink tank becomes empty during printing, since a certain amount of ink always is stored in a sub- ink tank, you can replace the ink tank while printing. (See "Replacing Ink Tanks.")
I want to know how to configure roll cutting.	You can select the cutting method by the setting of the printer driver and the setting of the printer. To cut rolls automatically after printing, set Cutting Mode of the printer to Automatic and Automatic Cut- ting of the printer driver to Yes . When using paper for which ink adhesion takes time or the print surface is easily scratched, we recommend that you set the Cutting Mode setting of the printer to Eject . (See "Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls.") PR388 (See "Cutting Roll Paper After Printing.") PR152
I want to configure so that the roll is cut automatical- ly after waiting for the ink to dry.	In the printer driver, you can set the time for waiting until the ink dries. Also, you can set likewise on the printer. (See "Specifying the Ink Drying Time for Rolls.") →P385 (See "Menu Structure.") →P.452
How do I print without borders?	When printing on rolls, you can perform borderless printing by configuring the printer driver. (when printing on cut sheets, you cannot perform borderless printing) (See "Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size.") →P.87 (See "Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width.") →P.90 (See "Borderless Printing at Actual Size.") →P.80
I want to know the paper types that can be used in this printer.	Concerning the paper that can be used in this printer, refer to the imagePROGRAF home page or the Paper Reference Guide . (See "Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.") →P365
The paper type that I want to print is not dis- played on the Display Screen.	When using newly released paper, paper information must be registered on the printer and the printer driver. Download the new version of Media Information File from the imagePROGRAF website and install it. (See "Updating paper information.") → P.368
Can I perform duplex printing?	This printer cannot perform duplex printing. If you use the Folded Duplex function in the Free Layout of Windows software, you can print two pages one-sided, fold them at the center and suspend them to substitute for duplex printing. (See "Prints using Folded Duplex (Windows).") →P224
I want to perform enlarge- ment printing.	With the printer driver, you can specify the ratio matching the document with the paper size and width and perform enlargement printing or reduction printing. (See "Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size.") → P65 (See "Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width.") → P67 (See "Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value.") → P.71

Troubleshooting

Frequently Asked Questions

1

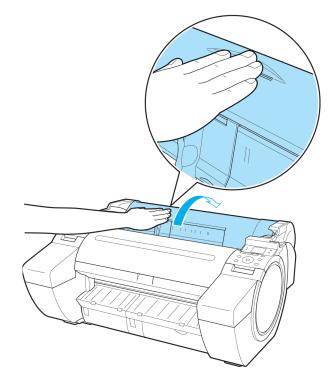
Problems Regarding Paper

Clearing Jammed Roll Paper Clearing a Jammed Sheet Clearing Jammed Paper (Paper Feed Slot)	629 632 635
Roll paper cannot be inserted into the Paper Feed Slot Cannot load sheets	
Paper is not cut neatly Paper is not cut	637 637
Depression on the leading edge is left	638
The size of clear film cannot be detected Roll Paper is Continuously Ejected	

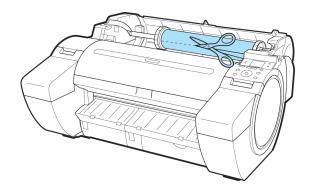
Clearing Jammed Roll Paper

If paper from a roll becomes jammed, "**Paper jam.**" is shown on the Display Screen of the Control Panel. Remove the jammed paper as follows.

Positioning your hands as shown, open the Roll Cover.



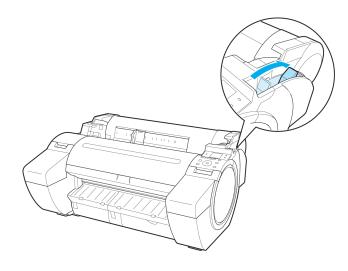
2 Cut the loaded roll paper with regular scissors or the like.



• When cutting paper, be careful to avoid injury or damage to the printer.

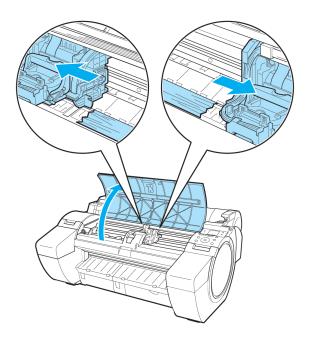
3 Push the Release Lever back.

Caution



4 Remove the jammed paper.

- If paper is jammed inside the Top Cover
 - 1. Open the Top Cover and move the Carriage to the left or right side manually, away from the jam.



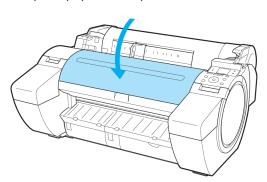


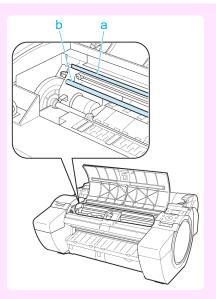


• Do not move the Carriage over jammed paper. This may damage the Printhead.

- 2. Clear any jammed paper from inside the Top Cover. After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.
- **3.** Close the Top Cover.

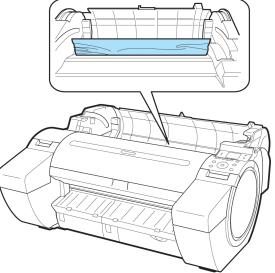
Important





• If paper from a roll is jammed by the Paper Feed Slot Remove the jammed paper from the Paper Feed Slot. After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

• Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b). This may stain your hands and damage the printer.



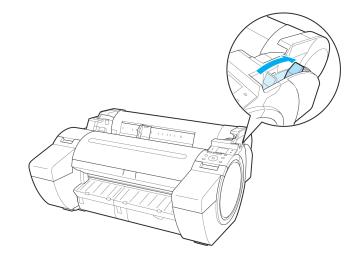
If the paper is jammed by the Ejection Guide Remove the jammed paper from the Output Tray. After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.
The paper is paper in the printer.

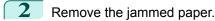
Clearing a Jammed Sheet

If a sheet becomes jammed, "**Paper jam.**" is shown on the Display Screen of the Control Panel. Remove the jammed paper as follows.

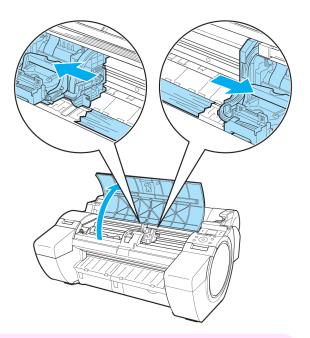


Push the Release Lever back.



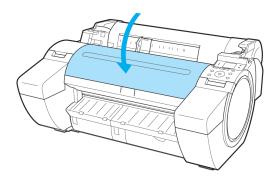


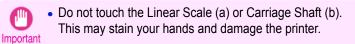
- If paper is jammed inside the Top Cover
 - 1. Open the Top Cover and move the Carriage to the left or right side manually, away from the jam.

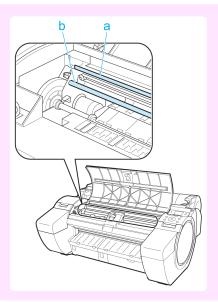


• Do not move the Carriage over jammed paper. This may damage the Printhead.

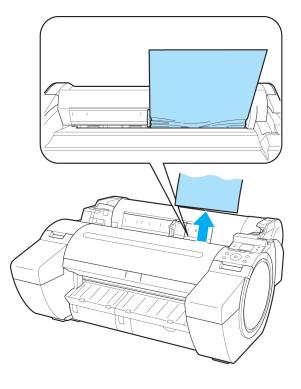
- 2. Clear any jammed paper from inside the Top Cover. After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.
- **3.** Close the Top Cover.



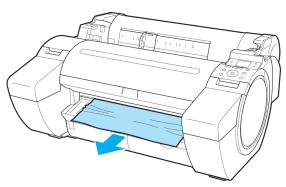




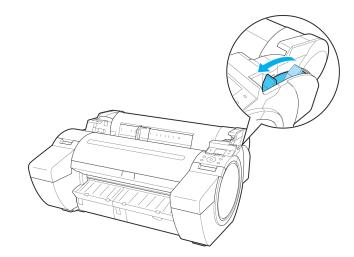
• If the paper is jammed by the Paper Feed Slot Remove the jammed paper from the Paper Feed Slot. After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.



 If the paper is jammed by the Ejection Guide Remove the jammed paper from the Output Tray.
 After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.



3 Pull the Release Lever forward.



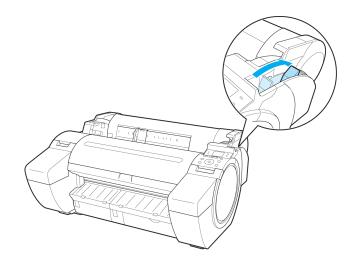
Clearing Jammed Paper (Paper Feed Slot)

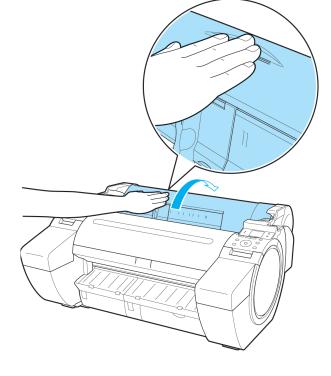
Follow these steps to remove any scraps left in the Paper Feed Slot after you clear jammed sheets or roll paper.

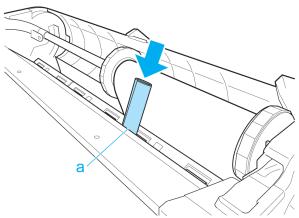
Turn the printer off. (See "Turning the Printer On and Off.") →P.17



Push the Release Lever back.

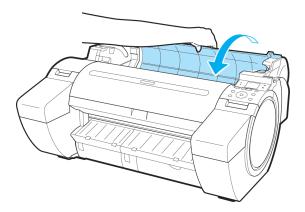




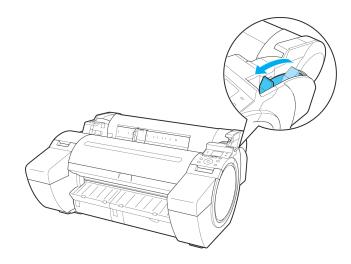


4 Fold an A4 sheet lengthwise four times and insert it through the gap of the Paper Feed Slot. Push the scrap out toward the Platen.

- **5** Remove the scrap when it is pushed out onto the Platen.
- **6** If any scraps remain inside the paper feed slot, repeat steps 4 and 5.
 - Holding it at the positions indicated, close the Roll Cover.



8 Pull the Release Lever forward.



Roll paper cannot be inserted into the Paper Feed Slot

Cause	Corrective Action
The roll paper is warped.	Straighten out curls and reload the roll.
Paper is jammed by the paper feed slot.	Remove the jammed paper. (See "Clearing Jammed Roll Paper.") →P.629 (See "Clearing a Jammed Sheet.") →P.632
The paper source selection is incorrect.	Press the Load button and select the paper source.

Cannot load sheets

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper source selection is incorrect.	Press the Load button and select the paper source.

Paper is not cut neatly

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper is bent or curled at the cut position.	Straighten out any curling by the edges of the paper.
Paper rises by the ends of the cut position before it is cut.	Reload the paper correctly.
You are using paper that cannot be cut with the Cutter Unit.	Specify Manual in Cutting Mode in the Control Panel menu and use scissors or a cutting tool to cut the roll after printing. (See "Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls.") →P.388
Cut Speed is not configured correctly in the Con- trol Panel menu.	Change the Cut Speed setting in the Control Panel menu. (See "Menu Structure.") →P452
During cutting, printed documents fall out at an angle.	In the Control Panel menu, set Cutting Mode to Eject . Hold documents after print- ing, as they are cut. (See "Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls.") →P.388

Paper is not cut

Cause	Corrective Action
In the printer driver, No or Print Cut Guideline is specified in Au-tomatic Cutting .	Specify Yes in Automatic Cutting in the printer driver. (See "Page Setup Sheet (Windows).") →P.178 (See "Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS).") →P.286
In the Control Panel menu, Cutting Mode is set to Eject or Man-ual .	If the Cutting Mode is Eject , press the Cut button to cut the paper. If the Cutting Mode is Manual , cut rolls with scissors or the like. (See "Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls.") → P338

Depression on the leading edge is left

Cause	Corrective Action
Keeping a roll in the printer for a long time without printing on it may leave a depression on the leading edge.	When printing quality is most important, we recommend setting TrimEdge Reload to On or Automatic so that the paper edge is automatically cut before printing. (See "Menu Structure.") →P452

The size of clear film cannot be detected

Cause	Corrective Action
The Platen is soiled with ink or other substances.	Open the Top Cover and clean the entire Platen. (See "Cleaning Inside the Top Cover.") →P.614

Roll Paper is Continuously Ejected

Cause	Corrective Action
Although sheets are se- lected as the paper source, a roll was ad- vanced.	After roll ejection stops, follow these steps to reload the roll.1. Push the Release Lever back.2. Open the Roll Cover.
	 Using both hands, rotate the Roll Holder toward the back to rewind the roll. At this time, ensure that both ends of the roll are rewound evenly. Pull the Release Lever forward. Load the roll. At this time, be sure to press the Load button and select "Load Roll Paper". (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") (⇒P375)

Printing does not start

The Data lamp on the Control Panel does not light up The printer does not respond even if print jobs are sent	
Ink Filling is displayed The display screen indicates Agitating	

The Data lamp on the Control Panel does not light up

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer is not on.	Make sure the power cord is securely plugged in, all the way. Press the Power button to turn on the printer.
The target printer was not selected when printing.	 In Windows, select the printer by clicking Select Printer or Printer in the printing dialog box and try printing again. In Mac OS, open the dialog box of the printer driver, select the printer from the list of Printer, and try printing again.
The print job is paused.	 In Windows, restart the print job as follows. 1. Select the printer icon in the Printers and Faxes (or Printers) window. 2. Clear Pause Printing in the File menu to restart the print job. In Mac OS, restart the print job as follows. 1. Click Print & Scan. (This is identified as Printers & Scanners or Print & Fax in other versions of Mac OS.) 2. Select the printer, and then Resume Printer (or Resume) in the Printers menu to restart the print job.

The printer does not respond even if print jobs are sent

Cause	Corrective Action
In the Control Panel menu, Pause Print is On.	Set Pause Print to Off. (See "Pausing Printing.") →P.29
In the Control Panel menu, Use USB or Use Ethernet is set to Off .	Set Use USB or Use Ethernet to On. (See "Menu Settings.") →P459
You have selected Save in mail box in Output Method on the printer.	Print the job saved on the printer's hard disk. (See "Printing Saved Jobs.") →P.540
Print jobs are pending.	Manage the jobs on hold and print as needed. (See "Managing Pending Jobs (Printing or Deleting Jobs on Hold).") →P.538

Ink Filling.. is displayed

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer was forced off during operation.	Wait until the system has been filled with ink.

The display screen indicates Agitating...

Cause	Corrective Action
Ink agitation is in progress.	Please wait until ink agitation is finished.

The printer stops during a print job

An error message is shown on the Display Screen	
The printer ejects blank, unprinted paper	. 640
The printer stops when printing a HP-GL/2 job (the carriage stops moving)	652

An error message is shown on the Display Screen

Cause	Corrective Action
The last portion of roll paper was used during a print job, and paper could not be advanced because the trailing edge is taped to the roll.	Remove the used roll and insert a new roll. (See "Removing the Roll from the Printer.") →P380 (See "Removing the Roll Holder from Rolls.") →P383 (See "Loading and Printing on Rolls.") →P19

The printer ejects blank, unprinted paper

Cause	Corrective Action
The leading edge of the roll paper was cut to straighten it.	The leading edge of rolls may be cut to straighten it if Trim Edge First is set to a value other than Off in the Control Panel menu. (See "Cutting the Leading Edge of Roll Paper Automatically.") →P391
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Print a test pattern to check the nozzles and make sure the Printhead is in good condi- tion for printing. (See "Checking for Nozzle Clogging.") →P599
A print job was received from an incompatible printer driver.	Use the correct imagePROGRAF printer driver for the printer and try printing again.
The printer has received print data that in- cludes HP RTL commands when Auto Rotate is On in the Control Panel menu.	In the Control Panel, set Auto Rotate to Off and print again. (See "Menu Settings.") → P.459
The printer is damaged.	Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Problems with the printing quality

Printing is faint Paper rubs against the Printhead The edges of the paper are dirty The surface of the paper is dirty The back side of the paper is dirty	643
Printed colors are inaccurate Banding in different colors occurs Colors in printed images are uneven Image edges are blurred or white banding occurs The contrast becomes uneven during printing	644 644 645
The length of printed images is inaccurate in the feeding direction Images are printed crooked Documents are printed in monochrome	646
Line thickness is not uniform Lines are misaligned	646 647

Printing is faint

Cause	Corrective Action
You may be printing on the wrong side of the paper.	Print on the printing surface.
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Print a test pattern to check the nozzles and see if they are clogged. (See "Checking for Nozzle Clogging.") →P599
Because the printer was left without ink tanks installed for some time, ink has become clogged in the ink supply sys- tem.	After the ink tanks have been installed for 24 hours, run Head Cleaning B from the Control Panel. (See "Cleaning the Printhead.") →P600
Paper is jammed inside the Top Cover.	 Follow the steps below to remove the jammed piece of paper inside the Top Cover. Open the Top Cover and make sure the Carriage is not over the Platen. Remove any scraps of paper inside the Top Cover. (See "Clearing Jammed Roll Paper.") → P629 (See "Clearing a Jammed Sheet.") → P632 Close the Top Cover.
The ink was not dry when paper was cut.	Specify a longer drying period in the Control Panel menu, in Paper Details > Roll DryingTime . (See "Menu Settings.") > P459
Printing may be faint if Print Quality in Advanced Settings in the printer driver is set to Standard or Fast .	In Advanced Settings of the printer driver, choose Highest or High in Print Quality. Printing in Fast or Standard mode is faster and consumes less ink than in Highest or High modes, but the printing quality is lower. (See "Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing.") →P.58
You are printing on paper that tends to generate dust when cut.	In the Control Panel menu, set CutDustReduct. in Paper Details to On . (See "Reducing Dust from Cutting Rolls.") →P393

Paper rubs against the Printhead

Cause	Corrective Action
The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer.	Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver. (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") P.375 (See "Loading Sheets in the Printer.") P.394

Cause	Corrective Action
The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer.	Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer.
	1. Press the Stop button and stop printing.
	2. Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.
Paper has been loaded incorrectly, causing it to wrinkle.	Reload the paper. (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P375 (See "Loading Sheets in the Printer.") →P394
The Printhead is set too low in the Control Panel menu.	In the Control Panel menu, set Head Height to Automatic . (See "Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images.") →P579
You are printing on heavyweight paper or paper that curls or wrinkles easily after absorbing ink.	For paper-based media such as Heavyweight Coated Paper, set the VacuumStrngth to Strong or Strongest in the Control Panel menu. If the paper still rubs against the printhead, set the Head Height in the Control Panel menu to a higher value than the current setting. (See "Adjusting the Vacuum Strength.") → P.587 (See "Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images.") → P.579
	For film-based media such as Tracing Paper, set the VacuumStrngth to Standard, Strong or Strongest in the Control Panel menu. If the paper still rubs against the printhead, set the Head Height in the Control Panel menu to a higher value than the current setting. (See "Adjusting the Vacuum Strength.") →P.537 (See "Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images.") →P.579
	When printing on paper 0.1 mm (0.004 in) thick or less, choose a VacuumStrngth setting of Weakest in the Control Panel menu. If rubbing still occurs, in the Control Panel menu, use a higher Head Height setting. (See "Adjusting the Vacuum Strength.") →P.537 (See "Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images.") →P.579
When you have loaded paper, the pa- per you have loaded does not match the type selected on the Control Pan- el.	Be sure to select the correct type of paper in the Control Panel menu when loading paper. (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P375 (See "Loading Sheets in the Printer.") →P394

Problems with the printing quality

The edges of the paper are dirty

Cause	Corrective Action
The Platen has become dirty after bor- derless printing or printing on small pa- per.	Open the Top Cover and clean the Platen. (See "Cleaning Inside the Top Cover.") →P.614
The type of paper as specified on the printer does not match the type specified in the printer driver.	Make sure the same type of paper is specified on the printer as in the printer driver. (See "Changing the Type of Paper.") \rightarrow P378
	 Make sure the same paper type is specified in the printer driver as on the printer. Press the Stop button and stop printing. Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.
The paper is wrinkled or warped.	Straighten out the wrinkles or curls and reload the paper. Do not use paper that has been printed on previously. (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P.375 (See "Loading Sheets in the Printer.") →P.394
A cut line is printed because CutDus- tReduct. is On in the Control Panel menu to reduce cutting dust.	If this function is not needed, set CutDustReduct. to Off in the Control Panel menu. (See "Menu Settings.") → P.459
The Printhead is set too low in the Con- trol Panel menu.	In the Control Panel menu, set Head Height to Automatic . (See "Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images.") →P.579

Cause	Corrective Action
You are printing on heavyweight paper or paper that curls or wrinkles easily af- ter absorbing ink.	For paper-based media such as Heavyweight Coated Paper, set the VacuumStrngth to Strong or Strongest in the Control Panel menu. If the paper still rubs against the printhead, set the Head Height in the Control Panel menu to a higher value than the current setting. (See "Adjusting the Vacuum Strength.") → P.537 (See "Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images.") → P.579
	For film-based media such as Tracing Paper, set the VacuumStrngth to Standard, Strong or Strongest in the Control Panel menu. If the paper still rubs against the printhead, set the Head Height in the Control Panel menu to a higher value than the current setting. (See "Adjusting the Vacuum Strength.") →P.537 (See "Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images.") →P.579
The Ejection Guide is soiled.	Clean the Ejection Guide. (See "Cleaning the Printer Exterior.") →P.614

The surface of the paper is dirty

Cause	Corrective Action
The Paper Retainer is soiled.	Clean the Paper Retainer. (See "Cleaning Inside the Top Cover.") →P614
You are using a paper that does not dry easily.	In the Control Panel menu, set Roll DryingTime to at least 1 min. (See "Menu Settings.") →P459
	When paper that does not dry easily is used for printing, it may curl during printing and touch the Output Tray. In this case, in the Control Panel menu, complete the settings for Dry time and Area in Scan Wait Time . However, note that printing will now take longer. (See "Menu Settings.") PR459

The back side of the paper is dirty

Cause	Corrective Action
The Platen has become dirty after borderless print- ing or printing on small paper.	Open the Top Cover and clean the Platen. (See "Cleaning Inside the Top Cover.") →P614
The Platen has become soiled because you have set Width Detection to Off in the Control Panel menu.	Set Width Detection to On in the Control Panel menu, and then open the Top Cover and clean the Platen. (See "Cleaning Inside the Top Cover.") →P614
	Open the Top Cover and clean the Platen. After this, manually advance the roll onto the Platen before printing. (See "Cleaning Inside the Top Cover.") →P.614 (See "Feeding Roll Paper Manually.") →P.384
The Paper Retainer is soiled.	Clean the Paper Retainer. (See "Cleaning Inside the Top Cover.") →P614

Printed colors are inaccurate

Cause	Corrective Action
Color adjustment has not been activated in the Ad- vanced Settings of the printer driver.	In the Advanced Settings of the printer driver, access Color Settings in Color Mode to adjust colors. (See "Main Sheet (Windows).") →P.167 (See "Main Pane (Mac OS).") →P.283
Colors have not been adjusted on the computer or	Refer to the computer and monitor documentation to adjust the colors.
monitor.	Adjust the settings of the color management software, referring to the software documentation as needed.
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Print a test pattern to check the nozzles and see if they are clogged.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	(See "Checking for Nozzle Clogging.") →P.599
Application Color Matching Priority is set to Off in the Windows printer driver.	Click Special Settings in the Layout sheet of the printer driver, and set Applica- tion Color Matching Priority to On in the dialog box that is displayed. (See "Layout Sheet (Windows).") →P.182
Color may change slightly even on the same model of printer if you use a different version of the firm- ware or printer driver, or when you print under differ- ent settings or in a different printing environment.	 Follow these steps to prepare the printing environment. 1. Use the same version of firmware or printer driver. 2. Specify the same value for all settings items.

Banding in different colors occurs

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper feed amount is out of adjust- ment.	Adjust the feed amount. (See "Adjusting the Feed Amount.") →P.581
Printing does not proceed smoothly be- cause print jobs are interrupted during transmission.	Exit other applications and cancel other print jobs.
In the Control Panel menu, Adj. Priority is set to Print Length .	Setting Adj. Priority to Print Quality in the Control Panel menu and adjusting the feed amount may improve results. (See "Adjusting the Feed Amount.") →P.581
The Printhead is out of alignment.	Adjust the Printhead alignment. (See "Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors.") →P574
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Print a test pattern to check the nozzles and see if they are clogged. (See "Checking for Nozzle Clogging.") →P599
Streaks may occur if you set the Print Quality too low.	Choose a higher level of Print Quality in the Advanced Settings of the printer driver and try printing again. Printing in Fast or Standard mode is faster and consumes less ink than in Highest or High modes, but the printing quality is lower. (See "Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing.") →P.58
The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer.	Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver. (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P375 (See "Loading Sheets in the Printer.") →P394
	Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer.
	1. Press the Stop button and stop printing.
	2. Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.

Colors in printed images are uneven

Cause	Corrective Action
Line Drawing/Text is selected when printing images in many solid colors.	In Print Priority in the Advanced Settings of the printer driver, choose Image .
You are printing on paper that curls easi- ly.	Printed colors may appear uneven on the leading edge of paper that is susceptible to curling. Select a stronger level in VacuumStrngth in the Control Panel menu to increase suction against the paper, or specify a leading margin of 20 mm (0.79 in) or more. (See "Adjusting the Vacuum Strength.") P.587
Printed colors may be uneven if you set the Print Quality too low.	Choose a higher level of Print Quality in the Advanced Settings of the printer driver. Printing in Fast or Standard mode is faster and consumes less ink than in Highest or High modes, but the printing quality is lower. (See "Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing.")

Cause	Corrective Action
Color may be uneven between dark and light image areas.	Select Unidirectional Printing in the Advanced Settings of the printer driver.
When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be slightly uneven at the leading edges.	Specify No in Automatic Cutting in the printer driver before printing. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. Cut the printed document ejected from the printer, and then use scissors or a cutting tool to cut away the edges on the top and bottom.
	Choose a higher level of Print Quality in the Advanced Settings of the printer driver. (See "Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing.") →P.58
The Printhead is out of alignment.	Adjust the Printhead alignment. (See "Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors.") →P.574
Allowing printed documents to dry on top of each other may cause uneven colors.	To avoid uneven colors, we recommend drying each sheet separately.
Density may be uneven if you use Glos- sy Paper or Coated Paper.	In Advanced Settings of the printer driver, choose Highest or High in Print Quality.
The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer.	Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver. (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P375 (See "Loading Sheets in the Printer.") →P394
	Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer.
	1. Press the Stop button and stop printing.
	2. Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.
Scan Wait Time > Area in the Control Panel menu is set to Leading edge.	When Scan Wait Time > Area is set to Leading edge, colors may be uneven 110–140 mm from the leading edge. (The position varies depending on the Print Quality setting.) In this case, select Scan Wait Time > Area > Entire area. However, note that printing will now take longer. (See "Menu Settings.") → P459

Image edges are blurred or white banding occurs

Cause	Corrective Action
The Platen suction is too strong.	In the Control Panel menu, reduce the level of VacuumStrngth . (See "Adjusting the Vacuum Strength.") →P.587
Incorrect Printhead alignment value.	In the Control Panel menu, set Head Height to a lower height. (See "Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images.") →P.579
The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer.	Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver. (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") P.375 (See "Loading Sheets in the Printer.") P.394
	Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer.
	1. Press the Stop button and stop printing.
	2. Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.

The contrast becomes uneven during printing

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper feed amount is out of adjustment.	Adjust the feed amount. (See "Adjusting the Feed Amount.") →P.581
The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer.	Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver. (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P375

Cause	Corrective Action
The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer.	(See "Loading Sheets in the Printer.") →P.394
	Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer.
	1. Press the Stop button and stop printing.
	2. Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.

The length of printed images is inaccurate in the feeding direction

Cause	Corrective Action
In the Control Panel menu, Adj. Priority is set to Print Quality .	Set Adj. Priority to Print Length in the Control Panel menu, and then execute Adjust Length. (See "Adjusting the Feed Amount.") →P.581
The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer.	Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver. (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P.375 (See "Loading Sheets in the Printer.") →P.394
	Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer.
	 Press the Stop button and stop printing. Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.

Images are printed crooked

Cause	Corrective Action
In the Control Panel menu, Skew Check Lv. is set to Loose or Off.	In the Control Panel menu, set Skew Check Lv. to Standard.
In the Control Panel menu, Width Detection is set to Off.	Set Width Detection to On in the Control Panel menu.

Documents are printed in monochrome

Cause	Corrective Action
In the Advanced Settings of the printer driver, Mono- chrome, Monochrome (BK ink), or Monochrome Bitmap is specified in Color Mode.	In the Advanced Settings of the printer driver, specify Color in Color Mode and try printing again.
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Print a test pattern to check the color ink nozzles and see if they are clogged. (See "Checking for Nozzle Clogging.") → P.599

Cause	Corrective Action
In the Special Settings dialog box of the Windows printer driver, Fast Graph- ic Process is set to On .	 Access the printer driver Properties dialog box from Print in the File menu of the source application, and follow these steps to print. 1. Clear the option Open Preview When Print Job Starts on the Main sheet. 2. Clear the option Page Layout on the Layout sheet. 3. Click the Special Settings button in the Layout sheet, open the Special Settings dialog box, and set Fast Graphic Process to Off.
The type of paper specified in the print- er driver does not match the type loa- ded in the printer.	Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver. (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P375 (See "Loading Sheets in the Printer.") →P394
	Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer.

Line thickness is not uniform

Troubleshooting

Problems with the printing quality

Cause	Corrective Action
The type of paper specified in the print- er driver does not match the type loa- ded in the printer.	 Press the Stop button and stop printing. Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.

Lines are misaligned	
Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead alignment is not adjusted.	Adjust the Printhead alignment. (See "Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors.") →P574 (See "Manual Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors.") →P575 (See "Adjusting Line Misalignment.") →P577
The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer.	Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver. (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") P.375 (See "Loading Sheets in the Printer.") P.394
	Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer.
	1. Press the Stop button and stop printing.
	2. Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.

Cannot print over a network

Cannot connect the printer to the network	. 648
Cannot print over a TCP/IP network Cannot print over a Bonjour network	

Cannot connect the printer to the network

	•
Cause	Corrective Action
Cause The Ethernet cable is not connected cor- rectly to the printer's Ethernet port.	Corrective Action Corrective Action Corrective Action Make sure the printer is connected to the network with the correct Ethernet cable, and then turn the printer on. For instructions on connecting the cable, refer to the Setup Guide. Make sure the Link indicator is lit. The bottom indicator is green if the printer is connected via 1000Base-T, while the top indicator is orange if connected via 100Base-TX and the top indicator is green if connected via 10Base-T. If the Link indicator is not lit, check the following points. Make sure the connection point is on. Make sure the end of the Ethernet cable is connected correctly. Insert the Ethernet cable until it clicks and locks in place. Make sure there is no problem with the Ethernet cable. If there is any problem, replace the Ethernet cable. Check the communication mode with the connection point. Although the printer normally detects the communication mode and transmission rate of the communica- tion point automatically (in auto negotiation mode), sometimes the communication point settings cannot be detected. In this case, configure the connection method manually, specifying the communication mode in use.
	(See "Configuring the Communication Mode Manually.") →P.506

Cannot print over a TCP/IP network

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer's IP address is not configured correctly.	Make sure the printer's IP address is configured correctly. (See "Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.") →P508 (See "Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel.") →P496
The printer's TCP/IP network settings are not configured correctly.	Make sure the printer's TCP/IP network settings are configured correctly. (See "Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings With RemoteUI.") →P.500
The computer you are trying to print from is not configured correctly.	Make sure the computer's TCP/IP network settings are configured correctly. (See "Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Windows).") →P.499 (See "Configuring the Destination in TCP/IP Networks (Mac OS).") →P.504

Cannot print over a Bonjour network

Cause	Corrective Action
The computer you are trying to print from is not configured correct- ly.	Make sure the computer is configured correctly. (See "Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network (Mac OS).") →P.504
The computer and printer are not on the same network.	Due to the nature of Bonjour, you cannot print if the printer is on another network behind a router. Make sure the computer and printer are on the same network. For information about network set- tings, ask your network administrator.

Troubleshooting

iPF685

Installation problems

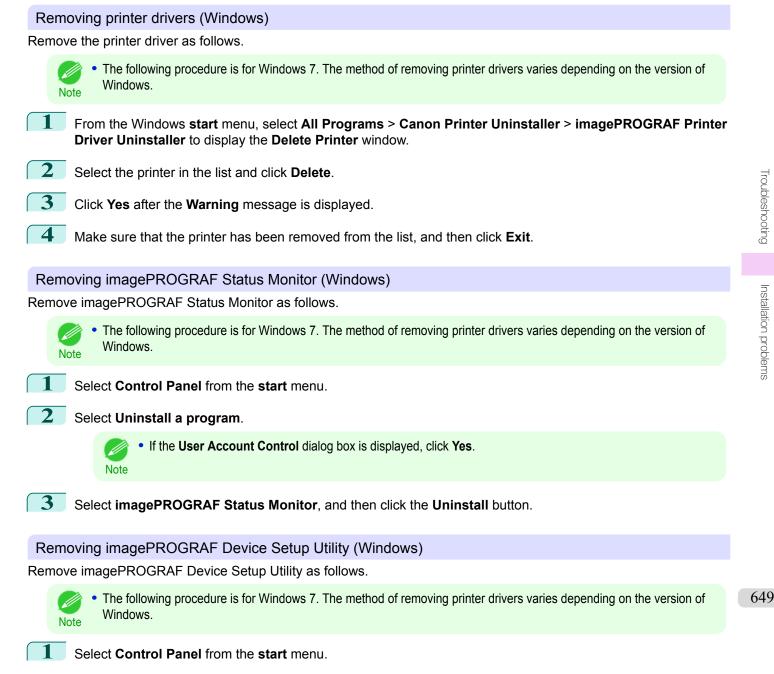
The computer does not recognize the printer	649
Removing Installed Printer Drivers	649

The computer does not recognize the printer

Cause	Corrective Action
In the Control Panel menu, Use USB or Use Ethernet is set to Off.	Set Use USB or Use Ethernet to On. (See "Menu Settings.") →P.459

Removing Installed Printer Drivers

Follow these steps to remove installed printer drivers and utilities.



2 Select Uninstall a program.



• If the User Account Control dialog box is displayed, click Yes.

3 Select **imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility**, and then click the **Uninstall** button.

HP-GL/2 problems

With HP-GL/2, printing is misaligned	651
Lines or images are missing in printed HP-GL/2 jobs.	
Lines are printed too thick or thin in HP-GL/2 print jobs	
HP-GL/2 jobs are printed in monochrome (or color)	
Printed colors of lines are inaccurate during HP-GL/2 printing	
HP-GL/2 jobs are printed 6 mm larger than specified	
HP-GL/2 jobs are printed at maximum size, even if a standard size is specified	652
HP-GL/2 printing takes a long time	
The printer stops when printing a HP-GL/2 job (the carriage stops moving)	652

With HP-GL/2, printing is misaligned

Cause	Corrective Action
The plotter origin is incorrect.	Check the printing commands.
	Set Detect img size to Command priority or Detected size in the Control Panel menu. (See "Menu Settings.") →P459
The Margin setting in the Control Panel menu is incorrect.	Adjust the Margin setting values in the Control Panel menu. (See "Menu Settings.") →P.459

Lines or images are missing in printed HP-GL/2 jobs.

Cause	Corrective Action
The memory is full.	Check the size of the data in the print job.
An HP-GL/2 command not supported by this printer was received.	Check the print job and settings.
The printer has received print data that includes HP RTL commands when Auto Rotate is On in the Control Panel menu.	In the Control Panel, set Auto Rotate to Off and print again. (See "Menu Settings.") → P.459
The plotter origin is incorrect.	Set Detect img size to Command priority or Detected size in the Control Panel menu. (See "Menu Settings.") →P459
Oversize in the Control Panel menu is set to Off .	Set Oversize to On in the Control Panel menu. (See "Menu Settings.") →P459

Lines are printed too thick or thin in HP-GL/2 print jobs

Cause	Corrective Action
The Width setting in the Control Panel menu is incorrect.	Change the Width setting configured in Pen no. of the Palette A or Palette B selected in the Control Panel menu. (See "Menu Settings.") → P.459
ThickenFineLines in the Control Panel menu is set to Off .	If fine lines are printed faintly, setting ThickenFineLines to On will print the lines more distinctly. (See "Menu Settings.") →P.459
The Ln wdth correct setting in the Control Panel menu is incorrect.	Change the Ln wdth correct setting in the Control Panel menu. (See "Menu Settings.") → P.459

HP-GL/2 jobs are printed in monochrome (or color)

Cause	Corrective Action
The Color Mode setting in the Control Panel menu is incorrect.	Check the Color Mode setting in the Control Panel menu. (See "Menu Settings.") →P.459 However, for optimal Printhead performance, the printer consumes trace amounts of color ink even when Monochrome is selected as Color Mode .

Printed colors of lines are inaccurate during HP-GL/2 printing

Cause	Corrective Action
AdjustFaintLines is On in the Con-	Setting AdjustFaintLines to Off in the Control Panel menu may help produce the expected re-
trol Panel menu.	sults. However, lines in some colors may appear broken.

HP-GL/2 jobs are printed 6 mm larger than specified

Cause	Corrective Action
The page size of the HP-GL/2 print job, as created in the source application, is incorrect.	In the Control Panel menu, set Oversize to Off . (See "Menu Settings.") →P.459

HP-GL/2 jobs are printed at maximum size, even if a standard size is specified

Cause	Corrective Action
The page size of the HP-GL/2 print job, as created in the source application, is incorrect.	Set Detect img size to Command priority or Detected size in the Con- trol Panel menu. (See "Menu Settings.") →P.459
	Set Conserve Paper to On in the Control Panel menu. (See "Menu Settings.") →P.459

HP-GL/2 printing takes a long time

Cause	Corrective Action
Large print jobs with a lot of data take longer to print.	Please wait a while until printing is finished.
A job was printed when Input Resolution in the Control Panel menu was set to 600dpi .	In the Control Panel menu, set Input Resolution to 300dpi and print again. (See "Menu Settings.") →P.459

The printer stops when printing a HP-GL/2 job (the carriage stops moving)

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer is analyzing the print job.	Please wait a while until printing is finished.
A job was printed when Input Resolution in the Control Panel menu was set to 600dpi .	In the Control Panel menu, set Input Resolution to 300dpi and print again. (See "Menu Settings.") →P.459

Other problems

The Ink Tank Cover has become detached from the printer The printer does not go on The printer takes time to start up	. 653
If the Printer Makes a Strange Sound	. 654
Messages advising to check the maintenance cartridge are not cleared	. 654
The printer consumes a lot of ink Ink Level Detection	

The Ink Tank Cover has become detached from the printer

Cause	Corrective Action
The Ink Tank Cover became detached from the printer because too much force was applied to the Ink Tank Cover.	Attach the Ink Tank Cover to the printer. (See "Attach the Ink Tank Cover to the printer.") →P.597

The printer does not go on

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer is unplugged.	Plug the power cord into the outlet, and then turn on the printer.
The specified voltage is not supplied.	Check the voltage of the outlet and breaker. (See "Specifications.") →P.682

The printer takes time to start up

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer may have shut down incorrectly last time. This may happen after power outages or if the printer is unplugged before it is turned off. In this case, the next time power is restored, the printer's hard disk is	Please wait a while, because it may take several minutes to finish checking the hard disk. If an error message is displayed after the hard disk check, fol-
checked, and startup may take some time.	low the instructions indicated to resolve the problem.

If the Printer Makes a Strange Sound

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer makes a sound	The following sounds do not indicate a problem with the printer.
during opera- tion.	 There is a sound of suction from the Platen To prevent paper from rising, paper is held against the Platen by suction from Vacuum holes under it.
	 There is a sound when a different size of paper is used and when the Carriage goes from side to side When paper of a different size is used, a valve is automatically activated to switch the area for paper suction, which may make a sound. This mechanism prevents suction from Vacuum holes where there is no paper. In addition, ink is ejected in sync with the movement of the Carriage back and forth to ensure optimal ink flow. At this time, the valve automatically switches the area for paper suction, which may make a sound.
	 Roll paper makes a fluttering sound during printing There may be a fluttering sound when large paper is advanced.
	 If you suddenly hear the tone for cleaning operations At regular intervals, for printer maintenance, cleaning operations will begin automatically, even if the printer is in Sleep mode.
	 If you suddenly hear the tone for ink agitation At regular intervals, to ensure optimal printing quality, the ink is agitated automatically, even if the printer is in Sleep mode. The ink is also agitated automatically under the following conditions. Note that other operations are not possible while "Agitating" is displayed on the control panel.
	After the printer is turned on
	In other cases, contact your Canon dealer.

Messages advising to check the maintenance cartridge are not cleared

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer has not detected the new Maintenance	Remove the new Maintenance Cartridge you have just installed and insert it again firmly.
Cartridge that was used to replace the old one.	(See "Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge.") →P.603

The printer consumes a lot of ink

Cause	Corrective Action
Many full-page color images are printed.	In print jobs such as photos, images are filled with color. This consumes a lot of ink. This does not indicate a problem with the printer.
Head Cleaning B in the Control Panel menu is executed frequent- ly.	Head Cleaning B in the Control Panel menu consumes a lot of ink. This does not indicate a prob- lem with the printer. Unless the printer has been moved or stored for a long period or you are trou- bleshooting Printhead problems, we recommend not performing Head Cleaning B , to the extent possible.
You have just finished initial instal- lation, when more ink is con- sumed to fill the system.	After initial installation or at the first-time use after transfer, ink flows into the system between the Ink Tank and Printhead. Although the amount of remaining ink may drop as a result, it does not indicate a problem.
The Printhead nozzles are clog- ged.	Check for nozzle clogging. (See "Checking for Nozzle Clogging.") →P.599

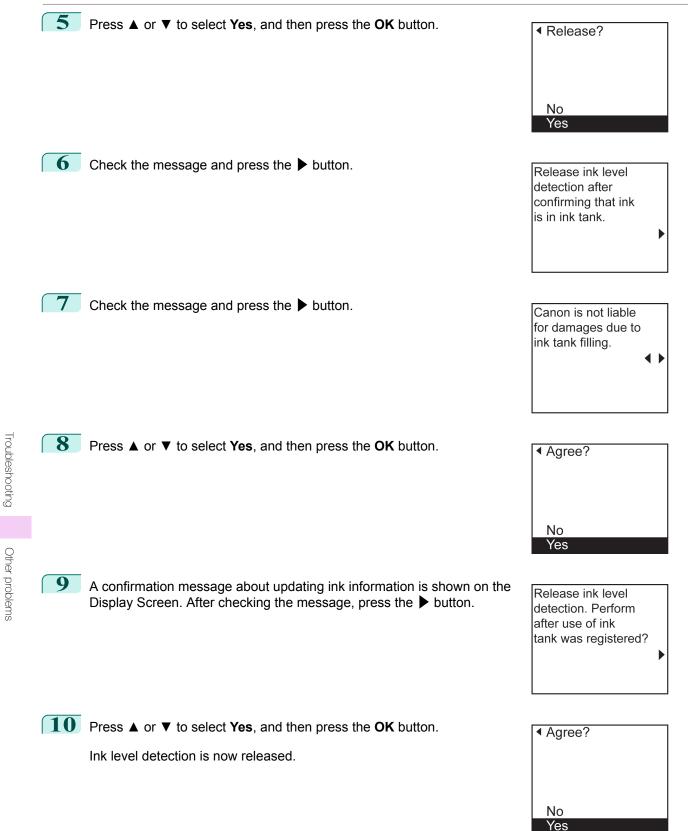
Ink Level Detection

Ink level detection will be deactivated if you load ink tanks once emptied.

Troubleshooting

Other problems

Ink level detection Ink tanks specified for this printer feature an ink level detection function to prevent the ink from running out during printing, which prevents printer damage. (See "Ink Tanks.") →P.590 This function will not work correctly if you use refill ink tanks. As a result, printing stops. Thus, before using refill ink tanks, you must cancel the ink level detection. Printing with the ink level detection canceled may lead to printer damage and printing problems. Canon Inc. is not liable for any damage that may occur as a result of refilling ink. After ink level detection has been released, this function cannot be reactivated for currently loaded Ink Tank. To use ink level detection again, replace the Ink Tank with new ones specified for use with the printer. Important Repeatedly removing and inserting an Ink Tank may damage the connection between the Ink Tank and the printer, which may cause ink leakage from the Ink Tank and damage the printer. Releasing ink level detection 1 On the Display Screen, a message indicates that the ink level cannot be Remaining level detected. After checking the message, press the button. of the ink cannot be correctly detected. Check ink tank. **2** Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Information**, and then press the **OK** button. Please Check Check Information 3 A confirmation message is shown on the Display Screen about releasing Tank once emptied ink level detection. After checking the message, press the button. is used. Printing stopped due to ink level unknown. 4 After checking the message, press the button. To continue, you must release ink level detection. **{)**



iPF685

User's Guide

Basic Printing Workflow	15
Enhanced Printing Options	31
Windows Software	157
Mac OS Software	277
Handling and Use of Paper	361
Control Panel	437
Printer Parts	477
Network Setting	491
Print Job Management	511
Adjustments for Better Print Quality	573
Maintenance and Consumables	589
Troubleshooting	627

Error Message

Error Messages	658
Messages regarding paper	660
Messages regarding ink	669
Messages regarding printing or adjustment	671
Messages regarding printheads	672
Messages regarding the maintenance cartridge	674
Messages regarding the hard disk	675
Messages regarding HP-GL/2	677
Other Messages	678

Specifications	681
Appendix	685

DSer S Guid

10

Error Messages

Borderless printng not possible.	667
Cannot adjust paper feed Cannot adjust printhead Cannot detect ink level correctly. Close tank cover	672
Cannot detect rak level correctly. Close tank cover.	
Cannot recognize print head.	
Check if ink tank is set, and its color and direction.	
Check printed document.	
Close Ink Tank Cover	
Do not pull out ink tank	670
End of paper feed.	
ERROR Exxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number)	678
Error in cutter position.	
Execute printhead cleaning.	
File read error	675
GARO Wxxxx (x represents a number)	
GL2: W0502 The parameter is out of range.	
GL2: W0504 This command is not supported.	
GL2: Wxxxx The memory is full. (xxxx is 0501, 0903, or 0904)	677
Hard disk error	
Hardware error. xxxxxxxxxxxxx (x represents a letter or number)	678
Ink insufficient	
Ink tank is empty	
Insert the maintenance cartridge.	
Insufficient paper for job	663
Leading edge detection error.	666
Mail box full. Delete unwanted data	676
Mail box full. Now printing without saving data.	
Mail box nearly full	
Maint. cart. The level is low	
Maintenance cartridge full.	
Maintenance cartridge problem.	
Maximum jobs stored MediaType Mismatch	
Multi-sensor error	
No ink left No Maintenance Cartridge capacity	
Not much ink is left.	
Paper cutting failed.	
Paper is crooked.	
Paper jam	
Paper mismatch	
Paper not aligned with right guide.	
Paper position not suitable for borderless printing.	
Paper size not detected PaprWidth Mismatch	

Parts replacement time has passed Prepare for parts replacement	
Printhead error	
	. 072
Regular printing is selected, but a roll is loaded Rel lever is in wrong position	. 664
Rel lever is in wrong position	. 667
Remaining level of the ink cannot be correctly detected. Check ink tank	
Roll paper is not securely in contact with roll holder.	
Roll printing is selected, but sheets are loaded.	
Roll printing is selected.	. 663
Sheet printing is selected.	664
The following ink tanks cannot be recognized.	670
The mail box is full	
The paper is too small	
The paper is too small.	
The roll is empty	
This paper cannot be used.	
This type of paper is not compatible with HP-GL/2.	677
Top cover is open.	
Unknown file	679
	(70
Wrong ink tank.	. 670
Wrong maintenance cartridge	
Wrong printhead.	672

Messages regarding paper

Paper mismatch MediaType Mismatch The paper is too small. The paper is too small. PaprWidth Mismatch Paper size not detected. Insufficient paper for job This paper cannot be used.	
Roll printing is selected Roll printing is selected, but sheets are loaded The roll is empty	664
Sheet printing is selected Regular printing is selected, but a roll is loaded	
Paper jam Paper is crooked Paper not aligned with right guide Cannot detect papr Leading edge detection error Paper cutting failed. End of paper feed Rel lever is in wrong position.	665 666 666 666 667
Borderless printng not possible. Paper position not suitable for borderless printing. Roll paper is not securely in contact with roll holder.	668

Paper mismatch

Cause	Corrective Action
You tried to print a test pattern for printer adjust- ment on several sheets, but sheets of different types or sizes of paper were used.	 When printing a test pattern for adjustment, use sheets of the same size and type of paper, in the required quantity. Press ▲ or ▼ to select Change Paper, press the OK button, and replace the paper. (See "Loading and Printing on Sheets.") → P21 The printer now starts printing the test pattern.
	Press ▲ or ▼ to select Stop Printing , and then press the OK button.

MediaType Mismatch

Cause	Corrective Action
When Detect Mismatch in the Control Panel menu is set to Pause , the type of paper loaded does not match the type specified in the printer driver.	Follow these steps to ensure the paper type matches on the printer and in the printer driver.
	1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select Stop Printing , and then press the OK button.
	2. Change the paper type setting in the printer driver to the type loaded in the printer and try printing again.
	Follow these steps to ensure the paper type matches on the printer and in the printer driver.
	1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select Change Paper, and then press the OK button.

Cause	Corrective Action
When Detect Mismatch in the Control Panel menu is set to Pause , the type of paper loaded does not match the type specified in the printer driver.	 2. Replace the loaded paper with paper of the type and size you have specified in the printer driver. (See "Loading and Printing on Rolls.") →P.19 (See "Loading and Printing on Sheets.") →P.21
	Press \blacktriangle or \lor to select Print , and then press the OK button to resume printing. However, note that this error may cause paper jams and affect the printing quality.
When Detect Mismatch in the Control Panel menu is set to Warning , the type of paper loaded does not match the type specified in the printer driver.	You can continue to print, but note that this error may cause paper jams or problems in the printing results.

The paper is too small.

Cause	Corrective Action
When Detect Mismatch in the Control Panel menu is set to Pause , paper smaller than the size specified in the printer driver is loaded.	Press \blacktriangle or \checkmark to select Print , and then press the OK button to resume printing. However, note that this error may cause paper jams and affect the printing quality.
	Adjust the paper size setting in the printer driver to match the size loaded in the printer as follows.
	1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select Stop Printing, and then press the OK button.
	2. Change the paper size setting in the printer driver to the size loaded in the printer and try printing again.
	Replace the loaded paper with paper of a size that matches the size setting in the printer driver as follows.
	1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select Change Paper, and then press the OK button to stop printing.
	 Replace the loaded paper to match the settings in the printer driver and try printing again. (See "Loading and Printing on Rolls.") → P19 (See "Loading and Printing on Sheets.") → P21
When Detect Mismatch in the Control Panel menu is set to Warning , paper smaller than the size specified in the printer driver is loaded.	You can continue to print, but note that this error may cause problems in the printing results.

The paper is too small.

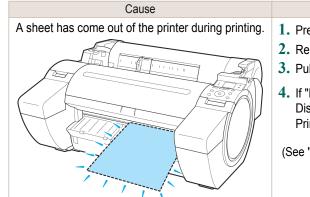
"Replace paper with A4/LTR (vertical) or larger"

Cause	Corrective Action
The loaded paper is too small.	Replace the paper with paper of A4/Letter (vertical) size or larger as follows.
	1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select Change Paper, press the OK button, and remove the paper. (See "Removing Sheets.") → P.399
	 Switch to paper A4/Letter (vertical) or larger. (See "Loading and Printing on Sheets.") →P21 The printer will resume printing.
	Press \blacktriangle or \blacktriangledown to select Stop Printing , and then press the OK button.

"Replace roll with 10 in. wide or larger roll."

Cause	Corrective Action
The loaded paper is too small.	Replace the roll with a roll 10 inches in width or larger as follows.

"Remove paper and check pap. size"



Corrective Action
 Press the Release Lever back and remove the paper. Reload the sheet, aligning it with the guide on the right. Pull the Release Lever forward.
 4. If "Not finished printing. Finish printing remaining jobs?" is shown on the Display Screen, press the OK button. Printing will resume, starting from the page on which the error occurred. (See "Loading Sheets in the Printer.") →P.394

PaprWidth Mismatch

Cause	Corrective Action
When Detect Mismatch in the Control Panel menu is s to Pause or Hold Job , the width of the loaded roll does not match the width specified in Fit Roll Paper Width in the printer driver.	Press ▲ or ▼ to select Print , and then press the OK button to resume printing. However, note that this error may cause paper jams and affect the printing quality.
	Press ▲ or ▼ to select Stop Printing, and then press the OK button.
	Follow these steps to replace the roll to match the width specified in the print er driver.
	 Press ▲ or ▼ to select Change Paper, and then press the OK button. (See "Removing the Roll from the Printer.") →P380 (See "Removing the Roll Holder from Rolls.") →P383
	 Replace with paper of the width configured in the printer driver. (See "Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls.") →P.372 (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P.375 The printer now starts printing the print job.
	Make sure the roll width selected in the dialog box displayed when you select Fit Roll Paper Width in the printer driver matches the width of the roll loade in the printer, and then try printing again.

Paper size not detected.

Cause	Corrective Action
Paper has been loaded	Follow these steps to reload the roll.
askew, or warped paper has been loaded.	 Press the OK button and reload the paper. (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P.375
	2. Pull the Release Lever forward.

Cause	Corrective Action
Paper has been loaded askew, or warped paper has been loaded.	 If "Not finished printing. Finish printing remaining jobs?" is shown on the Display Screen, press the OK button. Printing will resume, starting from the page on which the error occurred.
	If this error recurs after you reload the roll, remove the Roll Holder from the printer, push the roll firmly in until it touches the Roll Holder flange, and reload the Roll Holder in the printer. (See "Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls.") (>P.372)
	 Follow these step to reload a sheet. 1. Push the Release Lever back. 2. Load the sheet, aligning it with the guide on the right. (See "Loading Sheets in the Printer.") →P394
	3. Pull the Release Lever forward.
	 4. If "Not finished printing. Finish printing remaining jobs?" is shown on the Display Screen, press the OK button. Printing will resume, starting from the page on which the error occurred.

Insufficient paper for job

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer has received a print job longer than the amount of roll paper left when ManageRemainRoll in the Control Panel menu is On .	Press ▲ or ▼ to select Print , and then press the OK button to resume printing. However, the roll paper may run out during the print job and you may not be able to print all of the document.
	Press ▲ or ▼ to select Change Paper, and then press the OK button to stop printing. Either change the printer driver Paper Source setting or the GL2 Settings > Paper Source set- ting in the printer menu or replace the roll with a roll that has enough paper for the print job, and then try printing again. (See "Removing the Roll from the Print- er.") →P380 (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P375 Press ▲ or ▼ and select Stop Printing or press the Stop button to stop printing.

This paper cannot be used.

Cause	Corrective Action
Paper smaller than the printer's minimum supported size has been loaded.	Push the Release Lever back and load paper of the correct size. (See "Paper Sizes.") →P362
Paper has been loaded that is too small to print the test pattern for printhead adjustment or nozzle checking.	Push the Release Lever back and load unused paper of A4 size or larger. More than one sheet may be required depending on the adjustment.

Roll printing is selected.

Cause	Corrective Action
You have attempted to print on a roll, but no roll is loaded.	Press ▲ or ▼ to select "Load Roll Paper", and then press the OK button. Load the roll, and then print. (See "Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls.") →R372 (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →R375
	Press \blacktriangle or \blacktriangledown and select Stop Printing or press the Stop button to stop printing.

Roll printing is selected, but sheets are loaded.

Cause	Corrective Action
A print job for rolls was received when a sheet is loaded.	 Follow these steps to load and print on a roll. 1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select Eject Cut Sheet, press the OK button, and remove the sheet. (See "Removing Sheets.") → P.399
	 Load a new roll. (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P.375 The printer now starts printing the print job.
	Press ▲ or ▼ to select Stop Printing, and then press the OK button.

The roll is empty.

Cause	Corrective Action	
The roll is empty.	Follow these steps to replace the used roll with a new roll of the same type and size.	
	 Press the Release Lever back and remove the roll. (See "Removing the Roll from the Printer.") →P380 (See "Removing the Roll Holder from Rolls.") →P383 	
	2. Load the new roll. (See "Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls.") →P372 (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P375	
	3. If no barcode was printed on the roll, specify the type of paper. (See "Changing the Type of Paper.") →P378	
	 When you have selected ManageRemainRoll > On in the control panel menu and a barcode is not printed on the roll, also specify the paper length. (See "Specifying the Paper Length.") → P.380 	
	 5. If "Not finished printing. Finish printing remaining jobs?" is shown on the Display Screen, press the OK button. Printing will resume, starting from the page on which the error occurred. If no message appears, printing will continue from the next page. 	
There is remaining roll paper, but be- cause it could not be advanced, it could not be detec- ted.	The unused portion of the roll is heavy, and this is placing a burden on the printer. It may be helpful to change the printing mode, which will change the paper feed timing. Choose a higher level of Print Quality in the Advanced Settings of the printer driver. (See "Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing.") →P58	

Sheet printing is selected.

Cause	Corrective Action
You have attempted to print on a sheet, but no sheet is loaded.	Press ▲ or ▼ to select Load Paper, and then press the OK button. Load a sheet, and then print. (See "Loading and Printing on Sheets.") →P.21
	Press ▲ or ▼ and select Stop Printing or press the Stop button to stop printing.

Regular printing is selected, but a roll is loaded.

	Cause	Corrective Action
4	A print job for printing on sheets was sent when a roll is loaded.	 Press ▲ or ▼ to select Remove Roll Paper, and then press the OK button to stop printing. After removing the roll, load and print on a sheet of the type and size of paper you have specified in the printer driver.
		(See "Removing the Roll from the Printer.") →P.380

Cause	Corrective Action
A print job for printing on sheets	(See "Loading and Printing on Sheets.") →P.21
was sent when a roll is loaded.	Press ▲ or ▼ to select Stop Printing, and then press the OK button to stop printing.

Paper jam

i apoi jam		
Cause	Corrective Action	
A paper jam oc- curred in the printer during printing.	 For roll paper, cut the paper on the upper side of the {Paper Feed Slot. 1. Push the Release Lever back and remove the jammed paper. (See "Clearing Jammed Roll Paper.") → P629 (See "Clearing a Jammed Sheet.") → P632 	
	 Load the paper. (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P375 (See "Loading Sheets in the Printer.") →P394 	
	3. Pull the Release Lever forward.	
	 If "Not finished printing. Finish printing remaining jobs?" is shown on the Display Screen, press the OK button. Printing will resume, starting from the page on which the error occurred. 	

Paper is crooked.

Cause	Corrective Action	
Paper loaded crooked was detected when the paper was advanced.	Follow these steps to reload the roll.	
Paper loaded crooked was detected when the paper was advanced.	 Push the Release Lever back. Adjust the right edge of the roll to make it parallel to the orange Paper Alignment Line. Pull the Release Lever forward. (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P375 If this error recurs after you reload the roll, remove the Roll Holder from the printer, push the roll firmly in until it touches the Roll Holder flange, and reload the Roll Holder in the printer. (See "Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls.") →P372 Follow these step to reload a sheet. Push the Release Lever back. Pull out the sheet. Pull the Release Lever forward. Reload the sheet, aligning it with the guide on the right. 	
	(See "Loading Sheets in the Printer.") \rightarrow P.394	

• To disable this message (if it is displayed repeatedly despite reloading paper, for example), choose Off or Loose in the Skew Check Lv. setting of the printer menu. However, this may cause jams and printing problems because paper Important may be askew when printed. Also, the Platen may become soiled, which may soil the back of the next document when it is printed.

665

(IIII)

Paper not aligned with right guide.	
Cause	Corrective Action
When paper was loaded, it was not aligned with the guide on the right side.	Follow these step to reload a sheet.
	1. Push the Release Lever back.
	2. Pull out the sheet.
	3. Pull the Release Lever forward.
	4. Reload the sheet, aligning it with the guide on the right.

Cannot detect papr

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer could not detect the paper.	Reload the paper as follows.
	1. Remove the paper and press the \mathbf{OK} button.
	2. Reload the paper. (See "Loading Sheets in the Printer.") →P394 (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P375

Leading edge detection error.

Cause	Corrective Action
The leading edge of the paper cannot be detected.	Follow these step to reload a sheet.
	1. Push the Release Lever back.
	2. Reload the sheet straight, in the correct position. (See "Loading Sheets in the Printer.") →P394

Paper cutting failed.

Cause	Corrective Action
There are sheets left on the Ejection Guide.	 Push the Release Lever back and remove the paper. Load the paper. Pull the Release Lever forward.
	 4. If "Not finished printing. Finish printing remaining jobs?" is shown on the Display Screen, press the OK button. Printing will resume, starting from the page on which the error occurred. (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P375
There is a foreign object by the Output Tray, obstructing the Cutter Unit.	 Lift the Top Cover and remove the foreign object. If "Not finished printing. Finish printing remaining jobs?" is shown on the Display Screen, press the OK button. Printing will resume, starting from the page on which the error occurred.
You are not using the printer under the recommended en- vironmental conditions for the paper.	Use the printer only where the recommended environmental conditions for the paper are met. Note that various environmental conditions are recommended for various types of paper. For details on the recommended environmental conditions for paper, see Paper Reference Guide ." (See "Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.") \rightarrow P.365
You are using paper that is not compatible with automat- ic cutting.	 Specify Manual as the cutting method and use scissors or a cutting tool to cut the roll. (See "Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls.") → P.388 For information about paper that is compatible with automatic cutting, see the Paper Reference Guide. (See "Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.") → P.365

User's Guide

Cause	Corrective Action
You are using paper that is not compatible with automatic cutting.	2. Push the Release Lever back and remove the paper.
In other cases, the Cutter Unit may be damaged.	Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

End of paper feed.

Cause	Corrective Action
Although an attempt was made to advance the paper manually, it reached the limit position that can be advanced.	Canceling manual advancing. (See "Feeding Roll Paper Manually.") →P.384

Rel lever is in wrong position.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Release Lever is pushed back.	Pull the Release Lever forward. Turn off the printer and wait a while before restoring power.

Borderless printng not possible.

Cause	Corrective Action	
The print job received specifies a type or width of paper that is not	Follow these steps to change the settings of the print job to enable borderless printing.	
compatible with borderless printing.	1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select Stop Printing , and then press the OK button.	
	 Make sure the correct printer driver for the printer is selected and try printing again. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (See "Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.") →P.365 	
	Press \blacktriangle or \checkmark to select Print With Border , and then press the OK button to continue printing. The document will be printed with a border.	
The loaded paper is a size not com-	Press ▲ or ▼ to select Stop Printing , and then press the OK button.	
patible with borderless printing.	Replace the paper with paper compatible for borderless printing as follows.	
	 Press ▲ or ▼ to select Change Paper, and then press the OK button. (See "Removing the Roll from the Printer.") →P380 (See "Removing the Roll Holder from Rolls.") →P383 	
	 Replace the paper with paper compatible for borderless printing. (See "Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls.") →P372 (See "Loading Rolls in the Printer.") →P375 The printer now starts printing the print job. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (See "Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.") →P.365 	
	Press \blacktriangle or \lor to select Print With Border , and then press the OK button to continue printing. The document will be printed with a border.	
Because paper expands or con- tracts depending on the environ- ment of use, it may become narrow- er or wider than the supported width for borderless printing.	Use each type of paper only where the recommended environmental conditions are met. For de- tails on environmental conditions for various paper, see the Paper Reference Guide . (See "Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.") →P365	

Paper position not suitable for borderless printing.

Cause	Corrective Action
Because paper expands or con- tracts depending on the environ- ment of use, it may become nar- rower or wider than the suppor- ted width for borderless printing.	Press ▲ or ▼ to select Stop Printing , and then press the OK button. Use each type of paper only where the recommended environmental conditions are met. For details on environmental conditions for various paper, see the Paper Reference Guide . (See " Displaying the Paper Reference Guide .") →P365
The paper is loaded askew.	Press ▲ or ▼ to select Fix Paper Position and straighten the paper so that the edges are between the ink grooves for borderless printing. Insert the roll firmly until it touches the flange of the Roll Holder. (See "Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls.") →P372
	Press \blacktriangle or \lor to select Print With Border , and then press the OK button to continue printing. The document will be printed with a border.
	Press ▲ or ▼ to select Stop Printing , and then press the OK button.

Roll paper is not securely in contact with roll holder.

Cause	Corrective Action
When the roll was loaded, the roll was not inserted firmly all the way on the Roll Holder.	Follow these steps to reload the roll. 1. Press the OK button and remove the roll holder from the printer.
	 Insert the roll firmly on the Roll Holder until it touches the flange. (See "Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls.") →P.372
	3. Load the Roll Holder in the printer.

Messages regarding ink

Ink insufficient.	
No ink left	669
Remaining level of the ink cannot be correctly detected. Check ink tank.	
Cannot detect ink level correctly. Close tank cover.	
Close Ink Tank Cover	
Ink tank is empty.	670
Not much ink is left.	670
Check if ink tank is set, and its color and direction.	670
The following ink tanks cannot be recognized.	670
Wrong ink tank.	
Do not pull out ink tank.	
•	

Ink insufficient.

Cause	Corrective Action
The ink level is low, so you cannot print, clean the Printhead, or do other operations that require ink. There is not enough ink of the color with × displayed above the re- maining ink indicator.	Press ▲ or ▼ to select Rep. Ink Tank , and then press the OK button. Replace the Ink Tank that is low with a new Ink Tank. (See " Replacing Ink Tanks .") → P590
	Press \blacktriangle or \blacktriangledown to select Continue to print , and then press the OK button to resume printing. However, note that this error may affect the printing quality.
	Press the OK button, open the Ink Tank Cover, and replace the Ink Tank for the color that does not have enough ink. (See " Replacing Ink Tanks .") → P590

No ink left.

Cause	Corrective Action
There is no ink left. There are no ink colors with × displayed above the remaining ink indicator.	Press the OK button, open the Ink Tank Cover, and replace the Ink Tank for the color that is out of ink. (See "Replacing Ink Tanks.") →P590

Remaining level of the ink cannot be correctly detected. Check ink tank.

Cause	Corrective Action
Ink level detection cannot work correctly if you use refill ink tanks.	The refill ink tank can no longer be used. See the section Ink level detection and take the appropriate action. (See " Ink Level Detection .") →P.654

Cannot detect ink level correctly. Close tank cover.

Cause	Corrective Action
The remaining ink level could not be correctly detected.	Close the Ink Tank Cover. The buzzer stops sounding. Next, " No ink left. " → P669

Cause Corrective Action The lnk Tank Cover is open. Close the lnk Tank Cover.

Ink tank is empty.

Cause	Corrective Action
There is no ink left in an ink tank. There are no ink colors with × displayed above the remaining ink indica- tor in the lnk tab top screen. (See "Checking Ink Tank Levels.") →P595	Open the Ink Tank Cover, and replace the Ink Tank for the color that is out of ink. (See "Replacing Ink Tanks.") P.590

Not much ink is left.

	Cause	Corrective Action
Not m	uch ink is left.	Prepare a new Ink Tank. We recommend replacing the Ink Tank with a new Ink Tank at this point if you plan to print large-format or high- quantity jobs.

Check if ink tank is set, and its color and direction.

Cause	Corrective Action
There is no Ink Tank of the indicated color in the printer.	Load the Ink Tank. (See "Replacing Ink Tanks.") →P.590
There is a problem with the Ink Tank.	Replace it with a new Ink Tank. (See "Replacing Ink Tanks.") →P.590

The following ink tanks cannot be recognized.

Cause	Corrective Action
An Ink Tank that is incompatible with the printer is loaded.	Load an Ink Tank that is compatible with the printer. (See "Replacing Ink Tanks.") →P.590

Wrong ink tank.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Ink Tank in the printer is incompatible.	Load an Ink Tank specified for use with the printer. (See "Replacing Ink Tanks.") →P.590

Do not pull out ink tank.

Cause	Corrective Action	
The Ink Tank was removed using an incor- rect procedure.	Install the Ink Tank that was removed. The buzzer stops sounding. Next, replace the Ink Tank using the procedure on the Display Screen in the Control Panel.	

Messages regarding printing or adjustment

Cannot adjust printhead.	. 672
Borderless printng not possible.	. 667
Cannot adjust paper feed Check printed document	

Cannot adjust paper feed.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Execute Adj. Quality again, as follows.
	1. Press the OK button to clear the error.
	 Print a test pattern to check the nozzles. (See "Checking for Nozzle Clogging.") →P.599
	3. Clean the Printhead if the nozzles are clogged. (See "Cleaning the Printhead.") →P.600
	 4. Execute Adj. Quality again. (See "Automatic Banding Adjustment.") →P.582
Highly transparent film is loaded that cannot be used for automatic feed amount adjustment.	Press the OK button to clear the error, and then adjust the feed amount manually. (See "Manual Banding Adjustment.") >P.584

Check printed document.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are becoming clogged.	If printing is faint, clean the Printhead. (See "Cleaning the Printhead.") →P.600

Messages regarding printheads

Cannot adjust printhead
Wrong printhead. 672 Printhead error 672 Cannot recognize print head. 672 Execute printhead cleaning. 673

Cannot adjust printhead.

Cause	Corrective Action	
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	. Execute Head Posi. Adj. again, as follows.	
	1. Press the OK button to clear the error.	
	 Print a test pattern to check the nozzles. (See "Checking for Nozzle Clogging.") →P.599 	
	3. Clean the Printhead if the nozzles are clogged. (See "Cleaning the Printhead.") →P.600	
	 Execute Head Posi. Adj. again. (See "Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors.") →P.574 	
The Printhead cannot be aligned; highly transparent film is loaded.	Press the OK button to clear the error. We recommend using a type of paper that you often use, other than film, for Printhead adjustment. (See "Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors.") (>P.574)	
The Printhead is installed crooked.	Straighten the Printhead as follows, and then execute Head Posi. Adj. again.	
	1. Press the OK button to clear the error.	
	2. Use Head Inc. Adj. to adjust the angle of inclination of the Printhead. (See "Adjusting Line Misalignment.") →P.577	
	3. Execute Head Posi. Adj. again. (See "Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors.") →P.574	

Wrong printhead.

Cause	Corrective Action
An incompatible Printhead has been installed.	Open the Top Cover and replace the Printhead with a new one. (See "Replacing the Printhead.") \rightarrow P.601

Printhead error

Cause	Corrective Action
There is a problem with the Printhead.	Open the Top Cover and replace the Printhead with a new one. (See "Replacing the Printhead.") →P.601

Cannot recognize print head.

Cause	Corrective Action
No Printhead is installed.	Follow these steps to install the Printhead.
	1. Open the Top Cover.
	2. Install the Printhead. (See "Replacing the Printhead.") →P601
The Printhead cannot be recognized because it is not installed correctly.	Follow these steps to reinstall the Printhead.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead cannot be recognized because it is not installed correctly.	1. Open the Top Cover.
	2. Reinstall the Printhead. (See "Replacing the Printhead.") →P601

Execute printhead cleaning.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead noz-	Follow these steps to clean the Printhead.
zles are clogged.	1. Stop printing by pressing \blacktriangle or \blacktriangledown to select Stop Printing .
	2. Clean the Printhead. (See "Cleaning the Printhead.") → P.600
	If the message is still displayed when printing, replace the Printhead. (See "Replacing the Printhead.") →P.601
	Press \blacktriangle or \checkmark to select Print , and then press the OK button to resume printing. However, note that this error may affect the printing quality.

Messages regarding the maintenance cartridge

Insert the maintenance cartridge Wrong maintenance cartridge	
Maint. cart. The level is low No Maintenance Cartridge capacity. Maintenance cartridge full. Maintenance cartridge problem.	674 674

Insert the maintenance cartridge.

Cause

The Maintenance Cartridge is not installed.

Corrective Action Install the Maintenance Cartridge. (See "Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge.") →P.608

Wrong maintenance cartridge.

Cause	Corrective Action
A Maintenance Cartridge for a different model of printer is instal-	Replace it with the Maintenance Cartridge for your particular model.
led.	(See "Maintenance Cartridge.") → P.608

Maint. cart. The level is low

Cause	Corrective Action
The Maintenance Cartridge is al- most full.	You can continue to print, but prepare a new Maintenance Cartridge to use when the message for replacement is displayed.

No Maintenance Cartridge capacity.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Maintenance Cartridge cannot absorb enough ink for Printhead cleaning or other opera- tion.	After confirming that the printer has stopped operating, replace the Maintenance Cartridge. (See "Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge.") →P608

Maintenance cartridge full.

Cause Corrective Action	
The Maintenance Cartridge is full.	After confirming that the printer has stopped operating, replace the Maintenance Cartridge. (See "Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge.") \rightarrow P608

Maintenance cartridge problem.

Cause	Corrective Action
An incompatible or used Maintenance Cartridge has been in-	Install an unused Maintenance Cartridge specified for use with the printer.
stalled.	(See "Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge.") →P.608

Messages regarding the hard disk

Hard disk error File read error	
The mail box is full Mail box full. Now printing without saving data Mail box nearly full	675
Maximum jobs stored Mail box full. Delete unwanted data	

Hard disk error.

Cause	Corrective Action
The format of the printer's hard disk is invalid.	Press the OK button to start reformatting the hard disk. When formatting is finished, data on the print- er hard disk is erased and the printer automatically restarts.

File read error.

Cause	Corrective Action
Files on the printer's hard disk have become cor- rupted.	Restart the printer. Only the corrupted files will be deleted, and the printer will restart.

The mail box is full.

Cause	Corrective Action
There is no more space on the printer's hard disk.	Press the Stop button and stop printing.
	Delete print jobs from the queue. (See "Managing the Job Queue (Deleting or Preempting Other Jobs).") →P.536
	Delete unneeded jobs stored in personal boxes. (See "Deleting Saved Jobs.") →P544

Mail box full. Now printing without saving data.

Cause	Corrective Action
No more space is available on the printer's hard disk, so jobs are now printed without	After printing, this message is cleared.
saving them. (Print jobs can no longer be saved on the hard disk.)	Delete unneeded jobs stored in personal boxes. (See "Deleting Saved Jobs.") (→P544)

Mail box nearly full.

Cause	Corrective Action
The free hard disk space left for Personal Boxes in the printer's hard disk does not have more than 1 GB, combined.	Delete unneeded jobs stored in Personal Boxes. (See "Deleting Saved Jobs.") →P544

Maximum jobs stored.

Cause	Corrective Action
100 jobs are stored in the personal box.	Delete unneeded jobs stored in personal boxes. (See "Deleting Saved Jobs.") →P.544

Mail box full. Delete unwanted data

Cause	Corrective Action
100 jobs are stored in the Personal Box.	Press the Stop button and stop printing.
	Delete print jobs from the queue. (See "Managing the Job Queue (Deleting or Preempting Other Jobs).") →P.536
	Delete unneeded jobs stored in personal boxes. (See "Deleting Saved Jobs.") →P.544

Messages regarding HP-GL/2

This type of paper is not compatible with HP-GL/2677	
GL2: Wxxxx The memory is full. (xxxx is 0501, 0903, or 0904)	,

This type of paper is not compatible with HP-GL/2.

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer has received a HP-GL/2 print job that cannot be printed on the paper that has been advanced.	 Follow these steps to replace the type of paper in the printer. 1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select Stop Printing, and then press the OK button.
paper that has been advanced.	 Replace the paper with a type compatible with HP-GL/2. For details on paper compatible with HP-GL/2, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (See "Displaying the Paper Reference Guide.") → P365
	Press \blacktriangle or \triangledown to select Print , and then press the OK button to resume printing. However, note that this error may cause paper jams and affect the printing quality.

GL2: Wxxxx The memory is full. (xxxx is 0501, 0903, or 0904)

		Corrective Action
		Because the entire print job could not be received, the printer may not be able to print the entire original. Check the printing results.
		In the Control Panel menu, setting On-the-Fly to On may enable printing. However, check the printing results because the image may be incomplete in some cases.

GL2: W0502 The parameter is out of range.

Cause	Corrective Action
A parameter specified in a HP-GL/2 command is out of the supported	Check the print job.
	If you have specified ProcessingOption > Warning > On in the Control Panel menu, set it to Off instead.

GL2: W0504 This command is not supported.

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer has received an unsupported HP-GL/2 command.	Check the print job.
	If you have specified ProcessingOption > Warning > On in the Control Panel menu, set it to Off instead.

Other Messages

GARO Wxxxx (x represents a number)
Top cover is open
Prepare for parts replacement
Unknown file
Error in cutter position

GARO Wxxxx (x represents a number)

Cause	Corrective Action
There is a problem with the print job.	Try printing again, using the correct printer driver.
	It is also possible to continue printing in this state. However, you may not be able to obtain the desired printing results.

ERROR Exxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number)

Cause	Corrective Action
An error requiring service may have occurred.	Write down the error code and message, turn off the printer, and contact your Canon dealer for assistance.
Call for service.	
OK: Printer Info.	

Hardware error. xxxxxxxxxxxx (x represents a letter or number)

Cause	Corrective Action
The last portion of roll paper was used during a print job. The paper was not advanced because the trailing edge is taped to the roll.	Turn off the printer and remove the roll from the printer before re- storing power.
Fastening tape or the Belt Stopper has not been removed inside the Top Cover.	Turn off the printer, open the Top Cover and remove the tape or the Belt Stopper before restoring power.
An error requiring service may have occurred. Hardware error. xxxxxxxxxxxxxx Turn off printer, wait, then turn on again. OK: Printer Info.	Turn off the printer and wait at least three seconds before restor- ing the power. If the message is displayed again, write down the error code and message, turn off the printer, and contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Hardware error. 03130031-2F7x (x is 0, 1, or 2)

Cause	Corrective Action
The ink tank is not installed correctly.	Turn off the power, remove and then reinstall all of the ink tanks, and then turn on the power. If the same message is displayed again, write down the error code and message, turn off the printer, and contact your Canon dealer for assistance. (See " Replacing Ink Tanks .") → P590

Top cover is open.

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer has detected that the Top Cover is open.	S Open the Top Cover fully, remove any foreign objects, and close the Top Cover again.
	If the error occurs again, close the Top Cover, turn off the printer, and wait a while before restoring power.

Prepare for parts replacement.

Cause	Corrective Action
It is almost time to replace consumables for which service is required.	If " Parts replacement time has passed. " is displayed, you can continue to use the print- er for some time. Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Parts replacement time has passed.

Cause	Corrective Action
It is past the recommended time to replace consumables for which service is required.	Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Unknown file.

Cause	Corrective Action
Data sent to keep the printer up to date (such as paper information) is in the wrong format.	Check the data. Turn off the printer and wait a while before restoring power, and then resend the data.
You have uploaded firmware for a different model.	Check the firmware version. Turn off the printer and wait a while before restor- ing power, and then resend the firmware.
	If the message is displayed again, contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Multi-sensor error

Cause	Corrective Action	
Direct sunlight or strong lighting may be shining on the printer and causing the sensor to malfunction.	Take steps to ensure the printer is not used when exposed to direct sunlight or strong lighting.	
The performance of a sensor inside the printer may be impaired.	Turn off the printer and wait at least three seconds before restoring the power. If the message is displayed again, contact your Canon dealer for assistance.	

Error in cutter position.

Cause	Corrective Action
The Cutter Unit stops in the middle of cutting.	 Push the Release Lever back and remove the paper. Pull the Release Lever forward.

Memo

iPF685

User's Guide

Basic Printing Workflow	15
Enhanced Printing Options	31
Windows Software	157
Mac OS Software	277
Handling and Use of Paper	361
Control Panel	437
Printer Parts	477
Network Setting	491
Print Job Management	511
Adjustments for Better Print Quality	573
Maintenance and Consumables	589
Troubleshooting	627
Error Message	657

Specifications

Printer Specifications	2
------------------------	---

Appendix

685

Specifications

imagePROGRAF

Printer Specifications

Specifications	. 682
Print Area	. 684

Specifications

• The following values may vary depending on the operating environment.

Printer

Power supply		100–240 V AC (50/60 Hz)		
Power consumption	During operation	140 W max.		
	Sleep mode	5 W max.		
	Off	0.5 W max. (*1)		
Operating noise (*2)	Sound pressure level	During operation	Approx. 47 dB (A)	
		Standby	35 dB (A) max.	
	Audio power level (during operation)		Approx. 6.4 bels	
Operating environment	Temperature	15–30°C (59–86°F)		
	Humidity	10–80%, non-condensing		
Dimensions (W × D × H)	Printer only		997×757×507 mm (39.3×29.8×20.0 in)	
	Printer and Stand (When the Output Stacker is used)	Extended position A	997×887×1,062 mm (39.3×34.9×41.8 in)	
		Extended position B	997×1,100×1,062 mm (39.3×43.3×41.8 in)	
Weight	Printer only	Approx. 46.2 kg (101.9lb)		
	Main unit and Stand(including Roll Holder. Does not include Printhead and Ink Tank.)	Approx. 56.9 kg (125.4lb)		
Space for installation (W × D ×	Printer only	1,397×1,367×807 mm (55.0×53.8×31.8 in)		
H)	Printer and Stand	1,397×1,700×1,362 mm (55.0×66.9×53.6 in)		
Related standards	International Energy Star Program, Law on Promoting Green Purchasing/GPN (Japan), Eco Mark (Japan), RoHS			

*1: The printer uses a trace amount of power even when turned off. To stop all power consumption, turn off the printer and unplug the power cord.

*2: Calculation based on ISO 7779. Operating conditions: On the Main sheet of the printer driver, Media Type > Plain Paper, Advanced Settings > Print Priority > Line Drawing/Text, and Print Quality > Standard.

Printing performance

Print method	Bubblejet
Maximum resolution	2400 dpi horizontally (*1) × 1200 dpi vertically
Printhead	PF-04
Number of nozzles	MBK: 5120; Others: 2560 each color

*1: Prints with a minimum 1/2400 inch dot pitch between ink droplets.

Memory and hard disk

Memory	32 GB (256 MB physical memory)		
Hard disk capacity	320 GB		
	Personal mail boxes (Permanent storage 180 GB area)		
Print job storage capacity	Common Box	100 jobs	
	Personal Boxes	100 jobs	

Interface

USB	Format Mode Connector	Internal port Full-speed (12 Mbps), high-speed (480 Mbps), bulk transfer Series B (4-pin)
Ethernet	Format Specification	Internal port IEEE 802.3 10Base-T, IEEE 802.3u 100Base-TX/Auto-Negotiation, IEEE 802.3ab 1000Base-T/Auto-Negotiation, IEEE 802.3x Full Duplex IEEE 802.3az EEE
	Protocols	SNMP (supports Canon-MIB), HTTP, TCP/IP (IPv4/IPv6)

Ink

For information on the ink the printer supports, see "Ink Tanks." → P.590

Paper

For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the **Paper Reference Guide**. (See "**Displaying the Paper Reference Guide**.") **Paper Reference Guide**.")

Paper width	For information on the	For information on the paper widths the printer supports, see "Paper Sizes." →P362		
Minimum paper length	Rolls	203.2 mm (8.0 in)		
	Sheets	279.4 mm (11.0 in)		
Maximum printable length (*1)	Rolls	18 m (19.7 yd)		
	Sheets	1,600 mm (63.0 in)		
Thickness	Rolls	0.07–0.8 mm (0.0028–0.031 in)		
	Sheets	0.07–0.8 mm (0.0028–0.031 in)		
Roll maximum outer diameter		150 mm (6 in) or shorter		
Supported paper core inner diameter		2 inches / 3 inches		
Print area	For details, see "Print	Area." → P.684		

*1: Varies depending on the operating system or application.

Roll Holder Set	Roll Holder Set RH2-26
Stand	Printer Stand ST-27
Stand(*1)	Printer Stand ST-27

*1: The stand that is included depends on the region where you purchased the printer.

Print Area

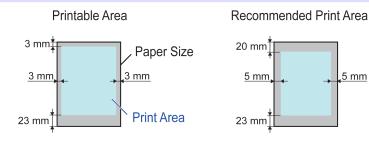
A margin required by the printer is added with respect to the size of paper loaded in the printer. Except in borderless printing, the actual printing area corresponds to the paper size minus the space for this margin.

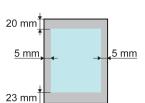


- Printable Area: The area that can be printed.
- There is no margin (that is, a margin of 0 mm) during borderless printing on rolls.
- Recommended Print Area: We recommend printing within this area.
- To print so that your original matches the print area exactly, use an oversized paper size that includes the required margin. (See "Printing on Oversize Paper.") → P.76

	Margins of Printable Area		Margins of Recommended Print Area			
	Top Edge	Bottom Edge	Sides	Top Edge	Bottom Edge	Sides
Sheets	3 mm (0.12 in)	23 mm (0.91 in)	3 mm (0.12 in)	20 mm (0.79 in)	23 mm (0.91 in)	5 mm (0.20 in)
Rolls	0/3 mm (0/0.12 in)	0/3 mm (0/0.12 in)	0/3 mm (0/0.12 in)	20 mm (0.79 in)	5 mm (0.20 in)	5 mm (0.20 in)

Sheets





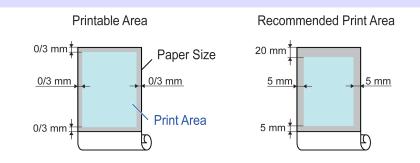
Printable Area

a margin of 3 mm (0.12 in) on top, 23 mm (0.91 in) on bottom, and 3 mm (0.12 in) on left and right sides is required.

Recommended Print Area

A margin of 20 mm (0.79 in) on top, 23 mm (0.91 in) on bottom, and 5 mm (0.20 in) on left and right sides is required.

Rolls



Printable Area

A margin of 3 mm (0.12 in) on all sides is required. During borderless printing, the margin on all sides is 0 mm. For information on paper compatible with borderless printing, see the Paper Reference Guide. (See "Types of Paper.") → P.362

Recommended Print Area

A margin of 20 mm (0.79 in) on top, 5 mm (0.20 in) on bottom, and 5 mm (0.20 in) on left and right sides is required.

Specifications

Printer Specifications

iPF685

User's Guide

Basic Printing Workflow	15
Enhanced Printing Options	31
Windows Software	157
Mac OS Software	277
Handling and Use of Paper	361
Control Panel	437
Printer Parts	477
Network Setting	491
Print Job Management	511
Adjustments for Better Print Quality	573
Maintenance and Consumables	589
Troubleshooting	627
Error Message	657
Specifications	681

Appendix

ASafety Precautions	686
Manuals for this printer	690
Disposal of the product	692

Safety Precautions	686
Legal Notices	688

Safety Precautions

Follow the warnings and precautions below to use the printer safely. Do not perform any operations or procedures other than as described in this manual. Doing so may result in unexpected accidents and can cause a fire or electrical shocks.

Printer location



• Do not set up the printer in any location exposed to alcohol, thinner, or other volatile liquids. If these substances come into contact with electrical components inside the printer, there is a risk of fire or electrical shock.



- Never install the printer on an unstable or vibrating surface. If it falls over, this could cause personal injury.
- Caution Never set up the printer in a location that is exposed to high humidity or large amounts of dust, or exposed to direct sunlight, high temperature, or open flame. This could cause a fire or electrical shock. Use the printer location in an environment where temperature and humidity are within the ranges of 15 °C to 30 °C (59 °F to 86 °F) and 10 to 80% RH (with no condensation).
 - Never place the printer on a heavy wool or shag carpet. The fibers may enter the printer and cause a fire.
 - Keep the area around the power outlet clear of items so that you can disconnect the power cable immediately if the printer starts operating abnormally. In the event of a printer malfunction, remove the power cable from the outlet as soon as possible to prevent fire and electrical shocks.
 - Do not install the printer near sources of strong electromagnetic fields, whether equipment that generates such fields or places where such fields occur. This could damage the printer or cause malfunction.

Power Supply

- Never handle the power cable with wet hands. Doing so may cause electrical shock.
- Warning Insert the power cable securely and completely into the power source. If the power cable is not inserted completely, this could cause a fire or electrical shock.
 - Do not use any power cable other than the one provided. This could cause a fire or electrical shock. Never use the power cable with any other electrical device.
 - Never cut the power cable or attempt to modify it, and never stretch it or bend it forcefully. Never place a heavy object on the power cable. Damaged sections of the power cable could cause a short circuit and may cause a fire or electrical shock.
 - Never connect the power cable to a power strip or any power source shared by other electrical devices. This could cause a fire or electrical shock.
 - Never knot the power cable or wrap it around itself. This could cause a fire or electrical shock.
 - Periodically disconnect the power cable and use a dry cloth to wipe away dust that has collected on the plug and the area around the power outlet. Leaving the power cable plugged in and not cleaned for a long period, especially in an area subject to dust, oil, and humidity, could cause the insulation material to deteriorate and lead to a fire.

Appendix

- Always grip the plug to remove the power cable from the power outlet. Pulling on the power cable could damage the cable and lead to a fire or electrical shock.
 - Never use an extension cord. This could cause a fire or electrical shock.
 - Never use any power source other than 100–120 / 220–240 V AC. This could cause a fire or electrical shock. The printer operating conditions are described below. Use the printer under the following conditions.
 Power supply voltage: 100–120 / 220–240 V AC
 Power supply frequency: 50/60 Hz

In an Emergency



• If the printer emits smoke or strange odors, continuing to use the printer may cause a fire or electrical shock. Switch the printer off immediately and remove the power plug from the power outlet. Contact your Canon dealer or support center.

Cleaning the Printer



For cleaning, use a cloth dampened in water. Never use flammable solvents such as alcohol, benzene, or thinner. If
these substances come into contact with electrical components inside the printer, there is a risk of fire or electrical
shock.



Always disconnect the power cable from the outlet before cleaning the printer. If the printer is switched on accidentally, moving parts inside the printer may cause personal injuries.

Pacemakers



• This printer generates a low-level magnetic field. Anyone wearing a pacemaker who experiences discomfort while working around the printer should leave the area. Consult a physician before continuing to work around the printer.

Moving the Printer



• Moving the printer requires at least three people, holding it on both sides and from behind. Be careful to avoid back strain and other injuries.

• When moving the printer, firmly grasp the Carrying Handles under each side and in back. The printer may be unsteady if you hold it at other positions, which poses a risk of injury from dropping the printer.

Printhead, Ink Tanks, and Maintenance Cartridge

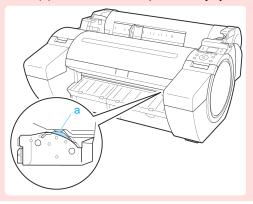


Always store consumables in a safe location out of the reach of small children. If a child licks or ingests ink accidentally, seek medical assistance immediately.

- If ink accidentally gets in your eyes, immediately rinse with water.
 If ink gets on your skin, immediately clean it off with soap and water.
 If irritation persists in your eyes or on your skin, contact a physician immediately.
- Avoid dropping or shaking printheads, ink tanks, and maintenance cartridges. Spilled ink can stain clothing and the work area.
- Never touch the electrical contacts of the Printhead after printing. The contacts become extremely hot and can cause minor burns.

Other

- Never disassemble the printer or attempt repairs. There are high voltage parts inside the printer that can cause a fire or electrical shock. Warning
 - Never use flammable sprays around the printer. The gas of flammable sprays can cause a fire or electrical shock, if it contacts high voltage points inside the printer.
 - Never touch the cutting edge of Cutter Unit (a). This could cause personal injury.



- Never insert your hand into the printer while it is printing. Moving parts inside the printer can cause injuries.
- Caution Never place anything on the printer such as small metal objects (paper clips, staples), liquids, any type of liquid container that contains flammable liquids (alcohol, benzene, etc.). If such objects fall into the printer, this could cause a fire or electrical shock.
 - To prevent a fire hazard or dangerous electric shock, if a foreign object falls into or a liquid spills into the printer, press the Power button immediately to switch the printer off, unplug the printer power cable from the outlet, and then contact your Canon dealer or support center. If you continue to use the printer, this could cause a fire or electrical shock.



 Connect the interface cable correctly. To avoid damage, before connection make sure that the shape of the cable connector matches the connection point on the printer.

- During printing, turn on the ventilation system in the room.
- We recommend ensuring ample space for installation.

Legal Notices

FCC Regulations (U.S.A)

Canon Large Format Printer	iPF685

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation.

This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or televi-

688 sion reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.

Appendix

- · Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Use of shielded cable is required to comply with Class B limits in Subpart B of Part 15 of FCC Rules. Do not make any changes or modifications to the equipment unless otherwise specified in the manual. If such changes or modifications should be made, you could be required to stop operation of the equipment. Canon U.S.A. Inc.

One Canon Park Melville, NY 11747, U.S.A. Tel No. 1-800-652-2666

For CA, USA Only

Included battery contains Perchlorate Material - special handling may apply. See http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate/ for detail.

Trademarks

- Canon, the Canon logo, and imagePROGRAF are trademarks or registered trademarks of CANON INC.
- Microsoft is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation.
- Windows is a trademark or registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and/or other countries.
- Windows Vista is a trademark or registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and/or other countries.
- Excel, Internet Explorer and PowerPoint are registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and/or other countries.
- Mac, Mac OS, Bonjour, Safari and OS X are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
- Adobe RGB, a trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated, is color space proposed by Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Copyright

• Unauthorized reproduction of this user manual in whole or part is prohibited.

Legal Notice

- It is illegal to reproduce currency, bills, negotiable securities and other documents prohibited by law. Reproduction of such items may be subject to criminal prosecution.
- It is illegal to reproduce legal certificates, licenses, travel tickets, and certain public and private documents prohibited from reproduction by law. Reproduction of such items may be subject to criminal prosecution.
- Please note that intellectual property protected by copyright may not be reproduced without the express permission of the copyright holder except for personal or household use under limited circumstances.

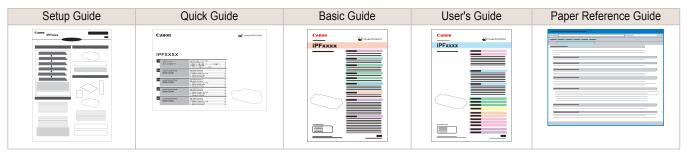
Manuals for this printer

Manuals for this printer	. 690
About This User Manual	690

Manuals for this printer

This printer has the following manuals.

Name	Contents	Medium
Setup Guide	Instructions for unpacking and setting up the printer, and for in- stalling the software and electronic manuals.	Printed Manuals
Quick Guide	Contains information such as a guide to exchanging paper, Ink Tank, and Printhead, and cautions for using the product safely.	
Basic Guide	Descriptions of basic printer operations.	Electronic manuals
User's Guide	Detailed instructions for using the printer.	
Paper Reference Guide	This guide describes about the types and specifications of the available media on the printer.	



About This User Manual

Symbols

The following symbols are used in this user manual to indicate safety information and explanations on restrictions or precautions in use.

Warning	Indicates warning items for which operating error poses a risk of death or serious injury. To ensure safe use, always follow these warnings.
Caution	Indicates caution items for which operating error poses a risk of injury. To ensure safe use, always follow these cautions.
Important	Indicates important information and restrictions that definitely are to be followed during operation. Be sure to read this information to prevent troubles, malfunctions, or damage to equipment or property by operating errors.
Note	Indicates helpful reference information and supplemental information on particular topics.

• Button names and user interface elements

Key and button names on the control panel and user interface elements in software (such as menus and buttons) are indicated as follows in this user manual.

Control panel buttons	Example: Press the OK button.
Control panel messages	Example: Head Cleaning is displayed.
Software interface items	Example: Click OK.

690

Appendix

(menus and buttons)	Example: Click OK.
Keyboard keys	Example: Press the Tab key.

Cross-reference

Other pages or manuals that provide related information are indicated as follows in this user manual.

Cross-reference in the same user manual	Example: see "Menu Structure." →P.452 Click the link to jump to the corresponding page.
Cross-reference in related manuals	Example: Refer to the Paper Reference Guide.
Other cross-reference	Example: See the printer driver help.

• Figures and software screens

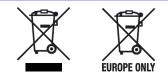
- Figures in this user manual may be different from the actual appearance of the printer in some cases.
- Screens depicted in this user manual for the printer driver or other software may be different from the actual screens because of subsequent updates.

May we request

- The information in this user manual is subject to change without notice.
- We strive to ensure accuracy of information in this user manual, but if you notice errors or omissions, contact support center.

Disposal of the product

WEEE Directive



Only for European Union and EEA (Norway, Iceland and Liechtenstein)

These symbols indicate that this product is not to be disposed of with your household waste, according to the WEEE Directive (2012/19/EU), the Battery Directive (2006/66/EC) and/or national legislation implementing those Directives. If a chemical symbol is printed beneath the symbol shown above, in accordance with the Battery Directive, this indicates that a heavy metal (Hg = Mercury, Cd = Cadmium, Pb = Lead) is present in this battery or accumulator at a concentration above an applicable threshold specified in the Battery Directive.

This product should be handed over to a designated collection point, e.g., on an authorized one-for-one basis when you buy a new similar product or to an authorized collection site for recycling waste electrical and electronic equipment (EEE) and batteries and accumulators. Improper handling of this type of waste could have a possible impact on the environment and human health due to potentially hazardous substances that are generally associated with EEE. Your cooperation in the correct disposal of this product will contribute to the effective usage of natural resources. For more information about the recycling of this product, please contact your local city office, waste authority, approved scheme or your household waste disposal service or visit \rightarrow www.canon-europe.com/weee , or \rightarrow www.canon-europe.com/battery .

Nur für Europäische Union und EWR (Norwegen, Island und Liechtenstein)

Diese Symbole weisen darauf hin, dass dieses Produkt gemäß WEEE-Richtlinie (2012/19/EU; Richtlinie über Elektround Elektronik-Altgeräte), Batterien-Richtlinie (2006/66/EG) und nationalen Gesetzen zur Umsetzung dieser Richtlinien nicht über den Hausmüll entsorgt werden darf.

Falls sich unter dem oben abgebildeten Symbol ein chemisches Symbol befindet, bedeutet dies gemäß der Batterien-Richtlinie, dass in dieser Batterie oder diesem Akkumulator ein Schwermetall (Hg = Quecksilber, Cd = Cadmium, Pb = Blei) in einer Konzentration vorhanden ist, die über einem in der Batterien-Richtlinie angegebenen Grenzwert liegt.

Dieses Produkt muss bei einer dafür vorgesehenen Sammelstelle abgegeben werden. Dies kann z. B. durch Rückgabe beim Kauf eines neuen ähnlichen Produkts oder durch Abgabe bei einer autorisierten Sammelstelle für die Wiederaufbereitung von Elektro- und Elektronik-Altgeräten sowie Batterien und Akkumulatoren geschehen. Der unsachgemäße Umgang mit Altgeräten kann aufgrund potenziell gefährlicher Stoffe, die generell mit Elektro- und Elektronik-Altgeräten in Verbindung stehen, negative Auswirkungen auf die Umwelt und die menschliche Gesundheit haben.

Durch Ihre Mitarbeit bei der umweltgerechten Entsorgung dieses Produkts tragen Sie zu einer effektiven Nutzung natürlicher Ressourcen bei.

Um weitere Informationen über die Wiederverwertung dieses Produkts zu erhalten, wenden Sie sich an Ihre Stadtverwaltung, den öffentlich-rechtlichen Entsorgungsträger, eine autorisierte Stelle für die Entsorgung von Elektro- und Elektronik-Altgeräten oder Ihr örtliches Entsorgungsunternehmen oder besuchen Sie \rightarrow www.canon-europe.com/weee, oder \rightarrow www.canon-europe.com/battery.

Union Européenne, Norvège, Islande et Liechtenstein uniquement.

Ces symboles indiquent que ce produit ne doit pas être mis au rebut avec les ordures ménagères, comme le spécifient la Directive européenne DEEE (2012/19/UE), la Directive européenne relative à l'élimination des piles et des accumulateurs usagés (2006/66/CE) et les lois en vigueur dans votre pays appliquant ces directives.

Si un symbole de toxicité chimique est imprimé sous le symbole illustré ci-dessus conformément à la Directive relative aux piles et aux accumulateurs, il indique la présence d'un métal lourd (Hg = mercure, Cd = cadmium, Pb = plomb) dans la pile ou l'accumulateur à une concentration supérieure au seuil applicable spécifié par la Directive.

Appendix

Disposal of the product

Ce produit doit être confié au distributeur à chaque fois que vous achetez un produit neuf similaire, ou à un point de collecte mis en place par les collectivités locales pour le recyclage des Déchets des Équipements Électriques et Électroniques (DEEE). Le traitement inapproprié de ce type de déchet risque d'avoir des répercussions sur l'environnement et la santé humaine, du fait de la présence de substances potentiellement dangereuses généralement associées aux équipements électriques et électroniques.

Votre entière coopération dans le cadre de la mise au rebut correcte de ce produit favorisera une meilleure utilisation des ressources naturelles.

Pour plus d'informations sur le recyclage de ce produit, contactez vos services municipaux, votre éco-organisme ou les autorités locales compétentes, ou consultez le site → www.canon-europe.com/weee , ou → www.canon-europe.com/battery .

Uitsluitend bestemd voor de Europese Unie en EER (Noorwegen, IJsland en Liechtenstein)

Met deze symbolen wordt aangegeven dat dit product in overeenstemming met de AEEA-richtlijn (2012/19/EU), de richtlijn 2006/66/EG betreffende batterijen en accu's en/of de plaatselijk geldende wetgeving waarin deze richtlijnen zijn geïmplementeerd, niet bij het normale huisvuil mag worden weggegooid.

Indien onder het hierboven getoonde symbool een chemisch symbool gedrukt staat, geeft dit in overeenstemming met de richtlijn betreffende batterijen en accu's aan dat deze batterij of accu een zwaar metaal bevat (Hg = kwik, Cd = cadmium, Pb = lood) waarvan de concentratie de toepasselijke drempelwaarde in overeenstemming met de genoemde richtlijn overschrijdt.

Dit product dient te worden ingeleverd bij een hiervoor aangewezen inzamelpunt, bijv. door dit in te leveren bij een hiertoe erkend verkooppunt bij aankoop van een gelijksoortig product, of bij een officiële inzameldienst voor de recycling van elektrische en elektronische apparatuur (EEA) en batterijen en accu's. Door de potentieel gevaarlijke stoffen die gewoonlijk gepaard gaan met EEA, kan onjuiste verwerking van dit type afval mogelijk nadelige gevolgen hebben voor het milieu en de menselijke gezondheid. Uw medewerking bij het op juiste wijze weggooien van dit product draagt bij tot effectief gebruik van natuurlijke hulpbronnen.

Voor verdere informatie over recycling van dit product kunt u contact opnemen met uw plaatselijke gemeente, afvaldienst, officiële dienst voor klein chemisch afval of afvalstortplaats, of kunt u terecht op

 \rightarrow www.canon-europe.com/weee), of \rightarrow www.canon-europe.com/battery).

Sólo para la Unión Europea y el Área Económica Europea (Noruega, Islandia y Liechtenstein)

Estos iconos indican que este producto no debe desecharse con los residuos domésticos de acuerdo con la Directiva sobre RAEE (2012/19/UE) y la Directiva sobre Pilas y Acumuladores (2006/66/CE) y/o la legislación nacional. Si aparece un símbolo químico bajo este icono, de acuerdo con la Directiva sobre Pilas y Acumuladores, significa que la pila o el acumulador contiene metales pesados (Hg = Mercurio, Cd = Cadmio, Pb = Plomo) en una concentración superior al límite especificado en dicha directiva.

Este producto deberá entregarse en un punto de recogida designado, por ejemplo, entregándolo en el lugar de venta al adquirir un producto nuevo similar o en un centro autorizado para la recogida de residuos de aparatos eléctricos y electrónicos (RAEE), baterías y acumuladores. La gestión incorrecta de este tipo de residuos puede afectar al medio ambiente y a la salud humana debido a las sustancias potencialmente nocivas que suelen contener estos aparatos. Su cooperación en la correcta eliminación de este producto contribuirá al correcto aprovechamiento de los recursos naturales.

Los usuarios tienen derecho a devolver pilas, acumuladores o baterías usados sin coste alguno. El precio de venta de pilas, acumuladores y baterías incluye el coste de la gestión medioambiental de su desecho, y no es necesario mostrar la cuantía de dicho coste en la información y la factura suministradas a los usuarios finales.

Si desea más información sobre el reciclado de este producto, póngase en contacto con su municipio, el servicio o el organismo encargado de la gestión de residuos domésticos o visite → www.canon-europe.com/weee , o → www.canon-europe.com/battery

Solo per Unione Europea e SEE (Norvegia, Islanda e Liechtenstein)

Questi simboli indicano che il prodotto non può essere smaltito con i rifiuti domestici, ai sensi della Direttiva RAEE (2012/19/UE), della Direttiva sulle Batterie (2006/66/CE) e/o delle leggi nazionali che attuano tali Direttive. Se sotto il simbolo indicato sopra è riportato un simbolo chimico, in osservanza della Direttiva sulle batterie, tale simbolo indica la presenza di un metallo pesante (Hg = Mercurio, Cd = Cadmio, Pb = Piombo) nella batteria o nell'accumulatore con un livello di concentrazione superiore a una soglia applicabile specificata nella Direttiva sulle batterie.

Il prodotto deve essere conferito a un punto di raccolta designato, ad esempio il rivenditore in caso di acquisto di un nuovo prodotto simile oppure un centro di raccolta autorizzato per il riciclaggio di rifiuti di apparecchiature elettriche ed elettroniche (RAEE) nonché di batterie e accumulatori. Un trattamento improprio di questo tipo di rifiuti può avere conseguenze negative sull'ambiente e sulla salute umana a causa delle sostanze potenzialmente nocive solitamente contenute in tali rifiuti.

La collaborazione dell'utente per il corretto smaltimento di questo prodotto contribuirà a un utilizzo efficace delle risorse naturali ed eviterà di incorrere in sanzioni amministrative ai sensi dell'art. 255 e successivi del Decreto Legislativo n. 152/06.

Per ulteriori informazioni sul riciclaggio di questo prodotto, contattare le autorità locali, l'ente responsabile della raccolta dei rifiuti, un rivenditore autorizzato o il servizio di raccolta dei rifiuti domestici, oppure visitare il sito

Apenas para a União Europeia e AEE (Noruega, Islândia e Liechtenstein)

Estes símbolos indicam que este produto não deve ser eliminado juntamente com o seu lixo doméstico, segundo a Diretiva REEE de 2012/19/UE, a Diretiva de Baterias (2006/66/CE) e/ou a sua legislação nacional que transponha estas Diretivas.

Se houver um símbolo químico impresso como mostrado abaixo, de acordo com a Diretiva de Baterias, isto indica que um metal pesado (Hg = Mercúrio, Cd = Cádmio, Pb = Chumbo) está presente nesta pilha ou acumulador, numa concentração acima de um limite aplicável especificado na Diretiva.

Este produto deve ser entregue num ponto de recolha designado, por exemplo num local autorizado de troca quando compra um equipamento novo idêntico, ou num local de recolha autorizado para reciclar equipamento elétrico e eletrónico (EEE) em fim de vida, bem como pilhas e baterias. O tratamento inadequado deste tipo de resíduos pode ter um impacto negativo no ambiente e na saúde humana, devido a substâncias potencialmente perigosas que estão associadas com equipamentos do tipo EEE.

A sua cooperação no tratamento correto deste produto irá contribuir para a utilização mais eficaz dos recursos naturais.

Para obter mais informações acerca de como reciclar este produto, por favor contacte as suas autoridades locais responsáveis pela matéria, serviço de recolha aprovado para pilhas e baterias ou serviço de recolha de resíduos sólidos domésticos da sua municipalidade, ou visite → www.canon-europe.com/weee , ou → www.canon-europe.com/battery .

Gælder kun i Europæiske Union og EØS (Norge, Island og Liechtenstein)

Disse symboler betyder, at produktet ikke må bortskaffes sammen med dagrenovation i henhold til WEEE-direktivet (2012/19/EU), batteridirektivet (2006/66/EF) og/eller den lokale lovgivning, som disse direktiver er gennemført i. Hvis der i overensstemmelse med batteridirektivet er trykt et kemisk symbol under det symbol, der er vist ovenfor, betyder det, at batteriet eller akkumulatoren indeholder tungmetaller (Hg = kviksølv, Cd = cadmium, Pb = bly) i en koncentration, som ligger over de grænseværdier, der er beskrevet i batteridirektivet.

Produktet skal afleveres på et godkendt indsamlingssted, f.eks. i overensstemmelse med en godkendt én-til-én-procedure, når du indkøber et nyt tilsvarende produkt, eller på et godkendt indsamlingssted for elektronikaffald samt for batterier og akkumulatorer. Forkert håndtering af denne type affald kan medføre negative konsekvenser for miljøet og menneskers helbred på grund af de potentielt sundhedsskadelige stoffer, der generelt kan forefindes i elektrisk og elektronisk udstyr.

Når du foretager korrekt bortskaffelse af produktet, bidrager du til effektiv brug af naturressourcerne. Kontakt din kommune, den lokale affaldsmyndighed, det lokale affaldsanlæg, eller besøg → www.canon-europe.com/weee , eller → www.canon-europe.com/battery for at få flere oplysninger om genbrug af dette produkt.

Μόνο για την Ευρωπαϊκή Ένωση και τον ΕΟΧ (Νορβηγία, Ισλανδία και Λιχτενστάιν)

Αυτά τα σύμβολα υποδεικνύουν ότι αυτό το προϊόν δεν πρέπει να απορρίπτεται μαζί με τα οικιακά απορρίμματα, σύμφωνα με την Οδηγία για τα Απόβλητα Ηλεκτρικού και Ηλεκτρονικού Εξοπλισμού (ΑΗΗΕ) (2012/19/ΕΕ), την Οδηγία για τις Ηλεκτρικές Στήλες (2006/66/ΕΚ) ή/και την εθνική νομοθεσία που εφαρμόζει τις Οδηγίες εκείνες.

Εάν κάποιο χημικό σύμβολο είναι τυπωμένο κάτω από το σύμβολο που φαίνεται παραπάνω, σύμφωνα με την Οδηγία για τις Ηλεκτρικές Στήλες, υποδηλώνει ότι κάποιο βαρύ μέταλλο (Hg = Υδράργυρος, Cd = Κάδμιο, Pb = Μόλυβδος) υπάρχει στην μπαταρία ή τον συσσωρευτή σε συγκέντρωση μεγαλύτερη από το ισχύον επίπεδο που καθορίζεται στην Οδηγία για τις Ηλεκτρικές Στήλες.

Appendix

Αυτό το προϊόν πρέπει να παραδίδεται σε καθορισμένο σημείο συλλογής, π.χ. σε μια εξουσιοδοτημένη βάση ανταλλαγής όταν αγοράζετε ένα νέο παρόμοιο προϊόν ή σε μια εξουσιοδοτημένη θέση συλλογής για την ανακύκλωση των αποβλήτων ηλεκτρικού και ηλεκτρονικού εξοπλισμού (ΗΗΕ) και των ηλεκτρικών στηλών και συσσωρευτών. Ο ακατάλληλος χειρισμός αυτού του τύπου αποβλήτων μπορεί να έχει αρνητικό αντίκτυπο στο περιβάλλον και την υγεία του ανθρώπου, λόγω δυνητικά επικίνδυνων ουσιών που γενικά συνδέονται με τον ΗΗΕ.

Η συνεργασία σας για τη σωστή απόρριψη αυτού του προϊόντος θα συμβάλει στην αποτελεσματική χρήση των φυσικών πόρων.

Για περισσότερες πληροφορίες σχετικά με ανακύκλωση αυτού του προϊόντος, επικοινωνήστε με το τοπικό γραφείο της πόλης σας, την υπηρεσία απορριμμάτων, το εγκεκριμένο σχήμα ή την υπηρεσία απόρριψης οικιακών αποβλήτων ή επισκεφθείτε τη διεύθυνση → www.canon-europe.com/weee ή → www.canon-europe.com/battery .

Gjelder kun den europeiske union og EØS (Norge, Island og Liechtenstein)

Disse symbolene indikerer at dette produktet ikke skal kastes sammen med husholdningsavfall, i henhold til WEEEdirektivet (2012/19/EU), batteridirektivet (2006/66/EF) og/eller nasjonal lov som har implementert disse direktivene. Hvis et kjemisk symbol vises under symbolet vist ovenfor, i samsvar med batteridirektivet, indikerer dette at et tungmetall (Hg = kvikksølv, Cd = kadmium, Pb = bly) finnes i batteriet eller akkumulatoren i en konsentrasjon over en gjeldende øvre grense som er spesifisert i batteridirektivet.

Produktet må leveres til et dertil egnet innsamlingspunkt, det vil si på en autorisert en-til-en-basis når en kjøper et nytt lignende produkt, eller til et autorisert innsamlingssted for resirkulering av avfall fra elektrisk og elektronisk utstyr (EE-utstyr) og batterier og akkumulatorer. Feil håndtering av denne typen avfall kan være miljø- og helseskadelig på grunn av potensielt skadelige stoffer som ofte brukes i EE-utstyr.

Din innsats for korrekt avhending av produktet vil bidra til effektiv bruk av naturressurser.

Du kan få mer informasjon om resirkulering av dette produktet ved å kontakte lokale myndigheter, avfallsadministrasjonen, et godkjent program eller husholdningens renovasjonsselskap, eller gå til → www.canon-europe.com/weee , eller → www.canon-europe.com/battery .

Vain Euroopan unionin sekä ETA:n (Norja, Islanti ja Liechtenstein) alueelle.

Nämä tunnukset osoittavat, että sähkö- ja elektroniikkalaiteromua koskeva direktiivi (SER-direktiivi, 2012/19/EU), paristoista ja akuista annettu direktiivi (2006/66/EY) sekä kansallinen lainsäädäntö kieltävät tuotteen hävittämisen talousjätteen mukana.

Jos yllä olevan symbolin alapuolelle on paristodirektiivin mukaisesti painettu kemiallisen aineen tunnus, kyseinen paristo tai akku sisältää raskasmetalleja (Hg = elohopea, Cd = kadmium, Pb = lyijy) enemmän kuin paristodirektiivin salliman määrän.

Tuote on vietävä asianmukaiseen keräyspisteeseen, esimerkiksi kodinkoneliikkeeseen uutta vastaavaa tuotetta ostettaessa tai viralliseen sähkö- ja elektroniikkalaiteromun tai paristojen ja akkujen keräyspisteeseen. Sähkö- ja elektroniikkalaiteromun virheellinen käsittely voi vahingoittaa ympäristöä ja ihmisten terveyttä, koska laitteet saattavat sisältää ympäristölle ja terveydelle haitallisia aineita. Tuotteen asianmukainen hävittäminen säästää myös luonnonvaroja. Jos haluat lisätietoja tämän tuotteen kierrätyksestä, ota yhteys kunnan jätehuoltoviranomaisiin tai käyttämääsi jätehuoltoyhtiöön tai käy osoitteessa \rightarrow www.canon-europe.com/weee, tai \rightarrow www.canon-europe.com/battery.

Endast för Europeiska unionen och EES (Norge, Island och Liechtenstein)

De här symbolerna visar att produkten inte får sorteras och slängas som hushållsavfall enligt WEEE-direktivet (2012/19/EU), batteridirektivet (2006/66/EG) och/eller nationell lagstiftning som implementerar dessa direktiv. Om en kemisk symbol förekommer under ovanstående symbol innebär detta enligt Batteridirektivet att en tungmetall (Hg = Kvicksilver, Cd = Kadmium, Pb = Bly) förekommer i batteriet eller ackumulatorn med en koncentration som överstiger tillämplig gräns som anges i Batteridirektivet.

Produkten ska lämnas in på en avsedd insamlingsplats, t.ex. på en återvinningsstation auktoriserad att hantera elektrisk och elektronisk utrustning (EE-utrustning) samt batterier och ackumulatorer eller hos handlare som är auktoriserade att byta in varor då nya, motsvarande köps (en mot en). Olämplig hantering av avfall av den här typen kan ha negativ inverkan på miljön och människors hälsa på grund av de potentiellt farliga ämnen som kan återfinnas i elektrisk och elektronisk utrustning.

Din medverkan till en korrekt avfallshantering av produkten bidrar till effektiv användning av naturresurserna. Om du vill ha mer information om var du kan lämna in den här produkten, kontakta ditt lokala kommunkontor, berörd myndighet eller företag för avfallshantering eller se → www.canon-europe.com/weee , eller → www.canon-europe.com/battery .

Pouze Evropská unie a EHP (Norsko, Island a Lichtenštejnsko)

Tento symbol znamená, že podle směrnice OEEZ (2012/19/EU), směrnice o bateriích (2006/66/ES) a/nebo podle vnitrostátních právních prováděcích předpisů k těmto směrnicím nemá být tento výrobek likvidován s odpadem z domácností.

Je-li v souladu s požadavky směrnice o bateriích vytištěna pod výše uvedeným symbolem chemická značka, udává, že tato baterie nebo akumulátor obsahuje těžké kovy (Hg = rtuť, Cd = kadmium, Pb = olovo) v koncentraci vyšší, než je příslušná hodnota předepsaná směrnicí.

Tento výrobek má být vrácen do určeného sběrného místa, např. v rámci autorizovaného systému odběru jednoho výrobku za jeden nově prodaný podobný výrobek, nebo do autorizovaného sběrného místa pro recyklaci odpadních elektrických a elektronických zařízení (OEEZ), baterií a akumulátorů. Nevhodné nakládání s tímto druhem odpadu by mohlo mít negativní dopad na životní prostředí a lidské zdraví, protože elektrická a elektronická zařízení zpravidla obsahují potenciálně nebezpečné látky. Vaše spolupráce na správné likvidaci tohoto výrobku napomůže efektivnímu využívání přírodních zdrojů.

Chcete-li získat podrobné informace týkající se recyklace tohoto výrobku, obraťte se prosím na místní úřad, orgán pro nakládání s odpady, schválený systém nakládání s odpady či společnost zajišťující likvidaci domovního odpadu, nebo navštivte webové stránky \rightarrow www.canon-europe.com/weee nebo \rightarrow www.canon-europe.com/battery .

Csak az Európai Unió és az EGT (Norvégia, Izland és Liechtenstein) országaiban

Ezek a szimbólumok azt jelzik, hogy a termék hulladékkezelése a háztartási hulladéktól különválasztva, az elektromos és elektronikus berendezések hulladékairól (WEEE) szóló (2012/19/EU) irányelvnek és az elemekről és akkumulátorokról, valamint a hulladék elemekről és akkumulátorokról szóló (2006/66/EK) irányelvnek megfelelően és/vagy ezen irányelveknek megfelelő helyi előírások szerint történik.

Amennyiben a fent feltüntetett szimbólum alatt egy vegyjel is szerepel, az elemekről és akkumulátorokról szóló irányelvben foglaltak értelmében ez azt jelzi, hogy az elem vagy az akkumulátor az irányelvben meghatározott határértéknél nagyobb mennyiségben tartalmaz nehézfémet (Hg = higany, Cd = kadmium, Pb = ólom).

E terméket az arra kijelölt gyűjtőhelyre kell juttatni – pl. hasonló termék vásárlásakor a régi becserélésére vonatkozó hivatalos program keretében, vagy az elektromos és elektronikus berendezések (EEE) hulladékainak gyűjtésére, valamint a hulladék elemek és hulladék akkumulátorok gyűjtésére kijelölt hivatalos gyűjtőhelyre. Az ilyen jellegű hulladékok nem előírásszerű kezelése az elektromos és elektronikus berendezésekhez (EEE) általánosan kapcsolható potenciálisan veszélyes anyagok révén hatással lehet a környezetre és az egészségre.

E termék megfelelő leselejtezésével Ön is hozzájárul a természeti források hatékony használatához.

A termék újrahasznosítását illetően informálódjon a helyi polgármesteri hivatalnál, a helyi közterület-fenntartó vállalatnál, a hivatalos hulladéklerakó telephelyen vagy a háztartási hulladék begyűjtését végző szolgáltatónál, illetve látogasson el a swww.canon-europe.com/weee, vagy swww.canon-europe.com/battery internetes oldalra.

Tylko dla krajów Unii Europejskiej oraz EOG (Norwegia, Islandia i Liechtenstein)

Te symbole oznaczają, że produktu nie należy wyrzucać razem z odpadami gospodarstwa domowego, zgodnie z dyrektywą WEEE w sprawie zużytego sprzętu elektrycznego i elektronicznego (2012/19/UE) lub dyrektywą w sprawie baterii (2006/66/WE) bądź przepisami krajowymi wdrażającymi te dyrektywy.

Jeśli pod powyższym symbolem znajduje się symbol chemiczny, zgodnie z dyrektywą w sprawie baterii oznacza to, że bateria lub akumulator zawiera metal ciężki (Hg = rtęć, Cd = kadm, Pb = ołów) w stężeniu przekraczającym odpowiedni poziom określony w dyrektywie w sprawie baterii.

Użytkownicy baterii i akumulatorów mają obowiązek korzystać z dostępnego programu zwrotu, recyklingu i utylizacji baterii oraz akumulatorów.

Niewłaściwe postępowanie z tego typu odpadami może mieć wpływ na środowisko i zdrowie ludzi ze względu na substancje potencjalnie niebezpieczne, związane ze zużytym sprzętem elektrycznym i elektronicznym.

Państwa współpraca w zakresie właściwej utylizacji tego produktu przyczyni się do efektywnego wykorzystania zasobów naturalnych.

W celu uzyskania informacji o sposobie recyklingu tego produktu prosimy o kontakt z właściwym urzędem miejskim lub zakładem gospodarki komunalnej bądź zapraszamy na stronę → www.canon-europe.com/weee , lub → www.canon-europe.com/battery .

Platí len pre štáty Európskej únie a EHP (Nórsko, Island a Lichtenštajnsko)

Tieto symboly označujú, že podľa Smernice o odpade z elektrických a elektronických zariadení (OEEZ) 2012/19/EÚ, Smernice o batériách (2006/66/ES) a podľa platnej legislatívy Slovenskej republiky sa tento produkt nesmie likvidovať spolu s komunálnym odpadom.

Ak je chemická značka vytlačená pod vyššie uvedeným symbolom, znamená to, že táto batéria alebo akumulátor obsahuje ťažký kov (Hg = ortuť, Cd = kadmium, Pb = olovo) v koncentrácii vyššej, ako je príslušná povolená hodnota stanovená v Smernici o batériách.

Produkt je potrebné odovzdať do určenej zberne, napr. prostredníctvom výmeny za kúpu nového podobného produktu, alebo na autorizované zberné miesto, ktoré spracúva odpad z elektrických a elektronických zariadení (EEZ), batérií a akumulátorov. Nesprávna manipulácia s takýmto typom odpadu môže mať negatívny vplyv na životné prostredie a ľudské zdravie, pretože elektrické a elektronické zariadenia obsahujú potenciálne nebezpečné látky.

Spoluprácou na správnej likvidácii tohto produktu prispejete k účinnému využívaniu prírodných zdrojov.

Ďalšie informácie o recyklácii tohto produktu získate od miestneho úradu, úradu životného prostredia, zo schváleného plánu OEEZ alebo od spoločnosti, ktorá zaisťuje likvidáciu komunálneho odpadu. Viac informácií nájdete aj na webovej stránke: → www.canon-europe.com/weee , alebo → www.canon-europe.com/battery .

Üksnes Euroopa Liit ja EMP (Norra, Island ja Liechtenstein)

Antud sümbolid viitavad sellele, et vastavalt elektri- ja elektroonikaseadmete jäätmeid käsitlevale direktiivile (2012/19/ EL), patareisid ja akusid ning patarei- ja akujäätmeid käsitlevale direktiivile (2006/66/EÜ) ja/või nimetatud direktiive rakendavatele riiklikele õigusaktidele ei või seda toodet koos olmejäätmetega ära visata.

Kui keemiline sümbol on trükitud eespool toodud sümboli alla, siis tähendab see, et antud patareis või akus leiduva raskemetalli (Hg = elavhõbe, Cd = kaadmium, Pb = plii) kontsentratsioonitase on kõrgem kui patareisid ja akusid ning patarei- ja akujäätmeid käsitlevas direktiivis sätestatud piirmäär.

Antud tootest tekkinud jäätmed tuleb anda vastavasse kogumispunkti, nt müügipunkti, mis on volitatud üks ühe vastu vahetama, kui ostate uue sarnase toote, või vastavasse elektri- ja lektroonikaseadmete jäätmete ning patareide ja akude ümbertöötlemiseks mõeldud kogumispunkti. Antud liiki jäätmete vale käitlemine võib kahjustada keskkonda ja inimeste tervist elektri- ja elektroonikajäätmetes tavaliselt leiduvate potentsiaalselt ohtlike ainete tõttu. Antud tootest tekkinud jäätmete nõuetekohase kõrvaldamisega aitate kasutada loodusvarasid efektiivselt.

Täiendava teabe saamiseks elektri- ja elektroonikaseadmetest tekkinud jäätmete ning patarei- ja akujäätmete tagastamise ja ümbertöötlemise kohta võtke ühendust kohaliku omavalitsusega, asjakohase valitsusasutusega, asjakohase tootjavastutusorganisatsiooniga või olmejäätmete käitlejaga. Lisateavet leitate ka Interneti-leheküljelt → www.canon-europe.com/weee võj → www.canon-europe.com/battery

Tikai Eiropas Savienībai un EEZ (Norvēģijai, Islandei un Lihtenšteinai)

Šie simboli norāda, ka atbilstoši ES Direktīvai (2012/19/ES) par elektrisko un elektronisko iekārtu atkritumiem (EEIA), Direktīvai (2006/66/EK) par baterijām un akumulatoriem, un akumulatoru atkritumiem, ar ko atceļ Direktīvu 91/157/ EEK, un vietējiem tiesību aktiem šo izstrādājumu nedrīkst izmest kopā ar sadzīves atkritumiem.

Ja zem iepriekš norādītā simbola ir uzdrukāts ķīmiskais simbols, saskaņā ar direktīvu par baterijām un akumulatoriem tas nozīmē, ka šīs baterijas vai akumulatori satur smagos metālus (Hg = dzīvsudrabs, Cd = kadmijs, Pb = svins) un to koncentrācijas līmenis pārsniedz direktīvā par baterijām un akumulatoriem minēto piemērojamo slieksni.

Šis izstrādājums ir jānodod piemērotā savākšanas vietā, piemēram, apstiprinātā veikalā, kur iegādājaties līdzīgu jaunu produktu un atstājat veco, vai apstiprinātā vietā izlietotu elektrisko un elektronisko iekārtu un bateriju un akumulatoru pārstrādei. Nepareiza šāda veida atkritumu apsaimniekošana var apdraudēt vidi un cilvēka veselību tādu iespējami bīstamu vielu dēļ, kas parasti ir elektriskajās un elektroniskajās iekārtās.

Jūsu atbalsts pareizā šāda veida atkritumu apsaimniekošanā sekmēs efektīvu dabas resursu izmantošanu. Lai saņemtu pilnīgāku informāciju par šāda veida izstrādājumu nodošanu otrreizējai pārstrādei, sazinieties ar vietējo pašvaldību, atkritumu savākšanas atbildīgo dienestu, pilnvaroto organizāciju vai iestādi, kas veic sadzīves atkritumu apsaimniekošanu, vai apmeklējiet tīmekļa vietni → www.canon-europe.com/weee , vai → www.canon-europe.com/battery

Tik Europos Sąjungai ir EEE (Norvegijai, Islandijai ir Lichtenšteinui)

Šie simboliai reiškia, kad šio gaminio negalima išmesti į buitines atliekas, kaip reikalaujama WEEE Direktyvoje (2012/19/ES) ir Baterijų direktyvoje (2006/66/EB) ir (ar) jūsų šalies nacionaliniuose įstatymuose, kuriais šios Direktyvos yra įgyvendinamos.

Jeigu cheminio ženklo simbolis yra nurodytas žemiau šio ženklo, tai reiškia, kad vadovaujantis Baterijų direktyvą, baterijų ar akumuliatorių sudėtyje yra sunkiųjų metalų (Hg = gyvsidabrio, Cd = kadmio, Pb = švino), kurių koncentracija viršija Baterijų direktyvoje nurodytas leistinas ribas.

Šį gaminį reikia pristatyti į specialųjį surinkimo punktą, pavyzdžiui, mainais, kai jūs perkate naują panašų gaminį, arba j specialiąją surinkimo vietą, kurioje perdirbamos elektrinės ir elektroninės įrangos atliekos bei naudotos baterijos ir akumuliatoriai. Dėl netinkamo šio tipo atliekų tvarkymo gali nukentėti aplinka ir iškilti grėsmė žmogaus sveikatai dėl galimai kenksmingų medžiagų, iš esmes susijusių su elektrine ir elektronine įranga.

Bendradarbiaudami ir teisingai utilizuodami šiuos gaminius, jūs padėsite efektyviai naudoti gamtinius išteklius. Daugiau informacijos apie gaminio perdirbima jums gali suteikti vietinis biuras, atliekų tvarkymo bendrovė, sertifikuoti organai ar buitinių atliekų surinkimo įmonės. Taip pat siūloma apsilankyti interneto svetainėje → www.canon-europe.com/weee, arba → www.canon-europe.com/battery

Samo za Evropsko unijo in EGP (Norveška, Islandija in Lihtenštajn)

Ti simboli pomenijo, da tega izdelka skladno z Direktivo OEEO (2012/19/EU), Direktivo 2006/66/ES in/ali nacionalno zakonodajo, ki uvaja ti direktivi, ne smete odlagati z nesortiranimi gospodinjskimi odpadki.

Če je pod zgoraj prikazanim simbolom natisnjen kemijski simbol, to v skladu z Direktivo pomeni, da je v tej bateriji ali akumulatorju prisotna težka kovina (Hg = živo srebro, Cd = kadmij, Pb = svinec), in sicer v koncentraciji, ki je nad relevantno mejno vrednostjo, določeno v Direktivi.

Ta izdelek je potrebno odnesti na izbrano zbirno mesto, t. j. pooblaščeno trgovino, kjer ob nakupu novega (podobnega) izdelka vrnete starega, ali na pooblaščeno zbirno mesto za ponovno uporabo odpadne električne in elektronske opreme (EEO) ter baterij in akumulatorjev. Neustrezno ravnanje s to vrsto odpadkov lahko negativno vpliva na okolje in človeško zdravje zaradi potencialno nevarnih snovi, ki so pogosto povezane z EEO.

Vaše sodelovanje pri pravilnem odlaganju tega izdelka predstavlja pomemben prispevek k smotrni izrabi naravnih virov.

Za več informacij o ponovni uporabi tega izdelka se obrnite na lokalen mestni urad, pristojno službo za odpadke, predstavnika pooblaščenega programa za obdelavo odpadkov ali na lokalno komunalo. Lahko pa tudi obiščete našo spletno stran (> www.canon-europe.com/weee), ali (> www.canon-europe.com/battery).

Само за Европейския съюз и ЕИП (Норвегия, Исландия и Лихтенщайн)

Тези символи показват, че този продукт не трябва да се изхвърля заедно с битовите отпадъци съгласно Директивата за ИУЕЕО (2012/19/EC), Директивата за батерии (2006/66/EO) и/или Вашето национално законодателство, прилагащо тези Директиви.

Ако под показания горе символ е отпечатан символ за химически елемент, съгласно разпоредбите на Директивата за батерии, този втори символ означава наличието на тежък метал (Hg = живак, Cd = кадмий, Pb = олово) в батерията или акумулатора в концентрация над указаната граница за съответния елемент в Директивата.

Този продукт трябва да бъде предаден в предназначен за целта пункт за събиране, например на база размяна, когато купувате нов подобен продукт, или в одобрен събирателен пункт за рециклиране на излязло от употреба електрическо и електронно оборудване (ИУЕЕО), батерии и акумулатори. Неправилното третиране на този тип отпадъци може да доведе до евентуални отрицателни последствия за околната среда и човешкото здраве поради потенциално опасните вещества, които обикновено са свързани с ЕЕО.

В същото време Вашето съдействие за правилното изхвърляне на този продукт ще допринесе за ефективното използване на природните ресурси.

За повече информация относно това къде можете да предадете за рециклиране на този продукт, моля свържете се с Вашите местни власти, с органа, отговорен за отпадъците, с одобрената система за ИУЕЕО или с Вашата местна служба за битови отпадъци, или посетете (→ www.canon-europe.com/weee), или → www.canon-europe.com/battery

Doar pentru Uniunea Europeană și EEA (Norvegia, Islanda și Liechtenstein)

Aceste simboluri indică faptul că acest produs nu trebuie aruncat împreună cu deșeurile menajere, în conformitate cu Directiva DEEE (2012/19/UE), Directiva referitoare la baterii (2006/66/CE) și/sau legile dvs. naționale ce implementează aceste Directive.

Dacă un simbol chimic este imprimat sub simbolul de mai sus, în conformitate cu Directiva referitoare la baterii, acest simbol indică prezența în baterie sau acumulator a unui metal greu (Hg = Mercur, Cd = Cadmiu, Pb = Plumb) într-o concentrație mai mare decât pragul admis specificat în Directiva referitoare la baterii.

698

Appendix

Disposal of the product

Acest produs trebuie înmânat punctului de colectare adecvat, ex: printr-un schimb autorizat unu la unu atunci când cumpărați un produs nou similar sau la un loc de colectare autorizat pentru reciclarea reziduurilor de echipament electric și electronic (EEE) și baterii și acumulatori. Administrarea neadecvată a acestui tip de deșeuri, ar putea avea un impact asupra mediului și asupra sănătății umane datorită substanțelor cu potențial de risc care sunt în general asociate cu EEE.

Cooperarea dvs. în direcția reciclării corecte a acestui produs va contribui la o utilizare eficientă a resurselor naturale. Pentru mai multe informații despre reciclarea acestui produs, vă rugăm să contactați biroul dvs. local, autoritățile responsabile cu deșeurile, schema aprobată sau serviciul dvs. responsabil cu deșeurile menajere sau vizitați-ne la > www.canon-europe.com/weee , sau > www.canon-europe.com/battery .

Samo za Europsku uniju i EEA (Norveška, Island i Lihtenštajn)

Oznaka pokazuje da se ovaj proizvod ne smije odlagati s komunalnim i ostalim vrstama otpada, u skladu s direktivom WEEE (2012/19/EC), Direktivom o baterijama (2006/66/EC) i Pravilnikom o gospodarenju otpadnim baterijama i akumulatorima te Pravilnikom o gospodarenju otpadnim električnim i elektroničkim uređajima i opremom.

Ako je ispod prethodno prikazane oznake otisnut kemijski simbol, u skladu s Direktivom o baterijama, to znači da se u ovoj bateriji ili akumulatoru nalazi teški metal (Hg = živa, Cd = kadmij, Pb = olovo) i da je njegova koncentracija iznad razine propisane u Direktivi o baterijama.

Ovaj bi proizvod trebalo predati ovlašenom skupljaču EE otpada ili prodavatelju koji je dužan preuzeti otpadni proizvod po sistemu jedan za jedan, ukoliko isti odgovara vrsti te je obavljao primarne funkcije kao i isporučena EE oprema. Otpadne baterije i akumulatori predaju se ovlaštenom skupljaču otpadnih baterija ili akumulatora ili prodavatelju bez naknade i obveze kupnje za krajnjeg korisnika. Neodgovarajuće rukovanje ovom vrstom otpada može utjecati na okoliš i ljudsko zdravlje zbog potencijalno opasnih supstanci koje se najčešće nalaze na takvim mjestima.

Vaša suradnja u pravilnom zbrinjavanju ovog proizvoda pridonijet će djelotvornom iskorištavanju prirodnih resursa. Dodatne informacije o recikliranju ovog proizvoda zatražite od svog lokalnog gradskog ureda, službe za zbrinjavanje otpada, odobrenog programa ili komunalne službe za uklanjanje otpada ili pak na stranicama

 \rightarrow www.canon-europe.com/weee ili \rightarrow www.canon-europe.com/battery.

Només per a la Unió Europea i a l'Espai Econòmic Europeu (Noruega, Islàndia i Liechtenstein)

Aquests símbols indican que aquest producte no s'ha de llençar amb les escombraries de la llar, d'acord amb la RAEE (2012/19/UE), la Directiva relativa a piles i acumuladors (2006/66/CE) i la legislació nacional que implementi aquestes directives.

Si al costat d'aquest símbol hi apareix imprès un símbol químic, segons especifica la Directiva relativa a piles i acumuladors, significa que la bateria o l'acumulador conté un metall pesant (Hg = mercuri, Cd = cadmi, Pb = plom) en una concentració superior al límit aplicable especificat en la Directiva.

Aquest producte s'hauria de lliurar en un dels punts de recollida designats, com per exemple, intercanviant un per un en comprar un producte similar o lliurant-lo en un lloc de recollida autoritzat per al reciclatge de residus d'aparells elèctrics i electrònics (RAEE) i piles i acumuladors. La manipulació inadequada d'aquest tipus de residus podria tenir un impacte negatiu en l'entorn i en la salut humana, a causa de les substàncies potencialment perilloses que normalment estan associades a l'RAEE.

La vostra cooperació a l'hora de rebutjar correctament aquest producte contribuirà a la utilització efectiva dels recursos naturals.

Els usuaris tenen dret a retornar les bateries o els acumuladors usats sense cap càrrec. El preu de venda de les bateries i els acumuladors inclou el cost de la gestió ambiental dels residus i no es necessari mostrar l'import d'aquest cost en aquest fullet o en la factura que es lliuri a l'usuari final.

Per a més informació sobre el reciclatge d'aquest producte, contacteu amb l'oficina municipal, les autoritats encarregades dels residus, el pla de residus homologat o el servei de recollida d'escombraries domèstiques de la vostra localitat o visiteu → www.canon-europe.com/weee, o → www.canon-europe.com/battery .

Korisnici u Srbiji

Ovaj simbol označava da ovaj proizvod ne sme da se odlaže sa ostalim kućnim otpadom, u skladu sa WEEE Direktivom (2012/19/EU), Direktivom o baterijama (2006/66/EC) i nacionalnim zakonima.

Ukoliko je ispod gore navedenog simbola odštampan hemijski simbol, u skladu sa Direktivom o baterijama, ovaj simbol označava da su u ovoj bateriji ili akumulatoru prisutni teški metali (Hg – živa, Cd – kadmijum, Pb - olovo) u koncentracijama koje premašuju prihvatljivi prag naveden u Direktivi o baterijama.

Ovaj proizvod treba predati određenom centru za prikupljanje, npr. po principu "jedan-za-jedan" kada kupujete sličan novi proizvod, ili ovlašćenom centru za prikupljanje za reciklažu istrošene električne i elektronske opreme (EEE), baterija i akumulatora. Nepravilno rukovanje ovom vrstom otpada može imati negativne posledice po životnu sredinu i ljudsko zdravlje usled potencijalno opasnih materijala koji se uglavnom vezuju za EEE.

Vaša saradnja na ispravnom odlaganju ovog proizvoda će doprineti efikasnom korišćenju prirodnih resursa. Više informacija o tome kako možete da reciklirate ovaj proizvod potražite od lokalnih gradskih vlasti, komunalne službe, odobrenog plana reciklaže ili servisa za odlaganje kućnog otpada, ili posetite stranicu

 \rightarrow www.canon-europe.com/weee, ili \rightarrow www.canon-europe.com/battery.

Index

A

Accounting	517, 518, 522, 526
Additional Settings Pane	
Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver	
Adjusting the Vacuum Strength	

В

Bonjour Network

С

CAD	
Checking Ink Tank Levels	595
Cleaning	600, 614
Clearing a Jammed Sheet	
Color Adjustment	. 173, 176, 307, 328
Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy	. 225, 226, 344, 345
Configuring the IP Address	496, 497, 508

D

Deleting Saved Jobs	544
Device Settings Sheet	189
Device Setup Utility	508
Drying Time	385

F

Favorites Sheet	
Free Layout	202, 203, 204, 319, 321

G

xxxx (x represents a number)
xxxx (x represents a number) 678

Н	
Hardware error	

Ι

Interface	473

L

Large-Format Printing	97
Layout Sheet	
Loading and Printing on Sheets	

Μ

Main Pane	
Main Sheet	
Maintenance Cartridge	608, 612, 613, 674
Menu Operations	
Menu Structure	

Ν

Navigate	445
Nozzle	599

0

Orientation	148	149,	254,	266
Output Method				180
Oversize				. 76

Ρ

Page Setup Pane	294
Page Setup Sheet	
Paper Feed Slot	. 635, 637
Personal Box	. 555, 558
PosterArtist	41
Power 255, 257, 259, 262, 263	, 264, 266
Preparing to Transfer the Printer	618
Print Job Log	527
Printer Driver Settings	
Printer Hard Disk Operations	
Printhead 574, 599, 600, 601	, 641, 672
Printing Posters in Sections	123
Printing Saved Jobs	540
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners	
Printing at Actual Size	80, 81, 83
Printing on Rolls	19

R

Removing the Roll	380,	383
Replacing Ink Tanks		
Roll Holder		

S

Saving Print Jobs	533, 553
Size Options	181
Special Settings	
Specifications	
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver	
Status Print	
Support Sheet	

U

Using the Output Stacker	401
Utility Sheet	187

W

Watermark	145, 146
When to Replace Ink Tanks	596

iPF685 User's Guide

